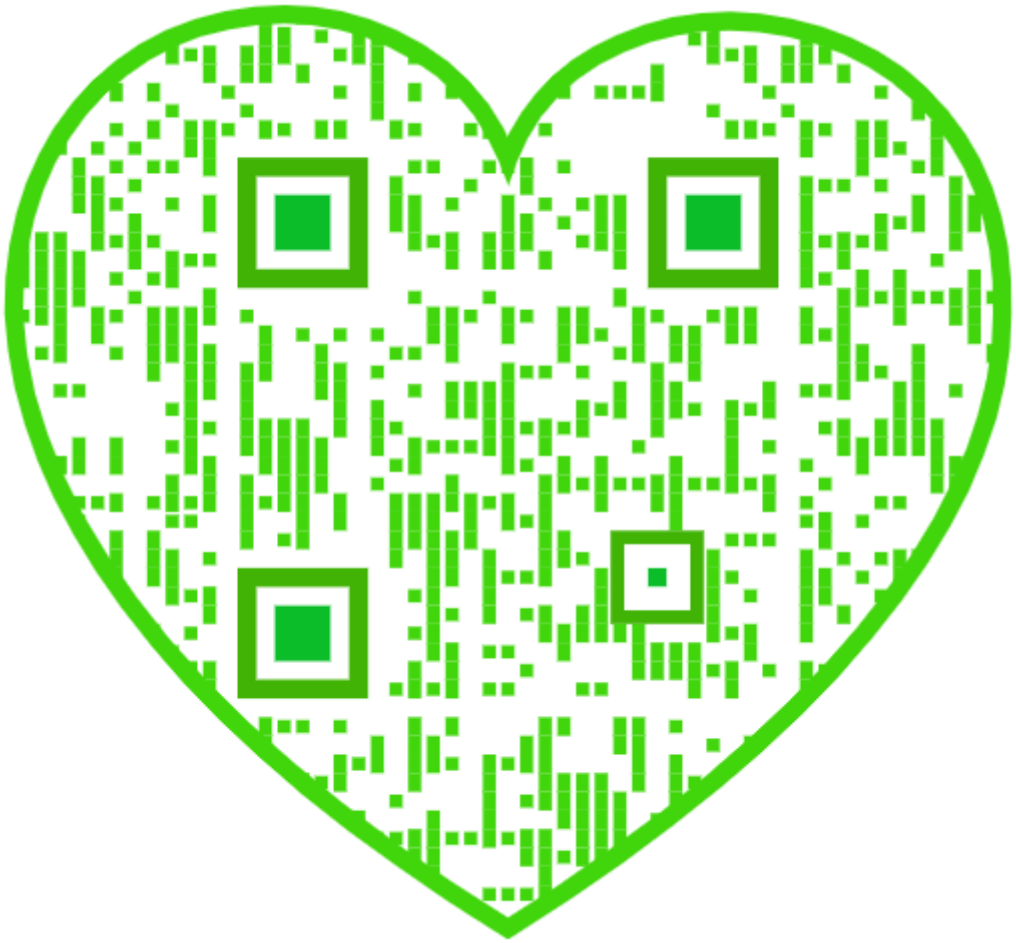
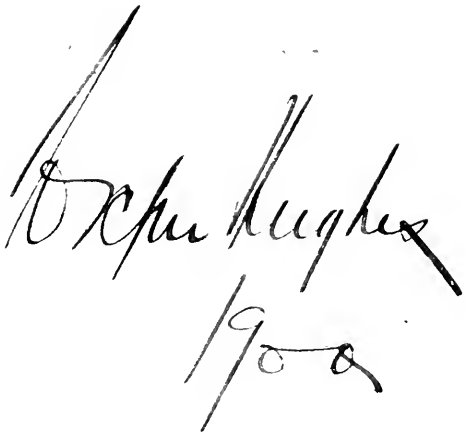


JOHN A. SEAVERNS

TUFTS UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES
3 9090 013 418 187

Webster Family Library of Veterinary Medicine
Cummings School of Veterinary Medicine at
Tufts University
200 Westboro Road
North Grafton, MA 01536



THE COMPLEAT

HORSE-MAN,

AND

Expert Ferrier.

In Two Books.

The first, Shewing the best manner of Breeding good Horses, with their Choice, Nature, Riding and Dieting, as well for Running as Hunting, and how the Rider ought to behave himself in the Breaking and Riding of Colts; as also teaching the Groom and Keeper his true Office, touching the Horses and Colts committed to his charge; and prescribing the best manner how a perfect Stable ought to be situated and made; not heretofore so fully described by any.

The second, Directing the most exact and approved manner how to know and cure all Maladies and Diseases in Horses: a work containing the secrets and best skill belonging either to Ferrier, or Horse-Leach: The Cures placed Alphabetically; with hundreds of Medicines never before Imprinted in any Author.

Published at the earnest request of sundry Noble and Worthy Gentlemen, for the general good and benefit of the Nation.

By *Thomas de Grey*, Esquire.

The Fifth Edition corrected, with some Additions.

London, Printed by *J. R.* and *R. H.* for *Samuel Lowndes*, and are to be sold by most Booksellers, 1684.

To the Right Honourable

JAMES,

Marqueſs *HAMILTON*;

Earl of *Arran* and *Cambridge*, Baron of *Even*, *Aberlroth*, and *Ennerdale*, Maſter of the Horſe to his Majeſty, Knight of the Honorable Order of the Garter, and one of his Majeſties moſt Honorable Privy Council.

My Lord,

TO have preſented this peice of Horſe-manſhip to any other hand than Yours, had been very improper as well in regard of the place your Lordſhip bears, as of my reſpects to your noble Perſon.

Here is a ſubject (My Lord) worthy of your conſideration, and the imployments of your thoughts even ſerious; for in this moſt generous Crea-

ture, next unto man, conſiſteth the pleaſure, honour, and defence of a moſt flouriſhing Kingdom.

I have given part of my Youth to the inveſtigation of this beautiful and uſeful Creature; I have ſearched many Nations for my better information; and albeit I have found ſome Climates more Fortunate than this of ours, in the production of a happy ſhape to this Creature, for the moſt part our Horſes not being drawn out with ſuch delicate Lineaments, nevertheleſs ſome of them I have (where care and diligence have been uſed in the Breed) of moſt abſolute and perfect ſhape; and where as frequently, the Barbary *Jennet,* Turky, *and* Neapolitan *Courſers, are cried up for their beauties, yet as in ſome ſhapes they exceed, ſo in ſome other they may be found defective.*

But if we regard the ſpirit, Vigor aud doing of a Horſe, no Nation, or Soil, produceth a more Active, than this our Iſland of Great Britain, *as hath been well experienced by many Noble and memorable Services.*

Unto which if we add a due obſervation in our breed, both on the one ſide of the Stallion or Sire, and the Dam, our loſt glory will be ſoon recovered.

But

But ſince the laying aſide of the great Saddle and Cannon, and neglect of the Horſe of menage, ſince the applying our Breed only to Racing or (as I may better ſay) in furniſhing our ſelves with Horſes of ſpeed to run away from our Enemy, the moſt Antient Honour of Horſe-manſhip peculiar to this our Kingdom, and for which all other Nations highly eſteemed us, is now almoſt vaniſhed and loſt; inſomuch as were we preſſed with thoughts of Defence (from which the moſt prudent and watchful Eye of Heaven guards us) we ſhould be forced (I write this in bluſhes) to pull Horſes from the Coach and Cart to fill up our Troop.

Let it therefore be Recorded (my Noble Lord) that whilſt you were Maſter of the Horſe to his Majeſty, an exact obſervation was eſtabliſhed throughout this whole Kingdom, for the due breeding of ſerviceable Horſes: to the furtherance of which moſt Noble Deſign, if theſe my Obſervations ſhall any way conduce, I ſhall bleſs my Pen that it ever waded in ſuch a ſubject; profeſsing my ſelf to owe unto my Country all I have, and to it my Labours, as a moſt loyal Subject and true Patriot, I moſt humbly offer.

And my good Lord, theſe Obſervations gathered in my Youth, I was adviſed by ſome Noble Friends (though

though now old to publiſh for the general good of this our Kingdom : Otherwiſe for my own part I ſhould have rather ſuppreſſed them, as not being now ſo fit a ſubject for me to treat off, but the publique good hath over-ſwayed me. Wherefore with theſe Oblations I conclude, Kiſſing your Lordſhips Hands, and ſhall ever profeſs my ſelf,

Your Lordſhips

Moſt humble

Servant,

Thomas De La Grey.

To

To the Reader.

WHen I do conſider *(benevolent Reader)* the inconvenience whereinto that Man is plunged, who brings himſelf upon the publick Stage of promulgating his Books in Print, be the Subject never ſo laudable, and the Author no leſs cautelous and ſufficient, endeavouring with all diligence to prevent the brand of a black coal, nevertheleſs all induſtry applied, he ſhall not paſs without obloquy and aſperſion.

This very conſideration hath ſo affrighted and deterred me, that albeit I have had many great motives exciting me to make a tender of the Love, Duty, and Service I bear to my Country; yet when I do contemplate the many cenſures I muſt undergo, I have been evermore diſheartned as well from beginning, as going forward in this my deſired purpoſe. Notwithſtanding partly through the reſpect I bear to my Countries profit and honour, and partly by means of the importunity of many my right noble and generous friends, who have been eye-witneſſes to ſundry of my Cures, and thoſe not a few uncouth and rare, I have adventured now in my declining days, to leave this Work as a Monument to enſuing times, no whit doubting, but that the judicious will friendly accept thereof; but as for the malevolent and ignorant, I am moſt confident that the quills they ſhall dart at me, cannot go as from a Porcupine, and therefore will do me the leſs hurt or damage.

I therefore am bold to put into thy hand this poor Work of mine, which I have digeſted in two Books: In the firſt I lay thee down rudiments, how thou mayſt breed Horſes to thy beſt advantage and liking, which al-

ally obſerve theſe my grounds and principles, aſſure thy ſelf thou wilt in ſhort time aſpire to that which will be thy honour and renown.

And to the end thou mayſt the more perfectly and eaſily underſtand the full drift and ſum of this my firſt Book, I will here give unto thee an Epitome of it in a few lines, which may do thee much pleaſure in the peruſal thereof.

In the Introduction I ſhew thee how needful a creature the Horſe is beyond all others, and what admirable things Horſes in former times have perpetrated and done; whereof I produce the inſtances of the famous acts of ſundry brave and generous Horſes, whoſe love to their Maſters have been ſo great, as hardly to be credited, if ancient Hiſtories, and Annals of good integrity had not engraven them in the memory of never dying poſterity. We read of *Bucephalus*, what he did for the good, life, and ſafety of his Maſter; of the Horſe of *Dionyſius*, with what undaunted courage he comported himſelf in battel for the relief and ſuccour of his Lord; it is recorded alſo of the Horſe of *Antiochus*, what ill ſucceſs befel *Centuretus*, who, when he had ſlain *Antiochus*, would needs back the Horſe of his ſlain Maſter. It is alſo noted what inly love *Nicomedes* his Horſe bare to his Lord and Maſter, which after his death of meer grief famiſhed himſelf. We read of *Aethon*, the Horſe of *Pallas*, who was evidently obſerved and ſeen to weep at the Funeral of his Maſter. *Silius* makes report of two famous Horſes called *Pelorus* and *Ciræus*, the one eminent for his proweſs and hardineſs in War, and the other for his unparallelled Swiftneſs. Moreover we may read, how that this poor creature hath ſo well merited of man, as that many have erected Monuments and Sepulchers, celebrated Exequies, builded and founded munificent Cities, ſet up Pyramides, made Epitaphs, erected goodly Statues, inſtituted Plays and Games,

and

and all theſe in honour of the Horſe; beſides many other remarkable things right worthy of note.

In the way of Breeding, I do intimate unto thee the manner how, the ſeaſon when, the Place where, together with the colours, marks, and ſhapes, as well of thy Stallions, as of thy Race, or Stud Mares, and from what defects they muſt be free, what ſigns are beſt wherein to cover, what courſe to take with them that they may conceive, what exerciſe is fitteſt for them as well when they be with Fole, as after foling, how to cheriſh thy Mares when their Colts ſhall run by them, and how to breed up thy Colts till they come to handling, backing, and riding, with other circumſtances very neceſſary to be known: and thus much briefly for the firſt Book.

The ſecond Book conſiſteth chiefly of the manner how thou mayſt cure all ſuch diſeaſes and maladies (both intrinſecal and extrinſecal) whereunto either the life of the Horſe, or any of his limbs or members may be any way endamaged or in danger. This I have handled by way of familiar Dialogue, which I hold to be beſt, for avoiding of prolix and over-tedious diſcourſes; by reaſon it will very much help the memory of the Reader, and keep his mind the better attent upon the ſtate of the Queſtion or ſubject in hand; and by that means I may my ſelf be the better able alſo to explicate and deliver my meaning much more cleerly. In which Dialogue, I have introduced as prolocutors, three perſons only, *viz.* Firſt, *Hippophilus* a Gentleman, one who is the true lover of the Horſe: Secondly *Hippiatrus* the Ferrier or *Marſhal*, one moſt expert in Horſe-leach-craft: And thirdly *Hippoſerus* his Servant and journey-man, ſometimes his Apprentice bred up by him, from whom *Hippoſerus* hath had his education and knowledge in this Art; theſe be all the *Dramatis perſonæ* to this Scene. Wherefore in the firſt Chapter, I do endeavour to illuſtrate unto thee the

true Office of the Ferrier: wherein I do produce an exact examen of this function.

In the ſecond Chapter, I do inculcate as well the cauſes of health as of ſickneſs, wherein I make an abridgement of all thoſe things which all learned Phyſicians and Chirurgions (both antient and modern do, from the grounds and principles of profound Philoſophy, find to govern and bear rule in the body of the Horſe, without which he can have no fleſh, bones, ſinews, blood, or life it ſelf, wherewith to make up the entire ſtructure of an organical body, and ſuch are firſt the Elements; ſecondly, the Humours; thirdly, the natural faculties; fourthly, the inſtrumental members; fifthly, the Spirits animal; ſixthly, the Spirits vital; ſeventhly, the natural parts, and ſo of the reſidue. And having ſufficiently diſcuſſed all theſe things in due order and method, I do then ſhew thee what means we have to preſerve the Horſe from all inward diſeaſes, which I do find to be four in number, *viz.* By Purge, by Sweat, by Phlebotomy, and by Vomit; and then do I proceed to inculcate unto thee the cauſes of health and long life, which I do make to be in number twelve, which if thou do well obſerve they will redound to thy great utility and profit.

In the third Chapter I do demonſtrate certain things moſt befitting a Ferrier to know and underſtand well, before he ſhall take upon him to adminiſter; in the handling whereof I do begin firſt with the four Elements, anatomizing unto thee their true natures and virtues, and how and where they be ſituate, a thing moſt needful to be known; then I go along with the two proper Elements, ſhewing from whence the ſeed and menſtrual blood is ingendred; then I paſs forwards in intreating of the four Humours, explaining their natures and virtues, pointing unto the places of their abode and reſidence, and what relation and coherence they have unto the four Complexions.

Complexions, I do alſo ſhew thee what are the two ſpirits Animal, and the two Vital, their natures, virtues, and places of abode and reſidence in the body of the Horſe. After all this I ſhew thee, that duly obſerving the complexion of the Horſe thou art to cure, thou mayſt thereby the ſooner, better, and with more ſecurity and eaſe, perfect thy cure; and, I go yet further with thee, in ſhewing unto thee an exact way whereby to know by the complexion it ſelf the diſeaſes whereunto the Horſe is moſt propenſe; then I make known what be the cauſes of the evil diſpoſitions of the Horſe, which bringeth and begetteth unavoidable infirmity and ſickneſs, whereof they be two in number, *viz.* Intrinſecal, and Extrinſecal, together with a definition of the nature of ſickneſs: and ſo I go along in teaching thee the manner how thou oughteſt to adminiſter ſuch Drinks, Potions, Clyſters, and Medicines, without any the leaſt peril to thy Horſe, as alſo the time of the day moſt ſutable to that purpoſe; and what exerciſe is moſt requiſite to be had after Phyſick or Medicine. And laſtly, I come to touch briefly upon his Urine and Ordure, whereby to give the rules infallible how to know and underſtand the true ſtate of the body of the Horſe, as well in health as in ſickneſs.

In the fourth Chapter of this ſecond Book, I do begin to handle the Cures in particular, wherein I run a courſe by my ſelf, which I have not known any before me undertake: For whereas Maſter *Blundevile*, Maſter *Markham*, and others, do begin with all the inward diſeaſes which are to be cured by way of Phyſick, and then with the outward maladies which do appertain unto Chyrurgery; I have thought it much better to take the diſeaſes Alphabetically, mixing the extrinſecal with the intrinſecal; by which means they will the ſooner and more eaſily be found, and turned unto more readily. And whereſoever

ever you ſhall find this *** inſerted in the end of any cure, I have ſet the ſame there, to let you know that Receipt to be undoubted, and approved for good and certain, being by my ſelf often practiſed and uſed. And thoſe receits that have not the mark, are ſuch cures which I did procure from ſundry able Ferriers, whereof I have had no trial or experience at all, for want of time and means; and therefore dare not avouch or cry them up for Mathematical, albeit they do appear unto me to be probably good, but by reaſon I have not tried them, I would not adventure a *Probatum*, or *ecce* upon them. Nevertheleſs if God permit me to reprint, I doubt not but by that time to give them for approved and warrantable, and to add many more unto them which I have already by me, which I do forbear to publiſh at this preſent, albeit I do know many of them to be as probably good as any of thoſe.

In other Chapters I go clean through the whole Alphabet, according to the method uſed in the fourth Chapter; and therefore let this abſtract ſuffice for the preſent. And foraſmuch as I have diſcourſed the former things of breeding, *&c.* in my firſt Book; yet my intention was not at the firſt to trench ſo deep into that ſubject, but to ſhew principally the *Ferriers* Craft and Art, out of an earneſt deſire I have to excite and ſtir up our young Gentlemen to aſſume ſome knowledge of a Myſtery ſo neceſſary for them to apprehend, or at leaſt-wiſe to have a glimpſe of, conſidering how rare a thing it is to find a skilful *Ferrier* among our rural or Country Smiths. For if the Nobility and Gentry of this our Iſle of *Great Britain* did truly know how honourable, and how commendable Horſe-manſhip were, and how much they are eſteemed and admired, who are the true profeſſours thereof, they would labour more than they now do, to breed and have good Horſes: but it much troubleth me

to

to ſee how little eſteem Gentlemen now a days have thereof. Some Horſes they have, though not for Menage, yet for Hunting; but what manner of Hunting? Fox-hunting forſooth, or Harriers, which be as fleet as petty Grey-hounds wherewith they do ſo much over-ſtrain the ſtrength of their poor Horſes (forcing them over deep Fallows, tough Clayes, and wet and rough lands) that albeit thoſe Horſes be ſtrong and able, yet are they ſo toiled out therewith, as that when they come home at night, they would pity the heart of him who loveth a Horſe, to ſee them ſo be-mired, blooded, ſpurred, lamentably ſpent, tyred out: Whereas, if ſuch Horſes had been ridden to the great Saddle and Cannon, they would have infinitely delighted all men, who ſhould have beheld them.

But let me leave them unto their toilſome ſports, and let my ſpeech be directed to ſuch Heroick and Generous ſpirits, who have a deſire to inform and better their underſtanding in the ſecrets of this brave Myſtery; who if they have a will to be edoctrinated therein, then for a Mathematical ground of true Horſe-manſhip, I muſt tell them, that the having and poſſeſſing of good Horſes, yea and riding it ſelf is little worth without the knowledge of the *Ferriers* Craft, at the leaſt in the Theorick or Speculative part, if not in the Practick; and therefore I could wiſh that every worthy Gentleman ſhould have a good inſight thereinto, albeit he doth not make it his Trade, Occupation or frequent practice, and profeſſion. Yet it would not be amiſs, he be able to know every diſeaſe in a Horſe, its Symptoms, and how it cometh, together with the true ſign thereof, which indeed is a matter of very great conſequence. For when a Nobleman (*V. G.*) Knight or Gentleman ſhall have a Horſe that doth well merit his affection, and which ſhall be for his turn, if any accident or malady ſhall befall him, albeit

he may not himſelf take upon him the cure, and to drench, Bloody, or dreſs him with his own hands; yet (ſending for a *Ferrier*) he may diſcourſe with him upon the nature of the Diſeaſe, and thereby come to underſtand whether the *Ferrier* ſpeaketh according to Art or not, and whether his intended courſe of adminiſtring be anſwerable to true Art and perfect Science, and probably a ſecure way to perfect the cure; ſo as if the Maſter and Owner of the Horſe be not himſelf enabled with ſome ſuperficial knowledge at the leaſt, at what time he ſhall conſult with the *Ferrier*, if not (I ſay) able to judge of the mans ſufficiency (the Smith himſelf being indeed inſufficient) by miſtaking the infirmity, he may ignorantly adminiſter or apply ſuch contrary medicines, whereby inſtead of labouring to cure him, he ſhall moſt eaſily and infallibly kill him, to the no ſmall regret and grief of the Owner.

But *Ferriers* and *Smiths* may peradventure greatly repine, and grumble at the publication of this Work of mine, like as to my knowledge, and in my hearing, they have moſt virulently exclaimed, and vehemently inveighed againſt Maſter *Blundevile*, Maſter *Markham* and others, wiſhing their Books burned, and the Authors at the Good year, for publiſhing and Printing them; pretending much wrong to be done to ſuch poor men who have ſerved Apprentiſhips to the Trade, having none other way or means of livelihood but only this. But hereunto I anſwer, that theſe men have no cauſe at all to fear any prejudice thereby; and I dare boldly affirm the promulgation of Books will be ſo far from their harm or hinderance, as that it will be infinitely to their benefit: For when they ſhall find any one Nobleman, Knight, or Gentleman, who will undergo ſo much pains as either to Bloody, Drench, Corroſive, Cauterize, apply Cataplaſmes, Emplaſters, Powders, Unguents, or

the

the like to his Horſe, whatſoever he hath attained unto by reading or otherwiſe; you ſhall have a thouſand, who upon any the leaſt occaſion will ſend for a *Ferrier* to take the Cure in hand. Again, inſtead of this pretended prejudice, this commodity will accrew to my brethren *Smiths*, *Marſhals*, and *Ferriers*, *viz.* they ſhall by promulgation of Books (of this nature) become much more able, and *imbuti in ſtudiis*, that is, much more learned and indoctrinated in this generous faculty than ever they were before; by which means they will be eſteemed much more famous and eminent, and cried up for the moſt expert and able men in this moſt noble Science. For how cometh it to paſs, that Phyſicians, Chyrurgions, Lawyers, Divines, and all other Artiſts do become ſo great Doctors of their Arts and Profeſſions, and admired for moſt famous and learned men, and ſo frequently ſought after, enquired out, and ſent for when occaſion is? Is it not for what they have attained unto by ſtudy and reading, until which time they were not ſo hardy as to adventure upon practice? So as without their Liberty, they could never have been able to have attained unto that eminent knowledge they have afterwards aſpired unto; neither could they otherwiſe have been poſſibly able to practice and work by true Art and Science. For the Works of learned and eminent men, are the only thing that doth enable them, which are left as a never dying Monument to enſuing and endleſs Poſterity, as the common good to the weal publick, even to all enſuing ages: Imitating therein the antient Sages of *Greece*, that when any man had invented that thing which was known to be commodious to the Republick, leſt the thing ſhould be buried with the Inventor, and by that means raked up with him in the aſhes of perpetual oblivion: They ordained that the firſt Inventor ſhould ſet up his Science to be known by way of record in their pub-

lick Schools in ſpacious Tables and in Capital Characters of Gold with this Impreſs, or Title, *viz.* Κάλλιον καὶ θειότερον ἀγαθὸν τῷ ἔθνει, ἢ τῷ ἑνί, *Bonum pulchrius, & divinius, quod Genti eſt, quam Uni*; that is, That thing is to be eſteemed better and more excellent which is communicated to the Weal Publique in general, rather than what is impriſoned in the boſom of any particular man. Wherefore that thing (I ſay) whereat I do principally aim, is to publiſh the true Art of the *Ferrier*, a Faculty wherein I have been daily verſed, and diligently practiſed for more than forty years, and that unto my no ſmall labour and expence, and I do well aſſure my ſelf that peradventure no one Gentleman in this our Kingdom more, who hath done greater, more difficult, or deſperate Cures.

During the time of my travels, I have for my better indemnity, not only peruſed what authors I could meet with, who have written upon this ſubject; but I did alſo make my ſelf an eye-witneſs to the cures of the moſt famous *Marſhals* and *Ferriers*, the cities and places afforded where I came, omitting no diligence which might inform or enable my knowledge; neither would I be too credulous, or give too much belief to fame or reports, for we have a maxim in the Civil Law, which ſaith: *Fama per ſe parum momenti habet ad probandum*: Fame alone is not of credit ſufficient to ſatisfie or convince the underſtanding of man, until ſuch time as he hath made trial. For the common proverb is, *Qui facile credit, facile decipitur.* He that eaſily beleiveth, is eaſily deceived And truly thus much I am able to ſpeak, that *France* and *Flanders* (for that in thoſe two places I had moſt commerce and experience, albeit I travelled many other parts of Chriſtendom) were the two Kingdoms in which I found the beſt, ableſt, and moſt expert *Marſhals*, or *Ferriers*: but of all the places where ever yet I came, I am able

of

of my own knowledg to ſay thus much (and that with no ſmall grief) that the worſt Ferriers generally I do find to be thoſe who are of our own nation: nevertheleſs, I do not conclude or condemn all for inſufficient; for ſome there be well known unto me very quaint and expert Ferriers, who can work very well, aud according to true art and Method. I have therefore in this elaborate Work of mine given you ſeveral Receipts for every Cure, and moſt of them approved by my particular practice and experience; others again I have inſerted which are the cures of other able men, which by reaſon they do ſound probable unto me, I have ſuffered them to paſs among my own, (though I never had means or opportunity to make trial of them.) And the reaſon why I have inculcated ſo many ſeveral receipts to each cure, are two, viz. Firſt becauſe that receipt which will cure one diſeaſe, will not always cure the ſame malady in another Horſe. Secondly, you ſhall find ſome receipts either very difficile to make, or the ingredients not eaſily to be gotten, otherwiſe they prove more chargeable than the owner of the Horſe is well able to defray: and therefore I have given thee receipts for all ſorts and degrees of Horſes; howbeit thoſe receipts which are moſt coſtly and intricate to make and compound are commonly the very beſt, and work the beſt effects, and therefore I leave thee to thy ſelf to make thy own choice, Now if any man ſhall ſay that I have robbed or rifled other mens labours: I anſwer, I have not robbed, but approved them; for by the ſame rule I may aſwel object, that whoſoever worketh by my book robbeth me; for if that be theft, I pray what Phyſician is there in the whole world, promulgating his ſcience may not be as much cenſured and accuſed for rifling the aphoriſms of *Galen* and *Hippocrates*, yea and of others the ancients, and modern authors alſo? But howſoever I am ſo far from traducing

other mens endeavours, as that I do both reverence and admire them, and eſteem my ſelf unworthy their Scholar. But I know no reaſon why I may not publiſh my knowledge of this noble Art; for what ſaith a venerable Author? *Qui ſe dicit ſcire quod neſcit, temerarius eſt: & qui negat ſcire quod ſcit, ingratus eſt.* As that man is to be accompted for moſt temerarious and raſh, that ſhall take upon him to know that which in truth he knoweth not; ſo alſo doth he ſhew himſelf to be moſt ingrate, who denieth to know that thing which truely he doth know. Innumerable are the grounds which may be laid to the rearing of this Structure, which being ſo well known to all, by ſetting each down in particular, I ſhall therein but only *Siſyphi ſaxum volvere*: conſume much time (which to me is moſt precious) and labour to little purpoſe, and leſs profit; and therefore I will in this diſcourſe draw towards an end, leſt I might tire thee out with too long an Epiſtle; yet leſs I thought I could not inculcate, by reaſon there are many things in this worthy and noble Science, which might otherwiſe ſeem to be very dark and abſtruſe, and the cures I have (I ſay) carried Dialogue-wiſe. *Ne inquam & inquit ſæpius interponeretur*; meerly to avoid confuſion: For *Ariſtotle* ſaith well; *Omne Ens naturaliter appetit ſuam perfectionem.* Every *Ens*, that is to ſay; every man hath a natural propenſion to arrive unto that perfection which he hath a will or deſire to underſtand.

Now the reaſon why I did enterlace my firſt Book with the honours and perfections which Horſes in former times have atchieved, as alſo with ſuch rules and principles of breeding, ſhape, marks, colours, *&c.* was leſt otherwiſe I might be like to one who telleth a ſick man of a ſovereign medicine for his infirmity, and yet conceals from him the uſe thereof. And therefore I do make it my chiefeſt deſire, and principal intention yea my obligation,

ligation, not only to illuſtrate each diſeaſe, together with its cure, but alſo to make up all the Attributes belonging to a perfect Horſe, and ſuch defects which be incident to ſo noble and uſeful a creature, being likewiſe diſcovered.

If therefore it may pleaſe thee ſometimes to retire thy ſelf in the peruſal of this Treatiſe, and with due and ſerious Judgement, not ſo much reflect upon the Method and form of this work, as of the matter or ſubject it ſelf, then I doubt not but that thou wilt receive ſuch benefit and contentment, as that thereby thou wilt be much bettered and enabled in thy underſtanding both for the breeding and well ordering of young Horſes, and in the cure of every of their maladies. And foraſmuch as I have brought this my firſt work to its period, which I may rightly reſemble to a Structure or Building, my ſpecial care hath been to make it fair and beautiful to the eye, and to grace, garniſh, and ſet it forth with varieties of divers ſorts; wherein I have been very diligent to give it all ſatisfaction I have been able, and therefore I have laboured to paint and poliſh it forth with what variety is moſt neceſſary for ſo exquiſite building.

Laſtly, Sithence nothing more imports a building than to lay a ſure and ſubſtantial foundation, and withal to make the walls ſo tite and impregnable, as to be able to reſiſt not ſo much wind and weather, as the violence, aſſaults, and battery of detracting enemies; my care therefore hath been to have it founded and ſituate upon the unmoveable rock of a pregnant truth. And therefore conſidering I have applyed all this pains, and ſpent ſo much time and coſt, which I might have otherwiſe both imployed and applyed to my more particular commodity, by which I have not only finiſhed this ſtructure, and made it commodious for thee, but I do alſo preſent it unto

unto thee meerly for thy proper uſe and habitation; and therefore I hope that thou wilt not make ſuch uſe thereof, as men do of an Inn, where they take a bait or repaſt, for one meal, or for a lodging, for one night and away, to wit, by only taking a ſuperficial view thereof: but that thou wilt make it thy abode at the leaſt for ſome time: I mean by reading and digeſting the whole work in order as it lieth treatably and ſeriouſly, and after by putting in practice, what therein thou ſhalt find to be fit for thy uſe; ſo ſhalt thou reap and enjoy the benefit, my ſelf the comfort, and the common-wealth the honour.

If any leaks be in the printing, impute them either unto the miſpriſion of the printer, or elſe to the negligence of him unto whom the charge of the correcting was committed; and if any be in the Author, let the fault light upon thoſe who ſpurred him ſo faſt on to haſt it to the Preſs; but howſoever ſhew thy charity in correcting the faults and ſlips, as well of the one, as of the other, So ſhalt thou ſhew thy ſelf to the world like thy ſelf, truly Noble, and oblige the Author to remain ever thy humble Servant, and true Friend: Farewel.

Thomas de Grey.

To my Worthy Friend Monſieur *de Grey*, upon his exquiſite piece of *Horſe-man-ſhip* and *Ferriery*.

WHen Troy's *Palladium, on whoſe fatal ſtay*
Their fortunes, hopes, their God's, their Altars lay,
Was by Ulyſſes *cunning hand ſurpriz'd,*
And Pallas *wo'd to ſee* Troy *ſacrific'd;*
The Greeks pretending recompenſe, return
A Horſe, whoſe entrails that vaſt City burn.
How different is thy Gift, ſince here we ſee
Pleaſure with ſafety, ſtrength with wit agree?
This frame exceeds that; but to nobler ends:
That hurts by fraud, by knowledge this defends:
And though in Ilium's *Horſe an Army reſt,*
'Twill be far more to COMPREHEND this Beaſt;
Since ignorance hath taught our Iſle to lay
Her Art on Jades that only run away.
But when I look on thine, and there behold
Souldiers made knowing, and the knowing bold:
I cry, had this been given for that of wood,
Minerva *had return'd, and* Ilium *ſtood.*

S. J. B. B.

To his good Friend, *Thomas de Grey*, upon his Book called the *Expert Ferrier*.

WHilſt other Readers vex in fruitleſs ways,
And write adventrous Lines for vulgar praiſe;
Thou in a Noble Art, and uſeful skill
Venteſt the labours of a modeſt Quil,
To make us by thy well ſpent Induſtry,
Supine neglects to know, and rectifie;

Since

Since in this Piece of thine, the Horſe appears
(Whilſt him his Rider as a Pilot ſteers
Through ſtorms of courage) by thy awful hand
Enforc'd to ſuffer, and obey Command.
Then, Thou, his innate Spirit to maintain
By propagation of a generous ſtrain,
Unpractis'd Precepts with judicious heed
Freely afford'ſt us in his better breed.
And laſtly, that this work may fully pleaſe,
Experimental Cures of each Diſeaſe,
Which frequently occur in this brave beaſt
Are, with the leſs approv'd by thee expreſt:
That all may ſay, We in this Book have found
A Horſe well bred, well menaged, and ſound.

S. T. H.

To my knowing Friend, Monſieur *de Grey.*

OLD Edward, *Noble* Worceſter, *that Branch*
Sprung from great John *of* Gaunt, *and Royal* (Blanch.
Of Thee our de la Grey *was wont to ſay,*
To ſee Thee on thy Horſe of menage play,
Was ſolid pleaſure, for the Excellence
That fed the Eye, went further then the Senſe.
And I believe it, ſince the Active part
That ſhines in Precepts of thy skilful Art.
And comes to us from ſpeculations taught
Through long experience, and with labour wrought
In theſe thy choice Philippicks, makes this Land
Bleſt in the fair production of Thy hand.
Our skilful Markham, *and old* Blundevil,
Or whoſoe're hath toucht this Marſhal Quil,
Receives by Thee more light than was his own,
Or was by th' Antients, or by Moderns known.

G. F.

Upon Monſieur *de Grey* his moſt elaborate piece of *Horſe-man-ſhip* and *Ferriery*.

THis Book's inform'd with a high Genius! this
Above the malice of detraction is!
Nor needs a friend's Encomium blaze it forth;
Its proper virtue vindicates its worth:
Yet, Since, by th' Author's happy care and pain
I underſtood how firſt to uſe the rein,
And menage ſteeds, I could not chuſe
But vent this grateful Rapture of my muſe,
How that by it he amply doth impart
The eſſence of the Horſemans, Ferrier's Art;
So that the Horſe ſhall to perfection grow,
And no diſeaſe his courage brave o'rethrow.
Now I will leave Pegaſus *airy courſes,*
And ſue to mount one of his well-train'd Horſes.

Ed. R.

To my well deſerving Friend, *Thomas de Grey*, upon his exact piece of *Horſe-man-ſhip* and *Ferriery*.

IF I, who love a Horſe next to my life,
Should now be mute in the commending ſtrife
Of this thy Horſemanſhip, my de la Grey,
I might henceforth be baniſht all the play
At Banſteed, Wincheſter, *and* Salsbury,
And ſit me down under this Horſe and die:
Nay, I will write before thy book, and fill
The vacant room of ſome deſerving quill;
And wiſh in all my ſport to be as ſure,
As when thou work'ſt upon a deſperate Cure.

To the Author of the Expert *Ferrier.*

HEre's Mirrour, eak Model of true Honour;
Fame waits on Thy name, Thou wait'ſt upon Her.
By caval'ry the Golden Fleece thou'ſt won;
Therein, Thou art a Non-pareil, That one.
Whoſe Fame ſhall die? Thine? It ſhall remain
The Age, preſag'd by Ovid's *ſublime Strain.*

I. H. D. M.

To my ever honoured Friend *Thomas de Grey*, upon his ſelect Piece of *Horſe-man-ſhip* and *Ferriery.*

SAge haſt Thou made our Later Age,
Thou art the Phœnix *of our Time;*
Certes, Thy rare Piece I preſage,
Hath won the Fleece it's ſo ſublime.
My younger Pen cannot but wait on thee,
Whoſe Name ſhall ever be moſt dear to me.

Francis Hawkins.

The

THE COMPLEAT HORSE-MAN, AND EXPERT FERRIER.

The First Book.

CHAP. I.

THE INTRODUCTION.

IF we will but take to our ſerious conſideration how many great Obligations we have to admire the infinite goodneſs of Almighty God in creating ſuch a marvellous number of Creatures, meerly for the uſe and ſervice of Man, whereof no one of them can be wanting; and that amongſt them all, we have none more uſeful, or which can be leſs ſpared than the Horſe; no dumb Creature more generous, nor any that cometh ſo near unto the pleaſure of Man, none can ſerve him better in time of Peace and War; none better for Manuring and Tilling the Earth, and to cauſe it to produce its Fruits; none more uſeful for bringing in the fruits of the Earth; none more behoofeful to bear and carry him his long and tedious journeys, in heat and cold, through thick and thin, by night and day; none better to carry him

from danger, and to land his Maſter at the port of ſafety, than the Horſe: and for his paſtimes and recreations, no creature to be compared to this: neither is there any creature created by the great Creator of all things, which doth ſo perfectly underſtand and connive with the nature and mind of man, or that beareth a more inly love to man, as doth this poor creature the Horſe; for upon all occaſions he ſweateth, he trudgeth, he toyleth, he drudgeth, he moyleth, he laboureth *Pro viribus*, with great alacrity and cheerfulneſs (ſo long as his vital ſpirits laſt) to give comfort and content to him that feedeth and cheriſheth him; yea, and that (I ſay) with ſuch joy and alacrity, as if (like to a reaſonable creature) he found himſelf obliged thereto in the bond of all ſincere duty and gratitude. For ſhould I ſpeak rather like a Philoſopher than a Chriſtian, I could not but agnize nature to be admirable in all her works, wherein man doth owe unto her infinite, and thoſe very great thanks, in that ſhe hath accommodated and plentifully furniſhed him with all things needful for his uſe, as alſo in that ſhe hath propagated (among all other) the Horſe, the moſt uſeful for the ſervice of man, and who beſt acknowledgeth his Maſter. And that this may be the better anatomized, I will ſhew you what I find recorded by authentical Authors of the excellency of this praiſeworthy Crtature.

The ſo much renowned *Bucephalus*, who carried his Maſter through ſo many conquered Kingdoms, ſerves for an example to all enſuing Ages, who would not ſuffer any man but great *Alexander* to back him, who ſeemed to be proud at what time he carried ſo glorious and victorious a charge; and it is alſo written of him, that being wounded at the ſiege and ſacking of *Thebes*, he carried him couragiouſly through the Troops and throngs of all the Combatants, with incredible valour and courage, nothing at all eſteeming or prizing the loſs of his blood, being moſt deſirous, and no leſs willing to do his Maſter all faithful ſervice, to the utmoſt of his power, and to the effuſion of the laſt drop of his blood, labouring to purchaſe unto himſelf by his (not to be parallelled) valour, and his reſolute perſeverance, a victorious advantage over the enemy. What never-dying high renown the Horſe of *Cæſar* got, I hold little inferiour to that of *Bucephalus*. *Dionyſius* the Tyrant of *Sicily*,

Sicily, in a great and well fought Battel, was himſelf ſo hard put to it, that he was conſtrained to forſake his Horſe, nevertheleſs the poor beaſt made his way through the throngs of the Enemy; who all bloody and miery as he was, gat him to a rendezvous at his Stable. *Centauretus* of *Galatia*, having in battel ſlain *Antiochus*, he in a bravado mounted his Horſe, who ſoon found by good experience, (albeit no whit to his advantage) that the ſaid Horſe retained a reſentment of the death of his ſlain Maſter: for the Horſe ſo ſoon as he felt this his new Lord upon his back, never gave over flinging, yarking, plunging and bounding, commanding the bit with his teeth, launching out ſometimes this way, ſometimes that way, with ſo great impetuoſity and fury, that at length he caſt his raſh Rider to the Earth, and then fell to him with his heels, redoubling his ſtrokes in ſo thick and violent a manner, not giving over till he had ſlain him outright, whereby he gave him little cauſe to triumph and glory in his temerarious attempt. We read of *Nicomedes*, King of *Bithynia*, whoſe Horſe ſo intirely loved him, as that his Maſter was no ſooner dead, but the Horſe preſently forſook his meat, and ſo continued, until ſuch time as he languiſhing for very grief, dyed of Famine. *Virgil* the Prince of Poets, maketh honourable mention of *Aethon*, the Horſe of *Pallas*, ſon of *Evander*, who ſaith that this *Aethon* being preſent at the funeral of his Maſter, wept for ſorrow, as theſe two verſes do inculcate:

After came Aethon, *bold in Fight, now weeping,*
And in his Tears his mournful Viſage ſteeping.

Silius Italicus in his ninth Book doth highly extol two horſes, to wit, *Pelorus*, and *Ciræus* ſpeaking of them in this manner.

Ready Pelorus *was to th' hand and rayn,*
Obedient ſtill, and of a generous ſtrayn:
Hearing his Maſters voice Ciræus *hies*
'Fore the beholders, and the wind out flies.

The tractableneſs and love that the Horſe beareth to man, have been the occaſion that ſundry great perſonages have reci-

procally anſwered it, by erecting of Statues, and by building of moſt famous Cities to their honour and memory. *Alexander*, before-mentioned, founded an opulent City in honour of *Bucephalus*, and gave it his name, and celebrated his exequies. The *Egyptians* erected moſt magnificent Pyramids, and ſumptuous Sepulchers to ſuch Horſes as had ſerved them well in their wars. *Octavius Cæſar*, and after him, *Adrian* the Emperour, interred their Horſes with great pomp and ſolemnities, and cauſed famous Epitaphs to be ingraven upon their monuments. The Emperour *Commodus* did the Like to his Horſe *Parſinus*, and commanded that he ſhould be buried in the *Vatican*. *Romulus* did inſtitute Playes and Games called *Equiria*, in honour of Horſes, and cauſed them to be preſented in the field of *Mars*. The *Æthiopians* did ſo highly eſteem of theſe noble creatures, as that they armed their Helmets with the skins of Horſes, ſuffering their ears to remain on, and they did wear their Tails upon their Creſts, like as now a-dayes men uſe their Plumes. Other Nations have done the like, who held Horſes in no little eſteem. We read of a *Roman* Emperour, who made his Horſe a Senator. The ancient Aſtrologers have likewiſe attributed ſo much to Horſes, that they have placed one winged amongſt the cœleſtial ſignes. The Poets hold that the Fountain (where the nine Muſes uſed to bathe themſelves, and to drink) ſprang up, by the blow of the foot which *Pegaſus* gave againſt the two-topt Hill, *Parnaſſus*. *Neptune*, God of the Sea, is ſirnamed *Hippius*; by reaſon that (as the Poets do fable) the firſt Horſe, that was ever ſeen, received his origin from him, or from a ſtone whereon *Neptune* had poured water. There remaineth much more to be ſaid in honour of the Horſe, than there hath been already delivered. Wherefore omitting further Encomiums and Attributes, I haſten to matters of greater conſequence. Sithence therefore the caſe ſo ſtandeth, that this dumb Creature is by Almighty God given unto man, as a Creature of ſo uſeful importance; what thankfulneſs then are we bound to give unto him for ſo great a Bleſſing and Benefit? And therefore what diligence is required of us; yea, and what carefulneſs ought we to uſe, in travelling to attain to this ſo neceſſary a Creature in the moſt exact manner we are able? Nor can this poſſibly be acquired to our true content, unleſs

unleſs we do apply our beſt endeavours herein; for the Antients have this Proverb, *All rare and excellent things are hard to compaſs.* And therefore we ought to apply all care and induſtry to attain unto good Horſes, which can never be ſo well done, as by *breeding* them; for they muſt be the Horſes that will be beſt able to ſerve us in thoſe offices whereunto we ſhall intend them, according as hereafter ſhall be moſt exactly illuſtrated.

CHAP. II.

Of the beſt manner of Breeding.

THere are ſo many diverſities of opinions, ſo mainly defended *pro & con*, that make men fearful to bring that to publick view, which long practice and experience hath brought them to know and underſtand to be moſt true and infallible: Nevertheleſs I preſuming, that the more judicious may peradventure favour my Reaſons and Grounds; allowing them at leaſt for probable and good, if they ſhall adventure to make trial, which if they be pleaſed ſo to do, I am confident they will both allow and approve of this my manner of *breeding*, above all other ways heretofore practiſed; who finding it to be much better, will never be brought from the ſame method: and therefore I would not have any man to condemn me before he ſhall firſt have made tryal.

My Counſel therefore is, that ſuch generous Spirits, unto whom Almighty God hath extended his benign hand, would take to their conſideration, how needful a thing it is for them to lay hold upon this ſo noble and profitable a bleſſing and benefit, by applying their beſt care and diligence to breed good, able and ſerviceable Horſes, which may be as eaſily performed, and in a manner with as little coſt, as in breeding Jades and Baffles, unuſeful and unprofitable. For by procuring a good and able Stud of choice Mares, and by endeavouring to get ſelect Stallions, which for mettle, ſpirit, ſhape, colour, marks, and the like, ſhall be known to be rightly bred, and truly generous, as well (I ſay) the Mares as the Stallions; and theſe,

young, handſome, of ſize indifferent, that is, neither too ſmall, nor too large, long legged, or under-bodied; but well knit, limb'd, and jointed; it will be beyond all peradventure, but that you ſhall have Horſes fit wherewith to ſerve your Country upon all occaſions, and your own turn, and your friends, and acquire to your ſelf no ſmall honour and commendations both from your Prince, and the Weal Publick. And this the better to be performed, you muſt underſtand that ſome things are neceſſary to be conſidered. Firſt, that your grounds be fit for *breeding*, and thoſe not to be ſuch as be low, wet, fenny, mooriſh, or mariſh; but they muſt be Paſtures upland, hilly, and in ſome places ſtony and rocky, for Grounds of this nature are very profitable for your Colts, to ſcope, run and play in; it helpeth their wind, it knitteth their joynts; and hardeneth and maketh tough their hooves: Some of your Grounds ought alſo not to be without Underwoods, Buſhes, Furſels, Broom, and the like; theſe will ſerve for ſhelter at what time the cold winds do blow; the reſidue of your Grounds ought to have Lawns and Plains, wherein ſhould be better graſs than the former; and in theſe Lawnes, is needful there ſhould be great Oakes, and ſuch like Timber-trees for them, whereby to ſhelter them from the ſcorching Sun in the extream heats, eſpecially during the time of the Canicular days; and theſe trees will alſo defend them from the buzzing & ſtinging Fly, which otherwiſe would greatly annoy and afflict them: You muſt alſo accommodate your Grounds with partitions convenient, as well for change, which ſometimes is moſt requiſite, as alſo whereby to ſegregate each ſort of Cattel by it ſelf; as your young and old, raſe or breeding Mares by themſelves, your weanlings by themſelves, your Fillies by themſelves, and your ſtoned Colts by themſelves, according as your beſt judgment ſhall dictate; otherwiſe your breed will be in confuſion and come to nothing, and ſo you may run the hazard to loſe both your coſt and pains. Places muſt be alſo made apart, wherein both your Mares with fole, and thoſe who have their Colts ſucking upon them, may run by themſelves with all quietneſs and retiredneſs; and every of theſe partitions muſt be ſo ſufficiently fenced, as that no one ſort of cattel can break into the other. And I do yet further adviſe, that theſe Grounds be well furniſhed with ſweet and whole-

wholeſome water, whereof ought not to be any want, either in Winter or Summer; for otherwiſe you may endanger the tainting and ſurfeting of them.

Furthermore, that certain Sheds and Hay-houſes be erected for them to be fed in, during the time of the Winter, when graſs is ſcanty, and not ſo much nouriſhing, and the cold Winds, Froſts, Rains, and Snows, may greatly pinch and annoy them: in which houſings, would be ſet up Racks and Mangers whereat to feed them; there would alſo be laid clean ſtraw for them to lye upon, which will very much comfort and keep them warm: But above all, the greateſt care muſt be had to the fences in general, whether wall (which is evermore the beſt) pale, quickſets, broad ditches, or high bankes, leſt they ſhould at any time break forth, and treſpaſs your neighbours to Baſtardize, and wrong your breed. And you ought alſo to inſtitute a truſty and diligent Bayliff or ſervant, whoſe only function ſhould be to make his fence-walk morning and evening, as duely as any well experienced Keeper or Wood-man doth his Pale-walk, to ſee that his fences be faſt, and his Cattel ſafe: and let him not fail every day, once at the leaſt, to take a true tale and inventory of every ſort of Cattel he hath in his ſeveral Grounds, for fear any ſhould be miſſing, or ſome misfortune befaln any of them; and if he ſhall find any wanting, let him not reſt ſearching, until he hath found it; and if it be in danger or ſick, let him not give over himſelf if he can, (otherwiſe let him haſte to call company and ſtrength enough) to free it out of harmes way.

Now as touching the grounds themſelves, as I would not have them too rich, or too rank and deep with graſs; ſo muſt they not be too barren, ſhort and moſſie; for as well in this ſubject, as in all other things, the golden mean is evermore to be preferred. Having thus provided your ſelf a Stud of the choiceſt and ableſt Mares, for age, colour, ſhape and marks, your Stallions alſo of like attributes, your care muſt be to ſee your Mares well covered, for in this chiefly conſiſteth the life and quinteſſence of your *breeding*. Be you therefore marvellous careful, that neither your Stallion nor Mare have any of theſe enſuing defects; *viz.* neither Moon-eyes, watry-eyes, or bloud-ſhotten-eyes, or other defect in their eyes or ſight, no taint

in

in their Wind by Glanders or otherwiſe, no way ſubject to Mainge, Mallender, Sellender, Splents, Spaven, Curb, Ringbone, Scratches, Kybed heels, or any other the like ſorances; that they be not Cock-thropled, but their Throples very looſe, for let either Stallion or Mare have any of theſe maladies, then be you well aſſured their Colts will take them as hereditary from their Parents: Inſomuch as when you eſteem your ſelf confident of ſuch young Horſes, you ſo much deſired to be maſter of, you will be miſtaken; for inſtead of a Stirrier or Horſe for manage, you have bred him fit for nought elſe but the plough; and in the place of a Hunter, he proves a Millhorſe; and in hope you had a Horſe for a Courſe, he proves for no better uſe but the Cart; and him you deſire to have for your own Pad-ſaddle, you will be conſtrained to ſell him to a Carrier, to bear a Pack-ſaddle with a burthen.

To come to intreat of the time moſt fitting for covering your Mares, let that be ſo done, that they may caſt their Foles in the dead of Winter; as either in *December* or *January*; for during their time of going with Fole, to wit, from the day of their Covering, unto that of their Foling, is commonly twelve moneths, and ten days; Yet ſome do aver, they do want eleven days of twelve moneths, of which computation there is juſt three weeks odds; Others again do affirm, that a Mare goeth but only eleven moneths and ten days, wherein is greater odds; but I have found it to be a moſt certain rule which never did fail me (unleſs in a young Mare upon her firſt Colt, who will want ſome few days of the ordinary account) and long and frequent experience hath made me to be very perfect, that a Mare goeth (unleſs ſome miſchance or other accident hath otherwiſe occaſioned) twelve moneths and ten days: For when at any time I have been preſent when a Mare hath been covered, I have in the very minute entred into my Almanack, the very day and hour in which ſhe took the Horſe; and becauſe I would not be deceived, I have been preſent at her foling, and I have found the time never to fail me. And therefore I could wiſh all *breeders* to obſerve with me the ſame courſe, and they ſhall find this account to fall out juſt as I have delivered. If your Mare be covered about S. *Lucies* day, which is the thirteenth of *December*, then will ſhe fole about S. *Thomas*

day

day, the same month in the year following: But before you suffer her to be covered, let neither the Stallion nor Mare be at grass, but taken into the house, six weeks or a moneth at the least; during which time, let them be both very well fed with good old Hay and Oats, well dusted and sifted, to the end they may have strength and seed to perform the office for which you have them. But if you will have your Mare certainly to conceive, take blood from both sides of her neck, and let her bleed at either vein well-nigh a quart; which must be done five or six days before she is to be covered; and the next day after bleeding, give her in a quart of new milk, half i i j. of *Artimisia, alias Mugwort*, chopped very small, a piece of sweet Butter, ℥ 2. of *London* Treacle warm; all these put upon the fire till the Butter and Treacle be dissolved, and give this to the Mare blood-warm in the morning fasting, and so the next morning again, and let her drink be white water. This drink is most soveraign to cause conception, it provoketh seed abundantly, it openeth the pores in the Body, and causeth the Mare to keep the seed she receiveth from the Stallion; moreover this drink comforteth the womb and matrix very much: so as it is great odds but that she being thus ordered, will be sped and conceive, unless she be a Mare of great sterility; which supposed, she is not to be kept for a race or breeding Mare.

Moreover, if you be desirous to have your Mare to conceive a Horse-colt, rather than a Filly; observe then this lesson I shall here give you, and you shall find it an infallible rule, which will never Miss, *viz.* At what time you would have your Mare to be covered, Let it be done when one of the first five masculine Signs do reign, which are either *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer* or *Leo*; but if she shall be covered when any of the Feminine or watry signs are predominant, as *Virgo*, *Libra*, *Scorpio*, *Sagittarius*, *Capricornus*, *Aquarius*, or *Pisces*; then be you confident it will be a Fill, for this have I often tryed, and found it seldom or never to fail me, especially if the Wind be either West or North (but West is best) at the time of her covering. And you will find this my rule to be most infallible, for experience hath taught it me: And *I have attained unto more knowledge by experience, than I was ever able to aspire unto, either by reading and study, or by hearing what others have dictated, taught,*

or told me: For we have a maxim, *Experience is the beſt and ableſt miſtreſs, and moderatrix.*

Now for the manner of the covering of your Mare, let her be brought into ſome place abroad, and there faſtned to ſome ſtrong poſt, then bring out to her ſome ſtoned Jade firſt to dally with her, and he will provoke her to an aptitude and deſire of coity, which done, let the Stallion be led forth towards her, betwixt two or more luſty ſtrong men who may be able to maſter him if he ſhould prove unruly, and let him leap her; and let this be done in a morning betimes faſting; which done, another man ſtanding by with a pail of cold water ready in his hand, in the very time when the Horſe is diſmounting, let him caſt the cold water upon her ſhape, which by reaſon of the coldneſs, the ſtrength of the caſter, and the ſuddenneſs thereof, will cauſe her to ſhrink in, and truſs up her body, and it will be the means to make her retain the ſeed in the matrix; otherwiſe the womb would not peradventure ſo ſoon encloſe it, but for ſome time after, howſoever the womb would draw together, but not ſo ſuddenly, whereby upon the Mares motion there might be ſome danger of diſſolving. Take then away the Stallion, and let the Mare be put into ſome remote place alone, from ſight and hearing of other Horſes and Mares; but let her neither eat nor drink in four hours after, neither let her have any water at all till night, and then give her either a ſweet maſh, or white water. After ſhe hath been thus Covered, you ſhall know whether or not ſhe hath either conceived, or loſt, or caſt her ſeed, by many evident ſymptoms which will appear to your eye; for if ſhe retain a good ſtomach to her meat, and ſo continueth, if ſhe do not neigh at hearing or ſight of other horſes, if ſhe do not piſs oft times in the day, caſteth not her eye about gazing continually at every noiſe ſhe heareth, pricketh not up her ears, and that in three or four days after her covering, her Belly ſeemeth to be more gant, her hair more ſlick and cloſe to her skin, ſhewing of a brighter colour, and ſhe ſeemeth to fall away and become lean: if (I ſay) any of theſe Symptoms do appear in her, then is it an evident ſign ſhe hath kept her ſeed and conceiveth, but if the contrary appear in her, then hath ſhe loſt it and ingendred not.

But as for offering her the Horſe again ten days after, together

ther with ſuch like circumſtances, I hold them impertinent for this place, being ſo frequently known and practiſed, and therefore my labour may well be ſpared. But for her keeping and ordering after her Covering, let her not drink that ſhe deſireth, but continue her with the ſame diet which formerly ſhe had before her covering for three weeks or a month after, leſt the ſeed might fortune to be impaired, before the Colt be ſufficiently formed in the womb; and let her be kept ſweet and clean as may be, and that without any labour or exerciſe during that three weeks or month: After which term you may, if you pleaſe, inure her to moderate labour, wherein have a ſpecial care of four things: Firſt, that ſhe be not at any time galloped, or run off from her wind: Secondly, that ſhe be not put to carry heavy burthens: Thirdly, that ſhe be neither laboured or travelled in extream heat: And laſtly, that her exerciſe be not ſuch which may provoke her to ſweat violently; for every of theſe things will cauſe her to miſcarry.

She being thus with fole; ſhe muſt be kept in the houſe until mid-*May* at leaſt, and then let firſt her ſhoes be taken off, her feet pared well, the fruſh and heels opened, and plates after the manner of running ſhoes (but not to come home to the heels) ſet on; let her run in the drieſt Ground you have, yet not ſo ſhort of graſs, but that ſhe may at her eaſe fill her belly at leaſt once a day; and about the latter end of *September*, (if not before) let her be very carefully taken into the houſe, but ſo quietly, that you ſhall not endanger the hurting of her belly, either by the ruſhing of other Horſes and Mares againſt her, or through her unruly leaping, or inconſiderate bruſhing againſt poſts, doors, or the like. Let her be kept thus in the houſe to the time of her foling, and let her diet be as before is preſcribed.

And when the time of her foling approacheth, let her keeper attend carefully upon her, putting her into a houſe convenient for her, unhaltred and untied, leſt in foling, the Colt receive damage, by reaſon that Mares do commonly caſt their ſoles ſtanding: Wherefore let not the room whereinto you put her, be too ſtreight, but very warm (for warmth is a great comfort as well to Mares with ſole, as in foling) and let good ſtore of ſtraw be layed, that the ſole may fall from the Mare the ſofter, and be in leſs danger of harm; and let her (I ſay) be watched

for fear the Fole come not right, and ſo ſoon as ſhe hath foled and licked it dry, let her keeper preſently milk and ſtroak her, and that before the Colt do ſuck her; which will both cauſe her to give down her milk, making the ſame to multiply, and alſo keep the Udder that the milk do not clod, which if it ſhould do, the Mare might happily in ſhort time become dry; whereof if there be any peril, I then adviſe you to draw as much milk from her as you can, and boil it with the leaves of Lavender, or Spike, and ſo bathe her Udder therewith warm, continuing ſo daily to do, until by this means you have broken the curd, knobs, and knots, cauſing them to be diſſolved. And as for the water which ſhe is to drink for ſome time after her foling, let it be either ſweet maſhes, or white water, and a month after her foling, give her a maſh, putting thereinto the powder of Brimſtone, or Savin, or the like, which will be a great preſervation of the Colt; and then if ſhe be moderately laboured either at Plough or Harrow, if ſhe will draw, as well the Mare as Colt will proſper the better; provided ſhe be kept from raw meat while ſhe remaineth in the Stable; by which means ſhe will the ſooner recover ſtrength, luſt and courage, and have ſtore of good milk, which will cauſe the Colt to thrive the better, and to grow to be of the greater bone, which above all things is a matter of greateſt conſequence. And that you ſuffer not the Colt to ſuck the Mare when ſhe cometh from work, until ſhe be throughly cold, leſt thereby you ſurfeit the Colt.

Thus much I have thought fit to handle of this ſubject; and albeit I have laboured herein to attain to brevity, nevertheleſs the premiſſes well conſidered, I ſhall not greatly offend in prolixity, howſoever this my manner of *breeding* being different from the old received Cuſtomes, will not (I do aſſure me) paſs void of cenſure. But as touching old cuſtomes, thus much I do aver, that as they are in many caſes of that force, as no law is able to abrogate; ſo on the contrary part, many of them are ſo abſurd and ridiculous, as nothing can be more; for what ſaith the Civil Law? *Thoſe things which by event or ſucceſs of time are found to be pernicious or hurtful, even thoſe things ought to be repealed, yea albeit they were at the firſt found profitable.* Which ground holdeth good in nothing ſo much as in old Cuſtomes, for of their abſurdities, I am able to produce inſtances

not

not a few; howſoever with many, *It is one of* Herculeſ *greateſt labours to beat many a man from his old Cuſtomes be they never ſo bad*; albeit *Cuſtom is a meer Tyrant, and his ſoveraignty moſt inſufferable*, as a grave Author very well obſerveth.

CHAP. III.

How to make and order your Stable.

HAving thus waded into this myſtery of *Breeding*, I hold it a thing very behoveful to be handled, how your ſtable ought to be accommodated. Firſt therefore your ſtable ſhould be ſituate where the air is wholſom, pure and good, and the ground dry: the ſtructure would be either of Free-Stone or Brick, but Brick is beſt, moſt wholſom and warmeſt; Beſides this benefit brick hath, which ſtone hath not, of being very dry, for Stone will weep, and ſweat drops of water againſt rain and miſty weather, which begetteth damps, and cauſeth Rheumes in Horſes. Your ſtable ought not to have any unſavoury Gutter, Channel, or Sink near to it, no Jakes, Hogſties, or Henrouſt, whereby to annoy it. It would be alſo cieled over head, and have ſtrong dores, with locks, bolts, and bars unto it. The Rack would not be made too high or too low, but placed in an indifferent proportion, and ſo artificially ſet, that neither the duſt or the hay-ſeeds may fall into his Mane, or upon his neck and face. The Manger would be ſet at an indifferent height, made deep, and of one intire piece, as well for ſtrength as for conveniency to be kept ſweet and clean. Let the flore be pitched with flint, and not planked. The windows would be made with handſom ſhuts and caſement, and well glazed, as well to keep out cold and wind, as alſo (when there may be cauſe) to let in the cool and freſh air. Again, take heed there be no lome wall or plaiſter ſo near as that the Horſe may reach thereto with his mouth: for upon that he will gnaw, which may do him much prejudice, and be the cauſe of much dangerous ſickneſs; for Lome and Lime are ſuffocating things, they will infect and putrifie the blood, endanger the Lungs, and be no friend to his wind: neither ſuffer any dung to lie near him.

him. Furthermore there would be made a fair Loft, wherein to lay hay, and convenient lodging chambers for your Grooms, whoſe nearneſs, together with their care and vigilancy might prevent many dangers and inconveniences which may accrue unto your Horſes by night. Alſo let a neat Saddle-houſe be contrived with Rings for Provender, and in it Preſſes, wherein to lay up the Saddles, Bridles, and all other furniture appertaining to Horſes, and an *Aquæduct* wherewith to bring water to the Stable. And laſtly, other Stalls would be erected remote, wherein upon occaſion to ſerve the ſick from the ſound. Many other accoutrements there are belonging to a perfect Stable, as partitions with boards, poſts, and bars, with pins driven into every poſt, whereon to hang Bridles and the like; ſhelves alſo faſtned to the wall ſerving for many uſes, to place neceſſaries upon, &c. which being known to all men, will be needleſs for me here to repeat.

But you may peradventure ſtartle at paving, rather than planking your flore, preferring planks as warmer, and much better than flint or a pitched flore can be; as alſo for that it is a new thing, little practiſed, and ſeldom heard.

But give me leave (I pray) a little to inform your underſtanding in this one point, by which means your judgement may fortune to be much bettered. Firſt therefore whereas novelty may be objected, I ſhall moſt eaſily aſſoyl that point, even from the ſelf-ſame ground in the civil Law, which I inſerted in the concluſion of the precedent Chapter, *viz.* That things found to be prejudicial ought to be inhibited, although they might be thought needful, and good in foreknown times. For that paving of ſtables is better than planking them; I have reaſons not a few wherewith to ſatisfie a reaſonable man. Firſt, it is much more durable and laſting, ſuppoſing the flore to be pitched by an expert workman: Secondly, it leſs charges by much, and therefore in that point better: Thirdly, for a Horſe to ſtand continually upon a pitched flore, it emboldneth his feet and treading the more; Fourthly, it is the moſt excellent thing that may be for Colts, who are unſhod; for it hardneth their hoofs, ſo as by cuſtom they will be as bold to go upon ſtones, rocky, and hard ways, as Horſes that are ſhod: neither will a pitched flore ſuffer the hoof to go abroad in manner of an Oyſter:

Paving of a ſtable much better than planking.

1.
2.
3.
4.

ſter: beſides the uſe thereof will make their hoofs more tough, durable and hollow, inſomuch as when they ſhall come to be ſhod, and to have exerciſe, they will carry their ſhoes much longer, better, and with more eaſe than otherwiſe, if they had been uſed to a planked flore.

The inconveniences of a Planked flore.

Now on the contrary part, which concerneth the planked flore, that (I ſay) cannot in reaſon be ſo good by many degrees. Firſt, it is more ſlippery, out of which reaſon a mettled horſe may ſoon be in danger to be lamed or ſpoiled, by ſome ſudden ſlip, whereof I have had often experience, which a pitched ſtable is not ſo ſubject unto. 1. Secondly, the planks oftentimes ſhrinking, the Horſe (eſpecially if he be a ſtirrier who is accuſtomed to curvet in the ſtable) may eaſily break a plank, and his foot getting into a hole, or between the planks, the Horſe plunging and ſtriving, may eaſily break his leg before he ſhall be able to get it forth, whereof I have more than once been *oculatus teſtis*: 2. Thirdly, when you put forth your Horſes to run at graſs, all or the moſt part of Summer, during which time the ſcorching heats will ſo exiccate and dry the planks, which will cauſe them to warp, and the pins which hold them down to the joyſts will rot; and ſo the planks give way, eſpecially when horſes (who not being handled in ſome moneths before) becoming wild, rammage and unruly, are newly brought into the ſtable, who feeling the planks to move, yield and give way under them, will fall from ſtarting thereat, to flinging, leaping, bounding and plunging, till they have diſlocated the planks, and thereby have endangered both themſelves, the reſidue of their Fellows, and thoſe who might come to their help and ſuccour, which is a thing very frequent in a flore of this nature: 3. Fourthly, whereas you may imagine that a planked flore is warmer than a paved or pitched, I do know the contrary; for your pitched flore hath no vaults, or channels under them, like as hath your planked, wherewith to convey the water which paſſeth from the Horſes: by which means the horſe lyeth over a moiſt and dampiſh place and vault; and beſides that, the evil ſavour of the Horſe-piſs will be evermore in their noſe, which is moſt unwholſome, noyſome, and many times the cauſe of much infirmity; neither can it in reaſon be ſo warm as is the pitched flore, for that the chinks and awger-holes bored through the 4.

planks

planks (which muſt always be kept open to let forth the Urin) do give way to the cold wind, which continually aſcendeth up to the horſe, as well lying as ſtanding, and cannot but do him much damage. I do therefore affirm, that if your Groom have a care to litter his horſe well, ſo as he may lye ſoft and warm, (which is a prime property appertaining to his office) your horſe will then proſper, and like much better upon a pitched flore than he can upon a planked; provided your flore be laid even, not higher before than behind, more than ſo much that may make the water to avoid his hinder feet, where there ought to be a ſmall gutter to cauſe it to paſs away; for in raiſing your flore ſo much, I do abſtract from the ancient ill cuſtom, by reaſon that a horſe ſtandeth higher before than he doth behind, his hinder legs will ſwell, and ſo he becometh lame; beſides, it giveth him a taint in the back and kidneys; and to conclude, his long ſtanding in this uneaſie manner begetteth in the poor beaſt much pain and grief, and this occaſioneth unto him (which would not otherwiſe be) the putting forth of Wind-gals, Pains, Scratches, and ſuch like noyſom ſorances.

Of the time of Foling.

Another thing may peradventure be thought ſtrange, which I have handled in the former Chapter, where I intreat of *breeding*; in that I would have the time of the Mares foling to be either in *December* or *January*, this being in the very depth of Winter, as well when the ſeaſon is commonly coldeſt, and when little or no graſs is to be had, ſo as of neceſſity the Mare muſt be houſed, and fed with hard meat, whereby her milk will be in ſo ſmall a proportion, as either to endanger the ſtarving of the Colt, or elſe at leaſtwiſe keep him ſo poor and feeble, as not to be able to grow, thrive or proſper to any purpoſe. To ſatisfie this ſcruple, I ſay from long experience, that the Winter ſeaſon for a Mare to fole in, beyond all peradventure, is the very beſt, as well for the Mare as the Colt, ſuppoſing ſhe be kept in a warm houſe; and as for her milk, ſhe will have great plenty, and that much better and more nouriſhing than that milk which the Colt ſhall ſuck from his Dam at graſs; ſo as thereby the Colt ſhall be more luſty, ſtrong, healthy, the greater of bone and ſtature, better able to endure hardineſs, better knit, cleaner limbed, more neatly joynted and hoofed, and keep his fleſh better than that Colt that is foled

The Colt better nouriſhed in the ſtable, than at graſs in Winter.

in

in *May*; *June*, or any of the hotter months: and my reaſon is, that albeit graſs cauſeth greater plenitude of milk, (which I deny not) yet is not the ſame ſo good and nouriſhing: for the milk which the Colt ſucketh at graſs, is very thin and watry; and albeit winter food begetteth not ſo great a quantity of milk, yet the ſame will be thicker, more ſubſtantial and of greater nutriment, (the Mare being very well fed) which will feed the Colt very fat, and make him more luſty and ſtrong, (as I have ſaid) than if the Mare the whole Summer and Winter through, and in all the extremity of heats and colds had been kept abroad. Moreover, the Colt, beſides the milk he draweth from the Mare, will alſo feed with her upon Hay, Oats, Bran, and ſuch like food, which will do him much pleaſure: But ſome again will ſay, that their teeth are ſo tender; as that they will not be able to chew and eat ſuch kind of hard meats; I anſwer, they are very much miſtaken, for, not only my ſelf alone, but ſundry others have with me been eye-witneſſes of the contrary; therefore this needs no further ſolution. And whereas it hath been objected unto me, that that Colt which is foled in *May*, or *Solſtice*, in that ſeaſon, the Mare will have ſtore of milk, thus much I do ingenuouſly confeſs, but then what manner of milk will it be? None other than ſuch as ſhall be marvellous thin and watriſh (as I ſaid before) which abundance will alſo fail, even when the Colt hath moſt need thereof, that is, when the Colt beginneth to come up to ſome ſtrength, and at what time he ſhould receive moſt nutriment; to wit, when the winter cometh on, whoſe Snows, Froſts, cold rains, and Flouds will not a little nip and pinch the Colt, and enfeeble the Mare in ſuch terrible and deſperate manner, that ſhe will want her former plenty of food, warm and dry lodging, and other neceſſary relief and ſuſtentation, and ſo in like manner, her abundance of milk, at what time her poor Colt ſhould depend upon the enfeebled Mare, who is not able to ſupply its own need: by means whereof it muſt neceſſarily fall out, that ſhe muſt bring both her ſelf and her Colt to extream poverty, not being able to ſuſtain her own life, much leſs her Colts and her own, and ſo become feeble before winter be half ſpent; and over and above all this, the Colt will by his running abroad with the Mare become ſo ſavage and wild, as that

if any infirmity ſhould happen to ſieze upon it, its own unrulineſs will be ſo great, that the Cure may thereby become the more difficile: for to ſpeak truly, infinite have been, and daily are the numbers of Colts; yea, and thoſe many times rightly bred, which have miſcarried and periſhed in this nature.

I do therefore conclude, and as a friend to my Country aver, that the beſt way to breed up the ableſt and moſt ſerviceable Horſes, is (as I have before inculcated) after this method, and none other; and therefore I am bold to adviſe all Noble Gentlemen, who are lovers of good Horſes, and of this Myſtery to make trial, and to put theſe my Rudiments in execution, and they will never (I do well aſſure me) hereafter either alter or ſwerve from them; for of this kind of *breeding* I have had more than forty years good experience; during which time, I intimated theſe my grounds to a Knight, an intimate friend of mine, who was a great lover of good Horſes, and as great a Breeder, as a lover of them, and very well verſed in Horſe-manſhip, who hearing my reaſons, and throughly digeſting them, approved of them ſo well, as that he fell to follow theſe my inſtructions, and eſteeming them ſufficient, would never be brought from them after; he affirming, no way comparable to this: for he found by plain demonſtration, that whereas in former times in breeding (as commonly he did) ten or twelve Colts yearly, when they came to Backing, Riding and proof of thoſe ten or twelve, he thought himſelf well appayed, and his labour and coſt well beſtowed, if two or three at the moſt proved right, and to his mind, whereas ever after, in ten Colts thus bred and reared up, hardly any one miſſed, which proved not right and to his good liking: and this manner of *breeding*, made him more in love with this myſtery than ever before, reaſon dictating it ſo well unto him. For, moſt certain it is, when the Stallion and Mare are both right, and have all their true Attributes, and the time, ſeaſon, and manner of *breeding*, with all circumſtances thereunto belonging, punctually and in every point duely obſerved; it will be a hard matter for the Colt to prove ill: but if otherwiſe, then marvel not if the Colt anſwer not your expectation, according to the Greek Adage, which ſaith: κακὸς κόρακος κακὸν ᾠόν, *Jade Sire, Jade Colt.* Wherefore if upon trial it ſhall appear to you, that you

you have hitherto been to seek of the true grounds, and of the original causes why you have not bred so many good Horses as you have desired, do not then wonder that *The cause of your errour, and of so great a mischief hath stolen upon and deceived you*: for the great decay of good Horses, together with those infinite errours in *breeding*, and Horse-man-ship; that increase that, is, being so vile a manner of base Jades have so swarmed in this kingdom, as that (a lamentable case to be related) of one rightly bred, we now adays have a thousand Jades; to the great dishonour, disprofit, and weakning both of King and Countrey. And what is the reason? I shall in a word tell you: *It is impossible for a man to bring his work to its wished perfection, who never knew the true grounds of his principles.*

CHAP. IV.

Of the Marks, Colours, and Shapes of Horses.

THE next thing befitting our subject, is to speak (albeit briefly) of the Colours, Marks, and perfect shapes of Horses: Wherein I will first deliver other mens opinions, and lastly mine own. Some there be who hold that Colours, Marks and shapes are little material to make up a perfect Horse, which I will not contradict, for my meaning is not to traduce or controul any man: but this I will say, that if a good horse have these properties adherent to his goodness, then is he questionless in much better esteem; for if beauty be added to his other inward vertues, then is he (like to the Nightingale in the beginning of *April*, heard, and hearkened unto) more praiseworthy, and better prized. For a Horse if he be good and serviceable, well mettled, bold and hardy, of a gentle condition, of a round and comely trot and pace, lightly and well born, obedient mouthed, sure on foot, tough, strong and easie; will (I say) not such a Horse be well esteemed? But if together with these good properties, there shall be added, good colour, true marks, and perfect shape, which causeth him to appear most beautiful to all beholders: will not these endow-

ments ſet him the better forth, and cauſe him to be the better eſteemed, of every man deſired, and much more money offered for him? nay, ſhall not you (whoſe the Horſe is) be come unto, be ſued unto, have letters ſent you from ſundry friends, and will not your ſelf prize him at a higher rate than otherwiſe you would have done? yes aſſuredly; and hereof I make no queſtion. True it is, and I muſt confeſs no leſs, that a Horſe may be very good, and perform his function very well, who hath neither good colour, true marks or perfect ſhape; nevertheleſs, theſe extrinſecal vertues are more frequently to be found, and better obſerved to be in good Horſes, in whom are colour, marks and ſhape, than in horſes which are otherwiſe. Wherefore becauſe theſe things are termed exteriour vertues, and therefore take their object from the eye only, I will conjoyn them altogether in this my diſcourſe, and ſhew you what hath been, and is the opinion of both antient and modern Writers. *Virgil* in his Georgicks, handling moſt accurately ſundry points of Husbandry, among other things in his third book of Georgicks, deſcribeth the Horſe, as well his breeding, and his ſeveral ſorts of employments, as his colour, ſhape and marks; yea, and that in moſt exquiſite manner: and thus he beginneth:

Let the Males go
Without reſtraint to Venery, and ſo
By timely breeds preſerve a perfect kind.
Their firſt age beſt all wretched mortals find,
After diſeaſes and old age do come,
Labour, and death's inexorable doom.
There ſtill will be, whoſe bodies with thy will
Thou would'ſt wiſh chang'd. Therefore repair them ſtill;
And leſt thy kind quite loſt thou find too late,
Prevent the loſs and yearly propagate.
And ſuch a choice you muſt in Horſes make,
By him, whom you for Stallion mean to take,
As hope of all the race, elect with care,
Even from a tender Fole ſuch Colts as are
Of generous race, ſtreight when at firſt they're ſol'd,
Walk proudly, their ſoft joynts ſcarce knit, and bold,

Dare

Dare lead the way, into the Rivers enter,
And dare themſelves on unknown ſeas to venture.
Nor frighted with vain noiſes, lofty neck'd,
Short headed, ſlender belly'd, and broad back'd;
Broad and full breſted: let his colour be
Brown-bay, or gray, white proves not commonly,
Nor fleſh colour, when wars alarums ſound;
His noſtrils gather, and breathe fire, no ground
Can hold his ſhaking joints, his fear advances,
His thick curl'd Main on his right ſhoulder dances.
His back bone broad and ſtrong, the hollow ground
Trampled beneath his hard round hoof doth ſound.
Such was that horſe, which Spartan Pollux *tam'd,*
Fierce Cyllarus; *and* Mars *his Horſes fam'd*
By th'old Greek Poets, or thoſe two that drew
Achilles *Chariot: ſuch a ſhape and hew*
At his wives coming, flying Saturn *took,*
And all high Pelion *with ſhrill neighings ſhook.*
Yet when diſeaſe or age have brought to nought
This horſes ſpirit, let him at home be wrought.
Nor ſpare his baſe old age. A Horſe grown old,
Though he in vain attempt it oft, is cold
To Venery, and when he's brought to try
(Like that great ſtrengthleſs fire in ſtubble dry)
In vain he rages; therefore firſt 'tis good,
To mark his age, his courage and his brood,
With other arts, how ſad a Horſe will be
When overcome, how proud of victory.
Doſt thou not ſee when through the field in ſpeed,
Two racing Chariots from the Liſts are fled,
The young mens hearts all riſe, as forth they ſtart,
And fear with joy confounded, ſtrikes each heart?
They give their Horſe the reins, and laſh them on
Their hurried wheels enflaming, as they run;
Now lo they go, now riſe as they would flie
Through th' empty air, and mount up to the ſky:
No reſting, no delay, a ſandy Cloud
Darkens the air; they on through ſhoutings loud

Of

Of ſtanders by, all ſweat, and fom'd do fly :
So great's their love of praiſe and victory.
Firſt Eric*th*onius *Chariots did invent,*
And by four Horſes drawn in triumph went.
The Peletronian Lapithes *firſt found*
The uſe of backing Horſes, taught them bound,
And run the Ring ; taught Riders t' exerciſe
In Martial ranks both equal Myſteries :
The Maſters of both theſe equal need
To find out Horſe of courage, and good ſpeed,
Though ne'r ſo nobly born, though oft in game
They won the prize, and for their Countrey claim
Epire, *or fam'd* Mycenæ, *or elſe took*
Their birth at firſt from Neptune's *trident ſtroke.*
Theſe things obſerv'd at Covering time, they care
To make their Stallion ſtrongly fat and fair
The father of their brood ; for him they mow
Choice graſs, ſweet ſtreams, and corn to him allow ;
Leſt he ſhould fail his pleaſant work to do,
And th' young ones ſtarvelings from his hunger grow.
But they of purpoſe keep the females light
And lean ; and when they have an appetite
To Venery, let them not drink nor eat,
And courſe them oft, and tie them in the heat,
When in full Barns the ripe corn crowded lies,
As empty chaffe before the weſt winds flies.
And this they do, leſt too much rankneſs make
The breeding ſoil, and fatted furrows take
Too dull a ſenſe ; but that they ſhould draw in
Seed with deſire, and lodge it ſafe within.
But if thy mind thou more to War do give,
Or through Jove's *wood, would'ſt racing Chariots drive,*
And ſwiftly paſs by Piſa's *River ſide :*
Thy firſt task is to make thy Horſe abide
To ſee the ſouldiers arms, hear their loud voices,
The trumpets ſound, and rattling Chariots noiſes :
And oft within the ſtable let him hear
The claſhing whip, he'l more and more appear

To

To be delighted with his maſters praiſe,
And when he ſtrokes his neck, his courage raiſe.
When firſt he's wean'd from ſucking, let him hear
Theſe things, and trembling be compell'd to wear
Soft Halters oft about his head; but when
His life hath ſeen four Summers, teach him then
To run the Ring, in order high to beat
The ground, and both waies skilfully curveat
As if he toyi'd; then let him with his ſpeed
Challenge the wind, and from all curbing freed,
Scowre o're the champion fields ſo ſwift, that there
The ſands no print of his light-foot do bear.
So when the Scythians *guſts, and North-weſt wind*
From their cold quarter fiercely blow, and bind
The dry clouds up: all o're the waving field
Corn bows with equal blaſts; woods tops do yield
A *murmuring noiſe, long waves roul on the ſhore,*
Forth flies the wind, ſweeps lands and waters o're;
Thy Horſe thus ordred to the races end
All bloudy fom'd, victoriouſly will tend:
Or elſe his tamed neck will better bow
To draw the Belgian *Chariot; let him grow*
Full fed, when he is broken well, nor fear
His growth; ſo fed before he's broke, he'l bear
Too great a ſtomack patiently to feel
The laſhing whip, or chew the curbing ſteel.
But no one care doth more their ſtrength improve,
Then ſtill to keep them from Venerial love. &c.
See how the Horſes joints all tremble, when
A Mare's known ſcent he through the Air doth feel;
No ſtripes, no ſtrength of men, no bit of ſteel,
No Rocks, nor Dikes, or Rivers in his way,
Which roul whole Mountains, can his fury ſtay. &c.
But ſtrangeſt far
Is thoſe Mare's furious love, which Venus *ſent,*
When they their Maſter Glaucus *peace-meal rent.*
Love makes them mount o're lofty Gargarus
And ſwim the ſtream of ſwift Aſcanius,

And

And when Lov's flame their greedy marrow burns,
Moſt in the Spring, (for heat then moſt returns
To th' bones) upon high rocks they take their places,
And to the weſtern wind all turn their faces,
Suck in the blaſt, and (wonders to be ſaid)
Grow great with ſole without the horſes aid.
Then o're the Rocks and Valleys all they run,
Not to the North, nor to the riſing Sun,
Nor Caurus *quarter, nor the South whence riſe*
Black ſtowers, which darken and diſturb the skies.
Hence flows thick poyſon from the groyns of theſe,
Which ſhepherds truly call Hippomanes;
Hippomanes, *which oft bad Step-dames uſe,*
And charming herbs, and baneful words infuſe.
But time irreparable flies away. &c.

Du-Bartas that famous *French* Poet, doth likewiſe in his Treatiſe of the Handy-crafts, excellently deſcribe the colour, ſhape, and properties of a good Horſe, in the fourth part of the *firſt day of the ſecond week*, which beginneth thus:

Cain *as they ſay with his deep fear diſturbed,*
Then firſt of all th' undaunted Courſer curbed;
That whilſt about anothers feet he run,
With luſty ſpeed he might his deaths man ſhun.
Among a hundred brave, light, luſty Horſes,
(With curious eye marking their curious forces)
He chooſeth one for his induſtrious proof,
With round, high, hollow, ſmooth, brown, jetty hoof,
With paſterns ſhort, upright, (but yet in mean)
Dry ſinewy ſhanks, ſtrong, fleſhleſs knees, and leam.
With Hart-like legs, broad breaſt, and large behind,
With body large, ſmooth flanks, and double chin'd:
A creſted neck, bow'd like a half bent bow,
Whereon a long thin curled mane doth flow:
A firm full tail touching the lowly ground,
With dock between two fair fat buttocks round.
A pricked ear that reſts as little ſpace
As his light foot; a lean, bare bonny face,

Thin

Thin jowl, his head yet of a middle ſize,
Full lively flaming, ſprightly rouling eyes:
Great foming mouth, hot fuming noſtrils wide,
Of cheſnut hair, his forehead ſtarriſi'd:
Two milky feet, a feather on his breaſt,
Whom ſeven years old at the next graſs he gueſt.
This comely Jennet, gently firſt he wins,
And then to back him actively begins;
Stedy and ſtreight he ſits, turning his ſight
Still 'twixt the ears of his Palfrey light.
The chafed Horſe, ſuch thrall ill ſuffering,
Begins to ſnuffe, to ſnort, to leap, to fling;
And flying ſwift his fearful Rider makes,
Like ſome unskilful Lad that undertakes
To hold ſome Ships Helm, whilſt the headlong tide
Carries away its veſſel, and her guide;
Who near to drowned in the jaws of death,
Pale, fearful, ſhivering faint, and out of breath,
A thouſand times (to heaven erected eyes)
Repents him of ſo bold an enterprize:
But ſitting faſt, leſs hurt than fear'd, Cain
Boldens himſelf, and his brave Horſe again
Brings him to pace, from pacing to his trot,
From trot to gallop, after runs him out
In full career, and at his courage ſmiles,
In ſitting ſtill, he runs ſo many miles.
His pace is fair, and free, his trot is light
As Tigers courſe, or Swallows nimble flight:
And his brave gallop ſeems as ſwift to go,
As Biſcain *Dart, or ſhafts from* Ruſſian *Bow.*
But roaring Canon from his ſmoaking throat,
Never more ſpeedy ſpews the thundering ſhot,
(That in an army mows whole ſquadrons down,
And batters Bulwarks of a ſummon'd town)
Than this light Horſe ſends, if he do but feel
His Bridle ſlack, and in his ſide the heel:
Shunning himſelf, his ſinewy ſtrength he ſtretcheth,
Flying the earth, and flying air he catcheth:

Born whirl-wind like, he makes the trampling ground
Shrink under him, and ſhake with doubling ſound.
And when the ſight no more purſue he may,
In fieldy clouds he vaniſheth away.
The wiſe wax't Rider not eſteeming beſt,
To take too much now of his luſty beaſt,
Reſtrains his fury, then with learned wand,
The triple-corvet makes him underſtand:
With skilful voyce he gently chears his pride,
And on his neck his flattering palm doth glide:
He ſtops him ſteady ſtill, new breath to take,
And in the ſame path brings him ſoftly back:
But th' angry Steed, riſing and rearing proudly,
Striking the ſtones ſtamping, and neighing loudly;
Calls for the Combate, plunges, leaps and prances,
Befomes the path, with ſparkling eyes he glances:
Champs on his burniſht Bit, and glorioufly
His nimble fetlocks lifteth belly-high:
All ſide-long jaunts, on either ſide he juſtles,
And's waving Creſt couragiouſly he briſtles;
Making the gazers glad on every ſide
To give more room unto his portly pride.
Cain *gently ſtrokes him, and now ſure in ſeat,*
Ambitiouſly ſeeks ſtill ſome freſher feat;
To be more famous, one while trots the Ring,
Another while he doth him backward bring:
Then of all fear he makes him lightly bound,
And to each hand to menage rightly round:
To ſtop, to turn, to caper, and to ſwim,
To dance, to leap, to hold up any lim:
And all ſo done, with time, grace or dred skill,
As both had but one body and one will:
Th'one for his part no little glory gains,
Th'other through practice by degrees attaines
Grace in his Gallop, in his pace agility,
Lightneſs of head, and in his ſtop facility:
Strengh in his leap, and ſtedfaſt menagings,
Aptneſs in all, and in his courſe new wings. &c.

A famous Ferrier of *Paris* delivereth theſe colours of a good Horſe, which becauſe they are in *French* verſe, I have Engliſhed them *verbatim* thus:

If you deſire a Horſe thee long to ſerve,
Take a brown-bay, and him with care preſerve:
The gray's not ill, but he is prized far
That is cole-black, and blazed with a ſtar:
If for thy ſelf, or friend, thou wilt procure
A Horſe, let him white-Lyard be, he'l long endure.

Of the colours of a Horſe.

And the ſame *French man* ſheweth, what be alſo the properties and marks which a good Horſe ought to have; whereof three are to be of an Oxe, three of a Fox, three of a Hart, and three of a Woman. Thoſe three of an Oxe, are to have a fair and full eye, a large neck, and to be ſtrong and ſhort jointed. Thoſe three of a Fox, are, to have a comely and ſhort trot, ſmall and long ears, and a buſhy tail. Thoſe three of a Hart are to have lean and dry legs, to be well riſen before and a lean head. Thoſe three of a Woman, are to be large and fair breaſted, to have a beautiful and full hair, and gentle to his Rider and Keeper.

The ſame Author delivereth yet further what ought to be the colour and ſhape of a good Horſe. Thoſe Horſes (ſaith he) that are of a cheſt-nut colour, with Mane and Tail black, are commonly good. The Sorrel if his Mane, Tail, Knees, Fetlocks, and liſt along their back be black, are for the moſt part good, if they be otherwiſe free from evil conditions; as not at any time to lie down in the water, reſtiffe, and ſuch like bad qualities. The Brown-bay, Dun, Dapple-grey, Iron-grey, if their extremities be black, are many times very good, if they be well choſen. All Horſes (ſaith he) muſt have good Legs, good Feet, and their Fetlocks muſt not be overcharged with hair; they muſt have alſo good eyes, obedient mouthed, and well mettled: they muſt not have fat or fleſhy legs, but to have a great belly, well riſen before, ſtreight backt, not charged with over great ſhoulders, he muſt have a thin bended neck like a Carps back, a good Crouper, large thighes, round well ſpread Buttocks, and a train well ſet on, a lean, dry, and thin Head, a full

Of the ſhape of a Horſe.

ſparkling Eye, a wide Noſtril, a wide, thin and lean Jaw, a looſe Throple, a well-truſſed together Body, and Legs not too long; being thus accoutred and ſhaped, it is very probable he will be very ſerviceable. He alſo ſheweth ſigns whereby to know the good or evil ſight of a Horſe. Every Horſe (ſaith he) hath a feather in his Face betwixt his eyes: if the ſaid feather be high above the eyes, then hath he aſſuredly a good and perfect ſight; but if the feather be below his eyes, the Horſe then hath oft-times a bad ſight: Obſerve this rule well, and you ſhall find it to be a thing moſt certain. He alſo giveth other marks touching the Legs of a horſe: which briefly are, that a horſe muſt have his fore-legs above the knees, to be ſtrong, flat and large, albeit the lower part of the legs be ſmall; provided he have a good foot, which ſuppoſing, he may prove a horſe of long continuance. Another Author ſpeaking of the colours of Horſes, doth denominate them after this manner, *viz.* A Brown-Bay, a Black Roan, or Black full of ſilver hairs, Cole-Black, Cheſt-nut, Dark Bay, Fly-bitten, or White-Lyard The Brown-Bay is ſo highly eſteemed with all Nations, as that they do with one aſſent always rank him in the very firſt place of colours: the *Italians* and *French* do ſo much prize the Brown-Bay, as that they evermore call that colour *Bayard Loyal*, the Loyal Bayard, or more properly, according to our *Engliſh* phraſe, truſty Bayard. The *French*, *Italians* and *Germans* do very far commend and prefer three ſorts of Colours in Horſes; to wit, the Brown-Bay, the Cheſt-nut, and the Cole-Black; but they do evermore prefer the Brown-Bay to the firſt place. Maſter *Blundeville*, and Maſter *Markham* do both accord in the choice of the Colours of the Horſe, and they never do fail in preferring the Brown-Bay to the firſt place.

How to know the good ſight from the bad of a Horſe.

Which be the beſt colours of a Horſe.

What ſhall I need ſpeak any more of Colours? I will now proceed to their Marks, wherein, albeit in moſt things all in a manner do agree; yet only in ſome few points there is ſome ſmall difference. All generally aſſent in the white Star, and white foot, if the blaze be not too broad, or the foot too high white about the Paſtern, for then it is called hoſed, or buskened: Some commend the ſhim, or raſe down the face, if it be not much broader than a three-peny ſilk Ribbon, but then it

Of the marks of a Horſe.

it muſt come to end juſt between the Noſtrils, and not to be more on the one ſide of the face, than on the other. This indeed is of all true Horſe-men eſteemed a moſt beautiful good Mark, and well becometh a good Horſe. Some would have the foot being white, to be on the far foot behind, and ſome again on the near foot before: I have heard ſome highly commend the Horſe to have two white feet a croſs, to wit, the far foot behind, and the near foot before, like as had a Horſe of the old Lord *Sandes*, being a Courſer, which he brought out of *Italy*, with ſo much charge, labour and peril of his life, (as his Lordſhip did ſundry times report unto me,) which was as a dark bay, and his two feet a-croſſe white; howſoever I have known ſome Horſe-men diſlike of the ſame Marks, yet I could never hear the reaſons of their diſlike. A Knight of my acquaintance would highly commend the Horſe, who had a white foot, which was beſpeckled with black motly ſpots; affirming that a Horſe ſo marked did betoken good mettle, great valour, and an heroick ſpirit; for he would always call ſuch a Horſe *Equus generoſus*, a Horſe of a brave ſpirit; and this he would report was taught him by old Sir *Henry Lea*, that famous Horſe-man, and no leſs excellent Breeder, of whom this Knight bought many delicate Colts, ſome of which were thus marked. All good Horſe-men do atteſt, that the Horſe with much white upon his face, raw noſed, ſheath, yard, tuel, and hoofs white, skin white, and legs hoſed, and wall-eyed, is generally weak, faint, of a cowardly condition, tender, and waſhy of fleſh, ſubject to rebellion, reſtiffneſs, to ſtarting, ſtumbling, evil ſighted, ſubject to tire, dangerous to his Keeper, for biting and ſtriking; and in a word, of a moſt baſe and evil condition. For *the countenance is the true Index of the mind*: And *a lewd look prognoſticateth a lewd condition*: And again *a deformed countenance doth delineate a wicked deformed diſpoſition and manners.* It is holden for a good mark in a Horſe to have many Feathers about his body, as upon his forehead, ſo it be ſituated above the eyes; and the higher it ſtands, the better: Alſo upon the middle of the Neck near to the Creſt, under the Neck in the middle of the Throple, upon the breaſt, and upon both the Flanks, and upon both buttocks, which for Horſes to have Feathers in theſe and ſuch like places, is moſt commendable.

Feathers holden to be a good mark in a Horſe.

Now

Now as touching the perfect and true ſhape of a Horſe, wherein we have more contrariety of opinions, than are either in the Colour or Marks, whereof I have given you a taſte already: Nevertheleſs, I will demonſtrate how far commonly all do meet in the ſhape of a well timbred Horſe. Firſt therefore it is required that the hoof be black, ſmooth, dry, large, round and hollow: The Paſterns ſtraight and upright, Fetlocks ſhort, the Legs ſtraight and flat, called alſo lath-legged, the Knees bony, lean and round, the Neck long, high-rear'd, and great towards the Breaſt, the Breaſt large and round, the Ears ſmall, ſharp, long and upright, the Forehead lean and large, the Eyes great, full and black, the Brows well filled, and ſhooting outwards, the Jaws wide, ſlender and lean, the Noſtrils wide and open, the Mouth great, the Head long and lean like to a ſheep, the Mane thin and large, the Withers ſharp and pointed, the Back ſhort, even, plain and double chined, the Sides and Ribs deep, large, and bearing out like the cover of a Trunk, and cloſe ſhut at the huckle-bone, the Belly long and great, but hid under the ribs, the Flanks full, yet gaunt, the Rump round, plain, and broad, with a large ſpace betwixt the Buttocks, the Thighs long and large, with well faſhioned bones, and thoſe fleſhy, the Hams dry and ſtraight, the Trunchion ſmall, long, well ſet on, and well couched, the Train long, not too thick, and falling to the ground, the Yard and Stones ſmall; and laſtly, the Horſe to be well riſen before. And to conclude, the perfect ſhape of a Horſe, according as a famous Horſe man hath deſcribed, is in a few words, thus, *Viz.* A broad Forehead, a great Eye, a lean Head, thin, ſlender, lean, wide Jaws, a long high reared Neck, high reared Withers, a broad deep Cheſt and Body, upright Paſterns, and narrow Hoof: And this is the common allowed, and approved ſhape of a perfect Horſe; ſo as if any of theſe things be deficient in him, he cannot be ſaid to be a Horſe of a perfect ſhape. Wherefore I conclude that if a Horſe be of a good Colour, well marked, and rightly ſhaped, and right alſo by Sire and Mare; it will be ſeldom ſeen that he ſhould prove ill, unleſs his Nature be alienated, and marred, either in the Backing and Riding, or elſe that he be otherwiſe wronged, and moſt ſhamefully abuſed by the means of a hair-brain, negligent, or inconſiderate Rider

The perfect ſhape of a Horſe.

or

or Groom. But I may in this point be taxed to hold a Paradox; for ſome may object unto me, that many times Horſes, who are of the beſt Colours, beſt Marks, and trueſt ſhapes, do nevertheleſs prove arrant Jades, reſtiffe, ſtubborn, ill natured, ſubject to tyring, and the like: I anſwer, I acknowledge all this to be moſt true, for I have known Horſes, who upon their firſt view, have been in extrinſecal ſhew ſo hopeful, as that they have promiſed what a man could expect from them; which notwithſtanding when they have come to the teſt, they have been a ſcandal to their ſex: but this is not a thing frequent, for in every one of theſe who have thus miſcarried, you ſhall have twenty who will prove right, and anſwerable to your mind: I have alſo known Horſes, which wanting theſe good attributes, and who have been as different from thoſe we call good, even as Chalk is from Cheeſe, who have proved very good Horſes: howbeit I will not counſel you to breed upon ſuch an one, who albeit he may bring you Colts, yet I dare not promiſe you he ſhall ever bring you a good Colt, whereof I have oft-times made Trial, as well for Horſes of Menage, as for Hunters, and Horſes for the Courſe. Neither need there any more be ſaid upon this ſubject.

CHAP. V.

Of the Office of the Rider and Groom.

HAving now bred Colts according to my Inſtructions, which you may well hope will prove to your mind and beſt liking, nevertheleſs ſome things there yet remain, whereof duly to conſider; and that is, that when you have thus (I ſay) bred your Colts, which you may very well hope are right, your eye and judgment for Shape, Colour and Marks, promiſing no leſs; it then behooveth you to be very Cautelous in the Handling, Breaking, Riding, and well-ordering them, whether you intend them for Mennage, Courſe, Hunting, or the Rode; in any of which an eſpecial care would be had to provide you of Riders, Grooms, and Keepers, ſuch as ſhall be

known

known to be expert in their faculties; in which principally conſiſteth either their direct making, or marring, and final ruine. For we cannot ſay, that a Colt (yet unhandled) at three or four years of age, is, or can be a perfect good Horſe, whilſt he remaineth (I ſay) unridden, unhandled, and unmade, until ſuch time as he hath been taken up into the Stable, made gentle, taught to lead, content to be ſhod, to be Back'd, Broken, Ridden, Wayed, Mouthed; and to be brief, brought to his utmoſt perfection. By this time you will come to be able to know and underſtand his true Worth, Vertue, Nature, Diſpoſition, and Quality, his Pace, his Rain, or Bearing, his Toughneſs, Strength and Affability, his true worth and goodneſs, and what other attributes are befitting a generous Horſe.

What manner of man a Rider ought to be.

His Rider therefore muſt be an expert and able Horſeman, and his Keeper every way as ſufficient; otherwiſe what defects you ſhall find in your Horſe, are not to be attributed to him, but either to his Rider, or to the Groom. Wherefore your care muſt be, that both Rider and Groom be known ſufficient, leſt for want of true Science, your Horſe may eſt-ſoons be brought to aſſume ſuch ſiniſter conditions, from which he will not be weaned in a long time after. Wherefore if your Rider be known to be an able man, and your Groom ſufficiently skilful, you muſt then expect that perfection from your Horſe, you ever hoped. For my part thus much I aver, that this Noble Science (Noble, I call it, for that it is a Faculty well beſeeming a truly Noble Gentleman) is an art wherein I have been verſed and travelled for more than forty years, as well at home, as in parts abroad; in which I have moſt diligently conſumed much time, as well to the labour of my body and mind, as to my no ſmall expenſe: and it doth not a little trouble me that in places where I come here in *England*, I do find ſo few Horſe men, (conſidering it is an Iſland that doth abound in Horſes, whereof no Kingdom under Heaven more) and yet ſo many Braggadochies there be, who will ſo crack and boaſt of their skill in this Heroick Science; and when I ſhall begin to diſcourſe with them of Horſemanſhip, they will talk ſo fillily, and ſo impertinently, as makes me bluſh to hear them: inſomuch as I have much trouble with my patience in forbearing to let them know their abſurd folly: and if I but ask them any

any eaſie queſtion concerning this myſtery, they preſently fall into ſtrange and prepoſterous diſcourſes, venting many incredible wonders, as far from ſenſe, and as high above the Moon, as the Moon is above us, and they are as poor, and as ignorant in the true nature and knowledge of the Art, as not to be able to underſtand the very firſt grounds and principles in Horſemanſhip. Others there be, who have attained to ſo much ſuperficial ſpeculative knowledge by reading the Works of Maſter *Blundevile*, Maſter *Markham*, and others, getting thereby ſome glimpſe of ſpeculation, but leſs true practice, (wherein is as much difference as betwixt us and the Antipodes) and therefore in what eſteem they either are or can be among Horſemen, is moſt eaſie to be imagined. Others there are, who being ſo active and dexterous, as to be able to ſit a rough, unridden Colt, a few plunges, by faſt holding with both hands to the Mane and Pummel, and by clinging with their Legs cloſe to the body of the Horſe, till by ſtriving and his violent diſordered agitation, he hath put himſelf from off his Wind; that will not ſtick preſently to promiſe to themſelves the true and entire myſtery of able Horſemanſhip. Others again I oft meet with, who by ſometimes frequenting the *Muze*, where Riders uſe to menage; who after have made no bones to cry themſelves up for as good and as able Horſemen as any in *England*. Others I do very well know, who by reading have made ſome petty practice, howſoever (God knows) to very ſmall purpoſe (ſo far forth as their diminutive skill was able to extend) upon ſuch (not rightly bred Geldings, and ſmall Nags of their own) wherein they have aſſumed unto themſelves ſo much pretended knowledge, as that they have in their disjoynted diſcourſes not ſpared to tax the famous *Alexanders*, and other eminent Riders of this our Kingdom for Novices, and meer ignorant Horſemen. Such (I ſay) is the vanity and arrogancy of theſe our days, in which ignorance dareth to adventure to traduce knowledge, and Vice lay an obloquy upon Vertue. *For unleſs a man do arrive unto the depth of profound knowledge, he ſhall be derided; but like as he either hath or hath it not, he ſhall be either commended or ſcorned.* For you ſhall not ſee one in a hundred of theſe pretenders of knowledge, who doth ſo much as underſtand the terms of this generous myſtery; and therefore I may

truly ſay of them: that *not to know the terms or principles, is to be ignorant of the Art it ſelf:* And yet I have known ſome of theſe ſo impudently weak, as to take upon them to teach, whereat I have not a little marvelled, it being a general received rule, *viz. It is impoſſible for a man to teach that which he never learned.* And further a venerable Author ſaith, *He that will be his own Scholar, ſhall be ſure to have a fool to his maſter.* For aſſuredly, *great folly and weakneſs is to be obſerved in that man, who ſhall take upon him to be a maſter or teacher, who never knew what it was to be a Scholar.*

But if you deſire to have your Colts come to the height of perfection, let then your care be to furniſh your ſelf of a good Rider, and ſuch an one who is well known and cryed up to be an exquiſite Horſeman. He muſt not be of life diſſolute, or debaucht, nor of nature harſh, furious; cholerick, or hair-brain'd: for the leaſt of either of theſe vices, are unbeſeeming a perſon of this profeſſion; but he muſt be of life ſober, and in his function laborious and diligent, of complexion Flegmatick, and patient, he muſt be maſter of his paſſions; for *A wiſe man knoweth how to conquer and overcome himſelf*: for that Rider that is cholerick, raſh, haſty, and ſoon provoked to impatience, can never make a good Horſeman, let him love the Art never ſo well; neither ſhall he be able to make a Horſe ſo perfect as otherwiſe he might have done, were he otherwiſe conditioned; but let him apply his beſt endeavours, yet that Horſe he maketh, ſhall have defects, which his inconſiderate harſhneſs hath cauſed. For if your young Horſe be rightly organized, and as well natured, as well mettled, and as correſpondent for marks and colours, he ſeldom proves ill in the making, ſuppoſing his Rider be maſter of his Art: but if otherwiſe, by which means he do fall into imperfections or vices, it is not much to be wondered at; for thoſe his evil conditions and faults are not ſo much to be imputed to the Horſe as to his Teacher: and as touching curſtneſs and correction to be uſed to young Horſes, we have a general rule in Horſemanſhip, which is, *that he is not cried up for a good Horſeman, who wanteth knowledg how to bring his horſe to perfection by ſweet and gentle means, rather than by correction and ſevere chaſtiſement:* yet that correction muſt ſometimes be uſed, no man but knoweth, to be as neceſſary as his meat; never

nevertheleſs let correction be ſo conſiderately applyed, as not therein to exceed the limits and bounds of moderation; Let it, I ſay, be done *to amendment, and not to deſtruction or confuſion, and utter marring of him*: for diſcretion in a caſe of this nature is a moſt precious jewel, and highly to be valued; and when his Rider ſhall at any time correct him, let it be done in the very inſtant when he offendeth, and doth juſtly merit the ſame; and not otherwiſe, for elſe he will not know the cauſe why he was chaſtiſed, whereby he becometh rather confounded than amended: ſo on the other ſide, when the Horſe doth well, let him be cheriſhed and much made of, which will the better encourage him in the ſame way of going forward in well-doing.

What manner of perſon a Groom ought to be.

And as touching the Groom, he muſt be a man who muſt truly love his Horſe, and ſo ſhape his courſe towards him, as that the Horſe may love and dote upon his Keeper, otherwiſe the Horſe may ſoon get ſo many evil habits, which he will not eaſily alter or forget. For as *Ariſtotle* learnedly ſaith, *Live as you order him, ſo ſhall you find*: For the Horſe by nature is the moſt loving creature to man of all other brute creatures, and none more obedient, none more intelligible, none more deſirous to pleaſe; wherefore if he be ſweetly, mildly, and plauſibly dealt with, he will be alſo reciprocal: Otherwiſe if his Keeper be harſh, furious, cholerick, and paſſionate, the Horſe will be put beſides his patience, ſtare, and ſee boggards in his Keepers face, become rebellious, fall to ſtriking, biting, and other vices, to the often endangering as well of the life and limbs of his Keeper, as of his Rider, and others: For the old Proverb is moſt true, *Patience once wounded or wronged, is ſoon turned into fury and rage*. For the Horſe is not ſaid to be *Creatura rationalis, a creature endowed with a reaſonable ſoul*; but is, *Creatura ſimpliciter animata, a creature which hath only life and ſenſe*; as learned Philoſophers do teach: a creature (I ſay) in whom is only life, ſenſe, and memory, but diſcourſe he hath not, and therefore muſt be governed by judgment and diſcretion. If therefore your Groom be a man of a looſe, evil, and debaucht life, or not otherwiſe able to govern, or to maſter his paſſions, he is wholly unfit to ſupply this place, and to take a charge of this nature upon him: yea he muſt be a man of a boundleſs patience, he muſt be judicious and diſcreet, by which means he may with the greater fa-

cility, and leſs difficulty bring his Horſe to be of the ſame identity, parity, and eſſence with himſelf, their loves and hearts truly united; ſo as he may at pleaſure mould and faſhion him into what form he deſireth: He muſt continually toy, dally and play with him, and teach him to play the wanton, be always talking and ſpeaking pleaſing words and phraſes unto him: He muſt lead him abroad morning and evening when the Sun ſhineth warm, and then run, ſcope, and ſhew him all the delight and contentment he is able; He muſt duly curry, curb, and dreſs him, wipe, duſt, pick and cleanſe him, feed, pamper and cheriſh him, keep him warm and ſweet, be always fidling and doing ſomething about him, be often tampering with his heels & legs, often taking up his feet, rapping him gently upon the ſoles, and knocking him ſoftly upon the Coffins, until his keeper hath taught him to take up any foot of himſelf at firſt bidding: His Keeper muſt have him always ſo clean of his body, ſetting upon his coat ſo perfect a gloſs, as that a man may almoſt ſee his face upon it. His feet would be kept ſtopped, and the coffins daily anointed, his heels free from ſcratches, and other ſuch like ſorances; and his keeper ought alſo to keep ſo continual a vigilant eye upon him, and all his actions, as well in his feeding and drinking, as otherwiſe, whereby no ſymptoms of ſickneſs or infirmity (inward or outward) ſhall be able ſo ſoon to ſhew its head, but they may be as eaſily, and as ſoon cured and amended, or elſe prevented: For *to amend a fault in the beginning, is far better and more eaſie than when it hath been long accuſtomed*: For our old Proverb is, *Things are ſooner prevented than amended.*

But I am loath to wade any further into this ſubject, for this is not that I intended when I began: yet ſithence I am thus far imbarqued in it, I will give you a few Rules which may be profitable both to the Maſter and the Groom, which if they be well obſerved, you may undoubtedly keep your Horſe long in very good eſtate and health. Firſt, therefore before you put your Horſe to graſs (I ſpeak now of Horſes which have been ridden and exerciſed) ſome four or five days, or a week before, take blood from him according as your diſcretion or the Ferrier by his Art ſhall dictate: The next day after give him the drink.

Rules fit to be obſerved. 1.

drink of *Diapente*, mentioned in *Lib.* 2. *Chap.* 7. *Sect.* 2. with good Sack, and let him after his drink be inured to hardineſs ſome days before his turning forth, by taking by degrees his clothes from him, leſt by doing things on a ſuddain, he fortune to take more cold than you can eaſily cure: neither would I have you put him forth till the midſt of *May*, at the ſooneſt, for till that time, graſs will not have bite enough for him to fill his belly, nor the ſeaſon warm enough, (and let the day wherein you turn him forth be a warm Sun-ſhine day, and about the hour of ten;) for Horſes pampered in warm ſtables, and kept cloſe, will be ſubject to take cold, if a diſcreet order and courſe be not taken with them. Secondly, let him be taken up from 2.
Graſs about the feaſt of St. *Bartholomew*, which is upon the 24 day of *Auguſt*, or ſoon after, for then the ſeaſon doth begin to let fall cold dews, which betideth no good, but much harm to your Horſe, and then beginneth the heart of Graſs to fail, ſo as the Graſs which then he feedeth upon, breedeth no good nutriment, but groſs flegmatick and cold humors, which putrifieth and corrupteth the blood. Let your Horſe, I ſay, be taken up about the day before mentioned, but with all the quietneſs that may be for fear of heating him, by reaſon his greaſe he gat at graſs is tender, ſo as every little motion will diſſolve the ſame, whereby the bloud may be inflamed, and ſo the Horſe be brought into imminent peril, at leaſt of ſickneſs, if not of death. A day or two after you have him in the ſtable, or ſooner, let him be ſhod, and let blood, and drencht, as before is ſhewed you; for this preventeth Yellows, Stavers, and ſuch like diſeaſes, which the Gall and Spleen occaſioneth, which the heart and ſtrength of graſs (through the rankneſs of the blood) doth ingender in his body; Then purge and cleanſe him both outwardly and inwardly, like as you are taught *Lib.* 2. *Chap.* 2.

Thirdly, ſearch your Horſes mouth, both then and at other 3.
times often, for fear of Barbes, Bigs, Bliſters, and Cankers, and ſuch like maladies which are very incident to breed in the mouthes of Horſes, which by the colour of the ſpots of his Gums, Tongue, and Mouth you may perceive, and ſo the better and more eaſily both prevent and cure all ſuch diſeaſes as are inherent to thoſe parts. Fourthly, rub and waſh ſometimes 4.
your Horſes mouth and tongue with Vinegar or Verjuice mingled

gled with Bay ſalt, but Verjuice is the better, and let ſome paſs down his throat, for it is both wholeſome and good. Fifthly, obſerve your Horſes Eyes and Countenance, which if you do find to be heavy, drowſie, and dull, then be you confident all is not well within him: Then take bloud from him, and give him the drink of *Diapente*, or *Diateſſeron*, and he ſhall do well again.

Sixthly, obſerve well his ſtanding, and his going, if you do perceive him to falter with any of his feet, be it never ſo little, or elſe which foot ſoever he doth favour, let the Groom preſently take up that foot, and examine it, if he can feel any place warmer than other, let him now aſſure himſelf ſomething is amiſs there; take off the Shoe, and ſearch the foot carefully, to ſee whether Gravel, or Nail be any cauſe thereof; but if you do find all well there, ſearch the heel and frush; if you find not any thing there, ſearch higher for ſome ſwelling that may be in the paſtern-joynt in the leg, or back ſinew; and when he hath found the fault, and cauſe of his complaint, let him preſently inform the Ferrier, who is to apply his remedies, and by this means he ſhall diſcharge his Duty as well becometh him.

Seventhly, Obſerve alſo if he put forth his foot more than uſually he was wont to do; then aſſure your ſelf the grief lieth either in the knee or ſhoulder; if it be ſo, preſently advertiſe the Ferrier, who knoweth what is beſt to be done with him.

Eighthly, When you are to take your journey with him, water him in the houſe, and give him his breakfaſt of good clean Oats, ſweet, and well ſifted; then bridle him and tye him up to the Rack; then curry, dreſs, and ſaddle him, but draw not the Girts too ſtreight till you come to take his back; then preſently caſt his cloth over him, leſt he take cold, and when you come to take his back, draw his Girts ſtreight, and ſo on Gods name begin your journey, but for a mile, two, or more, go fair and ſoftly, for if you heat him too ſoon, he will not digeſt his meat, but crudities will ariſe in his ſtomach, which you ſhall perceive by his ſcowring and purging, as he travelleth, whereby you may either founder him in his body, or elſe cauſe a *Calentura*, burning Fever, or ſome other worſe Infirmity to ſeize; and as you do travel him, when you are come ſome four

or

or five miles from home, alight from him and walk him, ſometimes ſtanding ſtill to ſee if you may provoke him to ſtale, for it is very wholeſome and good, which you may alſo do well to attempt when you diſmount and walk him down any hill; and ſome three miles before you come to your journies end, ride him into ſome River or other watering place, unto his belly, but no deeper in any wiſe, and then let him drink, yet not ſo much at the firſt as he deſireth, but by degrees, firſt taking up his head to cauſe him to waſh his mouth, whereby to free it from filth and ſome; then let him drink half his draught, and laſtly ſo much as in reaſon he will: then obſerve upon what pace you brought him to the water, with the ſame pace (and neither ſoftlier nor faſter) ride him a mile or better, by which time he will have warmed the water in his Belly, without taking cold or harm. This watering him thus will very much refreſh him, cauſe him to forget his weariſomneſs, and when he ſhall come to eat, it will be with very good Appetite, which otherwiſe he would not have done. A mile at leaſt before you come to your journeys end, ſlack your pace, and begin to go more ſoftly, to the end he may not be too hot when he ſhall be ſet up, have him without delay into the Stable warm, well littered up to the Belly; but take heed you ſuffer him not to be either walked, or waſhed, for theſe two things are very pernicious, and moſt dangerous for him, and the cauſe of more ſickneſs, ſorances, and death to Horſes, than of all other things beſides. So ſoon as you have brought him into the Stable, the firſt thing you do, off with your coat, and tye him up to the empty Rack: then litter him up to the Belly, ungird him, take off his Saddle, rub his back with ſpeed, and put his Cloth upon him, and upon that his Saddle again, and gird him with his Surſingle, then make clean his ſtirrops, ſtirrop-leathers and Girts, and rub him down both Legs, Belly, Body, Breaſt, Head, Face, and Neck, and ſo ſtuffe him up with clean dry ſtraw, and let him ſtand ſo upon the Bit an hour, evermore looking upon him, leſt he ſweat a-new; which if you ſhall perceive, then to allay it, take away ſome of the ſtraw wherewith he is ſtuffed, and he will cool again; if you find him in good temper, unbridle him, and waſh his mouth with water and ſalt, and waſh alſo his Bit, and ſo bridle him up again, and

give

give him ſome good Hay in his Rack to champ upon, for half an hours ſpace. After come to him again, and then unbridle him, put on his Collar-halter, and ſo give him freſh Hay to eat, Then rub him all over, and ſo let him ſtand till you have ſupped; then come to him, and give him either a ſweet maſh or white water, which when he hath drunk, let him eat Hay for half an hour after, and then give him his Provender, but by degrees, not too much together, for fear of cloying him, which ſo ſoon as he hath diſpatched, unſaddle him, and rub his body all over, cloath him up warm, and whiſp him up round with ſmall whiſps: Which done, rub his legs dry, pick, and ſtop his feet, and anoint the Coffins, and Cronets of his hoofs, giving him Hay for all night: and laſtly ſhake up his litter about and under him, that ſo he may lye ſoft and warm: and thus doing, leave him to his reſt.

The next morning, come to him early, and firſt obſerve whether or not he hath lain down; then look upon his Ordure, whether it be laxative or coſtive, or if he have avoided any greaſe, which if he hath, give him with his Oats a handful or two of Hemp-ſeed, and ſo order him as you are accuſtomed, or otherwiſe, as you in diſcretion do find to be moſt requiſite. Many other rudiments there are to be given, which, for that they are ſo commonly known to every Groom, are impertinent to rehearſe: Only in a word for a cloſe, I ſay, that a good Groom ought to be a man of good life, and ſober demeanour, no Tipler, no haunter of Ale-houſes, or Taverns, (like as too too many are) no lyer abroad from his Horſe in the night, nor long from him in the day, and an early riſer; the Stable muſt be his Compting-houſe; he muſt not be ſo intimate with any as with his Horſe; have entercourſe with none ſo much as with him: he muſt be his principal aſſociate, and make him of his Cabinet-Council: his Horſe muſt be his only *Idæa*, the only Miſtreſs whom he muſt court, and ſerve: and ſo ſoon as he doth ſuſpect but any the leaſt inconvenience in him, let him inſtantly impart it to the Ferrier, and look what the Ferrier doth give in directions, let his Keeper diligently obſerve and execute accordingly; for it is an argument of a proud and prepoſterous condition in a Groom, to ſwarve from the inſtructions which the Ferrier ſhall at any time give. Ninthly, as the Groom

Groom muſt have a ſpecial care he do not pine, or under-meat his Horſe in his diet, ſo he muſt be as cautelous he do not cloy him, by laying before him too much Provender at once: but his way muſt be to give him little at once, and often; he muſt eat up all before he give him any more; yea he muſt eat it with good appetite, otherwiſe he may marr his appetite utterly, and bring him to loath his Provender; and look what Hay and Provender he doth at any time give him, let it be ſweet, well duſted and throughly purged from Feathers, Hens-dung, Cats-dung, ſtones, gravel, and ſuch like filth, which, are things hurtful and troubleſom to his ſtomach and feeding; for they will cauſe him to refuſe and forſake his meat, unleſs pure hunger ſhall conſtrain him thereunto; for ſuch kind of naſty meat and food will engender in him noyſome and noxious infirmities.

Tenthly, as touching the furniture and Capariſon which the Horſe is to wear, the Groom muſt be careful to keep them clean, bright, and handſome; the Saddles, after ſweating and travel, well aired in the Sun and Wind, and after beaten and duſted, the ſtirrups wiped clean, with the ſtrops and other ſuch like leathers thereto belonging and appertaining, and ſo put up ſafe and handſomly with their caſes and coverings upon them to preſerve them from duſt: The foot cloaths (if he have any under his charge) cleanſed, bruſhed, and neatly folded up; the Bits taken from the Head-ſtals, and clean waſhed, dried before the fire, and wrapped up in an oyly cloth to keep them from Ruſt and Canker, and the Boſſes carefully alſo made clean, together with their Bits, and ſo laid up in the Preſs or Cheſt made for ſuch like purpoſe. The Headſtals and Reins, Croopers, and other accoutrements would likewiſe be wiped, made very clean, and hanged up in the Preſs in their proper places: The Girts, Surſingles, Stirrup-leathers, and ſuch like neceſſaries, would be diligently viewed and examined, cleanſed, and made clean; and if any thing be amiſs or broken, let it be mended incontinently, leſt they ſhould be to do when they were to be uſed: In concluſion, nothing ſhould be out of order at any time, but every thing (as well Stable as Saddlehouſe) kept clean, neat, and ſweet; which will purchaſe unto the Groom no ſmall reſpect with his Lord or Maſter, and much more reputation and applauſe of ſo many as ſhall be an eye-witneſs thereof.

THE COMPLEAT HORSE-MAN, AND EXPERT FERRIER.

The Second Book.

CHAP. I.

Of what points consisteth the Office of the Ferrier: Handled Dialogue-wise.

Hippophilus.

MAster Sergeant Ferrier, you are well encountred: I have been often at your house and shop, with a desire to have spoken with you, but could never have the good fortune to find you at home.

Hippiatrus. *Sir, it may well be, that you may come often to my house, and yet miss of me, unless it be at certain set hours; for that I having many Cures daily in my hands, and besides, I am frequently sent for by many to look upon sick Horses; marvel not you cannot so easily find me at home: but what is your pleasure now that you have met me?*

Hippophilus. You may remember (good *Hippiatrus*) you promised me (upon our last meeting) to assist me in the perfecting of

of my Cures, which ſo long ſince I purpoſed to publiſh, and now I would gladly know what day and place you would appoint for the final diſpatch of the buſineſs.

Hippiatrus. *Truly Sir, the time now fits well, for I have diſpatched all my affairs for this day; wherefore ſithence we are met ſo near my houſe, we will enter, where we will be retired into a private chamber, prohibiting any acceſs unto us, my man* Hippoſerus *only excepted, whom I will interrogate in ſuch points as ſhall concern the Ferriers Art or Science: and you ſitting by, making your ſelf very attent to our diſcourſe, and taking in writing the prime heads of our diſcuſſion, when any thing paſſeth whereof you may deſire to be better informed, propoſe the ſame, and we will give you a full ſolution.*

Hippophilus. Your motion likes me well, for it will be the beſt courſe you can think of whereby to give me ample ſatisfaction.

A formal Examen of the Office of the Ferrier.

Hippiatrus. *What is the* Ferriers *Art?*

Hippoſerus. It principally conſiſts of four things, to wit, Science, Experience, Knowledge, and Handy-work.

Hippiatrus. *Letting paſs the firſt three, tell me what is Handy-work?*

Hippoſerus. Handy-work, is to heat the Iron well, to Sodder well, to Forge well, to turn a Shoe well, to make and point a nail well, to pare the hoof well, to Cauterize well, to be light and well-handed, bold, and hardy in dreſſing of a Horſe well of ſuch Accidents as may happen unto him.

Hippiatrus. *What are the Principal Members of the Creature?*

Hippoſerus. They be three, *viz.* the *Liver*, the *Heart*, and the *Brain*; and if the Creature be offended in any of theſe three, eſpecially the *Brain*, which is in the top of the head, then I ſay he will die.

Hippophilus. I always took the principal members of any living creature to be four.

Hippiatrus. *Therein (Sir) you are miſtaken, for any of theſe former three being hurt, there is evermore preſent death, eſpecially the* Heart, *and the* Brain: *But if any other member beſides theſe three be hurt, yet may your Horſe live, and do well again. But which member (I pray you Sir) do you hold to be one of the four principal Members?*

Hippophilus. The *Stones* or *Gignitors*.

Hippiatrus. *How do you aſſoyl this Objection* Hippoſerus?

Hippoſerus. Moſt eaſily Sir, that the *Gignitors* cannot be any one of the principal Members, reaſon teacheth us: For you cannot ſo much as touch any of theſe three; but you do either kill the Creature outright, or elſe deſperately endanger him. Now ſuppoſing the *Stones* may fortune to receive hurt or damage, yet if I be in deſpair of healing or curing them, I can nevertheleſs cut, or take them clean away from the body, or cauſe them to fall away by other good means, or by medicine, without peril of his life: he will only thereby loſe his natural heat, whereby he will be diſinabled from having any diſpoſition to *Coity*, or power of *Procreation.*

Hippiatrus. *What is that which goeth from the* Head *of the Horſe, and diffuſeth it ſelf throughout all other Members?*

Hippoſerus. They are two *Sinews*, or *Tendons* which are white, and have a Ligature beginning at the very end of the *Noſe*, and extend themſelves along the *Neck*, and along the *Back*, and make their extent to the four *Legs*, and take their Ligaments in the fore *Feet.*

Hippophilus. I was in good hope, *Hippoſerus*, you would likewiſe have ſpoken of the number of the *Sinews*, and where every one is ſeated; for it is a thing very material, and I do the rather deſire it for that I am not as yet perfect in that point.

Hippiatrus. That was but forgotten both by my ſelf and him Sir, wherefore *Hippoſerus*, make anſwer to the Gentlemans demand.

The number of the ſinews.

Hippoſerus. I ſhall do it moſt gladly; wherefore as touching the *Sinews* we ſay, that there are in every Horſe twenty nine, or thirty, great and ſmall. Firſt, the two great *Sinews* which I named before, which have their firſt Origin from the end of the *Noſe*. Item two branches which are main *Sinews* that proceed from the *Brain*, and run down the *Cheeks* to the *Teeth*. Item there are from the *Shoulders* to the firſt joint of the *Armes*, or *fore-legs* downwards, two great *Sinews*. Item from the *Knees* to the *Paſterns* are four great *Sinews*, with the ſame number in the hinder part. Item in the fore-part of the *Breaſt*, and above it, as well within as without, are ten *Sinews*, ſome greater and ſome ſmaller. Item from the *Reins* of the *Back* to the *Stones* are four great *Sinews*. Laſtly, one great main *Sinew* which runneth

2
2
2
8
10
4
1

runneth along to the end of the *Tail*. So as the full number of the *Sinews* are twenty nine, or thirty, which are to be discerned.

Hippiatrus. *What is that which we do commonly call principal or* vital Bloud?

Hipposerus. Those be *Veins* which are vessels of quick or running *Bloud*, which men do call *Vital Bloud.*

Hippiatrus. *What is that which men do call* Vital Bloud?

Hipposerus. It is that which when the Creature sleepeth, his bloud is in continual agitation, and never ceaseth.

Hippiatrus. *How many* Veins *hath a Horse in his whole Body*?

Hipposerus. To speak properly, a Horse hath but only one *Vein*, which is that which we call the *Median*, or *Lives Vein*, which is in the Liver, being the true Fountain, Source, and great *Tun* from whence the *Canes*, *Conduit-pipes*, and little *Veins* (as the smaller Rivers) do separate themselves, which do run through all the parts and members of the whole body.

Hippiat. *What call you* Separation?

Hippos. *Separation* is of two kinds, *viz.* ascendent and descendent: those which do ascend to the *Head* and *Body*, are called *Veins ascendent*; and those which do run low, or to the *Legs*, and lower members, are called *Hollow*, or *Descendent Veins.*

Hippophil. I did ever think and believe till now, that a Horse had more *Veins* than one; how then cometh it to pass that we open *Veins* in so many several parts of the body, being so different *Veins* the one from the other?

Hippiat. I answer you Sir, if you be pleased to examine your Paper, there you shall find how that *Hipposerus* told you that a Horse hath but only one *Vein*; and it is a most infallible verity, for that all those other *Canes* which you call *Veins*, are but the very same with that One, which evermore standeth full of *Bloud*, up to the top, conveyed into him, which said great *Vein* is annexed unto the *Liver*; which *Vein* doth resemble a great *Tun* or *Cistern*, which conveyeth the *Blood* into all the lesser *Veins*, by which means, they continually remain full, having no vacancy or want: Like as a Cistern (*V. G.*) receiveth its water from a Pump; and so conveyeth and bestoweth it into and among the smaller Pipes, oft-times storeth with plenty of water a whole Village or Town, or at least a whole Family.

Hippo-

Hippophilus, *I underſtand you well; but now friend* Hippoſerus, *tell me I pray you, in how many* Veins *may a man take* Blood *from a Horſe in caſe of neceſſity?*

The number of the veins.

Hippoſerus, In many parts, to wit: in the *Neck*, in the *Weeping-Veins*, under the *Ears*, and in ſix other places of and about the *Head*; as in the *Palate-Veins*, in the *Tongue*, in the *Flank-Veins*, in the *Breaſt* and *Spur-Veins*: In the Four members, to wit, the *Legs*, *Thighs*, *Paſterns* and *Feet*; alſo in ſundry other places, according as neceſſity ſhall require it, and in places which may the better kill the Malady or diſeaſe of the ſaid Horſe.

Hippophilus. But yet I was in good hope you would have delivered the Reaſons for which you do open any *Vein*, as alſo which they be in particular.

The particular Veins.

Hippoſerus. The *Veins* which we do uſually open, are; Firſt, the two *Temple-veins*, which eaſeth the pains in the *Head*, coming of Colds, Rheumes, Feavers, Yellows, and Stavers, Drowſineſs, Frenzy, the Sleepy-Evil, Falling-evil, or any grief in or
2 2 about the *Eyes* or *Brain*, Secondly, we open the two *Eye* or *Weeping-veins*, being moſt ſovereign for ſuch Diſeaſes whereunto the *Eyes* are ſubject; as *watery* or *weeping Eies Bloodſhotten,*
3 2 *Pin and Web*, *Haw*, or the like. Thirdly, we open the two *Palate Veins* in the *Mouth*, and thoſe do cure the Lampaſs, and any inward ſickneſs within the Body; as the Yellows, Stavers, Anticor, Surfeits, Drowſineſs, Tiredneſs, or wearineſs of the Body; or if the Horſe have any Malady in the *Throat*, as the Strangles, Quinzey, Kernels, Puſtils, either within or without; it many times helpeth Inflamations, Glanders, or the like: For the eating or ſwallowing of his own blood, is moſt wholeſom and ſove-
4 2 reign in ſuch caſes. Fourthly, we do uſually open the two *Neck-Veins*, which helpeth Farcins, Yellows, Stavers, Scabs, Mainges, Agues, Feavers, Colds, Surfeits, Glanders, or any other Malady, which may be any way noxious to the inward parts of the body: And it alſo preventeth ſuddain ſickneſs, if you have
5 2 any ſuſpect thereof. Fifthly, the opening of the two *Plate* or *Breaſte-Veins* do help the Anticor, Sickneſs of the Heart, Morfounding, which is the Foundring in the Body by over-riding, whereby the Greaſe of the Horſe is molten, it alſo preventeth Diſeaſes in the *Liver*, *Lungs*, and inward parts grieved; and ſome-

ſometimes hurts in the *Shoulder*, which cauſeth lameneſs before. Sixthly, we uſe to touch the two *Arm* or *Thigh Veins* before, which helpeth foundring in the *Fore-feet*, Mallenders, Splent, Screw, Ring-bone, and ſuch like infirmities in the *Fore-feet*, and ſuch other higher parts. Seventhly we uſe to take *Blood* from the four *ſhackle Veins* before, and this is very good for the Crown-Scab, Ring-bone, and ſuch like diſeaſes. Eighthly, we uſe to ſtrike the two *Spur Veins*, which cureth the Farcin in the *Sides*, morfounding, ſwelling under the *Belly*, which is a Diſeaſe called the Feltrick, and the like. Ninthly, we prick the two *Toe Veins*, which do help Frettizing, Foundring, Hoof-bound, beating of the Horſes feet by Riding upon hard and ſtony ways, and the like. Tenthly, we open the two *Thigh Veins* behind; and this doth help the grief of the *Kidnies*, Swelling in the *hinder legs*, Foundrings, Sellenders, Scratches, Kybes, *&c.* and it alſo helpeth diſeaſes in and about the *Belly*, as piſſing of Bloud, piſſing oft after great and extraordinary labour, and the weakneſs of the *Reins*, the *Back*, *Belly*, *Guts*, or any other the inward parts, the Curb, Spaven, and ſuch diſeaſes which come of rankneſs of *Blood*. Eleventhly, we ſometimes do open the four *Shackle Veins*, behind; and this is very good againſt foundrings and other pains in and about the *Feet*. Twelfthly, we let *Blood* in the two *flank* or *haunch Veins*, and this is moſt profitable for all kind of Feavers, the *Stones*, Poverty, and the Felterworm. Thirteenthly, we draw *bloud* from the two *Tail-veins*, which cureth the Mainge in the *Tail*, falling of the hair, or the Itch in the *Tail*. And theſe are for the moſt part all the *Veins* which are uſually opened, or that my ſelf have ever known, or have ſeen my Maſter open, which are very great means to help theſe Diſeaſes by me mentioned. So as the full ſum or number of *Veins* which Ferriers uſe commonly to open, are thirty. Other *Veins* there are which are of a ſmaller proportion, and therefore not fit to be opened. Nevertheleſs ſome *Ferriers* there are, who have fondly reported unto me that they have let Horſes *bloud* in many of thoſe ſmall *Veins*, but I could never learn for what purpoſe the ſame was done: let this therefore which I have here ſet you down, ſuffice for this matter.

2 6
4 7
2 8
2 9
2 10
4 11
2 12
2 13

Hippophilus.

Hippophilus. I have heard you *Hippoſerus* attentively, but yet I would moſt gladly underſtand one thing, which is, that whereas you ſay that the opening of theſe *Veins* doth help and cure ſuch Diſeaſes, I would gladly be ſatisfied herein; for if by the opening of theſe *Veins* the Horſe will be cured; then we may ſpare much labour in applying drinks, purgations, clyſters, and ſuch other things, which we uſually make and give to Horſes.

Hippoſerus. Sir, I aſſure me you cannot be ſo ignorant as you ſpeak; for this opening of *Veins* and *blood-letting*, doth not always abſolutely cure thoſe diſeaſes which I have named; but it doth ſometimes aſſwage the Malignancy of the malady, ſometimes it preventeth diſeaſes, and ſometimes again it prepareth the body the better to receive ſuch phyſical drinks which do inwardly cure them, and ſuch ſalves, Oyls, and Unguents, which do dry and heal up outward infirmities; but that *blood-letting* doth abſolutely cure them, I ſay it doth not, howſoever in ſome caſes it may.

Hippiatrus. *What is that which departs from the* head *of the Horſe, and ſerveth him for his principal members?*

Hippoſerus. I have ſhewed you that already; they be *ſinews* and *nerves*; theſe *ſinews* which depart and proceed from the *head*, give ſenſe and feeling, arriving in the body of the creature, and ſo diffuſe and ſpread themſelves through all the principal members, which do deſcend from the *head* unto all the other members, which make a conjunction of the *bones*, of the *legs*, of the body, and of all the other members.

Hippiatrus. *How many bones hath a Horſe, and how are they ſituated in the body?*

Of the bones. *Hippoſerus.* There are in the body of every Horſe, two hundred fifty and ſeven *bones*.

Hippiatrus. *Name them ſeverally.*

Hippoſerus. All the *bones* which every Horſe hath whereby to make up an organical Body, are theſe; *Viz.* he hath in his *head*

39 thirty nine, and

40 forty *teeth*: the *bones* in his *head* do comprehend the Crocks and Handles of the

2 *ſcull*, albeit they be com-

5 poſed of parts and parcels of certain other *bones*, alſo the two

52 flat Handles, which from the *Palate*; and the *Fork* or *Throat*

1 hath five, the *Chine* fifty two, the *Breaſt* one, *Ribs* thirty ſix,

36 the

the *Fore-legs* and *Fore-feet* have forty four, and the *hinder-legs* and *feet* forty. So as the whole ſtructure of the body of a Horſe whereby to perfect a full building of *bones*, conſiſteth of about 257, or 259, if they be rightly computed; which do repreſent themſelves altogether at what time the perfect *Anatomy* of a Horſe is laid open. 44 40 259

Hippiatrus. *What natural compoſition hath the* Head *of the Horſe?*

Hippoſerus. He hath *Eyes* to ſee, *Ears* wherewith to hear, *Noſtrils* to ſmell or ſcent, a *Mouth* and *Tongue* to taſte and eat, and wherewith to nouriſh him.

Hippiatrus. *What natural compoſition hath the whole body of a Horſe in general?*

Hippoſerus. The whole body hath its *Heart*, *Liver*, *Lungs*, *Spleen*, *Stones*, and *Gignitors*: All which are called the *Noble parts*, and that moſt juſtly: For when either the one or the other of any of theſe parts receive hurt, or damage, the poor Beaſt is in peril of his life, except in the *Gignitors*, according as I have declared.

Hippiatrus. *What Maladies or Diſeaſes are moſt uſually incident to the Horſe?*

Hippoſerus. Sundry diſeaſes, as namely, Avyns and Gripings, called in French, *Tranchaiſons*, Foundrings, Farcins, Mainges, and very many more which ſeverally to recite, would ſpend much time: Nevertheleſs, I will handle briefly their natures, dividing them into ſorts, *viz.* Moiſt and dry; the moiſt do proceed commonly from naughty *blood*, the dry cometh of heat; as the Scab, Mainge, and ſuch like Diſeaſes proceeding from moiſtneſs; ſome again are called Leproſies, or the Elephantick malady, by reaſon that Elephants are much troubled therewith, and every Diſeaſe is known by its proper ſymptoms.

Hippiatrus. *What be the ſigns whereby to know the humid or moiſt Diſeaſes?*

Hippoſerus. The humid or moiſt malady is properly called the Glanders, which oft-times proceeds from the *Liver* and *Lights*, when they be infected with putrefaction and rottenneſs; or when they breed inflamed Lumps, Knots, or Kernels under the *Chaul*, which all do come of cold taken by immoderate riding and labour, and want of care afterwards, which

begetteth evil humours in the body, which when they ſhall begin to break from the Horſe, by his running and purging at the *Noſe*, whereof other Horſes will have a deſire to lick, and thereby they do become infected.

Hippiatrus. *Many Horſes there be which do run at the* Noſe, *who have not the Glanders.*

Hippoſerus. 'Tis very true, but this Diſeaſe of the Glanders may be known by its Knots, Kernels, and Puſtils which are under the *Jaw*. You may alſo know it by the colour of the corruption which the Horſe venteth: For, if that mattrative ſtuff be green, and of a ſtrong and offenſive ſavour, or if it be white and ſtinketh, as alſo viſcous and ſlimy; then be you confident it is the Glanders; but if he ſhall caſt forth corruption at his *Noſe*, which is white, and that by bits and gobbets, which doth not ſtink or have any evil ſavour or ſmell, then it is not the Glanders, but ſome diſtemperature which cometh of a cold lately taken, which is eaſily cured, if it be not let run too long, for *there is great danger in delay.*

Hippiatrus. *What be the arid or dry Diſeaſes?*

Hippoſerus. They are an alteration of the body, which we do commonly call Surfeits and Purſiveneſs, which is occaſioned oft by riding of a Horſe beyond his ſtrength or breath, eſpecially preſently after water, or by putting him to too much labour, or too violent running and ſtreining, or by waſhing him when he is very hot.

Hippiatrus. *How cometh a Horſe to have the Tranchaiſons or Gripings?*

Hippoſerus. By ſuffering him to drink when he is too hot; or by over-riding him; they alſo come of bad wind which ingenders in him, and by not ſuffering him to ſtale in his riding in convenient time, and of evil humours.

Hippiatrus. *What ſigns have you of the Scab or Mainge?*

Hippoſerus. We may with good reaſon ſay that this Diſeaſe we call the Scab, Mainge, or Itch in a Horſe proceedeth of too great abundance of ill bloud, which, when it is once inflamed by over-hard riding, cauſeth its Leproſie to come forth upon the *Skin*, which cometh to be an itch running over the whole body, beginning betwixt the fleſh and the skin, inſomuch as it will

will cauſe the hair to fall away, from whence ordinarily doth proceed a dry ſcurff or ſcab, which is very contagious.

Hippiatrus. *How cometh the Farcin to the Creature.*

Hippoſerus. No way ſo ſoon as by a bad ſtable, whither Swine and Poultrey do reſort, for their dung is moſt pernicious: Alſo by evil dreſſing, which may be a great cauſe, and by too much rankneſs of blood, and by ſome wound, hurt, or blow with a ſtaff, eſpecially if the ſtaff have knags or knots upon it, ſometimes by enter-ſiring and hewing, and laſtly by ſpur galling.

Hippiatrus. *Which be the four Maladies which do moſt appear, when a Horſe ſheweth by his action that he is in danger of death by the ſaid Diſeaſes?*

Hippoſerus. That hapneth often by too much ventoſity, or by eating too much raw meat, or to have drunk being very hot: It cometh alſo of the coldneſs of *Urin*, or having ridden him too hard too long together, not giving him leave to piſs.

Hippophilus. *I pray* Hippoſerus, *give me leave to demand of you, what you would do in ſuch a caſe, by your beſt endeavours, to ſave the life of the poor beaſt?*

Hippoſerus. In a caſe of this nature, I would firſt take *blood* from him, if I found juſt cauſe for it, and then ſhould I adminiſter a laxative clyſter, which ſhould be both comforting, and yet operative, which is inſerted in *lib.* 2. *Chap.* 6. *Sect.* 8 *clif.* 2. Or elſe I would give him a drink of good operation, which you ſhall find in *lib.* 2. *Chap.* 7. *Sect.* 8. *clif.* 6. either of which, or both, are moſt ſovereign in this caſe. But if I ſhall find, that the malice of the malady doth not continue in the body, but falleth down into the four legs, as uſually it will do: Then do I uſe to open the Veins in thoſe places, and in the neck alſo, or in any other part I ſhall judge ſhall be moſt neceſſary, and of his bloud I will make a reſtrictive charge, adding thereunto Wheat-meal, Bole, *Sanguis Draconis*, Eggs, the ſtrongeſt white-wine Vinegar, and ſuch like, which I will more at large expreſs in the place of Cures: This (I ſay) will I apply to all the four *Legs*, and over and againſt the *Kidnies*, the *Breaſt*, *Throat*, *Feet* and the like places; then would I cup the bottom of the *Soles*, I will alſo apply to the four *Legs*, Garters, which I will tye hard above the *Knees* and *Hams*, and ſo govern my ſelf in performing

the Cure, according to the ſtrength, vertue, and greatneſs of the Horſe, and as my judgment ſhall dictate unto me.

Hippiatrus. *By how many ways may evil come to a Horſe?*

Hippoſerus. Two ways, *viz.* by nature and by accident againſt nature; as of thoſe diſeaſes which fall down into the *Legs* and *Feet* of the Horſe, from whence do come Scratches, Splents, Squibs, Mallenders, *&c.* with other kinds of humors and accidents as well in the body of the Creature, as in the members; and *ſalvo aliorum judicio*; theſe things appear unto me to comprehend in them the aforeſaid accidents, which do happen to the Horſe, even as ſoon by nature many times, as by accident or againſt nature.

Hippophilus. Hippoſerus, *I do not well underſtand this point: You ſay that theſe things may happen as well by nature, as againſt nature, which are to my underſtanding a plain contradiction. I pray explicate yet your ſelf more fully.*

Hippoſerus. Thoſe things which are againſt nature, I told you are by accident; but when I ſay that certain Diſeaſes may as well come unto him by nature, as by accident; yea even in the ſelf-ſame Diſeaſe, my meaning is, that if the Stallion be troubled with the ſame diſeaſe at what time the Mare, who is the Dam of this Colt is covered, I ſay that then the Colt himſelf ſhall be capable of the ſame malady. As if the Stallion or the Mare (Parents to the ſame Colt) have for example a Spaven, I ſay that the Colt will naturally have a Spaven; and thus I have explicated my ſelf, and aſſoyled your demand.

Hippiatrus. *But what call you accident, or againſt nature?*

Hippoſerus. As thus, *verbi gratia*, if walking your Horſe in your hand in the fields, or elſewhere, and that he happen to be ſtrucken with ſome cudgel, leaver, or heavy baſtinado, or with ſome ſword, hatchet, bill, or other edge-tool, or that you ſhould enforce him to do more then what nature or ſtrength were well able to compaſs; or leading him upon plain ground, he might wrinch any member, or ſway his *back*, or break his *leg* either by the ſtroke or ſtripe of ſome other Horſe, or otherwiſe accidentally, or ſhould by misfortune fall down ſome ſteep precipice, whereby he may break or diſlocate ſome limb or member: All theſe diſaſters we uſually do call Accidental, and all ſuch things of this nature.

Hippi-

Hippiatrus. *Which be the* Elements *which do give life and nutriment unto man, and all other living Creatures?*

Hippoſerus. They are four in number, that is to ſay, *Fire*, *Air*, *Water* and *Earth*; whoſe natures if you ſhall pleaſe, I will diſcuſs elſewhere.

Hippiatrus. *No I pray let us have them both now and elſewhere, their natures, conditions, and qualities.*

Hippoſerus. The nature of *Fire* is to be hot and dry, *Air* to be hot and moiſt, *Water* to be cold and moiſt, and *Earth* to be cold and dry.

Hippiatrus. *Do you know the twelve* Signs *of the* Zodiack, *and how they do govern the body of man, and of all Creatures?*

Hippoſerus. Yes, I do know them all perfectly; and thus are they called *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer*, *Leo*, *Virgo*, *Libra*, *Scorpio*, *Sagittarius*, *Capricornus*, *Aquarius*, *Piſces*: Theſe do all govern the twelve moneths of the year, and are placed above the *Zodiack*.

Hippiatrus. *Do you know the names of the* Planets, *and their numbers?*

Hippoſerus. That I do very well, and they be ſeven in number; to wit, *Saturn*, *Jupiter*, *Mars*, *Sol*, *Venus*, *Mercury* and *Luna*.

Hippiatrus. *What parts do the twelve* Signs *before mentioned govern?*

Hippoſerus. *Aries* governs the *Head*, *Taurus* the *Neck*, *Gemini* the *Shoulders* and *Armes*, *Cancer* the *Stomach* and *Breaſt*, *Leo* the *Heart*, *Virgo* the *Bellie* and *Guts*, *Libra* the *Reines* and *Buttocks*, *Scorpio* the *Privie parts*, *Sagittarius* the *Thighes*, *Capricornus* the *Knees*, *Aquarius* the *Legs*, and *Piſces* the *Feet*.

Hippiatrus. *In what daies is it beſt for a Horſe to be let blood?*

Hippoſerus. If there be no extraordinary cauſe, as in caſe of deſperate ſickneſs, or ſo; then *Jan.* the third, and the fifteen. *Februarie* the fourth and ninth. *March* the ſeventeen and eighteen. *April* the tenth and ſixteen. *Maie* the firſt and thirteen. *June* fifteen and twenty. But for *Julie* and *Auguſt*, by reaſon that the *Canicular daies* be then predominant, *blood-letting* is not ſo good, but only in urgent caſe of neceſſity. In *September* the eleventh and twenty eighth. *October* the eight and twenty three. *November* the fifth and ſixteenth. *December* the fourteen and twenty ſixth. And theſe days do we hold to be the very beſt, unleſs dangerous

or ſudden ſickneſs do cauſe us to alter the ſame, for in caſes of neceſſity, no days are to be regarded or obſerved: For

Qui retinente vita, & non ſit mortis imago:
Si ſemper fuerit vivens, morietur & infra.

Hippiatrus. *What medicine would you apply to a Horſe, who may have any of the four Maladies?*

Hippoſerus. I would give him of the four Cordial Waters, which I would make, of Bugloſs, Savin, Succorie, Aqua-vitæ, Endiſe, and the like.

Hippiatrus. *How would you make a comfortable drink?*

Hippoſerus. I would make it of certain Cordials, to wit; of Sugar, Cinnamon, Cloves, Nutmegs, Saffron, Licoris, Anniſeeds; all theſe in fine powder, adding thereto white wine, and all theſe infuſed in a clean earthen pot, and hereof would I make a drink.

Hippiatrus. *Whereof would you make an operative drink?*

Hippoſerus. I would take white Wine, Salet Oyl, Aloes, Rubarb, Agarick, Duke or Duck-powder, Honey, Cordial powder; and of all theſe things would I put ſuch a quantity as I ſhould think requiſite, and according to the ſtrength and corpulency of the Horſe.

Hippiatrus. *Whereof would you make a laxative Clyſter?*

Hippoſerus. Into a laxative Clyſter I will put either of Pellitory, Melelote or Cammomile (but Pellitory is the beſt) and of this would I make a Decoction, and to this Decoction would I put Salet Oyl, Honey, Aloes, and Verjuice of the Crab.

Hippiatrus. *What be the natures of your principal Drugs?*

Hippoſerus. Agarick purgeth the *Brain*, Aloes the *Breaſt* and body, Rubarb purgeth the *evil water*, and it openeth the *Liver* and helpeth obſtructions, and opilations, Ariſtolochia-Rotunda mollifieth the *Breaſt*, *Liver* and *Lungs*, and Baccalaury or Bayberries do mortifie the peccant *Humors*, which do ingender in the *Breaſt* or *Entrailes* near about the *heart*; and Saffron (if it be diſcreetly given) doth marvellouſly comfort and enlighten the *heart*.

CHAP. II.

Of the Cauſes of Sickneſs in General; and the cauſes of Health and long Life.

Hippiat. NOW *that we have proceeded thus far, in a diſcuſſion of the Office of the* Ferrier, *Let us approach yet nearer to intreat of the Cures, and that we may go on* Pedetentim, *and* Gradatim; *Let us firſt diſcuſs the cauſes of maladies; and therefore I demand of you,* What are the true cauſes of the ſickneſs of the Horſe?

Hippoſerus. Sir, that man which hath a deſire to become an *Expert Ferrier*, muſt apply himſelf to underſtand the true nature of two things, *viz.* of *Generation* and of *Corruption*; in which I could never find the leaſt diſcord in the Primary nature of Horſes, albeit compounded of the contrary nature of the four *Elements*. But I will proceed in Anatomizing unto you the verity hereof, more particularly, whereby you may the better underſtand my meaning.

Hippophilus. But friend *Hippoſerus*, in my judgment, you begin to aſſume too high a pitch for ordinary *Ferriers*, who are in a manner all or the greater number unlettered perſons; and therefore will never be able to underſtand what *Generation* and *Corruption* meaneth, for theſe are terms taken from the Grounds of *Philoſophy*, and therefore above their *Genius* or *Sphere*.

Hippoſerus. Sir, there be many things neceſſary to be duly known, and as diligently to be obſerved in him, that deſireth to be a perfect and able *Ferrier*; which whoſoever ſhall be defective in, he may well be an *Empiritical Horſe-Leach*, but skilful *Ferrier* or *Marſhal* he ſhall never be. And for that you pleaſe to ſay, that I ſore too high, becauſe I began my diſcourſe with the terms of *Generation* and *Corruption*: If you had not interrupted me, I ſhould have explicated my ſelf ſo clearly, as that a very reaſonable judgment might eaſily have apprehended me: for I hold it not a thing fitting to puzzle mens *Brains*, either with *Chimera's*, which they are not able to underſtand, or with over long, and tedious diſcourſes, of things meerly impertinent:

pertinent: But if you ſhall be pleaſed to hear me with patience, I will touch upon this ſubject, to wit: What are the cauſes of Sickneſs in general, as alſo of Health and long life; and that *Laconica brevitate*, and ſo leave the reſt to your judgement and practice; eſpecially, conſidering what other Authors (my Maſters) have ſo learnedly, and no leſs ſufficiently intreated in this very Art.

To begin therefore (and but to ſay, what I ſaid before) with the cauſes of ſickneſs and death of Horſes in general, in the true knowledge whereof, conſiſteth their preſervation; I do hold it a thing moſt needful that we do perfectly know that thing which we do call *Generation* and *Corruption*, which all *Phyſicians* and *Philoſophers* have ſo much diſcuſſed both in their Schools and Writings. And now the body of the Horſe (like alſo to that of man) is compounded of the four *Elements*, *viz. Fire*, *Air*, *Water* and *Earth*; The natures of theſe four *Elements* are different: for *Fire* is hot and dry, but it participates moſt of Heat. *Air* is hot and moiſt, but chiefly moiſt: *Water* is moiſt and cold, but moſt cold; *Earth* is cold and dry, but moſt dry. *Fire* and *Air* are both light *Elements*; and *Water* and *Earth* both heavy. Four Humours alſo there are, which be as it were four Children to theſe four Elements: and theſe are; *Blood*, *Flegm*, *Choler* and *Melancholy*. Theſe four *Humours* are attendant upon the four former *Elements*, without which a natural body cannot be made: for *Blood* naturally (if it be perfect) is hot and moiſt, but taketh moſt from heat, and therefore is ſubordinate to *Air*. *Flegm* is cold and moiſt, but the principal quality thereof is coldneſs, and therefore hath reference to *water*. *Choler* is hot and dry, but his cheifeſt nature is heat, and therefore is governed by the Element of *Fire*. *Melancholy* is cold and dry, but his chiefeſt condition is drineſs, and therefore ſubjects it ſelf to the Element of Earth. Now the fountain of the bloud is the Liver, which diſperſing it ſelf by the help of the *veins* into all the parts of the body, nouriſheth and preſerveth the ſame. Flegm preoccupateth the *Brain* being a cold and ſpungy ſubſtance, and the ſeat of the *ſenſible ſoul*. *Choler* inhabiteth the Liver, which being hot and dry, maketh a pleaſing harmony with the blood. *Melancholy* reſideth in the ſpleen, which is the receptacle and diſcharge of the excrements of the Liver.

Of the 4 Elements Fire, Air, Water, & Earth.

Of the 4 Humors. Blood, Flegm, Choler, and Melancholy.

Liver. From whence we may collect, that it hath its proper use and end: as for demonstration, blood principally nourisheth the *body*, Flegm occasioneth motion of the *joints* and *members*, Choler exciteth and provoketh the *body* to avoid its *excrements*; and lastly, Melancholy disposeth the body to an appetite. Whereupon all the learned Philosophers do with one unanimous assent agree in this, that in every *natural body* there are four principal *instrumental members*, from which all the parts of an *organical body* are said to be framed, and these are the *brain*, the *heart*, the *liver*, and the *stones* or *gignitors*; and each one of these do perform its true function to all the particular members of the *body*: for the *sinews* do receive their sustentation from the *brain*, and these are called *animal spirits*; the *arteries* from the *heart*, which are *vital spirits*, the *veins*, from the *liver*, which are *natural parts*, and the *seed vessels* from the *Stones* or *Gignitors*, as the place of *generation*.

The instrumental members, The brain, the heart, the liver, and the stones or gignitors.

Now for as much as I have shewed you the four *Elements* with their true natures, the four *Humours* with their qualities, and the four *instrumental members* with their true conditions: It now remaineth that we intreat briefly of the four *natural faculties*, which is in every *body*, together with their true attributes: The first *faculty* is to *eat*, the second to *retain*, the third to *concoct*, and the fourth to *expel*. And to answer to these four faculties, you must understand that there are residing in the body, the aforenamed *Humours*, that is to say, Blood, Flegm, Choler, and Melancholy, whereof *nature* maketh use of the service of but one of these only to work upon, which is an *excrement*, which we do justly call *Whey* or *Wheyish blood*, whose engendring is wrought in the Liver, and so conveyeth it self into the *veins*, at what time the four humours do take from the *body* that form and substance it ought to assume: and of this very *liquor* doth *nature* serve it self, to resolve the *meat*, and so to operate, that the same may pass through the straight *Cares*, *Conduits*, *Pores*, and *Passages*, carrying nourishment to all the parts of the *bodie*. You must therefore understand that the *Veins* are the receptacles for the *Blood* which is mixed with the *vital spirits*, so as the said *Veins* have their source or origin from the *Liver*; whereby their office is to exhaust from the *Liver* unto the *Veins* the said *Wheyish* substance, and to inject part thereof

The four natural faculties, To eat, to retain, to concoct, and to expel.

through the paſſages into the *Bladder*, and from thence again forth of the body: by which means the body is freed from offence, and from ſuſtaining damage: whereof two of the *Veins* conduct part of the ſaid whey from the *Liver* unto the *Cods*, and ſo to the *ſeed Veſſels*, where it remaineth with ſome ſmall quantity of the pureſt *blood*, by which means the operation of the *Stones* (whoſe quality are hot and dry) do thereby effect a moſt [illegible] *Seed*. Which two *veins* nature (who is the moſt exact Artiſt, and *quæ nihil habet vitii*) hath planted one in the reins on the right ſide, which endeth in the right *Cod*, and another ſemblable in the left; both which take their iſſue from either of the *Cods* accordingly; beſides, nature hath beſtowed upon the right *Cod*, much heat and drineſs, ſo hath ſhe given alſo in the left, as great a quantity of cold and moiſture, the right *Cod* by means of its heat engendring the Male, and the left by reaſon of its cold engendring the Female; and ſo likewiſe is it as well of the Female, as of the Male of every creature. But now to come to the *Heart*, which is formed with the *Liver* and *Brain*, and maintained with the pureſt *Blood*, which is ſo exceſſively hot, as whilſt the creature liveth if you put but your finger into its hollow part, it is impoſſible to continue it there long without burning or ſcalding the ſame: from whence it muſt neceſſarily enſue, that the *Liver* being the fountain of all the *blood*, muſt of neceſſity have great and abundance of pure *blood*, wherewith to ſupport and maintain the ſtructure of the whole body; and the vital ſpirit of any creature is none other thing than a *corporeal fume* or *vapour*, (to ſpeak properly) very pure and ſubtile; begun in the *heart* by the operation of the natural heat, ſpread by the *arteries* and *veins*, to refreſh and comfort the whole body: which agitative or *ſubtile ſpirit* proceeding from the *heart* and *vital ſpirits*, being a continual motion, by reaſon that motion and agitation is the true life thereof, which continually remaineth in all living creatures. But the *heart*, which may be truly and rightly ſtiled the *fountain of life* and *heat*, nature hath aſſigned it its proper place, which is to be ſituate in the Center, that is the middle part of the body: From whence proceedeth life and heat into each organ of the body, by which means they are preſerved and enabled to perform their natural and proper function. And as touching the *Cods*, if the *liver* be not well ſtored, nay full of pure and perfect *blood*,

blood, neither is the creature able to concoct and digeſt its meat, nor can the *cods* be hot: So as if there be in thoſe parts a defect of heat, the *ſeed* of the beaſt cannot be perfectly concocted; by which means the Horſe becometh frigid and impotent, and without any power at all of *Procreation*. And this is as much as need be ſaid of this ſubject: Wherein if I have any way erred, or not delivered my ſelf ſo clearly, whereby to be underſtood as I deſire, the blame muſt light upon the great deſire I promiſed to brevity: Howſoever I have endeavoured what in me lieth, to dilate and explicate my ſelf at full.

Now I will begin to ſhew you what means we have to preſerve Horſes from all inward Diſeaſes; which conſiſteth of four ways, *viz.* by *Purging*, *Sweating*, *Phlebotomie* or *Blood-letting*, and *Vomit*. As touching the firſt which is *Purging*, it is twofold, to wit, outward and inward, This *outward purging* is by cleanſing the outward parts, which muſt be done immediately at what time you take up your Horſe from graſs, which would be about Saint *Bartholomews* day; for then the heart of graſs doth begin to decline, and therefore after that day, the graſs he then feedeth upon, breedeth no good but bad and corrupt blood, and ſo conſequently ſundry ſorts of maladies and infirmities in his body; beſides, the air beginneth then to grow ſharp, which is alſo very dangerous, yea, and moſt contagious for him: and if you ſuffer him to run after that time, his hair will grow long and rough, ſo as he will not have for that Winter any ſlick or glittering coat. Of this outward cleanſing or purging your Horſe, you ſhall find taught you in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 6. *Sect* 9 and the manner how and when it would be done, *viz.* in a warm day in the Sun, at what time every part and member of him would be ſoaped, waſhed, dried, and cleanſed from all manner of *ſweat*, *ſcurf*, *duſt*, *dirt*, and *filth*, yea and that all his whole Body over, eſpecially his Mane, Tail, and Cods, who being thus cleanſed and made dry again, and his yard drawn, cleanſed and anointed with tried Hogs greaſe, let his Ears, his Mane, (juſt ſo far as the top of the head ſtall will cover, and no more) and under the Chaul, be handſomly trimmed; then pull away by the roots all the ſmelling hairs about and under his mouth and noſe, and the long *ſtubborn hairs* under and about his *Eies*; which done, cut away about a

Cleanſing and purging, Or outward Purging.

handful of the lower part of his Tail even and decently; then cauſe the Ferrier to ſhoe him up, but let him be careful to pare him neatly, and to open the Heels and Fruſh. Then cloath him up warm, and ſtopped with ſmall wiſps: this done, anoint all his hoofs, with the ointment (having firſt waſhed them clean, and made them dry again) preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 11. *Sect* 9. Then let his feet be picked clean, and ſtop them with Ox-dung.

Cleanſing and purging inwardly. Now as touching his inward purging, this ought to be done evermore before you put him to any labour or exerciſe: And firſt let him be raked, by cauſing ſome one who hath a ſmall hand and arm, to anoint them firſt with a little ſweet Butter, or Oil de Bay; but ſome do uſe Soap, which I do hold too ſharp, and ſo putting his hand into his *Fundament*, let him bring forth all his dung, and while he is in ſo doing, let him try to feel for Bots or Worms, which may ſtick faſt unto the great *Gut*, and the place where the dung lieth; which if he find, let him pluck them away gently, and by degrees, and ſo bring them all out; this done, give him the Clyſter mentioned in *lib.* 2 *chap.* 6. *Sect.* 8. *Clyſt. &c.* 4. and ſo ſoon as the Horſe hath received it Clyſter-wiſe, then preſently clap his tail cloſe to his Tewel, and ſo cauſe him to keep it ſo long as you can: and this would be done, three or four days, before the Full or Change of the Moon: The next day after, give him Drink 1. his firſt drink, inſerted *lib.* 2. *chap.* 16. *Sect.* 14. *purg.* 4. the Drink 2. next day following, give him his ſecond drink, ſhewed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 16. *Sect.* 14. *purg.* 5. and ſo follow ſuch directions ſhewed you in thoſe Rules.

The next day following you have thus given him his two Let blood drinks, let him *blood*; if you ſhall find the *blood* to be very bad, take the more from him, if reaſonable good, take the leſs; but if very good, then draw your cord, and ſo do but give the *Veins* vent, and no more, then afterwards keep him with warm maſhes, as is taught you elſe-where. The next day after Sweat. *blood-letting*, *ſweat* him like as is preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 18. *Sect.* 28. *S.* And if you do diſcover any cold in him by any ſymp- Vomit. toms, then give him the vomit preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 20. *Sect.* 1. *V.* And to prevent any obſtructions in the *Liver* or *Lungs*, or his *Heart* any way oppreſſed, or otherwiſe to pre-

ſerve

ſerve the *blood* pure, and from corrupting; all which inconveniences may be a ready means to bring your Horſe to his end; give him in his Provender ſuch Powders and other Simples which you ſhall find in ſundry places of this Treatiſe; for this will refine his blood, and preſerve his *Liver* from infection, and keep him in perfect health. Powders to put into his Provender.

Thus far Sir, I have declared unto you what I underſtand of the Cauſe of Sickneſs in general. It remaineth now for me to inculcate what are the cauſes of health and long life, which to be brief are twelve in number, *Viz.* The firſt is nature, good digeſtion, and good Nutriment; the ſecond is moderation in feeding and diet; the third is moderate labour; the fourth is, moderate uſe of ſleeping and waking; the fifth is, moderate ſpending upon Mares: the ſixth is, moderate journies; the ſeventh is wholeſome air; the eighth is, not to be exerciſed too ſoon after graſs, the ninth is, to be kept from raw and green meats: the tenth is, not to be ſuffered to eat or drink being hot: the eleventh is, not to be either waſhed or walked at the end of his days journies: the twelfth is, to give him with his Provender ſuch powders and ſimples, as are preſcribed you in all thoſe Chapters which are by me mentioned. 12 Cauſes of health and long life.

Hippiatrus. *You have ſpoken well* Hippoſerus, *but I would have you ſhew me, how long life is acquired by theſe cauſes, which as yet you have not done, for you have but only delivered them in general heads and terms: wherefore I would gladly know what you can ſay of them in particular.*

Hippoſerus. I will Sir, theſe twelve cauſes of long life do come to a Horſe, either inwardly or outwardly, which howſoever they muſt be holpen either by Art, by Induſtry, or elſe by judgment and diſcretion.

Wherefore you muſt know that whatſoever is natural muſt neceſſarily proceed from good temperature, and proportionate mixture of the four qualities of the body, ſo as the juſt and adequate proportions of temperate mixture, are the true cauſes of long life, by reaſon that all mixtures of ſuperfluities are againſt theſe three things, *viz.* Nature, good digeſtion, and ſound Nutriment. For heat and nutriment are then well proportioned, when neither the moiſture with its too great quantity is predominant, whereby it devoureth the heat; nor when overmuch- 1. What things do hinder nature, digeſtion and nutriment.

vermuch heat too ſuddenly conſumeth and deſtroyeth the moiſture; howbeit there muſt be a neceſſity that the heat muſt have a kind of regality and dominion over the moiſture, otherwiſe it will never be able to nouriſh the body as it ought.

2. Moderation in eating.

The ſecond cauſe of long life, is the moderation of their natural appetite of *eating*, it being available either in exceſs to kill and deſtroy, or in moderation to ſave: whereby the Horſe ſhall daily repair the decay of his humidity, by ſupply of moderate nouriſhment, and never overwhelm or ſuppreſs his heat with too great abundance of moiſture, nor mix his *Humidum Radicale* with too much ſuperfluous impurities; for extreams are evermore perillous and ill, as well in exceſs as in defect: For as too much eating (be the meat never ſo good and wholeſome) hindereth good digeſtion, and engendreth Crudities, together with an evil habit of the ſtomach; ſo likewiſe too ſpare a diet doth as much weaken and decay nature, by reaſon that the heat which thereby will ariſe in the ſtomach, will firſt over-charge, and afterwards conquer the Radical moiſture; both which are friends to ſickneſs and death.

3. Moderate labour.

The third cauſe of long life is moderate labour, a matter very much effectual to digeſtion, and therefore to long life, dilating, and ſpreading nutriment into every member of the body: for over-much reſt breedeth in the body ſuper-abundance of bad humours, which cooleth the body, for want of which moderate exerciſe, it is as it were caſt into a ſleep, and in a manner through lumpiſhneſs beſotted and benummed: from whence doth ſpring another miſchief equivalent to the former, to wit, a collection of excremental ſuperfluities, occaſioned through lazineſs, and idleneſs, by reaſon that the Horſe, for want of moderate exerciſe, is not able to digeſt his received nutriment; by which means many maladies are engendred in his body proceeding from corruption in the blood, crudities in the ſtomach, and the like; becauſe he hath in his body (as a man may properly ſay) a very ſink or ſtanding-pool of unnatural humours. And therefore I give all men this caveat, viz. to be very careful they do not put their Horſes to overmuch labour and travel, until ſuch time as they have well digeſted their meat; for that by their immoderate exerciſe, they over-clog their ſtomachs, and ſo they cannot have a true concoction

coction, their ſtomachs being full and their bodies cloyed and overmuch ſtuffed with raw and cruded humors; which through violent exerciſe are diſperſed, firſt into all the Veins, (corrupting the blood) and from thence into all the parts of the body, which ingendreth ſo many noiſome infirmities within the body, and ſo many loathſome ſorances without the body, as will not eaſily be cured: and therefore it doth greatly behoove a man, that his Horſe (if he love him, and deſire to keep him long) his exerciſe be neither too intemperate, nor too little, but ordered with judgment and diſcretion.

The fourth cauſe of long life is moderate uſe of ſleeping and waking, for theſe are the maintenance of health and long life, if they be had with moderation, and both are very noxious otherwiſe beyond meaſure. For inordinate watching is a main enemy to health; for it waſteth and conſumeth the vital ſpirits, and it decayeth the *Humidum Radicale*, cauſeth maceration and ſterility, it is an impediment to the operation of the *Brain* and ſenſe, it begetteth ſiccity in the *Brain*, and aridity in the *Marrow*, and worketh the evil effects in the *Liver* and *Lungs*. On the other ſide, immoderate ſleep hindreth health, quencheth the natural heat, and conſumeth the moiſture in the *Body*: for ſleep is but a vapour and aſcending from the ſtomach to the Brain, which ſtupifieth the Brain for a ſeaſon, and during that time it maketh the Body ſenſeleſs; and the ſooner it being provoked by over-much feeding, ſtuffing, and filling of the belly, and therefore it greatly ſtandeth a man upon that he have a vigilant care to his Horſe his ſleep, that it be moderately taken, for as I ſaid but now, as too much ſleep is noxious, ſo alſo too little is as prejudicial.

4. Moderate ſleep.

What manner of thing ſleep is.

The fifth cauſe of health and long life, is that great care be had in keeping your Horſe from exceſs in ſpending himſelf upon Mares, for that is Deaths Harbinger, by reaſon it doth after a moſt violent manner, conſume the ſpirits, debilitateth the *ſtomach*, drieth up the *brain* and *marrow*; and this is the reaſon why a Gelding (if he be kept free from Surfeits) is longer lived than the Stoned Horſe: So likewiſe the reaſon why a Mule, being a mixed creature, (howbeit a Monſter in nature) is longer lived than either of them; for that his juſting (howſoever without fruit) in that kind if but once only in the whole courſe of

Moderation in ſpending upon Mares.

of his life; and therefore I could wiſh, that one Horſe be not ſuffered to cover above three Mares at the moſt throughout the whole year, and that from the years of his coming to ſix, until he hath attained twelve, and no longer; for when a Horſe hath once ſeen twelve years of his age, nature will then begin to decay, whereby he ſhall not be able to beget Colts which can prove ſo good and ſerviceable, as thoſe he begat in his young years. For beſides (hard and toilſome labour) this act of coity with Mares doth more weaken and dull him; for you cannot be ignorant of the old Proverb, which ſaith; *Omne animal poſt Coitum triſte.*

Moderate journying. The ſixth cauſe of long life is, moderate riding in long journies, for by intemperate driving his heat from the inward into the outward parts of the body, is the cauſe that the fire of *Choler* will be enkindled, which will be ſo vehement as that it muſt needs prove an infinite horrour unto nature, ſo inflaming the *blood*, that if the Horſe at the ſame inſtant be not very empty and clean in his *body*, the *blood* and *humours* being mixed together, will be through the violence thereof, diſperſed into all and every part and member of the *body*, and then a ſudden cold taken upon it (which rarely faileth) doth inſtantly putrifie and corrupt the *blood*, and congealeth it to the unavoidable peril of the life of the Horſe; eſpecially if after this intemperate riding, he be either ſuffered to drink, or ridden into the water, as many of your ſurly and lazy *Grooms* are accuſtomed to do. My counſel therefore is, that when you have any long journey in hand, let his travel be moderate, inhibit walking, waſhing, or giving him cold water, but ſo ſoon as you ſhall diſmount him, let his *Keeper* have him into the Stable well littered, and throughly rubbed through all the parts of his body till he be thorow dry, let him be cloathed and ſtopped up warm, and at a reaſonable time let him have white water.

7. Wholeſome Air. The ſeventh cauſe of health and long life, is wholſome air and ſoil, clean keeping, painful and good dreſſing, the Stable kept neat, ſweet, and warm; his food old, ſweet, clean, and dry, well ſifted and ſhaken, and freed from duſt and filth; his litter ſweet and dry, and all wet and old litter removed from under his feet and manger, and let all evil ſavours be removed from about the Stable.

The

The eighth cauſe of health and long life is, not to ſuffer your Horſe to be travelled or exerciſed too ſoon after you have taken him from graſs, until ſuch time as he be throughly purged and cleanſed from his ſuperfluous and bad humors, which he gat by being at graſs in time of his reſt, and full feeding, which certainly are not a few; but hereof I have ſufficiently ſpoken before in this very Chapter, and therefore I paſs it over. 8. Not to travel too ſoon after graſs.

The ninth cauſe of health and long life, is, not to ſuffer him to eat any raw, or green meat whileſt he ſhall be kept in the Stable, for that ſuch diet doth beget many bad humours oppugnant to nature; as Feavers, Surfets, Yellowes, Stavers, Anticors, Morfounding, and the like; all which will debilitate Nature, and endanger the breeding of many deſperate diſeaſes; to the peril as well of the Horſes life, as health, if extraordinary care be not had (by way of prevention) in very good time, by the diligence of an *Expert Ferrier*. 9. Not to eat raw or green meat.

The tenth cauſe of health and long life, is, by keeping your Horſe from meat and drink whilſt he is hot; for that doth weaken the heart and ſpirits, it is an enemy to the Appetite and digeſtion, engendreth Oppilations and Obſtructions, corrupteth and putrifieth the blood, breedeth Feavers, and many other maladies, as is very often the occaſion of ſuddain death. 10. Not to eat whilſt he is hot.

The eleventh cauſe of health and long life is, to be very preciſe, that you do not permit your Horſe to be walked or waſhed after labour or travel, if in his travel he hath been heated, but preſently after you diſmount him, let him be led into the Stable, well littered, warm cloathed, painfully rubbed and dried; but hereof I have ſpoken ſufficiently in the ſixth cauſe, and elſewhere. 11. Not to be walked or waſhed.

The twelfth and laſt cauſe of health and long life is to uſe ſometimes to put and mix with his Provender certain powders, *viz.* the Powder of Anniſeeds and of Licoris, or of Fenugreek, Turmerick, Bay-berries or Brimſtone, white Lilly roots ſmall chopped, Enulacampane roots, if green and newly gathered, otherwiſe dried and beaten to fine powder, or the roots of *Polypodium* of the Oke or its powder, Savin, Marſh-Mallows, Rue, Hyſſop, Hore-hound, or Colts foot: theſe either ſmall chopped if you give them green, or elſe dried and given in powder, which Simples will keep him ſound and in perfect health, 12. To mix certain Powders with his Provender.

for their virtues are to purifie the *blood*, prevent Obſtructions, open and reſolve the *Liver*, cool the *blood*, and preſerve the whole ſtructure of the *body* in excellent health.

Thus have I (as ſuccinctly as I have been able) declared the reaſons of ſickneſs in general, together with the true cauſe of health and long life, the contrarieties whereof will engender, in your Horſe, infirmities and death: for the ſenſitive Bodies as well of all other creatures, as of Horſes, are often (upon the leaſt cauſe given) diſguſted and brought out of joint and temper, by reaſon of the aſſidual warfare of the never-ceaſing jarring Elements, that it not a little importeth a Maſters care to look very narrowly into the ſtate of his Body. For put caſe that time and experience do approve the contrariety of the before-named inherent qualities of Heat, Cold, Dryneſs, and Moiſture, the formal cauſes of all intrinſecal diſeaſes, the continuance and unperceivable lingring in them, together with the true cauſe of their ſudden and untimely death: Yet is there means as eaſily to be found, as well for the prevention of all enſuing ſickneſs (if we will but apply our care and diligence) before it approacheth, as for the able curing of them when they are come, and palpably perceived; according to the opinion of famous *Galen*, who ſaith: *He that preventeth the cauſe of ſickneſs, preventeth the ſickneſs it ſelf: for take away the cauſe and the effect followeth not.*

Hippophilus. You have ſpoken well *Hippoſerus* upon this ſubject; but yet your laſt Article is not without difficulty, in that you do adviſe to adminiſter certain powders, and other Simples unto a Horſe in his Provender, which ſhould conſerve him in health, and prevent all inward diſeaſes in him. I cannot certainly but approve very much hereof; in that they be moſt ſovereign in ſuch caſes you ſpeak of: but the manner of adminiſtring them, is the thing I much ſtand upon, knowing right well that theſe Simples (or the greater part of them) are of ſtrong and offenſive ſcents and ſmells, and others are as far diſguſtful and unpleaſant to his taſte, whereby he may very eaſily be induced by diſliking thoſe Powders and Simples, to loath and utterly forſake his Provender.

Hippoſerus. Sir, you object well, nevertheleſs, give me leave to tell you, that in caſes of this nature, Uſe (we ſay) makes per-

perfectneſs: True it is, that Horſes will have an averſion from theſe kind of Drugs and Simples, but what then? Have you no fear, for rather than he will not eat his Provender at all, hunger will in time bring him to it, yea as well thoſe Powders, as his Provender: provided you do not offend him, by putting in too great a quantity at once, but by degrees, and that by a little at a time, till cuſtom hath made him perfect; and moſt certain it is, that ſome Horſes are ſo coy, dainty, and choice feeders; as that you can hardly provoke them to eat any Provender at all; whereas others there be who are ſo great feeders, as that they will make no bones to devour what meat ſoever you ſhall lay before them; for it is very homely viands, which a good ſtomach will refuſe: nevertheleſs if you ſhall find that your Horſe cannot be brought to take theſe things with his Provender, you may then ſometimes adminiſter of theſe Powders and other Simples, with good Ale or Beer, giving it him as you give drinks, and it will ſuffice: howbeit it will do him more good to be given in his Provender.

Hippiatrus. *What is the beſt thing to be given to a Horſe to preſerve the* Liver *from infecting, and to refine the* blood?

Liver to preſerve.

Hippoſerus. I have known many things adminiſtred in this caſe, but the very beſt is, to take the root of *Polipodium* of the Oke, to waſh it, and to make it very clean; then cut or chop it very ſmall, then take Liver wort, one handful, ſmall chopped alſo, and ſo much Rhubarb as the weight of a Teſter, either cut very ſmall, or grated: give him this in his Provender three or four mornings together faſting, and give him no meat in three hours after, and let his drink be white water for that day, and give him this monthly, and once in half a year make tryal of his *blood* to ſee how pure or foul it is, and adminiſter accordingly.

Hippophilus. *I pray you* Hippoſerus, *what is the true nature of Rhubarb? Whether is it purgative, or binding?*

Hippoſerus. Truly Sir, Rhubarb hath two contrary natures: for if you either ſcrape, grate, or cut it; then is it a looſener, for it diſſolveth and openeth the *Liver*, and expelleth the obſtructions thereof; it expulſeth all bad humours in and about the *heart*, *liver*, and *ſpleen*, it cleanſeth the *body*, and ſendeth away the peccant humours among the excrements, and all ſuch

things as may annoy or offend the *intrails* : But if you ſhall pound or beat Rhubarb in a Morter, or otherwiſe, the ſpirit thereof being a ſubtile *body*, will *Tranſire* and fly away, whereby the operation thereof will be to bind, and be no way profitable.

Hippophilus. Let this ſuffice for the preſent, I have detained you too long from your particular affairs : it now grows late, and therefore I will take leave till our next meeting, which (God willing) ſhall be to morrow at the ſame hour, at what time I ſhall not fail you ; for that I deſire a final end of this buſineſs : wherefore for this preſent I will take leave, recommending you both to God.

CHAP. III.

Of ſuch things which are of neceſſity to be known by every expert Ferrier, before he doth adventure to adminiſter.

Hippoph. HItherto *Hippiatrus* we have proceeded orderly, and your ſervant *Hippoſerus* hath diſcourſed very accurately and pithily : Nevertheleſs ſome things there be which yet he hath not put home enough, whereby I have not received that full ſatisfaction I deſire.

Hippiatrus. Sir, Sithence we are met here again to diſcuſs ſuch things whereof you deſire to inform your ſelf ; my will is to have you fully and ſubſtantially ſatisfied (if it may be) in every point, which might concern this our Subject ; wherefore I intreat you to propoſe your doubts, and look in what *Hippoſerus* may fail, my ſelf ſhall endeavour to ſupply to the utmoſt of our beſt skill.

Hippophilus. Sir, I thank you, but withal, one favour I muſt beg of you, and that is, for that my memory may peradventure, fail me (it being none of the beſt) if as things occur to my thoughts, I ſhould ask any queſtion that might happen to be out of ſeaſon and order, yet you will not take it ill that I ſhould interrupt him, or you in your diſcourſes.

Hippi-

Hippiatrus. No truly Sir, will I not, and therefore beg to make your demand, and *Hippoſerus* ſhall give you anſwer.

Hippophilus. I thank you, then thus: As touching the compoſition of the *body* of the Horſe, more I grant might have been ſpoken in words, but not more to purpoſe; for a man to run into diviſions and ſubdiviſions, were but to beget confuſion in the unlearned Reader, (ſuch are your ordinary Smiths for the moſt part, for whoſe inſtruction I do principally undergo theſe pains) and to ſend him away worſe ſatisfied in his judgment, than before. Whereas a plain and ſuccinct method doth more edifie and inſtruct him than the other can do. I therefore demand of you *Hippoſerus*, that foraſmuch as you have ſpoken well of the four Elements; to wit Fire, Air, Water, and Earth, yet have you not demonſtrated their natures, or where they are placed. For true it is, my ſelf, and all men do perfectly know, that theſe four Elements are not theſe four material and viſible Elements which we daily behold and make uſe of, as things moſt uſeful for us towards the ſuſtentation of our livelihood: being creatures without which we cannot live: but I would gladly have you ſhew what their true natures be, being things incorporate, and therefore concealed from our eyes: I would alſo know in what parts they do reign, and have their identity or being.

Hippoſerus. Sir, as touching the natures of theſe four Elements, I have ſufficiently made appear unto you in *Capitulo præcedenti, pæne in initio*, but as touching the ſecond part of your demand, I ſay, that theſe four Elements which be in nature ſo diſſonant and diſtinct one from the other, as that nothing can be more, no white can be more oppoſite to black; nevertheleſs that you may know theſe Elements, I thus aver. The Fire is higheſt, being near neighbour, or adjoyning to the Moon, and therefore naturally hot: Air is placed next unto it, and therefore naturally light. The Water is annexed unto the Air, & therefore naturally moiſt. And the Earth is ſituate next to the Water, but loweſt, and out of that reaſon, naturally heavy. As touching their vertues all the learned do hold that fire by means of its heat, exciteth matter to generation, and occaſioneth warmth in every living body, and it doth ripen things raw and undigeſted, in ſuch excellent and ſubtile wiſe, as that the Air, which is of a more groſs nature, may the better enter into

The Nature of the 4 Elements.

1. Fire.

the

the body, making a commixture with the Fire, whereby alſo it moderateth the heat of the Fire, the coldneſs of the Water, and the drineſs of the Earth, ſo as diſtemper may the leſs oppreſs the *Body*. The Air by reaſon of its moiſtneſs maketh the matter apt to receive its natural ſhape, and through the inſtinct of the Fire its natural heat, cauſing the mixt *Bodies* as well ſubtile as penetrable, as well light and moving, whereby they be neither too groſs nor too heavy, and withal the Air cooleth and abateth the extremity of the burning heat of the *Heart*, *Liver*, &c. As touching the third Element, which is Water, its nature is, that through the coldneſs thereof it congealeth, conglutinateth, and bindeth in mixt *Bodies* both the parts and members together, to wit, *Sinews*, *Bones*, and *Fleſh*; ſo as the Water by means of its coldneſs doth temper and aſſwage the violent heat of the Fire, and the condenſity of the Air, collecting thoſe things together which otherwiſe they would have diſſevered. And as touching the Element of Earth, its nature is by means of its drineſs and Siccity, in mixt *Bodies*, ſo to harden and faſten them together, as that having once aſſumed their ſhapes, it cauſeth them to retain and keep them, which otherwiſe by the force of the other Elements would be ſo lax and looſe, as not to be able to hold together, wherein I could produce many familiar inſtances, which for brevities ſake I am inforced to omit. But the opinion of the beſt *Phyſicians* is, that when any natural *Body* dieth, the ſubſtance thereof returneth back again to thoſe Elements from whence it came. Thus you may plainly ſee, that fire is naturally hot, and therefore ſeparateth: Air moiſt, and therefore giveth Shape: Water cold, and therefore bindeth; and Earth dry, and therefore naturally hardneth, and keepeth its impreſſion: Wherefore in any Malady in a *Horſe*, obſerve but this one Rule, *viz.* that when at any time an Inflammation ſhall ariſe in the *Body*, be you confident it proceeds of Fire, and therefore you muſt adminiſter (if you will perform a right Cure) things contrary to that Element; to wit, what may be agreeable to Air and Water, whereby to moiſten, cool, and allay the rage of the heat. If it be *Flux* of *Blood*, or the like, proceeding from the abundance of moiſture; which takes its origin from the Element of Air, then muſt you apply Medicines

2. Air.

3. Water.

4. Earth.

cines which may connive with the Earth, whoſe drineſs may harden ſuch moiſture. If it proceed of *Cold Rheumes*; or the like, whereby the infirmity hath its ſource from the Element of Water, you muſt then adminiſter Medicines cohering with the Element of Fire, and Air, which may be able through its heat and moiſture to expel all cold and groſs humours. And laſtly, if the grief be Maingeneſs, or the like, which cometh from the Earth, which be dry and arid infectious diſeaſes, then muſt your applications be had from the Element of Fire, whoſe nature is to diſſolve all ſiccative humours: wherefore (I ſay again) that heat being too predominant is aſſwaged by the means of moiſtneſs and coldneſs; too great moiſtneſs by heat and drineſs, over-much coldneſs by heat and drineſs, and too great a proportion of drineſs by heat alone.

Hippophilus. *But then tell me, I pray you, be there no other Elements, or beginnings in living* Bodies, *more than theſe four before named?*

Hippoſerus. No Sir, not any other which have their beginnings: but there are two other which the Learned do term proper *Elements*: *viz.* the Ingendring of *Seed*, and *Menſtrual Blood*; but theſe (I ſay) do aſſume their eſſence from the other four Elements, whereby they become a *Body*, which otherwiſe they could not, and therefore are ſubordinate to them, and they take their place after them.

Hippophilus. *Having ſpoken ſufficiently of the natures and qualities of theſe four Elements: What ſay you to the Humours?*

The four firſt Qualities.

Hippoſerus. I ſay that the Humours are alſo four in number, which Phyſicians do ſtile the firſt *qualities*, according, as I have formerly intimated: and theſe four are *Blood*, *Phlegm*, *Choler*, and *Melancholy*: *Blood* being ſweet in taſte, *Phlegm*, neither ſweet, bitter, nor ſowr, and therefore of no taſte, or if of any, (like to that of good Oyl) rather ſweet than otherwiſe: *Choler* is bitter in taſte, and *Melancholy* is ſowre in taſte: So as by theſe taſtes you may diſtinguiſh them; and theſe Humours have reference or near affinity unto the four Elements; for like as I have before agnized, *Blood* is of the nature of the *Air*; *Phlegm* of the *Water*; *Choler* of the *Fire*; and *Melancholy* of the *Earth*; and theſe Humours have their particular abode and reſidence in the *body*, abſolute and peculiar to themſelves; as *Blood* hath his

his abiding in and about the *Heart*, *Phlegm* in the *Brain*, *Choler* in the *Liver*, and *Melancholy* in the *Spleen*, whereby we may the better come to know what Complexion reigneth in every *Horſe*, as alſo how he is naturally qualified and diſpoſed; for the *Horſe* that is of a *Sanguine Complexion* is commonly a Bright Bay, who is of diſpoſition jovial, wanton, or merry, agile, and of motion temperate, neither too fiery, nor too dull or Melancholy; Your *Milk white* is of *Complexion Phlegmatique*, whoſe property commonly is to be blunt, heavy and ſlow; Your *Bright-Sorrel* hath commonly reference to *Choler*; and he is naturally for the moſt part fiery, hot, and ever free-mettled, but yet of no great ſtrength: Your *Mouſe-Dun* and ſuch like ruſty and ſoot-colours are commonly of a *Melancholy Complexion*, and they be ordinary, cowardly faint-hearted, ſubject to ſtarting, ſlothful, reſtiſe, ſtubborn, diſobedient, revengeful, &c. but if theſe *Complexions* be rightly ſymbolized, and do all meet in one and the ſame *Horſe*, according to each ones proper nature, they do perform their functions as they ought in a perfect harmony, whereby the *Horſe* remaineth ſound and healthy; but if there be diſcord or diſagreement in the Elements and Humours, there muſt be the like in the *Complexions*, and then doth the poor *Horſe* ſuffer for it to the danger both of Life and Health.

Hippophilus. *I ever underſtood that there are certain* Spirits *which do remain in the* Body *of every* Horſe: *do you know them* Hippoſerus.

Hippoſerus. Yes, I do; and they be ſaid to be two in number, *viz.* The *Spirit Animal*, and the *Spirit Vital*; the *Spirit Animal* hath its reſidence in the *Brain*, by which means it giveth motion, feeling, and power to the *Horſe*, through the aid of the *Sinews*; and the *Spirit Vital* makes abode in the *Heart*, which is the only cauſe of the exceſſive heat thereof, which diſperſeth the *Blood* into every part and member of the *Body*. For the *Heart* and the *Brain* are in equality abſolutely different, the *Heart* being moſt violently hot, (as I have before ſhewed) and the *Brain* is as extreamly cold: and ſo hereof needs not any more be ſpoken in this place.

Spirit Animal.

Spirit Vital.

Hippophilus, *But may not a man conjecture to what infirmities or diſeaſes* Horſes *may probably be ſubject by their* Complexion? *Hippoſerus.*

Hippoferus. Yes Sir, very eaſily, yea and that with ſo great advantage and profit to the *Cure*, if the *Ferrier* be expert and skilful in the making and applying of his Medicines, as that nothing can be more. For example, the *Horſe* that is of colour either *Bright-bay*, or *Dark-bay*, with a pleaſant and cheerful countenance, or if he be a white *Flee bitten*, *white Lyard*, or *Black* with a *white-ſtar*, or race down the face, or white-foot; if he be of either of theſe colours, we hold him to be of a *Sanguine complexion*, and in *Horſes* of this *Complexion* the Element of Air is moſt predominant, and they be commonly of nature affable, well-metled, active, and of good ſtrength; but the Maladies whereunto they are moſt uſually incident are Leproſies, Glanders, Conſumption, and the like, yet theſe *Horſes* are frequently of ſo able Conſtitutions, as that they have vigour enough to endure good and ſtrong Medicines: provided theſe Medicines be not too hot, but cooling. The *Horſe* which is *Milk-white*, *Yellow*, *Dun*, *Sanded*, or *Pie-bald*; theſe take more from the Element of Water than from any of the other three and theſe we ſay are of a Flegmatick Complexion; and they are naturally ſlow, dull, heavy, and neſh or waſh of their fleſh; and they be moſt inclined to Poſes, Rhumes, pains in the head, Stavers, Yellows, and the like, and theſe *Horſes* can undergo good ſtrong Medicines, if there be cauſe to adminiſter ſuch; provided theſe Medicines be not made of Ingredients, that be over-cold.

The diſcaſe known by the complexion.

Of the Sanguine complexion.

Of the Flegmatick complexion.

The Horſe whoſe colour is *Mouſe-Dun*, *Choſt-nut*, *Brown*, or of a ſoot-colour, or *Iron-Grey*; theſe are commonly of a *Melancholy Complexion*, participating more of the Earth than of the other Elements, by which means they are of nature dull, heavy, dogged, reſtif, faint-hearted, *&c.* and therefore moſt inclined to Inflamation in the *Spleen*, Siccity, and Aridity in the *Liver*, to the Dropſie, Frenzy, and the like; theſe *Horſes* are better able to endure ſtronger Medicines than any of the former; provided thoſe Medicines be not ſiccatrizing or drying, but ſuch as are both cold and moiſt. The *Horſe* whoſe colour is cole-Black, without any white at all, a deep Iron Grey, a Bright-Sorrel, or the like, ſuch coloured *Horſes* we ſay be of a *Cholerick Complexion*, and they partake more of the Element of *Fire*, than of any other of the three former, for that they

Of the Melancholy complexion.

Of the cholerick complexion.

are by nature fiery hot, too free, and hare-brained, and therefore cannot be very ſtrong of conſtitution; wherefore the *Ferrier* muſt be very careful he do not adminiſter any ſtrong medicine to ſuch a Horſe at any time, for ſo he may ſoon deſtroy him.

Hippophilus. *But yet* Hippoſerus, *I would be glad to know of what* Complexion *that Horſe is, in whom all the four* Complexions *do jointly meet; as namely in that Horſe, that is either of a Brown-Bay, or a Dapple-Bay, Dapple-Grey, a Black full of Silver-hairs, a Black-Rone, a Red-Rone, or the like.*

Of the four complexions meeting in one horſe, which is the beſt and moſt perfect.

Hippoſerus. Sir, as I cannot give you more *Elements* than theſe four before named, ſo I am not able to give you more than four *Complexions*; but yet that one *Horſe* may participate of them all, is a thing poſſible enough, and this is the very beſt *Complexion* of all other; yea, and the moſt perfect: For *Horſes* in whom the four *Complexions* do meet, cannot but be the beſt and moſt able of all other, yea, and the beſt for *ſhape*, for *colour*, and for *mettle*, the ſoundeſt and moſt healthy; for howſoever they may accidentally fall into infirmities, nevertheleſs they are not naturally inclinable to any; and therefore when a Ferrier ſhall at any time have occaſion to adminiſter unto them, he muſt be very circumſpect the Phyſick be punctually adminiſtred according to the nature of the diſeaſe, and he muſt examine both the cauſe and time of his firſt languiſhing; as whether it be a ſickneſs newly taken, or long before; whether it proceeded of a Surfeit, hard riding, Evil-diet? *&c.* by which means he may adminiſter his Phyſick (whether Pills, Potions, or Clyſters) the more ſecurely: For medicines given upon a firſt ſickneſs, and before the Horſe be far ſpent and weakned through the diſtemper of the malady, may be compounded the ſtronger, and will work to more effect; but after a long ſickneſs, when as the *ſpirits* both *vital* and *animal* are enfeebled, the *Elements* are in open rebellion each one againſt the other, and the humours in a confuſed diſtemper; then (I ſay) muſt the Phyſical medicine be ſo tempered and ordered, ſo as that nature muſt be aſſiſted, but no way further perplexed or troubled; whereby the evil humours muſt be ſent away, the *body* cleanſed and acquitted of the cauſes of its diſtemper, and then it will not be long before the poor *Creature* may recover ſtrength

ſtrength and ſanity, and ſo repair daily the decay of his former ſtate of health.

Hippophilus. *How do you hold the cauſes of ſickneſs?*

Hippoſerus. If you mean the cauſes of ſickneſs ſimply, you muſt underſtand, that all Maladies and Sickneſs of what nature ſoever they be, are *effects* and evil *diſpoſitions* (as Learned Phycians do call them) unnatural, which do proceed, and are, as it were, the Precurſors which do moſt violently hale and pull ſickneſs after them; and thus in a word do they define the cauſes of ſickneſs, and not otherwiſe. The cauſes of ſickneſs defined.

Hippophilus. *How many ſorts of cauſes be there?*

Hippoſerus. Only two degrees, *viz. Intrinſecal* and *Extrinſecal*: the *Intrinſecal* are thoſe which are ingendred within the *body*, and therefore cannot be made viſible to the eye, but are made known by their ſymptoms: The ſecond are *Extrinſecal*, and therefore are more eaſily diſcovered and known by their outward objects, wherefore they need no further diſcourſe. Two cauſes of ſickneſs.

Hippophilus. *How do you define ſickneſs as it is in its own nature?*

Hippoſerus. Ægritudo, or *Infirmitas*, is none other thing than that which is contrary to nature. For all intrinſecal infirmities moſt commonly poſſeſs and ſeize upon the whole *body*; and thoſe are moſt frequently Feavers, Peſtilence, Convulſions, *&c.* Other infirmities again do attach, but only certain members or parts of the *body*, as Colds which do perplex the *head*, Surfeits which do annoy the ſtomach, and Splents, Spavens, Pearls, and Haws in the eyes, and the like extrinſical ſorances: but more ſorts of infirmities and maladies I never knew, every ſeveral of which may moſt eaſily and palpably be diſcovered as well by their inward as outward ſigns. Sickneſs defined.

Hippophilus. *What is your opinion as touching the adminiſtring of Drinks, Potions, and Clyſters to a ſick Horſe, to wit, whether it be better to apply them very warm, or but indifferently?*

Hippoſerus. Sir, even in this very point is a ſpecial heed and care fit to be had and taken; for by giving Medicines or Clyſters too warm, a Ferrier may eaſily undo all, and utterly deſtroy the *Horſe* he would labour to cure; yea with as great facility, as if he gave him in the place of a wholſom *Cordial*, a formal *poyſon*: for you muſt underſtand, that a *Horſe*, of all o- How to apply inward medicines.

ther living *Creatures*, can worſe indure to receive inwardly hot things, by reaſon that he is inwardly ſo extreamly hot by nature; and therefore whatſoever thing is to be adminiſtred to him, ought not to be more than bloudwarm at moſt, by any means, for that nothing can be more noxious to him than the endangering the ſcalding of his *Stomach* and *Entrails*: beſides let his drinks and inward medicines be given him in the moſt leiſurely manner you are able, for fear of ſuffocating him; neither ſuffer any man (as I have ſeen many uſe to do) to pinch his *Gullet* or *Wind-Pipe*, whereby he is provoked to cough moſt violently, for it is a thing moſt dangerous both to his wind, and cauſeth oft-times fleſhy ſtuff like to the *Garget* to grow in his throat. Now for the adminiſtring of Pills, Balls, and ſuch like medicines, little advice is required, if they be not made too great; only if you take forth his *Tongue* firſt, and then put them up into his *mouth*, you cannot do amiſs, but of this method no man can be ignorant.

Hippophilus. *What time is beſt wherein to adminiſter your medicines to a ſick Horſe?*

The time when to adminiſter.

Hippoſerus. Evermore in a morning faſting, unleſs upon urgent occaſion (as in caſe of ſudden and dangerous ſickneſs, which may happen to fall out upon a ſudden accident) and the longer he be kept faſting from meat and drink, as well before he taketh his Phyſick, as after, it will be the better; for by that means his medicine will work the more kindly in his *Body*? for he ought to be kept from eating and drinking at leaſt three hours before and after.

Hippophilus. *Is it requiſite he be exerciſed after the taking of his Phyſical medicines?*

What exerciſe is moſt meet with Phyſick.

Hippoſerus. Sir a little moderate exerciſe is very neceſſary, whereby his Phyſick may work the better, and the ſooner, as to trot him upon ſo eaſie apace as you can cauſe him to take, otherwiſe to walk him up and down out of the wind in the warm Sun, by the ſpace of a quarter of an hour; but then ſo ſoon as he cometh into the Stable, let his Stall be littered before-hand well, then preſently cloath him up, and ſtop him warm, and keep the air from him, neither let his Keeper go from him in three or four hours, but let him rivet his eyes upon him continually, obſerving well his poſtures and as occaſion

caſion may require, let him be at hand to help and ſupply the *Horſe* with all things neceſſary.

Hippophilus. *May a man attain to any knowledge of the health, or indiſpoſition of the Horſe by obſerving his* Ordure *or* Excrements? Of Excrements.

Hippoſerus. Yes may he Sir, and that very much; inſomuch as I would adviſe all careful Ferriers who have a deſire to attain reputation by their Art, that before they do adminiſter any inward medicine, whether purgations, or Cordials; that they be careful firſt (if poſſible) to ſee his *Ordure*: for I do find for the moſt part the *Ordure* is correſpondent to the food the Horſe eateth, eſpecially for the colour; for if he run at graſs, or be foyled in the Stable, then will his *dung* be evermore green, howbeit of a more bright, and ſometimes again of a more dark colour, and it will be rather ſoluble than hard; but the indifferent colour, and freer from hardneſs is ever beſt, and doth make appearance of the more ſanity and health of the *beaſt*, as alſo that he is thereby the leſs ſubject to coſtiveneſs, and therefore in better ſtate of *body*. But if his Ordure be very bright and laxative, it is an infallible ſign that he hath eaten ſomething that is againſt nature; as a Feather, or ſome naughty Worm, ſome Spider, or the like unwholſom thing, otherwiſe he ſcowreth of ſome inward cold which hath formerly lurked in his *ſtomach* or *body*: But if his *dung* at graſs or ſoil be very hard and coſtive, which he putteth forth with round and hard trattles, then is it a great ſign that he is very hot in his *body* and inward parts, which may endanger the Stavers, or elſe doth ſhew that he hath a ſurfeit, which he got (before his putting forth) through intemperate riding, waſhing, raw, or evil food, or the like, whereby the *Horſe* is in danger to become morfounded, to have the Yellows, or Jaundiſe, or a Feaver, which will otherwiſe hardly appear in him in its effects until his coming into the Stable, at what time due order muſt be taken for ſpeedy prevention. But if your *Horſe* do feed upon Straw, then will the colour of his *dung* be yellow and ſomewhat hard, long, and well compact, all which be tokens of a healthy and ſound *body*; but if it be reddiſh, and exceeding dry, it is a ſign of enſuing ſickneſs, by means of a great drought in the *body*, and ſo alſo if it be thin; but if it be blackiſh, and

doth

doth not ſmell ſtrong, then is it a ſign that the *Horſe* is in danger of death But if your *Horſe* do feed upon Hay and Oats, and that he be found in body, then will his *excrements* be brown, yellow, moiſt, and well compact, but if the brownneſs be converteth into reddiſhneſs, you may be then well aſſured that he hath ſome diſtemperature in his *body*; but when it converted into blackneſs, then if prevention be not ſpeedily had, death enſueth; and as touching the ſmell, that falleth out according to the quantity of the provender you give him, for the more Provender, the ſtronger will be the ſmell of his *Ordure*, and Peaſe and Beans will cauſe his *Ordure* to ſmell ſtronger than Oats, and Bread more than any Grain or Pulſe; and the more Bread and Provender you give him, the more perfect and ſound ſhall you keep him in his *body*. But if his *dung* be brown and ſlimy, and ſhine withal, then be you aſſured he hath much greaſe which lieth in his body, which Phyſick muſt fetch away from him, for then alſo is his *blood* putrified, corrupted, or inflamed. But if you do find by his *Excrements* that he voideth undigeſted ſtuff, which you may know by the whole corns of Oats, Wheat, and other Grain he ſendeth forth in his *dung*, then perſwade your ſelf, that your *Horſe* hath lately taken a formal ſurfeit, which may right eaſily bring him to his end, if a diſcreet courſe be not ſpeedily taken: In a word, if his *dung* be black, and hath little or no ſmell, then make you no queſtion but that he is in danger of death, which will full-ſoon after follow if the greater care be not taken to hinder and prevent the ſame.

Hippophilus. *Have you made the like obſervations of the* Urine *or* Water *of the Horſe?*

Hippoſerus. Yes indeed have I, whereby I have not a little profited my ſelf, and attained unto great experience, infomuch as I dare boldly aver, that that Ferrier ſhall never come to be an expert Artiſt, who ſhall not be very well verſed therein, nor be able to adminiſter his Medicines aright, who ſhall not be very obſervant of the *Horſes Urine*: For if he ſhall find his water to be either pale, whitiſh, or yellow, not much unlike to the colour of Whey, or fat Amber, or if it be not very clear, but ſmelleth ſomewhat ſtrong; let the *Ferrier* then be confident the *Horſe* is not ſick, but ſound and healthy, and in perfect

Of Urine.

perfect ſtate of *body*; but if his *Urine* be ſomewhat clear and white, and of the colour of Rock-water, and withal ſlimy, then hath he a taint in his *Kidnies*, *Reins*, and *Back*, or elſe he enclineth to the *Stone*, or elſe he hath ſome ſtoppage in the *Kidnies*. But if his *Water* be high coloured, like to the colour of ſtrong Beer, then is it a token the *blood* of the *Horſe* is enflamed, and that he is ſubject to a *Fever*, or to ſome ſtrong Surfeit; but if it be red, and of the colour almoſt of *blood*, then is the *blood* more enflamed, which came of over-hard Riding, which may prove very dangerous to his life. But if it be of a pale greeniſh colour, thick, and viſcous, then certainly his *Back* is grown weak, and he is in danger of a *Conſumption* of his *Seed*. But if it be high coloured and nebuled or mixed with ſmall Clouds, with a kind of blackneſs therein, then this doth demonſtrate enſuing ſickneſs and death, if it be not carefully prevented. But if the Nebuloſity be diſperſed into ſeveral parts, and not combined as it were into one *Maſs* or *Body*; this then argueth, that the malice of the diſeaſe beginneth to depart, whereby the *Ferrier* may have great hope of the health of the *Horſe*: And thus farr I have by diligent obſervation found to be moſt certain, whereby I have brought many a deſperate Malady to its wiſhed Cure, which otherwiſe I could not ſo eaſily have effected.

CHAP. IV.

The manner of handling the particular Cures.

Hippiatrus. SIR, I doubt not but that we have proceeded far enough into this ſubject, for I cannot ſee what can be ſpoken more; let us now come to the particular Cures, handling each one in its proper place.

Hippophilus. *With all my heart; but I pray let me deſire you, that we may not onlie handle the Cures themſelves, but the ſeveral Diſeaſes to which a* Horſe *is or may be ſubject; together with the*

cauſes

cauſes of ſuch diſeaſes, the ſigns how to know them, and the means and manner how to cure them.

Hippiatrus. All ſhall be done to your mind Sir: Wherefore I pray proceed.

Hippoſerus. I will: Nevertheleſs I hold the beſt and cleareſt way will be to handle the *Cures* by way of *Alphabet*; whereby, whoſoever doth deſire at any time to inform himſelf of any *Cure*, he may the more readily turn thereunto, without looking over the *Index* or *Table*.

Hippiatrus. I think not that to be amiſs.

SECT. 1. *A.*

Hippoph. *THen thus: Tell me* Hippoſerus, *do you know the Receipt which is called* Acopum? *Do you alſo know its Nature? Whether it is a Medicine to be taken inwardly, or an Unguent to be applied outwardly?*

Two things to be obſerved in every Cure

Hippoſerus. Sir, to make anſwer to two things in one, I ſay; firſt, it is impoſſible for any man to become a perfect *Ferrier*, who ſhall not firſt know, unto what diſeaſes a *Horſe* is inclinable: Secondly, what be the cauſes of every diſeaſe in particular: Thirdly, how, and by what ways and means theſe diſeaſes do accrew: Fourthly, the ſigns how to know and diſtinguiſh them: And laſtly the means and manner how to cure them. Secondly, as touching this your demand of *Acopum*, and its true Nature; I anſwer, that I do know it well, to be a moſt ſovereign thing in ſome cauſes; for I have occaſion to make uſe thereof very often: It is both a medicine to be taken inwardly, and an Ointment to be applied outwardly. Maſter *Blundevile* was the firſt that ever brought the knowledge and uſe thereof into our Kingdom, who had it from the *Italians* when he lived in *Naples*, as himſelf told me, where it is very much uſed; and he alſo affirmed that it was formerly in much uſe and high eſteem among the ancient *Grecian Ferriers*, who gave it the name of *Acopum*. Maſter *Markham* hath alſo in his *Maſter-peice* the ſame Receipt, but he would make it his own, for he giveth it no name, but ſtileth it in his nineteenth Chapter of his *Cures Phyſical thus*: *A moſt famous Receipt, which is both a ſingular drench, and a ſingular Ointment*: And in reciting the Ingredients,

dients, he maketh the quantities but the fourth part of what Maſter *Blundevile* ſetteth down, which is in effect one and the ſame thing; and he relateth likewiſe the ſame Virtues thereof, which Maſter *Blundevile* doth; only Maſter *Markham* ſaith, that four or five Spoonfuls hereof muſt be given with a pint of Sack or Malmſey; as alſo that the *limbs of the Horſe* being bathed therewith, it is good againſt wearineſs and tiredneſs; and laſtly, he ſaith, that being given in Wine, it cureth all kind of inward maladies; all which particulars, Maſter *Blundevile* nameth not.

Hippophilus. *What is the reaſon that Maſter* Markham *doth ſet down but a quarter of the Ingredients in the making of this famous Receipt?*

Hippoſerus. His reaſon is good, Sir, and I will approve of his judgment therein: for if any man ſhould make ſo great a quantity together as Maſter *Blundevile* doth ſet down in his Receipt, it would not be ſpent whilſt it were good, but only by ſuch a *Ferrier* as hath daily uſe thereof, and ſuch an one will be hardly found; for the newer and oftener ſuch like *Receipts* are made, the better they be, and yield more profit when they be adminiſtred.

Hippophilus. *Is this Receipt hot or cold in operation?*

Hippoſerus. It is hot in working, otherwiſe it could not hold good in caſes of Surfeits, Tiredneſs, and of Convulſions, and the like, wherein conſiſteth its chiefeſt vertue, being adminiſtred outwardly; but being adminiſtred inwardly, it is not altogether ſo hot, for then the ancient *Ferriers* would not have preſcribed to have it taken with Sack or Muskadine, both which are very hot; for it helpeth all Feavers for the moſt part; but yet I would not have it adminiſtred inwardly in ſo great a proportion as Maſter *Markham* adviſeth, for he (as I ſaid before) alloweth four or five ſpoonfuls to a pint of Sack or Muskadine; unleſs it be to be given in very cold Cauſes, for the Wine it ſelf is very hot. But both my Maſter and my ſelf do commonly adminiſter two Spoonfuls at the moſt at a time, in a pint of white Wine, or with a quart of good Ale or Beer, which we hold to be much better and ſafer, and we have found it evermore to work to our hearts deſire; inſomuch as we have both wrought admirable Cures therewith, I do aſſure you.

Hippophilus. *I pray deliver me this* Receipt, *juſt as Maſter* Markham *hath it.*

Hippoſcrus. I ſhall Sir, moſt willingly; but then you muſt underſtand that the quantities will be more intricate to weigh forth, whereby to make it the more punctually.

Euforbium. Take *Euforbium* half an ounce, *Caſtoreum* one ounce, *Adraces* half a quarter of a pound, *Bdellium* half an ounce and half a quarter, Pepper one ounce, Fox greaſe half an ounce, *Opoponax* one ounce, *Laſerpitium* three quarters of an ounce, *Ammoniacum* half a quarter of a pound, Pigeons dung as much, *Galbanum* half an ounce, *Nitrum* one ounce and a quarter, *Spuma nitri* three quarters of an ounce, *Ladanum* a quarter of a pound, *Pyrethrum*, and Bay-berries of each three quarters of an ounce, *Cardanum* two ounces, ſeed of Rue half a quarter of a pound. Seed of *Agnus Caſtus* one ounce, Parſly ſeed half an ounce, dried Roots of *Ireos* or *Flour de luce* one ounce and a quarter, Hyſop and *Carpo Balſamum* of each a quarter of a pound, Oil of *Flour de luce* a quarter of a pound and half a quarter, of Oil de Bay as much, Oil of Spikenard three quarters of a pound, *Oleum Cyprinum* three quarters of a pound and half a quarter, the oldeſt Oil Olive a pound and a half, *Pitch* a quarter of a pound and two ounces, Turpentine a quarter of a pound; melt of every of theſe that will be molten ſeverally by themſelves, and then mingle them with the reſidue of the ingredients being firſt beaten to fine powder, and after they have boiled a little on the fire, take it off, and ſtrain it into a clean gally-pot, and ſo keep it for your uſe; and when you are to adminiſter of it to your Horſe, let it be given as before is ſhewed: and if by long keeping, it wax hard, then ſoften it with the Oil of Cypreſs, ſo that it may be good and thick, ***.

Acopum its Virtues. Hippophilus. *What are the Virtues of this Receipt, called* Acopum?

Hippoſerus. Maſter *Blundevile* and Maſter *Markham* do tell you, to wit, it helpeth Convulſions in the *ſinews* and *muſcles*, it draweth forth all noiſom humors, and disburdeneth the head of all grief, being put up with a long Gooſe-feather anointed in it into the *noſtrils* of the *Horſe*; it healeth (I ſay) all manner of Convulſions, Cramps, Numbneſs, and Stringhalts, Colds and Rhumes; it diſſolveth the *Liver* being troubled with oppilations

ons and obſtructions; it helpeth Siccity and Aridity in the *Body*; it baniſheth all wearineſs and tiredneſs, if his *Limbs* be bathed with this medicine: And laſtly it cureth all ſorts of inward Diſeaſes, if it be adminiſtred by way of Drench to a Horſe in Wine, ſtrong Beer, or good Ale.

SECT. 2. *A*

Hippoph. *DO you know another receipt, which is called* Arman *? Hippoſerus.* Yea Sir, it is a *Confection* in great requeſt in *France* among the Ferriers there, and now we have it here in *England*; and it is a moſt ſovereign medicine to be given to a ſick *Horſe*, and it is to be adminiſtred inwardly.

Hippophilus. *What be the principal virtues of the* Arman?

Hippoſerus. It provoketh a good appetite to meat, and cauſeth good digeſtion; it taketh away all annoiances which do either clog or otherwiſe trouble the *ſtomach*; it cooleth the inward heat in the *body*; it helpeth all Agues and Feavers; it is moſt excellent againſt Surfeits, it is an infallible remedy for the Quinſie or Squinancy in the *throat* coming of cold taken; and very good againſt the Tranchaiſons or gripings in the *belly* or *guts*, proceeding of *wind*, and ſuch like inward infirmities.

Hippoph. *How do you make this confection?*

Hippoſ. Take Honey of Roſes a pound and half, the Crums of the whiteſt Manchet made into fine powder, *quantum ſufficiet*, then take Nutmegs, cordial powder, and Cinnamon, of each an ounce and half; mix all theſe being made firſt into fine powder, then put it into a clean Glaſs or Gally-pot, and moiſten it with Roſe vinegar, that it may be of a thick ſubſtance like unto pap, all your Ingredients being very well incorporate together, and ſo keep it to your uſe. And when you have occaſion to adminiſter of this *Arman*, take ſome of it upon the end of a Buls pizel, and put it into his mouth and let him champ thereon; but if you give it to a Horſe that hath a Quinſie, let him gulp down two horns full, as alſo to a Horſe that hath a Feaver, and is much diſtempered therewith, and it will give him health in two or three times taking, and give him alſo an appetite to his meat. But then you muſt remember that he take this in a morning faſting, and let him faſt three or four 1. Arman.

hours after, and his drink muſt be for ſome time either ſweet Maſhes or white water, and a ſpare diet, till he be ſomewhat recovered.

Hippophilus. *I pray, what is that thing you call* cordial Powder, *and whereof is it made?*

Hippoſerus. Cordial Powder hath not its name for nought, for its nature jumps right with its *Epitheton*: this we have alſo from the *French*, who uſe to give it to their ſick Horſes which are far ſpent and enfeebled with a Conſumption in the *fleſh*, *liver*, *&c.* for it is a moſt reſtaurative *Cordial*, comforting the *vital parts*, and *ſpirits animal*, and reſtoreth it to Sanity: and thus it is made.

Cordial Powder. Take Cinnamon and Sugar, of each four ounces, and of fine Bolearmoniack two ounces: let all theſe be made into very fine Powder, and mix them well together: keep this Powder from air made up cloſe till you have occaſion to make uſe thereof. I do uſe of this Powder in very many Receipts, as you ſhall hereafter underſtand.

Hippophilus. *Have you any other ſorts of* Cordials *beſides this?*

Hippoſerus. Yes Sir, I have another Powder which the *French* do call *Duke*, or *Duch-Powder*, which little differeth from the former *cordial Powder*, only it wanteth the Bolearmoniack. We have alſo another *Cordial*, which is an *Electuary*, and is known by the name of *Electuarium Theriacum*, by reaſon it hath much Treacle in it; and we do compound this *Electuary* thus.

Take Sirrup of Violets, Sirrup of Lemons, Sirrup of Roſes, of each half an ounce, adding thereunto of your beſt *London* Treacle one ounce, mingle them well together, and it is a moſt ſovereign Cordial to be adminiſtred unto Horſes which are dangerouſly ſick and weak.

Hippophilus. *Why do you rather chuſe* London *Treacle before* Venice *Treacle*, *Treacle of* Genoa, *or our common Treacle?*

Hippoſ. This *London* Treacle I do ſelect for all medicines for Horſes, rather than any other Treacle whatſoever by reaſon it worketh the beſt with them of any other, for *Venice* Treacle and *Genoa*, are too hot; and your common Treacle is nothing all worth, it being made only of the droſs and excrements of *Molaſſes*, which is none other thing than the droſs of the refining

ing of Sugar: for I have made trial of them all; but this *London* Treacle I do find to be moſt agreeable to the nature of Horſes: Wherefore both my ſelf and my maſter do uſe none other, unleſs in ſome particular cauſes, wherein we adminiſter ſometimes the Treacle of *Venice*.

Hippophilus. *What mean you by your white Water?*

Hippoſerus. White Water is none other thing than water made hot in a clean Kettle, and when it is hot enough, I uſe to put into it a quantity of *Wheat-bran*, and ſometimes *Barly-meal*, which I commonly preſcribe to ſick Horſes in *Phyſick*, inſtead of *Maſhes*, for that when *Maſhes* are either not to be had, or that they are not neceſſary for my purpoſe (as in ſome caſes they be not) or to prevent giving of cold water; I make uſe of this *white water*, which muſt evermore be given blood warm; according as our enſuing diſcourſe ſhall declare. White Water.

Hippophilus. *But now let us return to this confection you call your* Arman: *What other Virtues hath it more than what you have already delivered?*

Hippoſerus. Truly Sir, I have ſhewed you before in a manner all its Virtues; and to recite them again, I ſay, it is moſt ſovereign for Horſes that have taken a cold, or have Inflammations or Puſtils, under their *Chaul*, or thereby are troubled with the Quinſie, or Squinanſie: Theſe maladies this *confection will help*, if it be given good and thick with a horn; for having the Quinſie in the *throat*, if in giving this *Arman*, it provoketh him not to cough, then take ſome of the *Confection* upon the end of a *Bulls-Pizel*, and put it a pretty way down his throat; by which means he ſtraining to cough, may break the impoſtumation in his throat, whereby the Horſe may be in leſs danger of his life; and cauſing the matterative ſtuff to vent out, the Horſe will be in ſhort time perfectly cured.

Hippophilus. *Are there any other kinds of* Arman *beſides this?*

Hippoſerus. Onely one more Sir, which alſo the *French* have brought amongſt us, which is not altogether ſo operative as the former: and this it is, *viz.* Take Honey one pound, and warm it a little upon the fire, then take half a pint of Vinegar, and a little Wheat flower, and one peny-worth of Pepper in fine powder, mix all theſe, and adminiſter it blood-warm, as aforeſaid. Arman, 2.

Hippo-

Hippophilus. *With what manner of* Vinegar *do you uſually make up your medicines?*

Hippoſerus. When we ſpeak in general terms of *Vinegar* to be put into any medicines to be given, either for inward or outward diſeaſes; we always intend it muſt be the ſtrongeſt and beſt *White-Wine-Vinegar*; but if it be of any other kind of *Vinegar* or *Verjuice*, we then do give it in the *Receipt* its proper name.

Vinegar.

Hippophilus. *As touching* honey *wherewith you make up your medicines, what manner of* honey *muſt it be?*

Hippoſerus. That ſhould be made of *life-honey*, only, and of none other, unleſs *common-honey* or *courſe-honey*, be in the *Receipt* particularly named, as it many times is.

Honey.

Hippophilus. *Let us now go on to ſomewhat elſe: What hold you good for the* head-ach *in a horſe?*

SECT. 3. *A.*

Hippoſerus. WE adminiſter according to the nature of the Diſeaſe, for that the pains in the *head* are ſeveral and diſtinct diſeaſes, and therefore have ſeveral cures.

Hippophilus. *Which be thoſe ſeveral maladies, and how may a man know and diſtinguiſh them each from other?*

Hippoſerus. A judicious and cautelous obſervation is it, whereby we do know and diſtinguiſh all ſorts of maladies: for the Horſe, being a *dumb creature* without reaſon and ſpeech, is not able (like as a *man* can) to tell you where his pain lieth, and therefore it muſt be the eye and judgment of the Ferrier, to be able to obſerve his true *ſymptoms* whereby he may go right to accompliſh the *Cure*; otherwiſe he muſt of neceſſity fail. Wherefore as the diſeaſes of the *head* are of ſeveral natures, every of which do beget his pain, even ſo are the medicines which we apply as different. Now theſe pains in the *head* do proceed from the *brain*, or from the *panicles*, by which means they do properly breed Megrims, the Night-Mare, Glanders, Rheumes, Cathars, Apoplexies, Convulſions, Palſies, Frenzies, the Takings, Sleeping-evil, Madneſs, and the like: all which commonly do proceed from the ſubſtance of the *brain*, or from the *panicles*; for that from the *Cells* and *Ventricles* through which the

Ach in the Head.

the *spirits animal* do give feeling and moving to all the parts and members of the *body*, the diseases before mentioned do engender.

Hippophilus. *From what grounds hath this* head-ach *its source or Organ?*

Hipposerus. The grounds and causes are many Sir; some being inward, and some outward, as by means of some *cholerick humour* which may be predominant, by which means it doth oftimes breed in the *pancles* or else of some heat taken through violent labour, and sometimes by some blow given him in the *Poul* or other place of the *head*; and some do hold it cometh of some evil savour, which I also do allow of; sometimes it cometh of *Crudities* and *raw digestions* from the *Stomach*, by reason there is so great a sympathy betwixt the *Stomach* and the *Brain*, whereby they do continually participate as well of their good dispositions in health, as of their damages in the least of their infirmities and sufferings.

Hippophilus. *But many there be who do hold stiffly that a Horse hath no* Brains *at all, but only a kind of* windy liquid substance, *not unlike unto a kind of jelly.*

Hipposerus. That opinion is most erronious, for a Horse hath a most perfect *brain*, like as hath any other living *Creature*, albeit indeed not in so great a proportion as other *Animals* have. For natural reason doth dictate that if a Horse had not his *brain*, it were impossible for him to have semblable diseases in the *head* which both *Man* and all other living things have, who are (I say) likewise subject to such Maladies; which could not proceed from any other causes but only from those before premised. Neither were it possible for a Horse to endure so great labour and toil, or to undergo, so great and so many ways, such extream violences as daily he doth, if nature hath not endowed him with his organical parts correspondent to his strength, ableness, and activity of body: neither could he have any memory at all, but appear a *Lump of flesh and bones* without motion. But not to verberate the Air; I affirm that a horse hath his *brains* in as compleat measure, albeit (as I have but now touched) not in so great a quantity as other *Beasts* have, but in as ample, solid and sufficient manner, as any other living *Creature*; together with the *skin*, which Artists do call *Panicles*, which doth adhere to the *bones* conducted by

Brains.

the

the *Cells* or *conducts* by which the *Vital Spirits* do give ſome feeling, ſenſe and motion to the *body*, from whence proceed, the cauſes of diſeaſes and ſickneſs. And for your better ſatisfaction if you pleaſe I may be preſent when at any time your *Huntſman* is to cut up a Horſe for your *hounds*, I will let you ſee moſt plainly both the *Brain* and the *Panicles*.

Hippophilus. *How ſhall a man come to know when a horſe hath any pain in his head?*

Hippoſerus. The ſymptoms are moſt evident, if you eye him well: for his eyes will ſwell and become watry, and oft-times Matterative; he will hang down his *head*, as if he were ſleepy; he will prick his *ears* upright, forſake his meat, and his ſight will be dim.

Hippophilus. *What Cure have you for the Head-ach?*

Hippoſerus. Some uſe to perfume his *head* with the ſtalks of Garlick and Frankincenſe, two or three ſeveral times, which will bring much liquid ſtuff forth of his *Noſe*, which indeed is very good, and I do practiſe it ſometimes as occaſion is offered; but then withal after I have perfumed him, I uſe to let him *bloud* in the *Palate vein*, and in both the *Weeping veins*: And when I do not perfume him, I take the longeſt feather of a Gooſe, and moiſten it well in Oil de Bay, which I put up into his *Noſtrils*; and this doth both open and purge his *head* abundantly, and then keeping his *Poul* warm, together with moderate diet, for three or four days after, I then take *bloud* from the *Neck-vein*; and give him all the time of his Cure either good *Maſhes* or *white-water*, and undoubtedly he will do well. But ſometimes if I find his *head-ach* cometh of cold taken wherin he may be inclining to an Ague or Feaver, I then beſides drawing *blood*, do both apply *Acopum* to his *Noſe*, like as I ſaid for Oil de Bay, and alſo give him thereof to drink, as I have formerly preſcribed. If he be Feaveriſh; take a pint of Muskadine, the yolkes of five new-laid Eggs, and a head of Garlick picked, pilled and bruiſed, Pepper, Cinnamon and Nutmegs, ſo much as well I can take up upon a Teſter or ſix-peny peice: theſe all made into very fine powder; give him to drink blood-warm three days together, and let him faſt ſix hours after. ***

SECT.

SECT. 4. *A.*

Hippoph. *How do you make* Ægyptiacum?

Hippoſerus. We have two ſorts of them; the firſt we do call *Black Ægyptiacum*; the ſecond *Red*, both *Corroſives*; for their natures be to corrode and eat away all manner of dead, proud, rotten, and naughty fleſh out of any old Sore or Ulcer, and they do alſo cleanſe and prepare a Sore, make it apt to be healed with carnifying, or healing Salves.

The firſt is thus made.

Take coarſe Engliſh Honey two pound, Verdegreaſe, Diers Galls, and Green Coperas, of each four ounces: Let all theſe be made into powder and mixed together, and ſo put into an earthen pot, and ſet upon the fire, keeping it with continual ſtirring; but ſo ſoon as it beginneth to boil, take it from the fire, and let it cool: for by ſuffering it long to boil, it will become red, which will not be ſo good. This black *Ægyptiacum*, beſides what I have ſaid before of its vertues, is alſo very good to diſſolve the *hooves* of the Horſe, if they be too dry or hard: ſo as it will cauſe the corruption, if any be in the *foot*, to aſcend above at the *Cronet* where the hair is, and alſo to reſtore and repair the *hoof* of the Horſe when the *ſole* is taken out: and in this nature you muſt uſe this Unguent, but only at the third dreſſing after you have taken out the *ſole*. *** Ægyptiacum. 1.

The ſecond Ægyptiacum *is made thus.*

Take coarſe Honey two pounds, Verdegreaſe four ounces, green-Coperas two ounces beat the Verdegreaſe and the Coperas very ſmall to powder, then put it into an earthen pot, and put unto it a little Vinegar, and ſo boil it very well till it become red, and keep it for your uſe. *** Ægyptiacum. 2.

Another

SECT. 5. *A.*

Hippoph. *What is your beſt Cure for a Horſe that is Accloyed?*

Accloy. *Hippoferus.* Sir, this Malady so called by the *French*; is the same we call prick't with a *Nail* in the Shoing, and it is as easily cured, if the *Ferrier* be skilful, and that it be also taken in time. And thus we work, *viz.* First, take out the sole, and cut the *hoof* round about the place pricked, that no corruption be remaining behind, fill it up again with hurds steeped in whites of Eggs; dress him thus three daies together, then heal the sore up with salt made into fine powder mingled with Vinegar, or else with Diers Galls, or with Myrtle, or Lentiles, and anoint the outside of the *hoof* with black *Ægyptiacum.* ***

Another.

Take a little cotten or bumbast, and steep it in brown Sugar-Candy molten, and apply it with a hot Iron to the place. And if the foot be bruised with the shoe, or that the female horn be hurt or bruised, then cleanse and prepare the place first, and then apply unto it a quick or live Spider with a hot Iron, and so tack on the shoe, and let him not come into any wet till he be fully cured. ***

Another.

Take Sallet Oil, Turpentine, and Rosin-pitch, all molten together, put it very hot into the hole where he is pricked, and so stop the hole with Hurds. ***

SECT. 6. *A.*

Hippophilus. WV*Hat* Receipts *have you for all inward Diseases?*

Hippoferus. The *Spaniards* have one Medicine with which they Cure all Diseases; and albeit I say they do cure all diseases, with this one *Receipt*; yet my meaning is, that look whatsoever the infirmity be, they administer none other thing but that one, whether it cure or kill; and this they call a *Cataplasm*, of which they make no small account, which they give as Pills.

All Diseases a Cataplasm. Take Wheat-Meal twelve pound, Anniseeds four ounces in fine powder, Brimstone in powder three ounces, Fenugreek in powder three ounces *& sem.* Comin in powder three ounces, Honey two pound, good Sallet Oil one pound *& sem.* of good Sack

Sack as much, or ſo much as will ſuffice to make it into a *Cataplaſm* or *Paſte*. This *Cataplaſm* (ſay the *Spaniards*) or Medicine, is all of it to be put into a ſtone-pot well nealed, and ſo boiled until it be thick, ſo as when it is cold it may be made up into Pills or Balls; whilſt it is in boiling it muſt be kept with continual ſtirring, otherwiſe it will burn-to; and being thus made into Pills, give him of them every morning faſting, for four or five days together, or longer if you ſhall ſee cauſe; for that (ſay they) it is moſt ſovereign againſt many Maladies. It killeth all ſorts of Worms within the *Body* of the Horſe: it alſo helpeth the Diſeaſes of the *Lungs*, and inward parts, and it is generally good for any inward cauſe; and an excellent local plaiſter to be applyed outwardly. It is the *Spaniards* principal Phyſick for their *Jennets* and *Barbaries*. I have made trial thereof ſundry times, and I do find it to be moſt uſeful in all cold cauſes; and truly it is moſt Cordial, for it doth bring a lean and poor Horſe unto fleſh and good ſtate in a little time. ***

A ſecond *Receipt* I alſo have, which cureth all inward Diſeaſes, which I had of a *Rural Smith*, who was cried up for a famous *Ferrier* all the Countrey about: So I, having heard ſo great a report of his skill, addreſſed my ſelf unto him, and when I had conferred with him, putting him hard to it in the matter of his Art; he at laſt ingenuouſly confeſſed unto me that he had but this one only drink, which gat him all his knowledge and Credit, which with much preſſure I wreſted from him, under condition that I ſhould never make him known, wherein I have preciſely kept my word. And the Cure and Drink is this: *Viz.* Take Wheat-Meal ſix pound, or as much as will bring the Ingredients into a ſtiff Paſte, Anniſeeds two ounces, Cummin two ounces, wild or baſtard Saffron one dram and half, white Wine four Pints, Fenugreek one ounce and two drams: Brimſtone one ounce and half, good Sallet Oil one pint and two ounces, Engliſh Honey one pound and half: powder and ſearce what is to be powdered and ſearced, then compound them together, and make it into one body into a ſtiff paſte, and ſo keep it in a clean Gally-pot cloſe covered for your uſe. And when you have occaſion to uſe it, make a Pill or Ball thereof, of the bigneſs of a mans fiſt, and ſo lave and diſſolve it into two

All Diſeaſes a Cataplaſm

Gallons of fair water, till it be all molten into the water: Let your Horſe drink hereof ſo long as you pleaſe both morning and evening, and let him have none other water to drink; to the end he may be the better compelled to drink of the Water, which in the end he will do, and like it very well, ***.

Of this *Cataplaſm* I have made often uſe, and I do find it to be a ſovereign *Receipt* for many infirmities; it alſo preventeth much inward ſickneſs; it raiſeth and battleth a Horſe much better than either Graſs or Provender; and it giveth him Life, Spirit, and Stomach, and keepeth him in perfect health.

Our ordinary Countrey Smiths have yet another Drink, which they adminiſter upon all inward cauſes; and truly it doth oft-times hit right, eſpecially in cold cauſes; *viz.*

All Diſeaſes. 3. Take *Fenewgreek*, *Turmerick*, *Grains*, *Anniſeeds*, *Licoris*, *Long-Pepper*, *Cummin*, of each half an ounce, and of Saffron one dram; and of Herbs, take *Celendine*, *Rue*, *Pelamontine*, *Hyſop*, *Thyme* and *Roſemary*, of each, like much, but yet no more than will make of them all but half a handful: Firſt chop ſmall theſe Herbs, and put them into a quart of good Ale, and when they have boiled a while, put in your *Spices* finely *powdered*, and then boil them again with a ſmall fire; then take it from the fire, and ſtrain it, and put to the liquor the quantity of an Egg of ſweet butter, and half an ounce of *London* Treacle; give this to your Horſe bloud warm, and ride him moderately after, and then ſet him up warm and well littered, letting him faſt four hours after, and let his drink be either a ſweet Maſh or White Water. This very good againſt Fevers, Colds, and the Yellows, ***.

SECT. 7. *A.*

Hippoph. I *Met not long ſince with a diſeaſe called St.* Anthonies Fire, *I pray is there ſuch a Diſeaſe?*

Hippoſerus. Yes Sir, there is ſuch a diſeaſe, but it ſo ſeldom comes to a Horſe, as that few Ferriers have had occaſion to cure the ſame: by reaſon very few know it: and therefore marvel not in that they cannot cure the ſame. Saint *Anthonies Fire* is that burneth in the fleſh moſt extreamly, and hath in it

ſo

ſo great malice as that look what you do apply to the place (unleſs you hit the Cure right) it will do it no good, but more harm, much after the nature of a *Noli me Tangere*, or *wild fire*. This Diſeaſe is alſo called by ſome the *Shingles* in a Horſe, and like as the Diſeaſe it ſelf is very rare and ſeldom known in a Horſe, ſo alſo is the Cure as uncouth and ſtrange. For my part I will not profeſs my ſelf to be any whit more skilful than indeed I am: This indeed I never yet obſerved to be in any Horſe: I only have heard ſome Ferriers talk thereof; but yet I never heard but of one man, who was ever truly able to make a Cure thereof; and this was a Knight of very good worſhip who taught it me, he averring confidently unto me, how that he had cured three ſeveral Horſes of this very malady. I asked him whence this diſeaſe proceedeth, and what are the ſymptomes whereby to know the ſame? he anſwered me that he could never rightly come to be mathematically aſſured how it breedeth, or occurreth to the Horſe, but by gueſs only, and that himſelf thought it came from ſome *cholerick blood* paſſing to his *head* into the *brain* and *panicles*, which cauſeth the Horſe to become ſtark mad, as to be deprived of his Memory, in not knowing his *Keeper*, or any other body elſe; yea his fury is ſo great, as to reſiſt ſtripes, to ſlight and contemn correction, be it never ſo ſevere; he will endeavour what in him lyeth to perpetrate what miſchief he is able, by biting, ſtriking, and endangering whom or whatſoever thing cometh into his way; and when he cannot have his mind of living *creatures*, whereupon to wreak his malice, then will he do it partly upon dead creatures, by biting and gnawing his Manger and Rack-ſtaves, and by ſtriking the Poſts and Barrs with his *heels*, and partly upon himſelf, by beating his *head* againſt the wall and ground; he will alſo forſake both his meat and ſleep, or natural reſt, until he dyeth, if he be not in time cured, which is thus.

Take firſt help enough, and caſt him, which done, take a *Worm* which groweth in a *Fullers Teazell*, and put this *Worm* alive, and without any hurt into a *quill*, then ſlit the *skin* of the *fore-head* of the *Horſe* under the *foretop*, and open the ſame round about with your *cornet*, making a concavity an inch round every way and better, betwixt the *skin* and the *bone*; which done, S. Anthonies Fire.

done, blow the ſaid Worm out of the *quill* into the place which you made hollow as aforeſaid; but take heed you do not kill the Worm in ſtitching up the *skin* again, becauſe that the Worm may not get forth; and after twenty days the Worm will dye, and in that time the Horſe will be throughly cured. This cure was taught me by the aforeſaid Noble *Knight*, with which he affirmed to me, that he had cured three or four Horſes.

SECT. 8. *A.*

Hippoph. *What ſay you to an* Anticor?

Hippoſerus. Sir, I ſay it is a Diſeaſe whereunto Horſes are oft-times enclined and it cometh ſundry ways, to wit, ſometimes with too much feeding without exerciſe, ſometimes of too hard and immoderate riding, or other labour; both which ways the *blood* of the creature becometh corrupted and inflamed, which maketh its reſidence in and above the heart, which if it ſhould not have a way to make its vent, it would quickly kill him, by which means many good Horſes dye ſuddainly, and the cauſe unknown. This Diſeaſe is apparent to the *eye* by a ſwelling, which will ariſe in the middle of the *breaſt*, juſt againſt the *heart*, from whence it taketh its name which if it be not ſoon prevented, will aſcend to the *throat*, and then it is certain death. It cometh likewiſe by Surfeits taken by heats and colds, ſometimes alſo by Feavers, which are malignant, and ſometimes again by feeding upon unwholſom meats. The ſigns to know this Diſeaſe before the ſwelling do appear are theſe, he will be ſick, and groan many times when he is layed, he will hang down his head, and forſake his meat; and then if he ſhould deſire to eat, what meat he loveth beſt, whether Hay, Graſs, Provender, or Bread, lay it upon the Ground before him, and if he hath a mind to eat thereof, albeit he make proffer to bring his *mouth* towards it, yet he ſhall not be able to reach it, but will ſooner famiſh; when you do perceive the ſwelling to appear, firſt draw blood from both the *Plate-veins*, but if you cannot find them, then let him *blood* on both ſides of the *neck* to a good proportion; which done, you may give him the drink of *Diapent*, with Beer or Ale, putting

ting thereinto one ounce of brown Sugar-Candy, and half an ounce of *London* Treacle, which will drive the ſickneſs and grief from his *heart*; which done, anoint the ſwelling with this Oyntment.

Take Hogs greaſe, Boars greaſe, and Baſilicon, of each three ounces, incorporate all theſe well into one body, and anoint and rub the ſwelling therewith every day till it come to a ſoftneſs, and then open it, and let forth all the corrupted matter; then waſh the Sore with your Coperas water mentioned in *Lib.* 2. *chap.* 10. *Sect.* 4. and then put in your green Oyntment preſcribed you in *capite ibidem*, and it will be ſoon whole. Anticor.

Thus have I cured many Horſes of this Diſeaſe, and I never failed, if the Horſe had not been ſwelled too high towards the *throat* or *neck* before I took him in hand. *** But Maſter *Blundeviles* and Maſter *Markhams* cure for an *Anticor*, is thus.

Firſt they let him *blood* in the *Plate-veins*, and then they give him this drink. Take a quart of Malmeſey, and put thereto half a quartern of Sugar, and of Cinnamon two ounces, and ſo give it him blood-warm, and keep him warm in the ſtable, eſpecially his *breaſt*, that no wind do offend him; and for his drink, let it be warm Maſhes, and ſuch meat as he will eat. And if the ſwelling do appear, then beſide letting him *blood*, they do ſtrike the ſwelling in divers places with their flegm, that the corruption may go forth, and anoint the place with warm Hogs greaſe, and that will cauſe it to wear away, or elſe grow to a head if it be kept warm. Thus Maſter *Blundeviles* and Maſter *Markhams* cure is in effect the very ſame. Maſter *Markham* alſo preſcribeth Malmſey and *Diapente*, which is uſed alſo by others, and it is very good; and he alſo ſaith that ſome do adminiſter *Doctor Stephens Water*, which he affirmeth he hath ſeen to have wrought in this kind ſtrange effects. For my part I ſubmit, for that theſe *Receipts* ſeem very probable; howſoever I never did experiment any but that only which I firſt inſerted, which I had of a famous Ferrier in *France*, and therefore I finding mine to be infallible made trial of none other.

SECT.

SECT. 9. *A.*

Hippoph. WHat *is that you do call an* Upper Attaint?

Upper Attaint.

Hippoſerus. It is none other thing but a ſwelling of the Maſter or *Back-ſinew*, of the *fore-leg* above the *Paſtern-joint*, and moſt commonly cometh by an over reach; that is, when the Horſe in running either down a hill, or upon deeps, or upon or over-thwart high furrows of plowed Lands, or upon other evil or uneven Grounds, do ſtrike the *toe* of his *hinder foot* againſt the great *ſinew* of the *fore-leg*. This I ſay, we tearm an *Upper Attaint*.

Hippophilus. *How may a man come to know aſſuredly that the grief lieth in that* ſinew?

Hippoſerus. Your eye and hand (Sir) will ſhew it you very palpably; for the *ſinew* will ſwell, and burn, and be ſore, and the Horſe will halt therewith.

Hippophilus, *What Cure have you for it?*

Hippoſerus. We uſe to the place a charge reſtringent which muſt be ſiccative.

Hippophilus. *I ſhould rather think that by applying, ſuppleing, or mollifying Oils or Unguents, you might cure it ſooner and much better.*

Hippoſerus. Herein Sir, under your favour you are much miſtaken: for all things that are ſuppleing are moſt noxious unto theſe kind of Maladies; by reaſon that all Oils and Unguents will cauſe the *ſinew* to ſwell much more than otherwiſe; and therefore we do apply ſiccative and drying things. Some uſe Cauterizings, which indeed will cure, and ſet the *Horſe* upright again, but therein are two inconveniences; to wit: Firſt, albeit it taketh away his pain, ſo as he deſiſteth from halting, yet will the place be ever after ſwelled, which will be a continual eye-ſore, during his life: Secondly, the marks and ſtroaks where the Iron went will be ever after ſeen, making the hair of a different colour: both which are great blemiſhes to the *Horſe*.

Hippoph. *Wherein then conſiſteth your beſt Cure in this Caſe?*

Hippoſerus. I always uſe for a ſorance of this nature to apply this enſuing Charge.

Take

Take Cantharides two ounces, Maſtick four pennyworth, Venice Turpentine two pennyworth, Euforbium four drams, Black Roſin ſix ounces, Aqua-fortis two drams: beat the Cantharides and Euforbium into fine powder: then firſt melt the Maſtick and Black Roſin, then put in your Turpentine, which ſo ſoon as it is molten, put in your Cantharides and Euforbium, and let all boil together, keeping them ſtirring, and have a ſpecial care it boil not over: and when you have taken it from the Fire, put in your Aqua-fortis, and ſo ſtir them well together, and put it into a glaſs or gally pot, and ſo keep it for your uſe. And when you have occaſion to uſe the ſame, firſt waſh and bathe the grieved place well, then with your Splatter ſpread it upon the place being made warm, and clap ſtox upon it of the ſame colour, and give him reſt, and he will do well. But he muſt have time, and after a week that he hath been thus charged, let him be put forth to graſs if it be not in Winter, or the Winter or cold weather approaching. ****. Attaint upper or back ſinew pain.

Another.

Take the whites of two new layed Eggs, and the powder of Bole-Armoniack, and the beſt and ſtrongeſt white Wine Vinegar, incorporate theſe very well together with the powder of Sanguis Draconis, and having ſhaven away the hair as aforeſaid, ſpread it good and thick upon the grieved place, adding ſtill more every 3 days, for 15 days together; and then put him forth to graſs, and let him run a whole March, and after ſo long as you ſhall think to be ſufficient, and he will be found again. ****. This I have alſo made tryal of, and I have found it to be right good.

A *French Marſhal* taught me a medicine for an *Attaint* or *Overreach*, whereof I did never make uſe; howbeit he proteſted unto me he thought it one of the beſt cures that he could ever know; and I my ſelf ſaw him dreſs a *Horſe* therewith, but how the *Horſe* became cured, I had not time to know, by reaſon I departed from *Orleans* before the Cure was performed. And the cure was this. Take one or two handfuls of Saxafrage, and all the Sewet of a Loin of Mutton, and a pint of white Wine; chop the Herb, and mince the Sewet very ſmall, and ſo boil all theſe together, which being thus well boiled, take a ſufficient quantity of *Horſe-dung*, newly made by a *Horſe* that goeth to graſs, and putting it to the other Ingredients, work

it to a Salve, and *apply* it *plaiſter-wiſe* to the place good hot, renewing it twice every day for ſo long time as you ſhall think to be convenient.

Now Maſter *Blundevile*, and Maſter *Markham* do both agree in the Cure of an *Attaint*, which is thus: Firſt, waſh and bath the place with warm Water, and ſhave the hair ſo far as the ſwelling goeth: then ſcarifie the ſore place with the point of a Razor, that the bloud may iſſue forth: Then take Cantharides and Euforbium of each half an ounce, powdred, and mingle them together with a quartern of Sope, and with a ſhy ſpread ſome of the Ointment over all the ſore, ſuffering him to reſt in the place where you dreſſed him for one half hour after; and then you may take him into the Stable, there letting him ſtand without Litter, and ſo tyed that he may not touch the ſore with his *Mouth*, and then the next day uſe him in the ſame manner again; then the third day anoint the place with freſh Butter continuing ſo to do by the ſpace of nine days, and at nine days end, make him his bath.

Take Mallows three handfuls, a Roſe-Cake, and Sage of each a handful; boil them together in a ſufficient quantity of fair water; and when the Mallows are become ſoft, put in half a pound of Butter, and half a pint of Sallet Oil, and then being ſomewhat warm; waſh and bath the ſore place therewith every day once till it be whole. This medicine I confeſs I never tryed, but I think it very good. Maſter *Blundevile* hath only this, but Maſter *Markham* hath ſundry others; ſome of which, I will relate, to the end, the *Ferrier* may make his choice.

Another.

Take Dialthea, Agrippa, and Oil, and mixing theſe together, lay it to the ſwelling.

Another.

Take alſo Frankincenſe, Roſin, Tarr, Euforbium, Turpentine, Fenugreek, of each a quarter of an ounce, of Sewet one ounce, of Oil one ounce, of Wax three ounces, and three quarters of an ounce of Myrrh; mix and melt all theſe together. and plaiſter-wiſe lay it to the place till it be whole.

Another.

Take alſo Sanguis Draconis three quarters of an ounce, Bole Armoniack

Armoniack one ounce, Oil as much, Maſtick three ounces, Sewet as much, and as much Swines greaſe; melt and mix all theſe together, and lay it to the ſwelling, and it will take it away.

Another Cure I found in an Old Manuſcript, with which I have cured many *Horſes*, which have been much ſwelled which is this: *Viz.*

Take *Turpentine* of *Venice* one ounce, and *Aquavitæ* three ſpoonfuls: beat them together in a Bladder, or ſome other convenient Veſſel, until they come to a perfect ſalve, then anoint the ſore very well therewith, and heat it in with a hot Brick, or a hot Iron; and thus doing four or five times, it will ſet him upright. ***. This I have often tryed, and it is very good.

SECT. 10. *A.*

Hippoph. *What is that you call a* Neather Attaint?

Hippoſerus. It is alſo an Over-reach ſometimes, and ſometimes again it cometh by a Wrench, ſometimes by a Strain, ſometimes by treading upon a ſharp ſtone or ſtub, and ſometimes it cometh by a blow, and it is called properly a *Neather Attaint*, by reaſon it being commonly upon the fore-leg, like as is the other; it is nevertheleſs placed lower than the other is; for whereas the other is above the *Fetlock Joint*, this is under it, for it is commonly upon the *Heel* or *Fruſh*, or is it oft times viſible to the eye, howſoever it may be felt, as well by the heat and glowing which will be upon the *Heel*, as alſo by the ſoftneſs, for there will be a *Bladder* or bliſter of viſcous corrupt matter like to Jelly, which will grow in the place; and beſides it will make the *Horſe* to complain, and it will be alſo ſomewhat ſwelled. I have cured ſundry *Horſes* which have had this malady, and they have done well again. The Cure is thus. Attaint Neather.

Take a piece of filleting, and bind it above the *Paſtern-joint*, a little good and hard, which will cauſe the bliſter or ſwelling the better to appear more viſible to the eye; make Inciſion with your Inciſion Knife, and cruſh out all the corrupt Jelly, and congealed matter. Then heal it up by waſhing the ſore

with Coperas water, declared *in Lib.* 2. *Chap.* 10. *Sect.* 4. and after anoint it with the green Ointment mentioned *in eapite & Sect. ibid.* and ſo in ſhort time it will be whole and ſound again, **. This is a very hard Cure for your ordinary Country *Smiths* to take in hand to perform, if they be not well acquainted with the nature of this Malady. Maſter *Blundevile* and Maſter *Markham*, have both this manner of Cure, only they differ from me in the healing Salve.

SECT. 12. *A.*

Hippoph. WHat *Cure have you for the* Avives?

Hippoſerus. This term *Avives* we have alſo gotten from the *French*, which our *Ferriers* do call the *Vives*. It is a Diſeaſe which grows under the *Ears*, and *ſecundum vulgus*, it is called the *Fives* or *Vives*, from the *Ears* it creepeth down towards the *Throat*, which when they begin to enflame will ſwell, and not only pain the *Horſe* very much, but alſo prove mortal, by ſtopping his *Wind* they will kill him outright, if it be not in time cured; and I my ſelf have ſeen and known *Horſes* dye of this malady. It proceedeth moſt commonly of Rankneſs of *Blood*; in the Cure, care muſt be taken that you do not touch the Grains or Kernels with your fingers. The *Avives* or *Vives* are certain flat Kernels, much like Bunches of Grapes which grow in a cluſter, cloſe knotted together in the place; the moſt certain cure is to cut the *Skin* longeſt ways, and to lay the Kernels or Grains open, and then with an Inſtrument made like to a pair of Plyers to pinch forth the Grains, then to apply unto the place either a Linnen Cloath, or a few hurds ſteeped well in whites of Eggs well beaten, and ſo bound on, and renewing it daily, it will cure it; but you muſt heal up the *skin* with the Green Ointment before ſpoken of *in cap. & Sect. ibid.* **. But the common cure is to draw down the ſore with a hot Iron juſt in the midſt, ſo far as the ſwelling goeth, and then under the root of the *Ear*, draw two other ſtrooks of the faſhion of an Arrows head, then open the *skin*, and with a ſmall pairs of Plyers, pull out the Kernels, and ſo cut them off, but have a care of the *Veins*; that done, fill the place with Bay-ſalt made into fine powder, and after heal up the ſore with the

Avives.

the aforeſaid Ointment. ***. This have I alſo practiſed, and performed the Cure, but with greater difficulty than the former, by reaſon of the Fire which I put to the place: and therefore I do hold my former Cure the better, ſafer, and ſpeedier. ***.

Maſter *Blundevile* and Maſter *Markham* do ſay, that the *Italians* uſe to take a ſponge well dipped in ſtrong Wine Vinegar, and bound to the ſore, renewing it twice a day till the Kernels do rot; then they open the neathermoſt part of the ſoftneſs, and ſo let the corruption forth, and then fill the hole with ſalt finely brayed; and the next day they waſh away the filth with warm water, and the next day after they anoint the Sore, with Honey and Fitch-flower mingled together, till it be whole. This Cure I never made trial of, but it ſeemeth to me to be a very good and probable Cure. Another for the *Avives*.

Take Tar, tryed Hogs greaſe, Bay ſalt, and Frankincenſe powdered, of each ſo much as will ſuffice; melt theſe on the fire altogether, then with a clout faſtened to the end of a ſtick, boiling hot, ſcald the places four or five mornings one after another until the enflamed places do become ſoft and ripe. Then with your inciſion knife, ſlit the skin, and let forth the corruption: then to heal up the ſorances, take tryed Hogs greaſe and Verdigreaſe made up into fine powder, melt them upon a gentle fire, but ſuffer it not to boil more than a waum or two at the moſt, then take it off, and put to it of ordinary Turpentine, as much as will ſuffice, and ſo ſtir all together until it be cold. And herewith anoint the ſorances daily till they be whole ***. This is very good.

Maſter *Markham* in his *Maſter-piece*, hath a cure for the *Avives*, which he entituleth; *A moſt rare and certain approved Medicine, which will cure the Vives, without either burning, melting, rotting, or any ſuch like violent exerciſe.* But as yet I did never experiment the ſame. The Cure is this.

Take a penny-worth of Pepper, beaten to fine powder, Swines greaſe a ſpoonful, the juice of Rue a handful, and of Vinegar two ſpoonfuls, mix all well together, and convey it equally into both the *ears* of the Horſe, and ſo tie or ſtick them up, then ſhake his *ears* that the medicine may ſink downwards: which

which done, you ſhall let him *blood* in the *neck-vein*, and in the *temple-vein*. And this (ſaith he) *is an infallible Cure.*

SECT. 12. *A.*

Hippoph. *WHat Diſeaſe is that which we do call the* Arraiſtes?

Hipposerus. Arraiſtes, is alſo a *French Epitheton*, which is a diſeaſe we do commonly call the *Rat-tayles*, ingendring in the *heels* of a Horſe, not much unlike to the Scratches, but that it is much more venemous and malignant. It cometh of too much reſt, and the *Keepers* want of care in the not rubbing and dreſſing him, as alſo by reaſon that the Horſe ſtandeth continually in the Stable, his fore-feet being higher than his hinder-feet: for by reaſon of his great reſt and pampering, the *blood* corrupting in his *body*, falls down into his *hinder-legs* and breedeth this diſeaſe, which now we do call the *Arraiſtes* or *Rat-tails*. The beſt cure for this Malady is, firſt, to let the Horſe be ridden till he be warm, whereby the veins will ſwell, and the better appear. Let him *blood* in the *fetlock-veins* on both ſides, making him to bleed well; and the next day after, waſh the ſores with warm water, and then clip away all the *hair* from about the ſores, then anoint the grieved places with this Ointment, *viz.*

Arraiſtes or Rat-tails.

Take green Coperas, and Verdigreaſe, of each two ounces; beat your Coperas and Verdigreaſe very ſmall, and ſo work them with your honey, to a perfect Unguent, and herewith anoint the ſores daily till they be whole. ***. And thus we do conclude this *Chapter.*

CHAP. V.

SECT. 1. *B.*

Hippoph. *WHat is your beſt way to break and heal the back of a Horſe that is ſwoln?*

Hipposerus. We have many ways to cure a malady of this nature: If the place be ſwelled, and yet not ripe

ripe enough to be opened, then apply that remedy which you ſhall find taught you hereafter, to reſolve or ripen the ſame; and when it is ripe, put your Inciſion-Knife unto it, or a hot Iron, and ſo open it in the loweſt part, ſo as the putrefaction may the more eaſily paſs away; then every morning inject this *Lotion* with a Syringe, which is thus to be made, *viz.*

Take Honey-ſuckle leaves, Plantine, Ribwort, Yarrow, Burſa-Paſtoris, Knot-graſs, and Cumphry, of each half a handful, boil theſe in a quantity of running water, till a moity be conſumed, then ſtrain the Herbs from the water, caſting away the Herbs, and then ſet the water upon the fire again, and ſo ſoon as it beginneth to boil again, put into the ſaid water honey of Roſes one ounce, Allum and Alkanet, of each two drams; ſtir all theſe well together, and let it boil till theſe latter ingredients be well diſſolved, then take it from the fire, and when it is cold, put it into a clean glaſs, keeping it cloſe ſtopped for your uſe. Uſe this water every day five or ſix days together, and it will cure any ſorance in the *back*, or other part of the *body*, provided that to *skin* the ſore, you apply a rag made wet in the ſame water. ***. Another receipt I have, wherewith I have cured many galled backs, and other ſorances: which is as followeth. Back ſwelled.

Take water and ſalt, and boil them well together, and firſt waſh the ſore place therewith. Then take Pepper made into very fine powder, and ſtrew it upon the ſore, and it will heal it in very ſhort time. *** A third I have much more ſovereign than the two former, which cureth not only all galled *backs*, but any other wound whatſoever.

Take Roſin and common pitch, of each ſix ounces, Maſtick and Incenſe, of each one ounce, Turpentine, Galbanum, Bolearmoniack, of each 3 ounces, melt, diſſolve, & incorporate all theſe together upon a gentle fire, and as they do begin to cool, make them up in roles, and when you would uſe this ſalve, Spread it upon a cloath or leather, ſomewhat thin; but if you be to uſe it without either cloath or leather, to any outward part that is not yet broken, then lay it on much thicker than you uſe to do Plaiſter-wiſe; and whileſt it is warm, clap *flocks* of the ſame colour upon it. This *Emplaſtrum* as it cureth any ſwelling, gall, wound, ſore or hurt; ſo it ripeneth, breaketh, and heal-

eth.

eth all impoſthumation, boils, and puſtils. It is alſo a moſt excellent *defenſative plaiſter* for the ſtaying, and drying up of all evil humours, and alſo very ſovereign for aſſwaging of ſwellings. **.

Another Receipt I have taught me by a worthy *Knight*, But I never made uſe thereof.

Take the leaves of Aſmart, and waſh them, and lay them all over the place; and albeit you ride him every day, yet will he heal very faſt. But if he do remain in the Stable without exerciſe, if you put the water of the leaves upon the place, it will heal him ſpeedily.

Another Receipt I have which was taught me by a *French Marſhall*, howbeit I made no trial thereof, but he commended it to be *Tresbonne*; which is this, *viz.* Take three parts of ſheeps dung, and one part of Wheat or Rye-flower, and dry the flower, and then knead them together, and bake it a little, and apply it blood warm to the place.

SECT. 2. *B.*

Hippoph. *IS there a Diſeaſe in a Horſe called the* Barbes?

Hippoſerus. Yea Sir, there is ſuch a diſeaſe, and it groweth in the *mouth* under the *tongue* naturally, for every Horſe hath them, nevertheleſs there is no harm in them, until they do become inflamed, and then they will ſwell with corrupt bloud, proceeding from naughty *humors*, and become raw, and ſo trouble and pain the Horſe, ſo as he cannot feed without much grief: for it cometh by means of evil *humours*, and inflamed *blood*. I never heard of more Cures than two for this malady, which is to take hold of his *Tongue*, and on either ſide under it of the *Jaw*, you ſhall ſee two Teats or Paps, clip them away cloſe, and then waſh the place with a little water and ſalt, and they are cured. The other Cure.

Barbes.

Take a pair of Sizers and clip them away from under the Tongue, and let them bleed, then prick him in the Palate of the Mouth with your Fleam, that he may bleed the better, then waſh the places with white Wine Vinegar, Bolearmoniack, and Bay Salt, of each as much as will ſuffice, and for three or four

four days after, let him see that no Hay-dust stick upon the places so clipped, and he will soon be well again.

SECT. 3. *B.*

Hippophilus. *What good Receipt have you to dissolve and dry up all ill humours in the* Body?

Hipposerus. The best thing that I could ever know, is a certain *Bath* which I make, wherewith I bathe him, and I do find it to be right good, which I make thus, *viz.* Take Sage and Rosemary, of each a handful, and of the Barke of the Root Beech, three pound, and of the Brakes of young Elms, Oakes and Ashe, of each a handful, of Nep, Pennyroyal, and of Chestnuts, the Rinds being taken away, of each a handful, three or four white Onions clean pilled and cut into small pieces or slices, red Wine three pottles, strong white Wine Vinegar two pottles; boil all these together, and cause your Horse to be walked a quarter of an hour before, a good pace, that he may be only warm, then let him be presently bathed with this *Bath* good and hot, and then set him up warm, and let his drink be either sweet Mashes, or white water; bath him thus three days together, and feed him with such meat as is sweet and wholesom, and let him not be ridden into any water in eight or ten days after, and this shall dissolve and dry up all his bad *Humours.* ***. This I learned of an *Italian Rider* in *Bruxels*, whom I saw practise it very often whilst I was there, and rode with him. And since I have my self administred it to many good Horses here in *England*, with which I have done very much good. Bath for humors to dry them up.

Hippophilus. *Now that we speak of* Baths, *I would gladly know what are their Vertues.*

Hipposerus. Baths have been much more in use in former times than now they are; howbeit I and my Master do use them often, and we do find great profit by them: For they are fomentations, which be the most comfortable things of any to the *Joynts* and *Limbs* of a Horse. *Bathes* dissolve all ill *humors*, and give heat and warmth unto all the *Members* that are benummed with cold, or for want of *Blood*; it comforteth and strengtheneth them, and it giveth very great ease to the pain-

ed *Sinews*. Beſides, it aſſwageth ſwellings in or about any out-
Bath for ſtiff Legs. ward parts of the *body*; for *legs* ſwelling, ſtiff, or benummed, or for any other joynt pained or grieved, or for any *ſtring-halt*, *cramp*, or *convulſion*. I commonly uſe a *bath*, which doth in ſhort time cure all ſuch like maladies. And my *bathe* is this.

Bath. 1. Take Muskadine and Sallet Oil, of each a pint, Bay-leaves and Roſemary, of each two handfuls, let them boil half an hour, and when you are to bathe your Horſe therewith, rub and chaſe the grieved place with a whiſp or hair cloath a pretty while, then put the foot into ſome broad bowl or pail, whereby to preſerve the Liquor and Herbs, and lave and bathe him thus a quarter of an hour; which ended, bind upon the the place a piece of Sheeps or Lambs skin, with the woolly ſide to the *leg*, and let him ſtand ſo four and twenty hours; apply this five or ſix times, and it will be a perfect cure. **.

Another *Bath* I have, which is moſt ſovereign to cure all gourdy, and gouty, and ſwoln *legs*, which cometh either by Farcin, Scratches, or the like, wherewith I have cured very many Horſes. And thus it is made.

Bath. 2. Take the Grounds of a Beer Barrel with the Barm, Smallage, Featherfew, Winter-ſavoury, Cumfrey, Mallows, Rue, Setwel, Pennyroyal, Wormwood, Arch angel, of each a good handful, and of the leaves and Berries of Miſletow three or four good handfuls, Sheeps Tallow one pound, tryed Hogs-greaſe half a pound, three or four handfuls of Rye or Wheat-Bran; boil all theſe together until all the Herbs and Miſletow become ſoft; but be ſure you have liquor enough; and a little before you take it from the fire, put into it ſome Hay: With this bathe his Legs; firſt one, then the other, putting ſtill that Leg which you are to bathe into a broad Bowl or Pail, as is afore ſhewed; and when you have bathed that *Leg* ſufficiently, then take off the Hay in the Bath, and making a Thumband thereof, rowl it about the *Leg* above the uppermoſt or middle *Joynt*, and put off the Herbs betwixt his *Leg* and the Thumb-band: and ſo uſe the other *Leg* or *Legs* which are ſwelled and need bathing: Which done, powre of the liquor remaining upon the Thumb-bands: and thus let him be bathed herewith every day once, for ſo many days together as you

ſhall

ſhall think requiſite, and it will bring down the ſwelling quite, and make him ſound. **.

Another Bath I have no leſs excellent, wherewith I have done many rare cures, *viz.* Bath. 3

Take Smallage, Ox-eye, and Sheeps Sewet, of each like much, to a good quantity: Chop them ſmall together, and after ſtamp them in a ſtone Mortar; than boil them with mans Urine, and bathe the grieved parts herewith warm, doing as before with Bowl or Pail: then with Thumb-bands of ſoft Hay made firſt wet in cold water, rope up the member, as well above as below the grief. Uſe this as oft as you ſhall ſee cauſe, but if the grief happen in Travel, then by bathing him thus over night, and roping him up, he will be able to travel again the next morning without complaining. **. This I do aſſure you is a moſt excellent Bath, and it cureth any Lameneſs which cometh either by ſtroke, ſtrain, or other Accident.

One other Bath I have, whereof I never made uſe, taught me by a *Gentleman*, who was well verſed in *Horſe-Leech craft*. And his Receipt is this: *viz.* Bath. 4.

Take Savin, and the Bark and Leaves of the Baytree, Pellitory, Roſemary, Sage, Rue, of each three ounces, boil theſe in a Gallon of white Wine, until half be conſumed: herewith bathe your *Horſe* as before is ſhewed, and whether the grief be viſible or not, uſe it; and you will find it an approved medicine. After this manner hath the *Gentleman* delivered me this Receipt, which he proteſted to me to be moſt ſovereign: which I can neither commend nor diſpraiſe, by reaſon I never yet had experience thereof. And thus much of *Baths*, now let us paſs to other matters.

SECT. 4. *B.*

Hippoph. I *Pray you* Hippoſerus, *can you ſhew me what is good to cauſe a Horſe in the Stable to* Belly *well?*

Hippoſerus. That can I Sir, for many *Horſes* by being kept long in the Stable (eſpecially young *Horſes*) will ſeldom have good bellies; for their bellies will ſhrink up towards their *Flanks*, and they become as gaunt as *Running Horſes* uſe to be, when they are dieted for a Courſe; which doth betoken great Co-

ſtiveneſs in them, which proceedeth of much unnatural heat in the *body*; and ſuch *Horſes* never thrive or like well, for they be naturally tender, and waſh, or ſlew of their fleſh: and therefore ſuch a *Horſe* I could wiſh you not to keep, but to put away as ſoon as may be. For if he come once to hard labour, you cannot poſſibly keep him ſound, but be often ſick and unhealthy. The beſt Cure which I have was taught me by a *French Marſhal*, who told me that every *Horſe* hath about his *Cods* two ſmall ſtrings, which extend from his *Cods* to the bottom of his *belly*, to wit, of each ſide one; which ſaid ſtrings you muſt break with your finger, a thing very eaſie to be done by thoſe that have practiſed it; and when you have broken them, you muſt anoint that place every day with freſh Butter and *Unguentum Populeon* mixed together; this done, in ſhort time he will come to *Belly* well.

Belly paint.

This I never my ſelf tryed, but he that taught it me did much practiſe it, and he brake many of thoſe ſtrings of ſundry *Horſes* in my ſight.

SECT. 5. *B.*

Hippoph. *What means have you to help the pain in the* Belly *of a* Horſe?

Hippoſerus. This diſeaſe is that we call the *Colick*, which the *Italians* do call *Colon*, from whence our *Engliſh Ferriers* derive the word *Colick*: the *French* call it *Tranchaiſons*, which is a pain or griping in the *Belly*, coming ſometimes of cold and wind, and ſometimes of groſs *humours*, which lie in the ſmall *Guts*; ſomtimes by reaſon of abundance of Billious or ſharp *Humors*; & ſometimes by inflammations in the *Body* cauſed by feeding upon raw and bad meats, which occaſion Crudities. But of this we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak more in its proper place of the *Colick*: Only thus much, that whereas pains and Gripings in the *Belly* do proceed oft-times from the *Liver*, and the working of the *Spleen*, which is moſt ventoſous. But I think it not amiſs to give you one receipt wherewith to cure any Gripings or pains which may at any time proceed either from the *Liver*, *Spleen*, or *Milt*. Neither have you any ſigns whereby to know this diſeaſe, but only the ſame for the *Colick*. And the Cure is this.

Belly pain.

Take

Take Hyſſop, Cowſlips, Liverwort, Lungwort, of each like much, ſo as all when they be together, they do not exceed half a handful. Then take Gentiana, Ariſtolochia Rotunda, Fenugreek, Enula Campana dried, long-Pepper, of each half a ſpoonful, and one ſpoonful of Honey: chop the herbs ſmall, and make the other ſimples into fine powder, and boil them in a quart of Ale or Muskadine, which is much better, and give it him blood warm, and ride him an hour after, then ſet him up warm, and four or five hours after give him boiled barley, and for three or four daies let his drink be either Maſnes or white water. **** With this I have done many good Cures.

SECT. 6. *B.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to heal the* Tongue *of a Horſe, which is hurt with the Bit or Haulter?*

Hippoſertus. If the *Tongue* of your Horſe be hurt or cut with his Bit or Haulter, or by any other accident or miſhap, the beſt way to cure and heal it, is: Bit wherwith the tongue is hurt.

Take Mel Roſarum, and anoint it therewith, with a Linnen Rag faſtened to the end of a ſtick, let the Sore be ſo anointed three or four times a day, and let him always after dreſſing ſtand upon the Trench one hour, and in ſhort time it will be whole. With this I have cured many Horſes, ſome of which have had their Tongues cut more than half through. **** Another Cure I have which a *French-man* taught me, which is as followeth.

Take red Honey, the marrow of powder'd Pork, quick Lime and Pepper, all made into fine powder, of each like much; boil all theſe together, ſtill ſtirring it till it come to an Oyntment, with which anoint the ſore twice every day till it be whole. With this receipt I have cured ſundry good Horſes, and I do know it to be very good. ****

SECT.

SECT. 7. *B.*

Hippoph. HOw *may a man ſtanch the bleeding at the* Noſe, *or when a* Vein *is cut, or a wound given, whereby a Horſe is in danger to bleed to death?*

Bleeding to ſtanch. *Hippoſcrus.* We have many ways wherewith to ſtanch Bleeding, as well at the *Noſe* as elſewhere. As thus, take the tender tops of Hyſop, and ſtamp them to maſh, and put them up into his *Noſe* or lay and bind it to the wound or vein cut or broken, and he will be ſuddainly ſtanched. **

Another.

Take *Burſa-Paſtoris* bruiſed, and apply it to the place, and this is very good.

Another.

Take the powder of the ſtone called *Emachile*, and blow it up into the *Noſe*, or lay it to the *Vein* or *Wound*, and the *blood* will be ſtanched.

Another.

Take his own *blood*, dry it, and make it into fine powder, and apply it as is aforeſaid, its very good. **

Another.

Take the tops of the angrieſt and youngeſt red Nettles, and ſtamp them very well, and laid to the place, will ſtanch bleeding. **.

Another.

Take Hogs dung, and apply it as aforeſaid, its very good. **

Take alſo Bumbaſt cotten, Woollen Cloth, Silk, Felt, all theſe burned; or the Herb called Clowns-all-heal, will do the like. ** All of theſe I have often tryed, and do find them right good.

SECT. 8. *B.*

Hippoph. WHat *is good againſt* Blindneſs?

Blindneſs *Hippoſcrus. Blindneſs* may come many ways, and therefore if it be that which cometh of films or thickneſs in the *Eyes*, which of all other kinds of this nature is eaſieſt to be cured; I will remit them to their proper places. But for films

films only I will give you one or two Receipts. But firſt it were fit you ſhould underſtand how this Diſeaſe cometh to a Horſe. If he be ſubject to have a thickneſs or white films in his eyes; it cometh moſt commonly of a *rhume* which paſſeth into his *eyes* from his *head*, which you may ſoon perceive by his continual weeping, and ſending forth watery moiſture, which will run from his *eyes* upon his *face*; which when you ſhall obſerve, let then his *Keeper* ſundry times every day waſh and bathe his *eyes* with cold water newly drawn from the Well; and this will prevent his *films*, and cure that *flux* or *rhume*; but if the *films* do come before you obſerve that he had any ſuch *rhume* or running at the *eyes*: Then

Take mans dung, and put it into a Firepan, and ſo burn it until it come to be a cole, then beat it to fine powder, and put that into a Gooſe quil, and blow it into his *eyes* twice a day; and this will clear his *eyes* again. ***

Take alſo the tops of the angrieſt young red Nettles, a handful, and ſtamp them very well, then put it into a fine Linnen cloth, and then dip it into Beer a little, and ſo ſtrain forth the juice; which done, put a few grains of ſalt, bay or white to it, and when it is diſſolved drop of this liquor into the grieved *eye*, one drop; and do thus morning and evening, and it will take away not only a *film*, and other ſuch like thickneſs which may hinder his *ſight*, but it will alſo take away a Pearl. Theſe two receipts I have often practiſed, and I have found them very good. ***

Hippophilus. *I have heard ſome ſay that they can make a Horſe ſuddenly blind, and yet after reſtore him to his perfect ſight again; but I think they do boaſt and crack of more than they be able to do, how think you* Hippoſerus?

Hippoſerus. Why truly Sir, this is eaſily done, and I will briefly diſcover unto you the ſecret, which is thus.

Take Saffron, and dry it, and make the ſame into very fine powder as much as will ſuffice, and put of this powder into a quill, and ſo blow it into his eyes, and when it hath remained there by the ſpace of half a quarter of an hour, wipe this powder from his eyes ſo clean, as that it may not be diſcerned, and this will make him ſtone blind. But if you be deſirous to have him to reaſſume his ſight again, then

Take

Take Garlick, and chew in your mouth, and then whilſt it is ſtill in your mouth, breathe into his eyes, and in five or ſix times thus doing, he will again ſee very perfectly. **** But this latter muſt be adminiſtred within eight days after the Saffron was blown into his eyes, otherwiſe his ſight will never be recovered. ****.

SECT. 9. *A.*

Hippoph. *What is good againſt the biting of a mad Dog?*

Hippoſerus. I have only three Cures for it, whereof I never had occaſion to make tryal; howbeit they were all recommended unto me for ſpecial good: The firſt is:

Biting of a mad Dog.

Take the tender tops of Rue Box leaves, and Primeroſe Roots, of each a handful, pound them together in a mortar, and put them into a quart of new milk, with *London* Treacle one ounce, and ſo give it him blood warm. This proportion will ſerve very well for two Horſes.

Another.

Take Hobgoblin, Perewincle, and Box leaves, of each one handful, firſt mince them ſmall, and then ſtamp them very ſmall in a ſtone mortar, and with Milk or Beer adminiſter it, both at the Change and Full of the Moon. A third Cure I alſo have, which is this.

Take the Herb which groweth in dry and barren Hills, called *The ſtar of the Earth*; you muſt give it three days together; the firſt time you muſt gather three of theſe Herbs with all the whole Roots, and waſh them clean, and wipe them clean, then pound them well, loſing no part of them; which done, give it your Horſe in Milk, Beer, Ale, or white Wine; but be careful the Horſe take all the Herbs and Roots; but if you will, you may make up theſe Herbs and Roots in freſh or ſweet Butter, which will do as well; the ſecond day give your Horſe five of theſe Herbs and Roots, like as you gave him them the day before; and the third day give him ſeven. Do this punctually as I have here preſcribed you, and be well aſſured your Horſe will be perfectly cured: For albeit I my ſelf have never tryed this medicine, yet I do know the Party of whom I had this Cure, hath cured much Cattle of all ſorts therewith;

for

for it cureth all sorts of living Creatures which shall be bitten by a *mad Dog*: I my self can say thus much of this Receipt, that I knew it cure a whole *Kennel* of *Hounds* of a Gentlemans, one Beagle excepted, which they did not suspect to be bitten, so he fell mad and died, but all the residue escaped, and did very well. Another time a *Gentlemans* son of my acquaintance was unfortunately bitten by a mad Dog who was cured by the party who taught me this Receipt, and this young *Gentleman* (for he was then but a Boy of ten Years old) was so far spent with the rancor of the Disease, before this man took him in hand, as that his *head* began to be addle, and he to talk very idly; yet he cured him, so as he lived and did well, and is at this hour living, he being now come to mans state and a very handsom and proper man; whose Parents whilst they lived, I very well knew, and with whom I was very intimately acquainted. ***.

SECT. 10. *B.*

Hippoph. *What remedy have you for a* Spaven?

Hippoferus. We have two sorts of *Spavens*: The one we call a Through wet, Blood or Bog Spaven, the other a dry or Bone Spaven; the first of these two is easily cured; the second may be cured, but such a cure is not for every Ferrier to take upon him to compass: For that it is a Cure of very great difficulty, and of no less danger. To speak therefore first of the *Blood Spaven*, it is a Disease which groweth upon the *hough* with a swelling which is full of *blood*, which though it be greatest upon the inside, yet the swelling appeareth also upon the outside, being fed and nourished by the great *Vein*, which runneth along the inside of the *thigh*, and so cometh along the inside of the *hough*, and so down the *leg* to the *pastern*, and so from the *pastern* to the bottom of the *foot*. This malady cometh by means that the *blood* is corrupted through hard riding, especially when the Horse is very young. Now the *blood* being through overmuch heating too much stirred, it begetteth a flexible *humour*, which being marvellous thin, falleth to running downwards towards its Center, but it is stopped in its passage in the *hough*, where it resideth, and by that

Blood Spaven.

means ſwelleth, and ſo becometh a Diſeaſe, which peſtring that place; makes the *joint* ſtiff, whereby he becometh ſtark lame, not being able to go, but with great difficulty and pain. The ſign is moſt eaſie, being moſt apparent to the *eye*. The beſt way to cure it, is firſt, to ſhave away the hair on both ſides the ſwelling, ſo far forth as the ſwelling goeth; then take up the *thigh Vein*, and let it *bleed* well; which done tie the *Vein* above the *Orifice*, and let the *Vein* bleed from below what it will; whereby the blood which was aſſembled about the ſpaven place, which cauſed the former ſwelling, is by this means ſent away; then with your Fleam or Inciſion Knife, make two Inciſions in the lower part of the *ſwelling*, and after prick 2 or 3 holes in each ſide of the *hough* where the Spaven is, that the medicine may take the better effect, and when the *blood* and *water* hath vented away ſo much, as it will do, bind round about it, plaiſterwiſe the whites of Eggs and Bole-armoniack very well beaten together, either upon Hurds or Linnen cloth, and make it faſt about the *hough*, ſo keep on the Plaiſter, The next day take it off, and waſh and bathe the ſorance with this *Bath*, *viz.* Take Mallows and the tops of Nettles, and boil them in water till they be ſoft, and therewith *bathe* him. Then take Mallow-Roots, Brancha Urſina, Oil, Wax, and white Wine, ſo much as will ſuffice, and boil them, bind this warm to the ſorance round about the *hough*, and ſew a cloath about it, and ſo let it remain three days more; and every morning ſtroke it downward with both your hands gently, to the end the *bloody humour* may iſſue forth. The fourth day *bathe* and waſh it very clean with the former *Bath*. That done, Take Carana, and ſtone Pitch, of each one ounce, and of Brimſtone a quarter of an ounce made into very fine powder; melt theſe together on the fire, and when it is almoſt ready to be taken off, put into it of Venice Turpentine half an ounce, and make a plaiſter thereof, ſpreading it upon leather, and apply it to the place warm, round about the *hough*, and ſo let it remain until it do fall away of its own accord; or if it do come off ſooner than you might think fitting, then make another of the like ingredients, and apply it as before. *** This is the beſt cure that I could ever know for this malady, with which

A Bath for a Blood-Spaven.

which I have cured many *Blood Spavens.* *** Another for a blood Spaven.

When the swelling doth appear upon the inward part of the *hough*, take up the thigh vein, and let it bleed from the neather part of the leg, till it will bleed no longer, and after give fire to the Spaven both long ways and cross ways, and then apply a restringent charge to the place, and thus it will be cured. This I never tryed, but positively speaking, I hold it to be a very good Cure.

SECT. 11. *B.*

Hippoph. *HOw do you cure the dry* Bone-Spaven?

Hippoferus. This malady is not easily cured but with great difficulty and danger: it is a great hard crust, yea as hard as a *bone* if it be let run, sticking or indeed growing to the *bone*, much closer than the bark of an Oak to the body, and it is upon the inside of the *hough* under the *joint* near to the great *vein*, of which I spake of before in the Cure of the *blood-Spaven*; by which means the Horse that hath such a *Spaven* cannot chuse but hault. This *bone-Spaven* cometh two ways; the first through hard riding, or other kind of intemperate labour, whereby the *blood* dissolving, falleth down and maketh its residence in the *hough*, which doth in short time become dry and hard as any *bone*, from whence the forance taketh its denomination. Secondly, the Horse may have this malady by inheritance or kind either from the Sire or Dam, as I have before specified in the second Chapter of the first Book, where I do intreat of *Breeding*. Bone-Spaven.

The Sign to know it, is evident enough; *viz.* by your *Eye* and *hand*, for it is both visible and palpable enough, and as easie to be seen and felt as the *Leg* it self. The best way to cure it is, first by the taking up the *thigh Vein*, which caused it, and fed and nourished it, and let him bleed well, and so put him into the stable, and do no more to him for that day; the next day shave away the hair from off the *Spaven*, and rub it hard with a *Rowling-pin* (having first anointed the place *with Petroleum*, and chafed it *well with* your hand) or some other round and smooth stick, morning and evening for four days to-

gether, and at the fourth days end, ſlit down the skin with your Inciſion knife, the full length of the *Spaven*; but be very careful you do not touch the great *Artery* or *Vein*, both which do lie very near; for if you do never ſo little hurt the great *Artery*, you utterly maim the Horſe paſt all recovery; having thus done, lay to the place the Herb called *Flamula* bruiſed, and bind it on that it fall not off, for two days more: Then for three days after take Cantharides and Euforbium, and incorporate them well together, (being before beaten into fine powder) with black Sope, and Bay Salt, and lay this to the place, and thus dreſs it every morning; this will lay the *Bone* and Cruſt bare. After take Fearn roots, Hounds tongue, and Bores-greaſe; incorporate all theſe together, and lay it to the place until you perceive the Cruſt to be looſe, and to be waſted; aſſay now and then to looſen the ſame *with* your Cornet or other Inſtrument, and if you can *with* convenience take it off quite, do ſo: Which done, heal up the *Wound with* your Green Ointment preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 10. *Sect.* 4. You may alſo apply to the Sorance after the aforeſaid Corroſives, a Plaiſter of ſtrong *Ægyptiacum*, till it hath fretted off the fleſh upon the Cruſt ſo bare, as poſſibly may be, and ſo you may the better attempt the taking away of the ſaid Cruſt, or by rubbing it with a Rowling pin, or a Haſel ſtick anointed with *Petroleum* till the Cruſt be converted into a matrative ſubſtance, or other thinner kind of corruption, which may very eaſily be drawn away. And thus have I cured the *Bone Spaven* ſeveral times: Which Diſeaſe I cannot eaſily commend to be cured by any, but thoſe who have before hand ſeen ſome other skilful *Ferrier* do it before him, and the Method he uſeth in the working, by reaſon that the Cure is ſo extreamly difficile, and over dangerous. ***. But when at any time you do perceive a ſwelling begin to be in the *Spaven place* of your *Horſe*, whereby you may ſuſpect it may prove a *Spaven*; for prevention whereof

Take natural Balſam, and having firſt ſhaven away the hair, anoint the place with the ſaid Balſam, for two or three days: and after you ſhall repreſs the *Humours* with this Charge.

Take Oil of Roſes three ounces, Bole-Armoniack one ounce, wheat-flower half an ounce, and the white of one Egg; make all

all these into one body, and every day (having first anointed it with) Balsam lay on the said Charge. ***.

For *a Bone* or *Dry-Spaven* or *Curb*: First, take up the vein that feedeth it (whether *Spaven* or *Curb*) as well below as above then give it fire, then charge the place with Pitch made hot, and clap Flax upon it, then four days after, you must dulcifie the sorance with the Oil *Pampilion*, and fresh Butter molten together upon a gentle fire, and when the scar shall be fallen away, you must apply unto it a kind of stuff which is called Blanco or white, made *I* think of Jessoe, and so continue it until it be whole. ***. This is very good.

Hippophilus. *But let us look back again to the* Eyes: *What say you to* Bloud-shotten Eyes?

SECT. 12. *B.*

Hippos. I Say Sir, that *Bloud-shotten Eyes* may easily be holpen if a right Cure be taken, and the *Ferrier* perite; for as touching *Eyes*, they are a tender *Member*, soonest hurt and offended of any part about the body of any living creature; and therefore there ought the greater care to be taken in the cure thereof: and take this by the way for a point of good counsel, and for a good Rule, that in administring to the *Eyes*, you be very careful that your Medicine be not too old, but often made and renewed; for by using old made Medicines, either their Virtues do pass away, whereby the *Member* dressed receives no good; or else, by being too old, the Medicines may most easily putrifie and corrupt, and so by that means do much more harm than good to the *Member* you hoped to cure; insomuch, as if you be not very cautelous in making and compounding your *Receipts* for the *Eyes* aright, you may most easily endeavouring to cure one *Eye*, not fail in putting out both. All Diseases in the *Eyes* come only of two Causes, *viz.* First, either inward, or outward: Secondly, by means of some Blow, Stripe, Prick, Cut, Bruise, or some such like accident. The inward causes do either proceed from evil *Humours*, which do make their resort to the *Eyes*, or else by the means of some cold taken, which breaketh forth at the *Eyes*, into some great *Flux*, or else by means of some hot, sharp, or salt *Humours* which

Bloud-shotten Eyes.

which do make their resort to the *Eyes*; all which do and will endanger *Blood-shotten*, weeping, or watery *Eyes*; and these do proceed from inward causes. Now these Maladies which have their source from the outward causes, are (as I have before mentioned) either by a Blow, Stripe, Prick, Bruise, or the like, which will cause pain and anguish, and such like inconveniences, whereby the *Member* being distempered through heat, burning, glowing, &c. will weep and send forth much moisture, which will produce not only *Blood-shotten* and *Weeping Eyes*; but also (if Art and Care be not advised in time convenient) Dimness of Sight; Films, Pearls, Pin and Web, Dragons, Serpentines, and such numberless Sorances, yea and direct *Blindness* it self, without special providence and care used by way of prevention. Wherefore for Maladies of this Nature, I will prescribe you a few Receipts, which shall be very good and approved. First therefore, whereas the common cure in practise among our ordinary *Ferriers* and *Smiths* is, to draw *blood* as well from the *Temple-veins*, as from the *Neck-veins*; my Counsel is, (which experience is taught me by my *Master* here, and it hath not a little profited and pleasured me) to be very cautelous how you draw *blood* from weak and enfeebled *Eyes*, as *Blood-shotten* and *Rhumatique Eyes* must be; (unless in cases of extream necessity) for by so doing, I have known *Horses* in like cases which before they had *blood* taken from them were able to see a little, but after *blood letting* they have become so blind as a *Beetle*; nor were they ever able (no Art wanting) to see more: so as they after became very notable strong, and able *Mill-horses*. First therefore I aver, that instead of opening a *Vein*, I counsel you to lay unto the *Temple veins* a Charge, whereby to stay and hinder that *flux* of noxious *humours* which were the cause of this Malady; and let this Charge be made thus. Take Pitch, Rosin, Mastick, of each like much; melt all these together, and either apply it upon a plaister made of Leather cut round, or of Velvet, of that colour, or as near to the colour of the *Horse*, as may be, or else lay it good and warm to the *Temple-veins*, with a cloath fastned to a stick and before it be cold, clap Flocks of the same colour to the place, and let it so remain on, till of it self it fall away. Then dress the grieved *Eyes* with these ensuing things.

Blood-shotten Eyes, a charge.

Take

Take the white of a new layed Egg, Hony, Celendine, and red Fennel, of each ſo much as will ſuffice: ſtamp them all well together, and ſo bind it unto the grieved *Eye*. ***. But if you do find, that the ſight waxeth thick; and that you obſerve dimneſs of ſight in him, through his weeping: Take the *Lapis Calaminaris*, and put it into the fire making it red hot, which infuſe or quench in a pint of White-Wine; which done let the ſtone be made red hot, and quenched in the ſame Wine the ſecond time, and ſo in like manner the third time; and after the third quenching, when it is through cold, dry it; and beat it into fine powder, and put the powder thereof into a glaſs Vial, and put thereto your white wine wherein your ſtone was quenched; and after it hath ſtood and infuſed one whole night at the leaſt; put one drop of the cleareſt of the Wine into the *Eye* of the *Horſe*, and ſo into the other *eye* alſo twice a day, till you have ſtayed the *Rhume* and quite cleared his *Eyes*.

Another.

Take the Juice of Celendine, Red-Fennel, Vervine, and Rue, of each a like quantity, *viz.* one Branch or Sprig of either; ſtamp them together, and ſtrain it through a clean fine linnen rag into a little clear running water; then put into it as much grated Ginger, and Bay-ſalt finely powdred, of each ſo much as will lie upon a two penny piece, putting all theſe into a glaſs Vial, let it ſtand to ſettle, and when you do ſee it as clear as it will be, drop a drop of this water into either *eye* morning and evening blood warm, *&c.* ***.

Another

Take alſo Ale-hoof (which is indeed your true ground Ivy) and ſtamp it well in a ſtone morter, (and if it be too dry, put thereinto a little white Roſe-water, or the water of Eye-bright diſtilled; then ſtrain it into a glaſs, and anoint, waſh, bathe, and taint (if need be) the ſorance therewith, and in ſhort time it will cure the *eyes* perfectly. *** The reſidue of Receipts I reſerve to their due places.

SECT.

SECT. 13. *B.*

Hippoph. *WHat Cure have you for a* blood-running itch?

Hippoſerus. This ſorance cometh to a Horſe commonly by means of ſome extream heat given him in the *body* through overviolent exerciſe, whereby the *blood* is inflamed, ſome whereof getteth betwixt the *skin* and the *fleſh*, which running to and fro, being ſalt and billious, it there doth itch and ſmart, provoking the Horſe many times to rub and ſcrub, and bite himſelf: Which diſeaſe if it be let run long, will come to be an *Elephantick leproſie*, or at leaſt a terrible mainge: by which means he will ſoon infect all the Horſes which are in the Stable where he ſtandeth, for it is a contagious malady and loathſome. The beſt way to cure this *itch* before it proceed further, is, Take Chamber-ly newly made, two quarts, Bay-ſalt a handful, unſlaked Lime a handful, Enula-campana root dried, and finely powdred, a handful, but if not dryed, then green, cut into thin ſlices, Hens dung a handful: boil all theſe together a while; then with a ſtick with a clout faſtned to it, waſh the Horſe all over ſo hot as he may well ſuffer the ſame: uſe this three or four mornings together, and it will cure him, keeping him to a ſpare diet, and giving him white water. **.

Blood-running-itch.

SECT. 14. *B.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to prevent* Blowing *and* Purſiveneſs *in a Horſe?*

Hippoſerus. You muſt firſt underſtand Sir, the true nature of this grief, as alſo how he came by it, whereby you may the more eaſily know how to cure the ſame; for that there be ſundry ways and means whereby a Horſe may come to be breathleſs and ſhort of wind, and every one of them may be a ſeveral diſeaſe, and ſo require a diſtinct remedy But if you mean a ſhortneſs of wind only, then know that many Horſes are naturally thick-winded, as being *cock-thropled*, narrow *Chawled*, &c. Alſo ſhortneſs of wind may come unto him accidentally, as when being *fat* and over-laden with *fleſh*, or by being too

rank

rank of *blood*, or by too much glut and foulneſs in the *body*, then is he ſubject to ſhortneſs of breath and purſiveneſs; ſo as upon any motion or exerciſe he will ſweat, pant, blow, and heave at the *flanks*: and this cometh upon him by immoderate riding, eating, drinking, and reſt. And ſuch like exerciſe cauſeth the *panch* of the Horſe (if he be put to any ſudden motion or exerciſe) to be ſo hard and ſtrutted out, as that he muſt ſo ſtrain his *lungs*, (*the bellows of the body*) as to cauſe a diſlocation in them, by means whereof they cannot execute their office or function as they ought; and if care and remedy be not ſpeedily had, he will in ſhort time be paſt all recovery; and then he is brought to that diſeaſe which the vulgar do call *broken-winded*: wherefore to prevent it, adminiſter unto him this enſuing Cure. Blowing and Purſiveneſs.

Let all the hay he eateth, (nor let him eat all he deſireth, for ſuch Horſes are commonly great feeders) be ſprinkled and moiſtened with water, (which will aſſwage his exceſs of drinking, and very much cool his *blood*, which cannot but be inflamed. Then give him every morning, for four or five days together, two Eggs ſteeped twenty four hours in the ſtrongeſt white wine vinegar you can get: give him (I ſay) theſe two Eggs, and then the vinegar after, then ride him ſoftly an hour after, which done, ſet him up warm, and three hours after, give him hay ſprinkled with water, and at night when you do give him his Oats, wet them in Beer or good Ale, and let his drink be white water. **. Do this ten days, ſo that about the beginning of *May*, and about *Michaelmas*, he may be in breath; and ſo keep him to ſpare diet, but with diſcretion. **. This medicine will both purge him, and ſcowr from him much flegm and filth, as well at *noſe* as *mouth*, and he will be both ſounder and in better health a long time after; provided he be alſo kept to moderate exerciſe. And if after you have thus drenched and dieted him, you do not perceive his blowing and lifting at the *ribs* and *flancks* to ceaſe, then be you confident your Horſe is paſt all cure, only ſtill moiſten his meat as before is inculcated, and he will hold out the longer. **. Another Receipt I have for the ſame malady, which if he be not paſt all cure, will do him much good, which is this, *viz.*

Take Wheat-meal, the powder of Lungwort, *alias* Mullet,

Gentian, Anniſeeds, Cummin ſeeds, of each three drams, make them into fine powder, and make paſte with them with honey, and freſh butter, of each like quantity, ſo much as will ſuffice, and put to it the yolks of two new laid eggs; make this paſte into pills, and every morning faſting give him three or four of theſe Pills rolled up in the Powder of Enulacampana, and the Powder of Licoris, of each like much. Theſe Pills preſerve the Wind of the Horſe marvellouſly, and keep him always in breath, and therefore good they be often uſed. ***

Of theſe two Receipts I have had great experience, and a third I was taught, whereof I had not oft made tryal, yet with that little experience I have had of it, I do find it to be right good, being as followeth.

Take the Excrements of a ſucking Child, and put unto it a pint of white Wine; let it boil till the one half be conſumed, and ſo give it him blood-warm. This will cauſe him to forſake his blowing for fifteen days; ſo as when he beginneth again to blow, give him the ſame medicine again, and ſo keep him with this from time to time, ſo oft as you ſhall have cauſe, and by this means you ſhall have his wind good. ***.

But then you muſt beware you put not into the Wine too large a proportion of the Excrements, for it will make him to be very ſick, and peradventure endanger him, for howſoever when at any time you do adminiſter it, it will make him very ſick. Remember alſo to ſprinkle his meat, and to give him white water.

SECT. 15. *B.*

Hippoph. *WHat is your opinion of* Bots, Trunchions, *and* Worms, *their ſeveral ſorts, and how do you kill them?*

Hippoſerus. The general Opinion is, that there are but two ſorts of theſe kind of creeping *Creatures*, to wit *Bots* and *Worms*, for they hold that *Trunchions* and *Bots* are both one and the ſame thing, but they are much miſtaken; for *Bots* are of a different ſhape and colour from *Trunchions*, and of different natures; for *Bots* do breed and reſide in the great *gut* adjoyning to the *fundament*, but *Trunchions* do breed and make their abode

Bots &c.

bode in the maw only, and if they be ſuffered to remain any time within the *body* of the Horſe, they will make their way through the aforeſaid great *gut*, and the *trunchions* through the maw, both which *Vermine* do bring death to the Horſe. Now I do aver, that there is a third ſort, which have none other denomination than plain *Wormes*, unleſs you will add the word *maw-worms*, and ſo ſtile them *maw-wormes*, which name indeed is moſt proper to them, by reaſon that they ſelect for their reſting place the *maw* only, from which they never depart, where they do eat ſmall holes through the *maw*, by means whereof the Horſe dieth.

Three ſorts of Vermin which do engender in the body of the Horſe.

The *Bots* are a kind of little worms with great heads and ſmall tails, they breed and live as I ſaid before in the *great gut* adjoyning to the *fundament*, and they may be taken away moſt eaſily by putting in your hand, and by picking them from the *gut* to which they are faſtened.

1. Bots.

Trunchions are in ſhape ſhort and thick, and of a pretty bigneſs, and they have black and hard heads, but they muſt be ſent away by medicine.

2. Trunchions.

Maw-worms, are long, red, and ſlender, much like unto earth worms, moſt of them of the length of a mans finger, and ſome are longer, theſe muſt alſo be taken away by medicine. All theſe three ſorts do ingender in the *Body* of the Horſe, by means of evil, raw, and flegmatique meats, which have turned to bad digeſtion, whereby putrified matter hath bred in the *maw*, and from thence theſe three ſorts of evil creatures have engendred. You may very eaſily know when your Horſe is troubled with them; for he will ſweat with pain, ſtamp with his *forefeet*, and ſtrike at his *belly* with his *hinder-feet*; he will alſo turn his head towards his *belly* to look upon it, and forſake his meat, he will alſo groan, tumble, and wallow; he will alſo rub his tail, as if it were troubled with the itch. Now how to kill theſe Worms is very difficile, for fear of endangering the life of your Horſe; only medicines muſt be given which muſt cauſe them to diſtaſt the maw, and to feed upon ſuch drinks being ſweet, whereby he may void them with his *dung*. I will here give you many Receipts, ſome of which I have very much experimented; and the firſt is this, *viz.*

3. Worms.

Take of Egrimony one handful, chop and ſtamp it ſmall, and put into it a quart of new milk, with brimſtone made into very fine powder half an ounce; give this to your Horſe faſting blood-warm, and keep him upon the trench faſting three hours at the leaſt, and at night give him white water. *⁂*.

Another.

Take the guts of a well grown Chicken (all but the Gizard) and rowl it up warm in the powder of Brimſtone and bay-ſalt, and put it down his *throat*, and trot him up and down half an hour, doing as before. *⁂*.

Another.

Take new milk, and the powder of brimſtone, this doth the like. *⁂*.

Another.

Take Saven, and Wormwood chopped and ſtamped ſmall, put to it a pint a Muskadine, and give it him warm. *⁂*. Take alſo a quart of *brine* newly made, and give it him to drink. *⁂*.

Another.

Take as much *Precipitate, alias Red Mercury calcined,* as will lye upon a two penny piece of ſilver, and convey it into a piece of ſweet butter the bigneſs of an egg, in manner of a pill: give him this in a morning faſting, the Horſe having ſtood all night in his *Muſſel* at the empty *Rack*, unleſs extremity do compel you, for in ſuch a caſe you may adminiſter it at any other time. When you are to give it him, take forth his *tongue*, and make him ſwallow the whole pill, then ride him a while up and down, and after ſet him up warm, cauſing him to faſt three hours after; and with this medicine you may kill all manner of *Bots*, *Trunchions*, and *Worms*, of what kind ſoever; yet at the giving, you muſt be wondrous circumſpect and careful; for this *Precipitate* is a very ſtrong poyſon, wherefore you muſt be very obſervant of your proportion, wherein you ought not to exceed, except with good caution. Again, if you mix your *Precipitate* before-hand with a little ſweet butter, the quantity of a Haſel-nut, and then afterwards lap it up in the greater lump of butter, it may be received by the Horſe to his leſs danger, and it will beſides very much allay its evil quality.

quality. But this I leave to your own diſcretion, aſſuring you that there is hardly any thing comparable to this, for this Diſeaſe. ***. This Receipt I have adminiſtred unto three Horſes only, whereof the firſt and laſt I cured, but the ſecond died under my hands; but I do aſſure you not for any want of care. ***.

Another.

Take Sublimatum ſo much as can be taken upon a two-peny piece of ſilver, and made up in butter, it will kill the Bots in a Horſe, if it be adminiſtred as was the former Receipt. This I did never try.

Another.

Take a quart of good Ale, of Rue and Saven, of each a quarter of a pound, of Stone-Crop half a pound; bray all theſe in a mortar, and put them to the Ale, and boyl it well; then ſtrain it, and give it him blood-warm, and he will void them.

Another.

Take of new milk a quart, and a peny weight of brimſtone in fine powder, and twenty of the long hairs of his tail, cut them very ſhort, and put it altogether into the milk, and give it him to drink, and then throw a handful of bay-ſalt into his mouth, and he is cured. ***.

Another.

Take a quart of ſtrong Wort, and give it him to drink blood-warm, and let him faſt eight hours after.

Another.

Take the firſt day a quart of new milk, and put to it half a pint of honey, and give it him warm; this will cauſe them to give over gnawing and feeding upon the maw for a ſeaſon, by reaſon they will drink and ſuck the milk and honey for a time; the next day, give him his drink.

Take a quart of ſweet Wort or of your ſtrongeſt Ale eſpecially if it be new, then take a quarter of a pound of Fern roots, of Saven half a pound, of Stone-Crop half a pound; ſtamp them altogether, and put to it of Brimſtone and of ſoot, of each two ſpoonfuls, both well powdred, and let all theſe be well ſteeped in Wort or Ale two hours, then ſtrain it, and give him of this two good hornfuls, then bridle him, and let

him

him ſtand upon the trench ſix hours, but this will not kill them: The third day give him theſe purging pills. Take of Lard one pound, let it be laid in water two hours, then take nothing but the pure fat thereof only, beat it well in a ſtone mortar, and put thereto of Anniſeeds, Licoris, and Fenugreek, all made into fine powder, of each half an ounce, Aloe powdred, two drams, and of Agarick one ounce; make all theſe well mixed into one body, and divide them equally into ſix Pills or Balls, then the Horſe having faſted over night, give him in the morning three of theſe Pills anointed firſt with honey, then cloath him up, and litter him well, and keep the Stable warm, and at night give him a ſweet maſh, and for three days after, let him have none other drink than white water. Theſe Balls will ſo purge the bad *humors* that breed and nouriſh theſe *Vermine*, that the Horſe will be perfectly clean and free from them, of what kind ſoever they are; and you ſhall find them to come away in his *dung*, and the moſt of them to be living; for no medicine (but thoſe two only of *Precipitate* and *Sublimate* before remembred, in which is ſo great peril) can kill them. ***. This Receipt before any other I have made moſt uſe of, and I find it to be the very beſt, and moſt infallible of them all; and this will hardly leave one *Bot*, *Trunchion*, or *Worm* in all his *Body*: I forbear to report unto you, what quantity of theſe *Vermine* a *Horſe* hath voided at a time, for I love not to relate *Wonders*. Another Receipt I will deliver you, howbeit not equivalent to the former, which is this, *viz.*

Take the tender tops of green Broom, and of Saven, of each half a handful, chop them very ſmall, and work them up into Pills with freſh or ſweet butter; and having kept the *Horſe* over-night faſting, give to him three of theſe Pills in the morning early, then ſet him upon the Trench, and let him faſt two hours after, but give him no water till night, and that white water. ***. This alſo have I experienced, and have found it to be very good, for it hath cauſed the *Horſe* to void many of theſe bad *Cattle*. I will conclude with this: *viz.*

Take a quart of milk warm from the Cow, and put to it Honey half a pint, and give it him the firſt day; the next day take Rue and Roſemary, of each half a handful, ſtamp them well together, then let it infuſe, together with the powder of

of Brimſtone, and Soot ſo much as will ſuffice, four hours in Wort or Ale a quart, then ſtrain it, and give it him blood warm; then let him be walked or gently ridden an hour or two, and ſo ſet him up warm, and give him Hay an hour before you give him any drink, which let be white water, and you muſt not give him Hay in four or ſix hours after you have given him his foreſaid drink; and you muſt withal remember, that in all medicines as well for this kind of Malady, as for any other, his drink muſt be either a ſweet Maſh, or elſe white water. ***. This alſo is a very good Receipt, and I have had good experience of it, and it hath evermore wrought well.***.

SECT. 16. *B.*

Hippoph. *WHat help have you for a* Brittle Hoof?

Hippoſerus. This cometh two ways; to wit, by nature, or by accident: it cometh naturally when the *Stallion* who begat him, or the *Mare* which did Fole him, was ſubject to the ſame infirmity; and therefore I do adviſe all men to forbear Breeding with ſuch a *Stallion* or *Mare*, for all their *Colts* will be in danger to partake thereof. If it come accidentally, then muſt it fall out to come either by ſome Surfet that fell down into the *Feet*, which cauſed a ſiccity in the *Hoofs*, or elſe in that he had been formerly Foundred or heat in the *Feet*, and not well cured. I need not ſhew the ſigns whereby to know his Malady, being it is moſt apparent. As touching the Cure, I will give you but only one Receipt for the preſent; by reaſon I ſhall have occaſion to handle it more largely when we come to intreat of the *Hoofs*: and the Cure is this: *viz.* Brittle Hoof.

Take a Rape, or a Drawing-Iron, and with either of theſe make the Coffin of the *Hoof* fine and thin, in all ſuch places as you ſhall ſee cauſe, and pare the *Soles* very thin alſo, then apply to the *Feet*, as well *Soles* as *Coffins* this enſuing Charge. Take Rye bran, or for default thereof, Wheat bran, *Oxen* or *Cows* dung, of theſe ſo much as will ſuffice, then take Sheeps Suet, and Hogs greaſe tried, Tarr and Turpentine of each half a pound, mince the Sheeps Suet very ſmall, and melt it on the fire, then put to your Hogs greaſe, and when theſe be molten, put in your Ox or Cow dung, ſtirring them well together, then

then by degrees put in your Bran, continually ſtirring them, and laſtly your Tar and Turpentine; and when you have kneaded all theſe ſo well together, as that they are become one body, and like to paſte; take them from the fire, and ſo keep them for your uſe, and being only warm, ſtop his *Soles* therewith, but tack on his *Shoes* firſt: but for his *Coffins* make Bags of courſe cloath, and firſt covering all his *Coffins* good and thick, faſten thoſe bags over his *hoofs* to his *Paſterns*, but take heed they be not too hard tied, yet ſo as they may ſtay on; dreſs him thus every day once for 15 or 20 days together, and let him not in all that time touch any water with his *Feet*, and his *hoofs* will become firm and tough again. After, if you turn him forth into moiſt ground, it will be the better, if the ſeaſon will permit it. You muſt during the time of his Cure give him continually white Water. ***. This Cure I have often tryed, and it is very good.***.

SECT. 17. *B.*

Hippoph. WHat *do you hold good to be applyed to the* Heels *and* Feet *of a* Horſe, *that is bruiſed and beaten with travel?*

Hippoſerus. Sir, I will give you only one Receipt for this Cure, which I have often uſed, and it is ſo truly a good one, as that its equal can hardly be found. And thus it is:

Bruiſed heels and feet. Take of the tender tops of the moſt angry, and ſtinging Nettles you can get, one handful, ſtamp them very well in a Mortar, and when they be throughly beaten, put unto them of Turpentine and tried Hogs greaſe, ſo much as will ſuffice, to bring it to a formal Unguent: Apply this to the *Feet* and *Heels* of your *Horſe*, in bags or clouts, and let this be done the very next morning after you come where you may reſt him: renew this every day once, and in ſhort time he may be ſound and well again. ***.

SECT. 18. *B.*

Hippoph. WHat *is good to allay burning with* Shot, Gunpowder, *or* Wild-fire?

Hippoſerus.

Hippoferus. For this malady I uſe evermore to take varniſh, and to put it into fair water, and to beat the water and varniſh very well together, then I pour away the water from the varniſh, and ſo with a feather I anoint the place burned, and in few times dreſſing, it will kill the fire; which done, I heal the ſorance with carnifying and healing ſalves. **. This is very good. Burning with fire.

But I will now give you two or three other Unguents, which are moſt precious againſt all ſorts of burnings, which are theſe.

Take Hogs greaſe, as much as will ſuffice, ſet it upon the fire, and let it boyl well, and as the skin ariſeth, take it away with a feather, or ſuch like thing, until no more will ariſe; that done, and that it hath boyled enough, then put it forth into an earthen veſſel, and ſet it forth in the open air four or five nights, after which time you muſt waſh it in a great quantity of clear running or fountain water, to the end it may be free from ſalt or other filth, and waſh it ſo long in ſundry waters in ſome great bowl, until it come to be very white; then melt only this oyntment, and ſo keep it for your uſe, wherewith anoint the place grieved, and in ſhort time it will cure them. **. This I had of a famous *French Marſhal*, and I have often uſed it, and I have ever found it to be moſt ſovereign for all ſorts of burnings. But if Hogs greaſe may not be had, then take the fat of Bacon, and waſh it well, and it is marvellous good. **.

Another.

Take freſh butter, and the whites of Eggs, of each as much as will ſuffice, beat them well together, till you bring them to a formal Unguent, and anoint the places burned therewith, and it will ſpeedily take away the fire and cure them ſoundly. **. This is all ſpecial good.

Another.

Take a ſtone of quick lime which muſt be well burned, (that which is beſt burned, will be lighteſt) diſſolve it in fair water, and when the water is ſettled, ſo as all the Lime remaineth in the bottom, ſtrain the cleareſt of the water thorow a fine clean linnen cloath, then put unto this water either the Oyl of Hemp-ſeed, or of the Oyl of Olive, of like quantity with the water; and ſo beating them well together, you ſhall have

an excellent Unguent moſt precious for all ſorts of burnings. And the nature of theſe three Unguents be to leave no ſcars. Wherefore we apply them for moſt ſovereign remedies, as well for man as beaſt in caſes of this nature. **. This alſo I have often tried, and I have found them all to be moſt ſingular.

SECT. 19. *B.*

Hippoph. *How do you take away* Bunches, Knots, Warts, *and* Wens *from a* Horſe?

Bunches, Knots, &c. *Hippoſerus.* Theſe kinds of ſorances do come to a Horſe, by means of much rankneſs of bad blood, which is ingendred of *peccant humours*, which *humors* do proceed of naughty meat. They are ſo apparent to the *eye*, that any man may point at them with his finger. The way to free your Horſe of them, is firſt: Take up ſuch Veins as you may know to feed them; then ſhave away the hair from about the places, and for four days together, lay *Ægyptiacum* to them; at four days end, waſh and bathe the places with ſtrong Wine vinegar made hot; then take Wine vinegar one pint, green Coperas, and Diers Galls, of each four ounces, Cantharides two ounces, bay-ſalt one handful, make theſe into fine powder, and let them boyl on the fire with the Vinegar a little, and ſo waſh the ſorances therewith ſcalding hot, and every third day continue thus to do till you perceive them to dry up. Let the ſcurff fall away of its own accord at leiſure; if any more ſhall happen to grow forth afterwards, apply the ſame medicine again, albeit it was formerly cured by the ſame thing: yet I have not ſeen any Horſe to fall into the ſame malady again, and during the time you have him in cure, let him not come in any water, but keep him in the Stable warm. **. Another Cure is this: Firſt (as before) ſhave away the *hair*, and take up the *veins* which feed thoſe ſorances, then ſix days after, let him *blood* in the *heels* to draw away the *humors* downwards: then waſh and bathe him well with hot vinegar; which done, take a quart of Oyl of Nuts, and Verdigreaſe powdred two ounces, and a quarter of a pint of Ink; mix all theſe well together, and apply it cold to the places, rubbing and bathing them well therewith, and if the Knots and Warts do not begin to dry up

up at the firſt dreſſing, then muſt you begin again every fourth day, until ſuch time as they be throughly cured. ***. Another, Take courſe honey one pound, Verdigreaſe in powder three ounces, mix theſe well together with the fineſt wheat flower, and ſo bring it to an oyntment, and after you have cleanſed the ſorances as before is ſhewed you, apply this oyntment to the place with a rowler: if there be any Warts among the Knots, cut them away clean before you do apply the ſaid oyntment, and thus doing ten or twelve days every other day, he will be perfectly cured. ***. Another. Shave away the *hair*, and take up the *veins* as aforeſaid, then waſh and bathe the place well, then take mutton ſewet, mallows, and brimſtone, make a decoction hereof, and when you have very well bathed the ſorances with the ſaid decoction, take the ſubſtance thereof and putting it between two linnen cloaths, make it faſt to the place over night, and in the morning take it away, which done, apply unto the place this Unguent, *viz.*

Take Vinegar and Mutton Sewet, the gum of the Pine tree, new Wax, and Roſin of each like much: melt all theſe together, (but put in your Gum laſt) and ſo anoint the ſorances with a feather twice every day till they be whole. Of this Cure I never made tryal, but it ſeemeth to be a good one. You muſt not forget in every of theſe Cures to take up ſuch *veins* which in your judgement you may find to feed thoſe ſorances, and to ſhave way the *hair* from above them clean. Now with this other Cure, I will conclude. Waſh and bathe the places with the decoction laſt before mentioned, and lay the ſubſtance to the ſores. Take then new Wax, Turpentine, and Gum Arabick, of each like much: melt them to an Unguent, and herewith anoint the ſorances; during which time, let him come into no water, and the Poultes of Mallows, *&c.* muſt be every night applied till he be whole.

Another.

Take (and to conclude) blew ſlate and Brimſtone, of each four ounces, Verdigreaſe one ounce, made into fine powder, then take freſh butter four pound, melt it in a ſmall Kettle or Poſnet; and ſo ſoon as the butter is molten, put into it all the former ingredients, and ſo let them boil well; and when you have brought it to a perfect Unguent, take it off, and keep

it for your uſe. And when you would uſe it, warm thereof upon a chafing diſh and coals, and anoint your Horſe therewith upon the ſorance, and that but once, and it will ſuffice. But you muſt let him *blood* the day before you anoint him in the *neck vein.* And at the end of eight days, take a quantity of cold Lee, and three ounces of black Sope, and waſh the ſorance therewith. The quantity of oyntment will ſerve but only for two Horſes. Of this Receipt I never had occaſion to make trial; but it was taught me by a famous *Marſhal* of *France*, who commended it unto me for an extraordinary good Receipt; and truly it ſeems to me ſo to be.

CHAP. VI.

SECT. 1. *C.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to be applied to a* Horſe, *that hath caſt himſelf in his* Halter?

Hippoſerus. This commonly cometh to a *Horſe* which being tied down to the Manger, his *ear* or *Foal* itching, with his hinder *foot* ſcratcheth the place that itcheth, ſo as when he taketh away his *Foot*, the Halter catcheth into the *Paſtern Joynt*; which he feeling, falleth to ſtriving, whereby he caſteth himſelf down, and by means of the hardneſs of the Cord, he is gauled even to the very bone, and many times if he be not opportunely reſcued, the Halter doth ſtrangle him, and he is found ſtark dead. But if the *Horſe* do eſcape with life, he will be nevertheleſs terrible gauled, which will ſoon rankle and ſwell, unleſs cure be preſently adminiſtred. The ſign whereby to know it, is apparent enough. I will give you only two Receipts for this ſorance, whereof the firſt ſhall be this, *viz.*

Caſt in a Halter.

Take the leaf of the herb called Saubſucus, ſtamp it and ſtrain it, and take only the juyce thereof, and apply the ſaid juyce to the ſorance by waſhing it therewith, after take a linnen cloath, white and clean, and make it into three or four folds, ſteeping the cloath in the ſaid juyce, and bind it on the place grieved, but in Winter when the ſaid leaf is not to be had, you

you muſt take the ſecond rind thereof, and do therewith as before; but then note, that before you waſh and apply the ſaid juyce to the wound, you muſt firſt waſh the ſorance with warm water, and then apply the ſaid juyce, and he ſhall be perfectly cured in ſhort time. This I never yet experienced by reaſon I could never yet meet with the Herb. This ſecond I have often tried and I have found it to be infallible, *viz.* Make a Rowl of fat Wool, and ſteep the ſame in Vinegar and Sheeps ſuet ſo much as will ſuffice, boiled together till it cometh to be very thick, and let the Rowl be full as long, or rather ſomewhat longer than the place gauled: apply this to the ſorance Plaiſter-wiſe, and bind upon it a clean linnen cloath, changing it twice a day, and in ſhort time it will be whole. This is right good. ***.

SECT. 2. C.

Hippoph. *What Cure have you for a* Canker?

Hippoſerus. This is a very loathſome ſorance, which if it be ſuffered to run long will ſo feſter, and corrupt the place where it happeneth that it will violently eat, even to the very *bone*: if it fall upon the *Tongue*, it will eat the very root in ſunder; if in the *Noſe*, it will eat the very *Griſtle* through; You may eaſily know this ſorance, for that the places will be very raw, and bleed often, and many times he ſhall perceive a white ſcurff to grow upon the place grieved. For it is a moſt *Cankerous Ulcer*, which oftimes is ingendred of a fretting humour. It cometh two ways, that is, either of naughty, and corrupt *blood* procured by means of unwholeſom meat, or by ſome *Billious Humour* which came to the *Horſe* by an extream cold not long before taken, which will cauſe his breath to ſtink loathſomly. I will deliver unto you ſundry Cures for this ſorance, which my ſelf have experimented, and have found them to be very good. Canker.

Take white Wine half a pint, Roch Alom the quantity of a Wall-nut, Bay ſalt half a ſpoonful, *Engliſh* Honey one ſpoonful, Red Sage, Rue, Ribwort, Honey-Suckle Leaves, Yarrow, Plantine, Bramble Leaves, of each like much, but of every one

a

a little: boil all theſe in the white Wine ſo much as will ſuffice, till a quarter be conſumed, and then firſt inject of this Water into the ſorance, or elſe if the *Canker* be in the *Mouth*, waſh the place with a clout faſtned to a ſticks end, and ſo dreſs him therewith twice a day or oftner if you ſhall ſee cauſe, till it be whole.

Another.

Take green coperas, and Alom, of each one pound, white Coperas four drams, boil theſe in a bottle of running water until almoſt the one moity be conſumed, then take it from the fire, and put into it of Honey half a pound, then holding up his *Head* with a Drenching Staff (but yet not too high) with a Pewter or Elder Syringe or Squirt, inject it into his *Noſe* (if the *Canker* be there) bloud-warm, which done, give preſently his *head* liberty, whereby he may ſnuffle and blow forth the corruption, and fail not to inject him thus three or four times one after the other at every dreſſing; and do thus Morning and Evening till it be whole, which will not be long. ***. But if it be only a ſore Mouth, and that it come to be a *Canker*, then

Take of the ſtrongeſt white Wine Vinegar, and make it thick with powder Alom, and ſo waſh the ſorance therewith two or three days together, for this will kill and deſtroy the *Ulcer*, then heal up the ſorance thus: *Viz.*

Take of fair Water a quart, Alom, and Honey, of each four ounces, Maudeline leaves, red Sage, and Columbine leaves, of each a handful; boil all theſe in the Water till half be conſumed, and every day twice, that is, Morning and Evening, waſh his *Mouth* therewith blood-warm, and it will heal him. ***.

Another.

Firſt make this ſtrong Alom water, *viz.* Take Alom half a pound, Honey half a pint, red Sage, and Wood-bind-leaves, of each a handful: boyl all theſe in fair water, till half be conſumed, with this water and herbs waſh and rub the ſores till they become red and raw, then take white Wine Vinegar half a pint, Alom powdered two ounces, Ginger powdred half an ounce, and of Life-Honey half a pint, mix all theſe well together, and therewith anoint the Sore Morning and Evening, and it will cure him. ***.

All

All theſe Receipts I have made tryal of, and have found them to be right good. *Another.*

Take the juyce of the root *Aſphodil* ſeven ounces, Quicklime, and Arſnick of each two ounces, beat and incorporate all theſe together, and put them into a new pot cloſe ſtopped, and let it boil till it come to aſhes; theſe aſhes you may apply to the Sorance twice a day, but the ſore muſt be firſt waſhed with ſtrong Vinegar, as before is taught.

SECT. 3. *C.*

Hippoph. *How cure you that* Horſe *who hath caſt his* Hoof?

Hipposerus. This is a troubleſom Sorance, yet with care it may be cured: it cometh either by means of ſome Foundering, or by an Accloy, Prick, Stub, Gravelling, Quitterbone, or other hurt within the *Foot*, which breaking out above round about the *Cronet*, and in time the *hoof* breaking it falleth from the *foot*. I need relate no Signs whereby to know the ſame, The Cure is this.

Caſting the Hoof.

Take *Aqua fortis* the ſtrongeſt you can get, and firſt with a Rape, or Drawing Iron, file or draw away the old *hoof* ſomewhat near, then touch the *hoof* ſo prepared with your *Aqua-fortis*, three or four ſeveral dreſſings, and no more: this done, anoint the *foot* with the Unguent we do commonly make for *Horſes feet*: *viz.* Take Hogs greaſe three pound, Pach greaſe two pound, Venice Turpentine one pound, new Wax half a pound, Sallet Oyl one pound: melt and mix all theſe upon the fire, and herewith chafe, rub, and anoint the *Coffin* of the *hoof* up to the very top; and this will bring a new *hoof*. ***.

Take alſo Turpentine half a pound, Tar half a pint, new Wax half a pound, Sallet Oyl one pint: melt all theſe except the Turpentine together till they be well mixed, and a little before you take it from the fire, put in your Turpentine, and ſtir it till it be cold; but before hand make him a Buskin of Leather, with a thick ſole, made fit for his *hoof*, but wide enough, that it may be tied about his *Paſtern*, and dreſs his *hoof* with this medicine, laying Tow or Hurds upon it, and ſo put on the ſaid Buskin, and faſten it to the *Paſtern joynt*, or a little above, but ſo as the Buskin may no way

way offend or trouble the foot, renewing your medicine every day once till he be whole ***.

This Receipt is alſo moſt ſovereign for a Horſe that is *hoof-bound:* and as the new *hoof* beginneth to come, it behooveth you carefully to obſerve where it groweth harder or thicker in one place more than another, or crumbleth, or goeth out of order or faſhion any where about the *hoof*; which when you ſhall perceive, file the place with your Rape, and ſo keep the *hoof* in good faſhion, by which means there will come a very perfect *hoof* again: which being put him out to graſs into ſome moiſt Paſture or Meadow, for that is the only way to cauſe the *hoof* to become tough.

Hippophilus. *What is the reaſon that in all your medicines in which you uſe Turpentine, you put that in laſt, and not when you put in your other ingredients?*

Hippoſerus. Sir, I ſhall give you in a word a ſufficient reaſon for this demand; to wit, if the ingredients which I do put into any medicine be to be molten upon the fire as Gums, Pitch, Tar, Roſin, and the like; if I ſhould put in my Turpentine together at once with the Reſidue before it could be ſufficiently molten or boiled, the Turpentine (being a drug ſo ſubtile) would conſume it ſelf into *vapour*, and by that means leave the medicine unperfect, and that is the cauſe why I do put in my Turpentine evermore a little before I take it from the fire.

SECT. 4. C.

Hippoph. IN *what cauſes do you* Cauterize, *and what be its virtues?*

Hippoſerus. Cauterization or giving of fire is of two natures, *viz. Actual*, and *Potential*: your *Cautery Actual* is made by hot burning inſtruments, with which you ſear and burn thoſe places which be requiſite for the perfecting of the Cure you have in hand, which cannot be peradventure otherwiſe well cured, but by giving of the fire: as in caſe of great impoſtumation, ſtanching of *blood* in wounds, or in ſearing of *veins*, *ſinews*, or the like; or elſe in caſe of diſmembring, if other means be not at hand, whereby to ſtay the flux of *blood* without danger of bleeding to death, and ſo likewiſe in very many

caſes

caſes of this nature; wherein I do adviſe all men that are not very perfect in giving the fire, that they do not practiſe upon Horſes of price, but firſt upon Jades, and low-prized Horſes, to the end they may the better come to know how to carry their hand, and to underſtand themſelves in this Art the better: as when they are to uſe the lighter, and when the heavier hand; as alſo that they do make their circles round, and their lines ſtreight and even, and not crooked or waving. For this actual fire is a thing moſt neceſſary for them that do truly know and underſtand the true uſe and virtue thereof, and therefore it ought to be very carefully, judiciouſly and moderately applyed, and never but upon good and very conſiderate grounds; which in ſo doing, you ſhall find it to be a moſt ſovereign remedy to hinder and ſtay all manner of corruption whereunto any member may be inclined, provided that in the handling of your Inſtrument, you touch not *Muſcles*, *Arteries*, *Sinews*, *Ligaments*, *Chords*, or the like; for ſo you may utterly lame where youwould ſet upright, and deſtroy where you would cure, excepting only in caſes needful. For by applying this *actual fire*, you ſhall joyn and conglutinate parts and *members* ſevered, dry up ſuperfluous moiſture, and ſink *members* ſwelled: you ſhall beſides bring forth all evil and putrefactious matter congealed and gathered into Knots, as Wens, Biles, Puſtils, Exulcerations, and the like: you ſhall alſo aſſwage old griefs, and make perfect all ſuch parts of the *body* as be any way corrupted: neither ſhall you need fear the increaſe of any evil *humours*, by reaſon that the *skin* being ſevered by means of the hot Iron, it doth ripen and digeſt all manner of putrefaction and matrative ſtuff, whereby it venteth and paſſeth away much more eaſily, healing and qualifying all grief and pain, cauſing the *member* which before was ſubject to feſtring and to gangrene, become the ſounder, and by much the ſtronger; ſo as nothing of diſadvantage will be remaining, but the *ſcar* only where the Iron paſſed, and the worſt that can be made thereof, will be but a little *eye-ſore*. But then you muſt have a very great regard unto your inſtruments that they be made according to the nature and quality of the place and *member* which is to be feared; for one faſhion will not ſerve in all cauſes: for as the places which

Cautery actual

are to be *cauterized*, are commonly different in ſhape and proportion, ſo alſo ought the ſhapes and faſhions of your Inſtruments to be made accordingly. You are alſo to have a ſpecial care to the heating of your Inſtruments, which ought to be done with a right good judgment; for as they muſt not be too cold, ſo ought they not to be too hot, for by that means you may eaſily inflame the *cauterized* places too much. Again in giving the fire great care muſt be had to the bearing of the hand, for therein conſiſteth very great cunning; and as I have before admoniſhed you to be careful that you touch not any *ſinew* or *ligament*, ſo no fire is to be given to the diſlocation or fraction of any bone. And as touching the *metal* whereof your inſtruments are to be made: ſome prefer *Gold*, *Silver*, and *Braſs* or *Copper* before *Steel* or *Iron*: but I will not controul any mans knowledge, confeſſing mine own to be the leaſt; only thus much I may aver of that little I have (through Gods permiſſion) that having made trial of them all, yet I have ever in all my practice found *Iron* and *Steel* to be the very beſt and moſt certain to work with, of all the other *metals*; and my reaſon is becauſe *Steel* or *Iron* will retain its once received heat longer then any other *metal*, whereby I cannot be ſo much deceived in my work; for *Gold*, *Silver*, and *Braſs*, as they be ſooner made hot than *Iron* or *Steel*, ſo are they as ſoon cold: now *Steel* and *Iron* Metals are much more ſubſtantial and harder of nature than the other *metals* be; and therefore as they are ſomewhat longer before they be hot, ſo they retain their heat much longer, which during the time of their agitation, works more ſurely: again, a man cannot tell when thoſe other metals are hot enough, as alſo when they be too hot, if you put never ſo little water to them whereby to allay their overmuch heat, they ſuddenly turn and become ſo cold as not to be able to make them work at all; the contrary whereof you ſhall find to be in the nature of *Iron* and *Steel*. And let this ſuffice for *cautery actual*. Now I will in a word handle *cautery Potential*, which as the *cautery actual* burneth the *fleſh* by the hot inſtrument; even ſo doth *cautery Potential* burn the *fleſh* by medicine, of which there are three ſorts or degrees, namely by *corroſive*, by *cauſtick*, or by *putrefaction*: *Corroſive* is when that is applyed to the wound wherein is dead or proud *fleſh* to corrode or eat it.

Cautery potential.

1. Corroſive

it away, by which means the wound is prepared and made the more fit for Emplaſters, Waters, or Unguents which do carnifie, and make good fleſh; by which means the wound which before was foul, is now become clean, healed up, and made ſound: and theſe corroding things are commonly Precipitates, Sublimatum, Arſnick, Reſalgar, Leads white and red, Verdigreaſe, Alome, Coperas white and green, Vitrial, Sanderacha Chryſocollo, Origanum, Mercury, Aconitum, Capitellium, Roman Vitrial, Shaving of Oxe or Harts horn, red Coral, Spunge of the Sea ſomewhat burned, Unguentum Apoſtolorum, Unguentum Ægiptiacum, Unguentum Caraccum, Magiſtra, Salniter, Cantharides, Apium, Aqua-fortis, Siclamine, Melanacardinum, and many more, which I am enforced to leave out partly for want of memory, and partly for want of time; all which do burn, eat and corrode the *fleſh*, putting the poor *beaſt* to mickle pain. A *Cauſtick* is a greater burner, for that being once put to the *skin*, will in ſhort time make a wound where none was before; for therewith we do uſe to make iſſues, and where it is ſet to the *fleſh* or *skin*, it maketh its way in, whereby we may in ſhorter ſpace adminiſter our *Emplaſtrum*; for *Cauſticks* are ſtronger and more violent than either *Putrefactives* or *Corroſives*; for whereas *Corroſives* do work only upon *skin* broken, and to corrode and eat out dead, proud, ſpungy, and naughty *fleſh*: and *Putrefactives* do ripen, mollifie, and prepare the wound for the *Cauſtick*; ſo *Cauſticks* do break *skin* and *fleſh* and all; and therefore it is more violent, and burneth worſe than any of the two former. Now your *Putrefactives* are ſuch medicines as we do commonly apply to ſwellings, which we do make for the moſt part of medicines compounded; as Polteſſes, roſted Sorrel, white Lilly roots, and the like: for ſuch things are drawers and ripeners, cauſing ſwellings which be hard and fleſhy, to become ſoft and putrefactive, and to prepare Sorances for the *Cauſticks*, whoſe nature is to break and open, what before the *Putrefactive* had ripened, which otherwiſe muſt have been done by *Cautery Actual* or by inciſion. And this I do hold ſufficient to be handled upon this ſubject; howſoever much more, and many other particulars may be delivered, yet in this conſiſteth the ſubſtance of all: for by reaſon I aim at brevity, I refer you to Mr. *Blundeviles Office*, and to Mr. *Markhams Maſter-peice*, who have intreated hereof very accurately.

Cauſticks.

Putrefactive.

SECT. 5. *C.*

Hippoph. *WHat good Charge have you to be applyed to the* Feet, *wherewith to ſtop them, when the* Horſe *is either* Surbated *or in danger of* Foundring?

Hippoſerus. This cometh commonly to young *Horſes*, which are ſorely ridden before their *Hooſs* and *Feet* be hardened, as alſo ſometimes when *Horſes* upon hard riding and long travel are ill ſhod; this doth not only cauſe them to be *Surbated*, but alſo hazardeth their *Foundring*; which ſo ſoon as you do perceive, the firſt thing you do, is to cauſe his *Feet* to be clean pickt, that no Gravel be remaining betwixt the Web of the Shoe and the Sole, then waſh the *Feet* with water and ſalt, and about an hour after let his feet be throughly well ſtopped with the charge preſcribed you in Chapter the tenth, *Sect.* the ſixteenth of this Book; and he will be well in ſhort time.

Charge for Surbating.

SECT. 6. *C.*

Hippoph. *WHat is the beſt way to* Cleanſe *and* Purge *a* Horſe *from all filth, at his firſt taking up from graſs?*

Hippoſerus. This I have ſhewed you in the ſeventh Chapter of this Book; but yet I will once again reiterate it unto you in few words. Firſt therefore, he having been had into the Stable, the next day, if it be a hot Sun-ſhiny day, let his keeper take him out of the Stable into a place convenient, and there let him handſomely trim him, (a thing which every *Groom* and *Keeper* knoweth well enough how to do;) then let him take ordinary ſoft waſhing Sope, and anoint his *Head* all over therewith, taking a great care that none of the Sope or ſuds get into his *Eyes* or *Ears*, then waſh him with warm water, and ſo purge and waſh all manner of filth from his *Head*, and every part thereof; that done, firſt wipe all his *Head*, *Ears*, *Eyes*, and *Face*, with a warm linnen cloath; and then wipe and rub him dry with woollen cloathes: then Sope his whole body all over *Capipee*, leaving no part thereof free, eſpecially his *Mane* and *Tayle*, then waſh him very clean with Buck-lee, with a whiſp or woollen

Cleanſe a Horſe.

woollen cloath, and when you have ſufficiently cleanſed him, let him be wiped, rubbed, and made dry, as before you have done his *Head*; and when he is throughly dry, let him be led into the Stable and ſo cloathed up with a clean thin ſoft cloath, and ſhod up at your pleaſure. And by this kind of *Purging*, trimming, and cleanſing of a *Horſe*, I have in three or four hours ſpace ſo altred a *Horſe*, as that his owner hath not on the ſudden known him.

SECT. 7. C.

Hippoph. I *Have known* Horſes *troubled with ſundry ſorts of foul or* ſore heels, *all which carry the name of* Scratches *in general, ſome whereof have* Clifts croſs, *and over-thwart, ſome* Clifts *with* Cracks, *and ſome long* Clifts, *&c. what do you ſay to theſe Maladies?*

Hippoſerus. I ſay Sir, that every of theſe ſorts are very foul Sorances, yet ſoon cured, if the *Ferrier* be ſo well skilled as to take up the *Veins*, before he apply his Medicines and remedies. The Maladies do come by Surfets taken by over heats, by waſhing his *Horſe* when he cometh home hot, by naughty meat, or by corrupt *blood*, the *Peccant humours* falling downwards and ſetling in thoſe parts where the ſorances are, whereby they prove moſt troubleſome to the *creature*, and no leſs noiſome to the beholders: for the *heels* be very raw, and do run with loathſome water and matter which doth ſtink very offenſively. The ſignes need no deſcription. The Cure is, firſt to take up the *Thigh veins*: whereby to ſtop and hinder the falling down of theſe bad *humours* which do feed them; then clip or ſhave away the *hair* cloſe from about the ſores, then waſh the places with broken Beer and Butter warm, and dry them again: which done, apply this Plaſter to the place grieved. Clifts and Cracks in the heels.

Take Sheeps ſewet, or Deers ſewet, which is much better, and being molten upon the fire, let it cool till you may hold your finger therein; then put to it ſo much Rie-bran, or for want thereof Wheat-bran, as will bring it to a ſalve, lay it to the place plaiſter-wiſe upon Hurds or Tow, and bind a clean linnen cloath over the plaiſter to keep it on, and ſo let it remain four or five days without medling with it, by which time the

the Sores will be throughly purged, and the Scurff will eaſily come off; then take old Bores greaſe well rotted, and melt it upon the fire, and when it is ſo cold as was the Sheeps, or Deers ſewet, put to it the yolks of Eggs ſo much as will ſuffice, and a little Verdegreaſe in fine powder: incorporate all theſe well together, bringing them to an Unguent, with which anoint the ſores every day once, until they be throughly and perfectly whole. **.

Another.

Take Oyl de-Bay four ounces, Verdigreaſe, and Litharge of Gold, both in fine powder, of each two drams, make all theſe into an Unguent, and anoint the ſores therewith morning and evening till they be whole. In every of theſe Cures, let your Horſe come into no water. **.

Another.

Take Soot, five ounces, Verdigreaſe in fine powder, three ounces, Orpin one ounce, beat all theſe together into fine powder, and then add thereto as much common honey as of all the reſidue; boil all theſe together well, putting into it as it boileth quick-lime, as much as will ſuffice, keeping it always ſtirring till it be well boiled, and is become thick; with this ointment anoint the ſores twice every day, until they be ſufficiently cured. **.

Another.

Take hot wood aſhes and quick-lime, and with common honey and white wine, make it into one body to a perfect Unguent, and herewith anoint the Sores; and if this malady have not been long upon the Horſe, this ointment will certainly cure him; but if he be old and it have run long upon him, then give him the fire, and dreſs the burning with the ointment preſcribed you in the former Cure.

Another.

Take a round Iron, and give the fire towards the extremities or ends of the *chops*, and anoint them every day as before, and aſſure your ſelf the *clifts*, *chops*, and *rifts* will not increaſe, but diminiſh, and ſo in ſhort time he will be whole and ſound. **. This is ſpecial good.

SECT.

SECT. 8. C.

Hippoph. I *Would gladly know* (Hippoſerus) *ſomething of* Clyſters *and their true natures.*

Hippoſerus. As touching *Clyſters*, there be ſundry kinds of *Purgations*, and therefore to the end you may the better underſtand them and their proper vertues, I will firſt anatomize unto you the ſeveral degrees of *Purgations*; and by reaſon I have been much, and that for a long time verſed in this ſubject, I am not aſhamed to diſcover unto you from whence I had my firſt grounds and principles; for every man (as the Proverb is) muſt have a beginning; to wit, he muſt be a *Scholar*, before he can be a *Maſter*; for as *Seneca* ſaith very well, *It is great temerity in any man to take upon him to be a Maſter, who did never know what it was to have been a Scholar.* My firſt rudiments therefore I received from Mr. *Blundevile*, and after ſomewhat I attained unto by the help of Mr. *Markham*, both very well travelled in this Art; the reſt I atchieved partly in my *Travels*, and partly from my particular *practice* and *experience*. Now Mr. *Markham* followeth Mr. *Blundevile* in many things *verbatim*, in the reſt in ſubſtance, wherein Mr. *Markham* doth more largely dilate and deliver himſelf, making thereby oft-times many things more clear and apparent, yet they both aſſent in what they ſay; *viz.* that *Purgation* is defined by the learned *Phyſicians* to be the *emptying* and voiding of ſuperfluous *humours*, which do cumber, peſter, and diſturb the *body* with their peccant condition: affirming that ſuch ill *humours* do breed much bad nutriment, which the Learned do call *Cacochymia*, which when it will not be corrected or amended, either by fair means, or by the help of nature, then muſt it be compelled, forced, and driven away by *Purgation*, *Vomit*, *Clyſter*, or *Suppoſitory*. And whereas Mr. *Blundevile* ſaith, that Horſes are not uſed to be purged by *Vomit* as men be; I in conference with him once asked him the reaſon thereof; he anſwered me, for that the neck of the Horſe was of that length, as not to be able to purge by *Vomit*, which for the preſent I took for ſatisfaction; I then imagining the thing not to be known, until ſuch time as I travelling into remote parts, where I had frequent commerce with

Of Clyſters.

Purgation defined.

with famous *Marſhals* and *Ferriers*, I at length faſtned upon one eminent for this faculty, who upon occaſion offered, uſed to adminiſter *Vomit* to Horſes, as frequently as he did either *Purgation* or *Clyſter*: which thing when I well obſerved, I demanded if a Horſe could *Vomit*, and to what purpoſe he did adminiſter in that kind; He anſwered me that a Horſe could *Vomit*, and that he oft-times adminiſtred for the ſame end, and thereupon both gave me his Receipt, and did adminiſter in my preſence, and made me an *eye-witneſs* to the working, not in one Horſe alone, but in ſundry others. But now leaving this to its proper place I come to aſſoil your demand as touching *Clyſters*, their natures and virtues. *Clyſters ſecundum vulgus* are called *Gliſters*, but the more learned aſſumed the name *Clyſter*, borrowed from the Latin word *Clyſter*, from whence the *French* hath it *Clyſter*. Now whereas all other kind of Phyſick is received in at the *Mouth*, *Clyſters* and *Suppoſitories* are adminiſtred *per Anum*, whoſe nature for the moſt part are to *purge* the *Guts*, and to cauſe the Horſe to void, (and to throw forth of his *belly* ſuch *humours* as do offend him in matter of his health,) to allay the ſharpneſs of bad *humours*, to cleanſe ulcers, to aſſwage the griefs and pains in the *belly* cauſed by wind or otherwiſe, and ſo likewiſe in many other caſes. Now *Clyſters* are not all of one and the ſame nature, neither are they all *laxatives* (as many do imagine) or do ſerve to one and the ſame end: for ſome muſt be made to give eaſe, ſome are reſtringent and do bind, ſome do looſen and *purge*, ſome are to cleanſe *ulcers*, old and long running ſores, and ſome to prepare the *body* the better to receive its *Phyſick*, whereby it may the better work, which otherwiſe cannot be adminiſtred without much peril to the life of the ſick creature. So that a *Clyſter* is (I ſay) commonly given for a *Preparative* or beginning to *purgation*. And a *Clyſter* by cleanſing the *guts*, refreſheth the *vital parts*, and prepareth the way before. Wherefore I do admoniſh every *Ferrier*, that when at any time they are to adminiſter *Phyſick* to a Horſe, whether *Purgative* or otherwiſe, if the Horſe be not at the time ſoluble in *body*, that after *blood-letting* the next day he give a *Clyſter*, and then may he be the bolder to adminiſter what he ſhall think moſt requiſite: leſt otherwiſe by giving medicine, without further

further preparation, he ſtir and provoke the *peccant humours*, which by reaſon they cannot find preſent way forth, being hindred by oppilations in the *Guts*, through coſtiveneſs and ventoſity, and other impediments do attempt to make their paſſage by a contrary way, which cannot be done, but with great hazard to the life of the poor beaſt.

Hippophilus *But of what Ingredients do you make your* Clyſters, Hippoſerus ?

Hippoſerus. We do uſually make our *Clyſters* of *Decoctions*, of *Drugs*, of *Oils*, and ſometime we add *Salt*.

Hippophilus. *What is a* Decoction?

Hippoſerus. A decoction is a broth made of certain herbs, as Mallows, Marſh-Mallows, Pellitory, Camomile, and ſometimes of white Lilly roots, and other ſuch like things, which we do boil in water to a third part: and ſometimes we uſe, in ſtead of herbs and water, to take the fat of beef broth, or the broth of a ſheeps head, Milk, Whey, and ſome ſuch kind of liquor. *A decoction what it is.*

Hippophilus. *What quantity of* Broth *or* Decoction *do you uſually put in, whereof to make your* Clyſter ?

Hippoſerus. That we do adminiſter according to the age, ſtrength, greatneſs, and corpulency of the Horſe ; for if he be a Horſe of a ſtrong and able *body*, of large growth, and ſtature, fat and luſty, we uſe to put into his *Clyſter* of the *decoction* three pints ; but if he be of a ſmall growth, weak, ſick, feeble, or lean, then we do put in a quart of the ſame at moſt : of Oil we uſe to put in half a pint, of ſalt two or three drams at moſt, and ſometimes we put verjuyce ſometimes honey, as we ſhall find cauſe : *Drugs* we uſe ; as Sene, Caſſia, Agarick, Anniſeeds, Oil of Dill, Oil of Camomile, Oil of Violets, Sugar Candy, *&c.*

Hippophilus. *What quantity of* Drugs *is needful for one* Clyſter?

Hippoſerus. You ought not to exceed the quantity of three ounces in one *Clyſter* at moſt, neither muſt you exceed of butter four ounces, and you muſt be very careful your *Clyſter* be not adminiſtred more than blood-warm.

Hippophilus. *What time is fit for a Horſe to keep or retain his* Clyſter?

Hippoſerus. When you give it him, let him be ſomewhat

empty, but before he do receive it, let him be raked, and then having adminiſtred it, let him keep it at leaſt half an hour, to the end it may work in his belly, and ſo do him the more good, and to cauſe him the better to keep the ſame; let his Keeper (ſo ſoon as the Horſe hath received it) hold his tail cloſe to his tuel, for half an hours ſpace, or more, for the longer he keepeth it, the more effectual it will be unto him; the beſt inſtrument wherein to give it to a Horſe, is a Clyſter-pipe made of purpoſe, which ought to be 12 inches in the ſhank, which muſt alſo be put home, and when the *Clyſter* is aſſumed, let the giver draw away the pipe by degrees, and not all at once.

Hippophilus. *I pray ſet me down ſome good Receipts of* Clyſters.

Hippoſerus. That ſhall I, Sir, moſt willingly: the firſt *Clyſter* that I ever gave, was to a ſmall Nag of a Gentlemans, which being very coſtive in his body, and refuſing his meat, did droop, languiſh, and pine away; inſomuch as the owner fearing his Horſes life, repaired unto me for counſel; when I had well conſidered the nature of his infirmity, together with its ſymptoms, I held it moſt requiſite to adminiſter a *Clyſter*, which I did; and it was this: *viz.* Take the fat of beef broth one pint and a half, of good *Engliſh* honey half a pint, adding thereto of white ſalt two drams, mix all theſe well, and ſo adminiſter it Blood-warm *Clyſter-wiſe*, and ſo ſoon as he hath taken it, clap his *tail* cloſe to his *tuel*, by the ſpace of half an hour together at leaſt, and if then it do not work, as I am confident it will, then let one take his back, and ride him up and down a reaſonable round trot ſometimes, (but not ſo as to cauſe him to ſweat) for half an hour more, and ſet him up warm cloathed and littered, and ſo let him ſtand upon his trench four or five hours; during which time he will *purge* kindly; then unbit him, and give him ſweet hay, and an hour after he hath eaten, give him white water, nor let him drink any cold water in a day or two after. And this you ſhall find to be the beſt remedy for this malady. ***.

R. Clyſter.

This I have adminiſtred *ſæpe & ſæpius*, and have done great good therewith: for the nature of this *Clyſter* is to open and looſen the *Body*, to bring away with it all offenſive *Humours*, to remove Obſtructions ingendred in the *body* by means of exceſſive heat; it cleanſeth the *Guts*, and flicketh away all ſlimy ſubſtance which is reſiding in the *Guts*.

Hip-

Hippophilus. *Why but* Hippoſerus *I obſerve a contradiction in you, as touching the quantity of your* Decoction; *for whereas you did before affirm that you uſe to put into your Clyſters at the moſt but three pints, and at the leaſt but a quart; you ſay that you did adminiſter to this* Horſe, *but a pint and half only, which is under quantity of what you did before proſcribe?*

Hippoſerus. Sir, in anſwer hereunto you muſt underſtand that in caſes of this nature, *Phyſick* ought with judgment to be adminiſtred, and the reaſon why I put into the *Cyſter* of this broth ſo little, was, for that the Horſe was grown very weak, poor, and low of his *fleſh*, and in good years, and was beſides a very ſmall *Nag*, fetched out of *Scotland* from the mountains of *Galoway* or *Galwin*; and therefore if I ſhould have made his *Clyſter* ſo ſtrong, and have added ſo great a quantity of *Decoction* to him, as I might peradventure have put to a *Clyſter* for a great, large, fat, healthy, or corpulent *Horſe*, I might have repented it; and therefore I made it as I told you: whereby it wrought moſt kindly, and did him that good which I hoped, and deſired: But paſſing from this now, let us proceed to intreat yet farther of *Clyſters*, and of their ſeveral kinds.

Another.

2. Clyſter Laxative.

Take Pellitory two handfuls, or for want thereof Melilot two handfuls, or if that may not be had, then Camomile two handfuls, but Pellitory is the beſt if it may be had; boil it to a *Decoction*, and then add to it of Sallet Oil, and of Verjuice of the Crab, of each half a pint, of Honey four ounces, of Caſſia two ounces, mix all theſe well together, and ſo apply it blood-warm *Clyſter-wiſe*. ***. This we do call a *Clyſter Laxative*, for this will open the *body* and *guts* of the *Horſe* very well, it will take from him all noxious and offenſive *humours*; it will carry away all ſpungy matter: it will allay the biliouſneſs and ſharpneſs of *humours*; it will cleanſe old *Ulcers*; it will refreſh and comfort the *Vital parts*, *&c.* But if you do find that by giving too great a quantity, your *Horſe* purgeth and ſcowreth longer and more violently than you would have had him to have done, or for fear it ſhould ſtir up in him upon the ſudden more bad *humours* than you may eaſily know how to allay, then give him this *Clyſter*, *viz.* Take the aforeſaid *Decoction* one pint, adding thereto as much of Cows milk, (as it cometh warm

3. Clyſter Reſtringent.

warm from her) and put alſo thereto the yolks of three new layed Eggs, well beaten and well mixed with the ſaid liquor: and ſo give it your *Horſe* blood-warm. This is called a *Clyſter Reſtringent*, for this is only to be applyed to a *Horſe* that is very *laxative*, or that doth empty himſelf too much, which is occaſioned oft-times through overmuch debility, and want of ſtrength, or when nature is very much offended: you may apply this ſo oft as need ſhall require. **.

Another.

4. Clyſter for a fat Horſe. Take Mallows three handfuls, Marſh Mallow roots cleanſed and bruiſed, and Violet leaves, of each two handfuls, Flax ſeed three ſpoonfuls, ſo many of the cloves of white Lilly roots, as you may eaſily hold in your hand: boil all theſe in fair water from a gallon to a wine quart, then ſtrain it, and put thereto of Sene one ounce, which muſt be infuſed or ſteeped in the liquor three hours ſtanding upon the hot embers; then put thereto of Sallet Oil half a pint, and being blood warm, adminiſter it *Clyſter-wiſe*, cauſing him to keep it at leaſt half an hour or longer, if you may: and the beſt time to give this is three or four days before the Full and change of the Moon; howſoever it may be given to very good profit (as occaſion may proffer it ſelf) at any other time. **. This *Clyſter* is to be given to a Ketty or fat Horſe, which otherwiſe cannot be kept clean, for it purgeth *glut* abundantly, and it is alſo principally to be given to a Horſe that is newly taken from graſs.

Another.

5. A Clyſter for Melancholy. Take of Whey a quart, of Anniſeeds in fine powder two pennyworth, of the leaves of Mallows one handful, boil theſe till the Mallows be ſoft, then ſtrain it, then put to it of ſweet Butter four ounces, which when the butter is molten adminiſter it blood-warm. ** This purgeth melancholy, it cauſeth a good appetite which before was wanting, it refreſheth the *ſpirits* dulled, and occaſioneth good digeſtion if the Horſe be kept warm, and well tended. **.

Another.

6. Clyſter in caſe of deſperate ſickneſs. Take of the Oil of Dill, of the Oil of Camomile, of the Oil of Violets, of Caſſia, of each half an ounce, and of brown Sugar Candy in powder three ounces, then take of Mallow leaves half a handful: boil the Mallows firſt to a decoction in fair

fair water, then ſtrain it, and put to the broath all the forenamed ingredients, adminiſter this bloodwarm *Clyſter-wiſe*. This is a moſt ſovereign *Clyſter* to be given in caſe of deſperate ſickneſs; it helpeth all Feavers; it is good againſt the Peſtilence, and all languiſhing diſeaſes, moſt excellent againſt Surfets either by Provender or otherwiſe, and it will occaſion great ſtrength in ſhort time, if it be rightly made, and carefully given. ***.

Another.

7. Clyſter for the Peſtilence.

Take the pulpe of Colloquintida, half an ounce, (I mean the ſeeds and skin taken away) of Dragantium three quarters of an ounce, of Centaury and of Wormwood, of each half a handful, of Caſtoreum a quarter of an ounce, boil all theſe in three quarts of water to a quart; then ſtrain it, and diſſolve into the broth of Gerologundinum three ounces, and of white ſalt three drams, of Sallet Oil half a pint, and blood warm adminiſter it *Clyſter-wiſe*. ***.

This I have often proved, and do find it to be moſt excellent for the Peſtilence, and to help all Feavers.

Another.

8. Clyſter lenitive.

Take the decoction of Mallows, and put to it either of freſh Butter four ounces, or of Sallet Oil half a pint, and give it him *Clyſter-wiſe*. ***. This is the gentleſt *Clyſter* of any before preſcribed; for it is both a *Lenitive*, and a great cooler of the *body*, and doth infinitely eaſe pain: It is the beſt thing that can be given to a Horſe that is taken, or againſt Convulſions or Cramps, and moſt ſingular againſt Coſtiveneſs proceeding from any ſickneſs or ſurfet by Provender, foundring in the body, &c.

Another.

9. Clyſter for the Colick.

Take ſalt water or new made Brine two pints, diſſolve therein a pretty quantity of Sope, and ſo bloud-warm adminiſter it *Clyſter-wiſe*. This *I* never did experience, howſoever *I* have been oft perſwaded by many able Ferriers, who have averred it to be the moſt excellent that may be had for the Colick, or any ſickneſſe or gripings in the *guts* or *belly*. And let this ſuffice for *Clyſters*: onely by way of advice *I* counſel you that before you adminiſter any *Clyſter*, you firſt rake him; that you put in the Pipe (being firſt anointed with ſweet Butter or Oil Olive) gently and by degrees, and that you alſo draw it forth very treatably; that you make him keep it at leaſt

leaſt half an hour; that you do adminiſter it but bloud-warm at moſt; that you ſqueeze and preſs between your hands the bladder ſtrongly; and laſtly, that you let him not drink any cold water in a day or two after, but let it be either ſweet Maſh, or elſe white water.

SECT. 9. *C.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to be applied to a Horſe that is* cloyed, prickt, *or hath other hurt in the* hoof?

Cloyed. *Hippoſerus.* You muſt firſt with your Butter, drawing iron, or paring knife, lay the wound bare as may be; then, Take wax, Hogs greaſe, and Turpentine of each one ounce, Verdigreaſe two ounces; boil theſe upon a gentle fire, your wax and Hogs greaſe being firſt put in and molten, then put in your Turpentine, and laſtly your Verdigreaſe in fine powder, and being indifferently warm, dip tow or hurds into the ointment, and ſo lay it to the Sore, then ſtop and ſplent it up, and dreſſe him twice a day, and this will make him whole and ſound in ſhort time. **. But of this more in its due place.

SECT. 10. *C.*

Hippoph. *WHat ſay you to a Horſe, whoſe Cods and Stones are ſwelled?*

Cods ſwelled *Hippoſerus.* This infirmity proceedeth from ſundry cauſes, as ſomtimes by being bitten with a *Dog*, or with another *Horſe*, or by being ſtung with ſome venemous or evil creature: The *French* do call it *Enflure de Coullon's:* It cometh alſo by means of ſome evil *humours* and corrupt *bloud*, which do fall down to the *Cods*, ſomtimes after ſickneſs, & ſomtimes after rankneſs of *bloud & ſeed*, for want of a *Mare*. If it come of rankneſs of *ſeed* or of *bloud*, then let him have a *Mare* and cover her two or three days together, and half an hour after ride him into the water above the *Cods* or *Stones* againſt the ſtream, and he will do well. **. But if this diſeaſe come by other cauſes, then, Take the Lees of Claret Wine, and Cummin-ſeed, made into fine powder, and a little Wheat or Bean flower; boil theſe together to an Unguent, and ſo warm as he may well endure it, anoint the *cods* therewith,

with, which done, draw forth his *yard*, and wash it, and his *sheath*, also with White-Wine-Vinegar; and or 4 hours after ride him into the water above the *Cods*, and let him also stand in the water some short time, and sometimes ride him against the stream: do this every day till the swelling be assuaged. **. This is a very good Cure.

Another.

Take the roots of wild Cucumbers, and white Salt so much as will suffice, boil these in fair water to an Ointment, and anoint the *Cods* therewith warm: and then apply this Ointment.

Take Goats grease, or, for default thereof, Deers sewet, the white of an Egg, and Sallet Oil: boil these over a gentle fire; and herewith anoint the *cods*, but this must be applyed after he hath been ridden into the water and dry again: do this every day once till he be well. **. This I have often tried, and have found it to be right good.

Another.

First, anoint and bathe the *Cods* in the juyce of Hemlock, and when it is dried, then

Take Pigeons dung, and new milk, and boil it till it be as thick like to a Poultess, and therewith anoint the *Cods* every day once.

Another.

First let him *bloud* in both the *spur* or *flank-veins*; then take Oil of Roses and Vinegar, of each a pint, and of Bole-armoniack in fine powder two ounces: make all these into one body, and being luke-warm anoint the *cods* therwith, and the next day ride him into the water up to the *cods* against the stream; then bring him into the stable, and when he is through dry, anoint him again: thus continuing to do, till he be well. But if the *cods* be swoln by means of any hurt, bite, or stroke, then apply to them this following charge,

A charge for swelled Cods.

Take Bolearmoniack in powder, Vinegar, and the whites of Eggs as much as will suffice, well beaten, and wrought together, and anoint him therewith dayly till it be abated, and if it impostumate, where you find it to be soft, open it either with a hot iron, or with your incision knife, if it break not of it self, and so heal it up with the Ointment taught you in *lib. 2. cap. 10. sect. 4.* and it will soon be whole. **. This is very sovereign.

SECT.

SECT. 11. *C.*

Hippoph. *WHat ſay you to the* Colick?

Colick. *Hippoſcrus.* It is, Sir, a diſeaſe which cometh of wind, and therefore we generally call it the *wind colick*; the *French* call this diſeaſe the *Tranchaiſons*; it cauſeth great gripings, and extream pain in the *belly* of the Horſe, ſo as he will oft-times lie down and tumble, he will alſo ſtrike at his *belly* with his *hinder feet*, and ſtamp with his *fore feet*; and the pain will be ſo great as to cauſe him to forſake his meat: theſe ſigns I have often obſerved in Horſes perplexed with this malady; and albeit I have ſundry Receipts for it, and all or the moſt of them by me tryed and approved good, yet one of Mr. *Blundeviles* and Mr. *Markhams*, I hold inferiour to none of mine, for I have often tried it; and this is it:

Take a quart of Muskadine, or of ſweet Sack, of Cloves, Pepper, Cinnamon, of each half an ounce, Sugar two ounces, make all theſe into fine powder, and give it him bloud-warm, then anoint his *flanks* with Oil de Bay; (but I often uſe to anoint them with the Ointment of Acopum, finding it to be much better) then bridle him up, and trot him out a good round trot, or gallop him ſoftly ſometimes the ſpace of an hour until he do dung, but if he will not, then rake him, or elſe put an Onion pilled and jagged into his *fundament*: then for three or four days, let his drink be either ſweet Maſhes or white water, and keep him warm, and he will do well again. ***.

Another.

Keep him faſting over night, and in the morning give him this drink. Take of White-Wine a quart, Fenugreek 4 ounces, Bay-berries, and Pepper, of each 4 ounces, Grains and Ginger of each 1 ounce, Water-creſſes 2 handfuls, Sage 1 handful, Sengrene 1 pound, Mints a handful, ſtamp the herbs, and pound the ſpices, and put them into the Wine, and let it boil a little, then ſtrain it, and put to it of life Honey two ſpoonfuls, and ſo give it him blood-warm. ***. This I have alſo found to be very good: notwithſtanding if he be a *ſtoned horſe*, the beſt cure for him is to have a *Mare*, eſpecially if he be ſo troubled with the *colick*, ſo as that he cannot piſs; beſides it helpeth and

and preventeth ſundry ſorts of ſickneſs and diſeaſes, and ſtrengtheneth nature. **.

Another.

Take of White-Wine one pint, and three or four Cantharides; and make them into very fine powder, and give this to the Horſe (well brewed in wine) blood-warm. This I never tryed, for that theſe flies being a ſtrong *corroſive*, have deterred me, howſoever I have been often invited thereunto by many good *Ferriers*, who have averred unto me, that they have often uſed it, and have found it to be right good.

Another.

Take Cloves, Pepper, Cinamon of each one ounce; all made into fine powder, and well mixed, then put it into a quart of Muskadine, and let it boil a while; then take it off, and put to it of Honey one ſpoonful give it him bloud-warm: which done, cloath him up, and litter him, and ſo let him ſtand upon his trench 4 hours; then give him meat, and 1 hour after a ſweet Maſh, or white water. This was taught me by a *Noble Knight*, who ſaid he had often uſed it. But if your Horſe hath the *colick* and *ſtone*, then.

Take of White-Wine 1 pint, of Bur-ſeeds 8 ounces, made into fine powder, of Paſley ſeed 2 ounces in powder, alſo of Hyſſop, unſet Leeks, and Water creſſes, of each half a handful, of black Sope half an ounce, ſtamp all the Herbs in a morter, and ſtrain them with the Wine, then put to that Liquor, your Bur and Parſley ſeed, and ſo give it him bloud warm; this will break the ſtone, and bring it from him with much eaſe, and cure his *Colick*. **. This I have often adminiſtred. Colick & Stone.

SECT. 12. C.

Hippoph. WHat *Diſeaſe is that which is called the* Colt Evil? Colt-evil.

Hippoſerus. It is a diſeaſe in the *yard*, *ſheath*, and *cods* of a *Horſe* or *Gelding*, and it cometh to *Horſes* by means of heat and rankneſs of *ſeed*; and to a *Gelding*, by weakneſs and coldneſs of *ſeed*; to the *Horſe* through too great abundance of *ſeed*, which cauſeth a ſtopping in the *pipe* or *conduct* of the *yard* and to a *Gelding* for want of heat and ſtrength to ſend it forth,

whereby the *yard* and *sheath* swelleth very much. The best way to cure a Horse is to give him a *Mare*, whereby he sendeth forth his *seed* freely, and two or three hours after swim him, or else ride him up to the *flanks* to and fro a pretty while against the stream. This disease is known by the swelling of the *yard* and *sheath*; I have cured many *Horses* and *Geldings* with this ensuing Receipt. First swim him, but especially against the stream four or five days together, then apply this *Plaister*.

Take Bean meal and mallows of each 1 handful, Hogs grease half a pound, chop the Mallows small, then put to the Hogs grease, and so boil it with a pint of White Wine, and when it is boiled, put it into a cloath, and wrap his *coals* therein; and so order it as that it may gather like a purse, and make it fast so, as it may neither fall off, nor hurt him: dress him herewith every day till he be well. **. I have had great experience of this Receipt: but if you be desirous to have variety; then look over Mr. *Blundeville* and Mr. *Markham*, who are well stored.

SECT. 13. *C.*

Cold. Hippoph. *What is best to be given for a* Cold?

Hipposerus. There are so many and so good, as that I am to seek almost how to begin, they be of so many, and sundry sorts of them; for some are for *colds* newly taken, some for old *colds*, some for *colds* that bring the *Glanders*, &c. Wherefore for *colds* newly taken at first, you must understand (Sir) that a cold newly taken (a thing not to be prevented, by reason it oft-times cometh by means and ways unknown) you must observe first, that if your Horse be propense to many bad *humours*, whereof some Horses are more than other, you must first then labour to expel them by purging his *head*, then search betwixt his jaws, and if there you do find any small kernels, then be you assured he hath a new taken *cold*, but if he have great kernels, then was not the cold so lately taken as you might have imagined; also if he do rattle in the *head*, it is a sign his *cold* is newly taken, or if he do void any thin matter from his *nose* or *eyes*, or if he hold his head into the manger; or if when he drinketh, the water cometh forth of his *Nostrils*, or that he cougheth oft, and sometimes perhaps cheweth mat-

trative

trative ſtuff betwixt his teeth, *&c.* Theſe and many others be certain ſigns of a Poſe, Catarre, and newly taken *cold*, wherein is no danger if it be taken in time, otherwiſe it will come to a worſe matter; I will now give you ſundry good receipts, moſt of which I have often tried and found to be right good. Firſt, I hold moderate exerciſe, and ſeaſonable airing to be marvellous good, without further applying of medicines; but if you find that he is much ſtopped in the *head*, then

Take a ſmall quantity of freſh or ſweet Butter, and of Brimſtone made into fine powder; work them together till they be one entire *body*, and of a deep yellow gold colour, then take two long Gooſe wing feathers, and anoint them herewith to the very quils on either ſide, which done, rowl them into more of the powder of Brimſtone, and ſo put them up into either *noſtril* one, and at the butt end of the quils put a ſtrong packthread, which muſt be faſtned over his *poſe*, like to the headſtal of a Bridle: and then leap his back, and ride moderately up and down an hour or longer, and this will provoke him to ſnort and ſnuffle forth of his *noſe* and *head* much of the congealed filth which is in his head, then tie him to the Rack for an hour after and this will purge his *head* very clean: then draw forth the Feathers and he will do well, keeping him warm, and giving him Maſhes or white water every day for four or five dayes after. This Receipt was taught me for more than thirty years ſince by a famous *Marſhal* of *France*, which ſince I found in Mr. *Markhams Maſter-piece*, but I hold it one of the beſt things can be preſcribed for this malady. ***. Another very ſhort, but as good.

Take of thyme 1 handful, boil it in a quart of ſtrong Ale, till it come to a pint, then ſtrain it, add thereunto of ordinary Treacle two ſpoonfuls, and give it him blood warm. ***.

Another.

An excellent drink to be given to a Horſe for a new taken cold, provided he be young, that is, not above five years old.

Take of *French* Barley half a pound, put it into a poſnet, and put thereto of fair water one quart, and ſet it upon the fire, and let it boil a little, then take it off and drain the water from the Barly, and caſt away the water, then add the ſecond time the like quantity of water, and boil it as much as you did the firſt

time, and then drain it from the water, and caſt away the water again, then add once again the like quantity of a quart of water, as you did twice before, and boil that alſo ſo long a time as you did the two former waters, drain this alſo from the Barly, but caſt it not away, but keep it, and then add to the water of Anniſeeds and Licoris, of each half an ounce, make them into very fine powder, and ſearce them, and put the ſaid powder into the boiled water, and add to it of white Sugar candy four ounces, then ſet it upon the fire in a clean skillet, and ſo boil it up until a third part be conſumed, then take it off and ſtrain it, and give it your Horſe blood warm; drench him thus three mornings together, and it will ripen his cold and cauſe it to come away. This is very good.

Another.

Take of White Wine-Vinegar the beſt and ſtrongeſt, five ſpoonfuls, and put to it of Oil de Bay 1 ſpoonful, warm it upon the fire, ſtirring it well; this muſt be made and given in the morning; but when you do adminiſter it, you muſt firſt put your drenching horn into fair water that is good and hot, to keep the Medicine from ſticking to the horn, then taking it forth out of the hot water, before the horn can be cold, and whilſt it is yet moiſt with the water, put the one half of your medicine into the ſame, and ſo as ſpeedily as may be, convey it into one of his *noſtrils*, and after the other moity into his other *noſtril*; this done, ride him for half an hour moderately; then ſet him up, and cloath and litter him warm, and let him ſtand upon the trench three or four hours before you give him any meat, and after do as is accuſtomed to be done to ſick Horſes in *Phyſick*. ***. This I do approve to be equivalent to either of the two former.

Another.

Take water and ſalt ſo much as will ſuffice, brew them well together, it then being made blood warm, give it him, and do after as is uſual. ***. This for a new taken cold I have often uſed, and I do find it to be ſingular good to be given to a young Horſe.

Another.

Take of Oil de-Bay, of Anniſeeds, and of Licoris, of each one half penny worth, and of brown ſugar candy a penny-worth,

worth, make all theſe into a fine powder, and being well mixed, ſew it up into a fine linnen rag, and ſo faſten it unto the Bit or Snaffle of the Horſe, and ſo ride a journey, and travel him, and in ſhort ſpace he will be cured, if it be a new taken cold only. **** This I have alſo proved, and I do find it good, for it will cure both cold and cough if it be rightly applyed, to wit, with riding and exerciſe.

Another.

Take of white wine one pint, Sallet Oil a quarter of a pint, Rubarb and Aloes, and Saffron, of each two drams, Nutmeg, Sene, Agarick, Bay-berries, Duke or Dutch powder, and of Cordial powder, of each half an ounce: mix all theſe together, and then add to it of Honey 4 ounces, warm them well in a Pipkin, and give it him to drink blood warm, but let him ſtand upon the trench at leaſt 3 hours before, and 3 hours after, neither let him for all that day eat any Oats, but in its ſtead, let him have Wheat bran, and let his drink be that day either a warm maſh, or white water for 4 or 5 days after, and put into his Provender for ſome time Fenugreek made into groſs powder. ****. This is a moſt ſovereign drink to be given for a cold. But if you do find that his *head* is very much oppreſſed with a *Poſe* or *Catar*, then give him this drink twice a day, *viz.* Take Fenugreek one ounce, and boil it into a good quantity of water till it burſt, then mix with the decoction thereof wheat meal ſo much as will ſuffice, and give it him to drink.

Another.

Take a quart of the beſt Ale, and warm it upon the fire, and put into it ſo much Tobacco made into fine Powder, as you can take up upon a ſhilling at twice, and as much dried Roſemary in fine powder as you may take up upon a ſhilling at once; give him this to drink blood-warm in a morning faſting. This drink is called *Potio Nicotiana*; But I did never make trial thereof, for that I once ſaw it given by a *Ferrier* to a ſick Horſe, which ſo wrought with him, as that with all his *Lenitives* and *Cordials* the *Ferrier* had much labour to ſave the life of the poor Horſe; this potion was ſo violent, which notwithſtanding drove the Horſe into a moſt dangerous *Calentura*. But the next is better.

Take a Hens Egg, and make a hole in the top thereof, no bigger

bigger than that you may get forth the white and yolk, then take Tarr and ſweet Butter, of each like much, as much as will ſuffice, incorporate theſe well together into one body, and ſo convey it into the Egg ſhell, and give it your Horſe three or four mornings together, and either journey him gently, or elſe ride him three or four hours after it; which done, bring him into the Stable and cloath him up warm and litter him well, and let him be well rubbed, and ſo keep him upon the trench two hours after, and then give him Hay, and an hour after give him either a warm Maſh, or white water; and this will help a cold newly taken. **. This will not make him ſick, for I have often made tryal of it. Another as good as this.

Take the long white moſs that groweth upon an old dry Park pale, one handful, chop it ſmall, and put it into a pottle of good Ale or Beer, till one half be conſumed; then take it off, and ſtrain and preſs it hard, and put into the liquor of Anniſeeds and Licoris of each half a ſpoonful, and a piece of ſweet Butter, and ſo give it him three mornings together faſting, and it will cure him. **. Another if he hath taken a cold or poſe in the *head.*

Take a quart of Muskadine or ſweet Sack, Nutmegs, Pepper, Cumminſeed, Grains, Bay-berries, of each three drams, all made into fine powder: boil theſe a waume or two, then take it off, and put into it a piece of ſweet Butter, and give it your Horſe three mornings together blood warm; let him all thoſe three days be kept warm, neither let him drink any cold water, but either a ſweet Maſh, or white water, yea and that three or four days after, and during theſe three days, let him faſt three hours after the Receipt of his ſaid Medicine. Alſo three days after, when you perceive the cold to begin to break from him, and to rot, cauſe him to ſneeze, by blowing into either *noſtril*, either the powder of Tobacco, or of Pepper, or of Helebore. **. Another which will cure a longer taken cold, yea though it be accompanied with a dry cough and ſhortneſs of breath, or purſiveneſs, which I had of Mr. *Markham*, and I have often made trial thereof, and it hath done cures which have been held impoſſible to have been effected.

Take of the conſerve of Elecampane three quarters of an ounce, and diſſolve it in a pint and a half of ſweet Sack, and

ſo

ſo give it your Horſe with a horn in a morning faſting, and ride him gently a little after: and thus do ſundry times until you do find the infirmity to decreaſe.

Hippophilus. *But* Hippoſerus, *this Conſerve of Elecampane I do ſuppoſe is hard to come by, for ſurely every* Country Apothecary *hath it not; how then may a man make this Confection you ſo much commend?*

Hippoſerus. Sir, this Conſerve I make my ſelf, and I will give you the receipt thereof. You muſt underſtand that there be two kinds thereof, the one is called particularly a *Preſerve*, and the other an abſolute *Conſerve*. This firſt is *Simple*, the other *Compound*, both very ſovereign for this Infirmity, but the Conſerve is evermore to be eſteemed the better. I do counſel you never to be without either of them; for they will keep the whole year through, if they be reſerved cloſe ſtopped. Wherefore as touching the firſt, which is the *Simple*, you muſt preſerve it like as you do all other green roots, and ſo keep them in a Gally-pot or Glaſs in a good quantity of its own Syrup, till you have occaſion to uſe the ſame; and when you are to uſe it, let it be beaten well in a Mortar together with its Syrup and refined Sugar made firſt into very fine powder. Now your *Compound* or *Conſerve* is thus made: Firſt, let your roots of Elecampane be neatly Candied, and made very dry and hard, and get the beſt and youngeſt Roots can be had, which muſt be kept alſo in a Gally pot or glaſs cloſe ſtopped, in a dry and warm place where they may not give again; and when you would uſe them, take ſo much as will ſuffice, and beat it in a Mortar with the Syrup of Coltstoot, and the powder of refined Sugar, ſtill working it till you have brought it to be a perfect *Conſerve*, and ſo give it to your Horſe in good ſweet Sack or Muskadine. The firſt of theſe two, which is the *Simple*, is of moſt excellent uſe; for it helpeth any ordinary cold or ſtopping, it comforteth the *Lungs*, enlargeth his *Wind*, purgeth the *Head* from all filthy matter, and diſſolveth many other obſtructions, as well in the *Body* and *Head*. But the *Compound* or *Conſerve* works better effects in the *Body* of the *Horſe*, eſpecially if the malady be old and dangerous, or if there be any taint, in the *Lungs*, *Liver*, or inward parts: This *Conſerve* in time, by frequent uſe thereof will cure all dry Coughs which are held to be incurable; it helpeth the heaving of the *Belly* and *Flanks*, it cauſeth the

Horſe

Horſe to take his *Wind* kindly and temperately, and freeth him of his dry cough, which before did greatly annoy him; but if you have not theſe *Conſerves*, take this other Receipt little inferiour to the former for theſe Maladies.

Take of the Syrup of Colts-foot one ounce, of Elecampane roots dried, Anniſeeds and Licoris, of each half an ounce, all made into fine powder, brown Sugar-candy powdred one ounce, which muſt be divided into two parts, then take ſweet Butter ſo much as will ſuffice, and ſo make this into three Pills good and ſtiff; which done, tole them into the other moity of your powdred Sugar candy, and ſo give them your *Horſe* faſting, then ride him gently for half an hour, and after ſet him up warm, and let him faſt three hours after, cauſing him to be well rubbed: Let him drink no cold water, unleſs it be with exerciſe, and let his Hay be ſprinkled with water, and his Oats wet in ſtrong Ale, or elſe with Beer. ***. Another very good.

Take the cankerous Moſs of an old Pale, or of the limbs of an old Oak two handfuls, chop and ſhred it ſmall, and boil it in a pottle of new Milk, and with it a root of Elecampane, let theſe boil together till half be conſumed, then ſtrain it, and preſs the Moſs and Root very well, which done, put to it of ſweet Butter the quantity of a Duck-egg, and ſo give it him in a morning faſting bloud warm, and ride him moderately an hour after; then ſet him up, cloath him and litter him warm, and order him as is accuſtomed with *Horſes* in *Phyſick*: Let him have this drink three mornings together, and it will cure both his Cold and Cough, wet or dry, or his Poſe if he have it. But if you find your *Horſe* to be ſtopped in the *Head*, and that he voideth filth, and ſtinking matter out from his *Noſe*, then ſhall you every morning adminiſter this fume.

Take of *Auripigmentum* and of Colts foot made into powder, of each two drams, then with Venice Turpentine work them into a ſtiff paſte, and make them into ſmall Cakes the bredth of a ſix pence, and dry them a little, and then put fire into a Chafing-diſh with coals, and ſo put one of theſe Cakes upon the coals, covered with a Tunnel, and ſo fume him, and this not only during his *Phyſick*, but at other times after, and let his drink be either ſweet Maſhes or white water. ***.

Another.

Another.

If your *Horſe* hath a new taken cold, then give him his Caudle, which I have often uſed, and do find it to be very good.

Take the Yolks of four new laid Eggs, and beat them well together, and diſſolve them with a quart of good Ale, then take three good Nutmegs with a little Anniſeeds and Licoris, made all into fine powder, and as much Pepper in fine powder as you can take up upon a ſix-pence; put theſe into the Ale, with a peice of ſweet Butter, ſo much as will ſuffice, and two ſpoonfuls of ordinary Treacle, and of brown Sugar-candy four ounces; warm all theſe upon the fire till the Treacle and Butter be molten, then give it him blood-warm, 4 or 5 mornings together; and this is an infallible cure. **** Another very good.

Take a pottle of ſweet Wort, three heads of Garlick pilled, or ordinary Honey half a pound, boil theſe till one moity be conſumed, and give it your *Horſe* three mornings together: Then for three mornings together after give him theſe Pills. Take Box leaves and Harts-tongue, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, ſtamp them well together, and with ſweet Butter make it into Pills; and ſo every morning give him three of theſe Pills. **** But if he hath a cold which breaketh and runneth from him, then muſt you be careful to keep his *Head* and *Pole* warm, by putting on a double Hood, and every Morning faſting ride him with two long Gooſe feathers put up into either *Noſtril*, well dipped before hand in Oil de-Bay, and with a ſtrong Packthred from the ends of the quills faſtned over his *Head* like a Head-ſtall of a Bridle, ſo as the feathers may not get forth, and faſten alſo to his Bit or Snaffle one Root or two of *Polypodium*; having been all night before lain ſteeped in the Oil of Spike, and every time you ride him anoint the Bit thus before hand prepared with the ſaid Oil, and when he cometh home, put upon his *Pole* his double hood, and rub him againſt the hair all over, eſpecially his *Neck* and *Pole*, (for friction in this caſe is moſt ſovereign) then whilſt he is yet warm, perfume his *Noſe* with Frankincenſe, Storax, and Benjamin, of each like much; do this nine days together, and let his drink be white water: For all Rhumes having had time to work their malice will become dangerous, yea and many times cureleſs. ****.

Now if your *Horſe* have taken an extream cold; then, Take Cloves, Nutmegs, Ginger, Galls, or the fruit of the Oak and Cardimums, of each like quantity ſo much as will ſuffice, and of Fennel-ſeeds more than any one of the other Ingredients, make them into fine powder, and ſearce them, then put two ſpoonfuls of this powder to a quart of Sack or Muskadine, and ſtrain theſe into two penyworth of *Engliſh* Saffron, and the yolks of two new laid Eggs well beaten together; give this to your *Horſe* blood-warm faſting, and let him have none other drink than white water for three or four days after, and let his Hay be ſprinkled with water, and every day at noon give him the blades of Reed, or the leaves of Sallows to eat out of your hand, for they be very good for him, and cooling for his *body*; do this divers mornings together, and it will not only cleanſe his Cold, but alſo open his Pipes, and ſet his wind at liberty. But if your *Horſe* have an inward cold, which lyeth lurking in his *Lungs* and *Stomach*, then give him this Medicine.

Take Oil de-Bay and good Tarr, of each the quantity of three Walnuts, half as much Honey, brown-Sugar-candy in fine powder half an ounce, mix theſe with a quantity of powdred Brimſtone ſo much as will ſuffice, and ſew them into a fine linnen cloth, and tye it to his Bit or Snaffle, and ſo ride or journey him moderately till all be diſſolved into his *body*, then bring him into the Stable, and cloath and litter him warm, and three hours after give him Hay, and after a warm Maſh; uſe him thus three mornings together and longer, if you ſhall ſee cauſe. ***. *Another.*

Bran prepared. Take bloud from him, if you have ground for the ſame, otherwiſe not; then inſtead of giving him Oats, you ſhall give him bran boiled in water after this manner, *viz.* Set a Kettle over the fire almoſt full of water, and when it beginneth to boil, put in your bran, and let it boil a full quarter of an hour at leaſt, then take it off, and let it ſtand till it be almoſt cold, and about four or five a clock in the morning, give him this bran ſo hot as he can eat; then for his drink, give him the ſame water, and at night give him Oats and white water, and let him be covered and littered warm; if it be in Summer, let not the Stable be too hot, for that will take away his ſtomach, and make him faint, and ſweat too much; and at night

night give him the quantity of what you can put into an Egg-ſhell among his Oats of this powder following, to which you muſt keep him for eight days together, or longer, if you ſhall ſee cauſe. You muſt underſtand that the boiled Bran, is that which drieth up all his groſs and corrupt *humours*, which was the cauſe of his cold. Now the powder is this: *viz.* Take of Comminſeed, Fenugreek, Sileris-Montana (alias Silileos) Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linſeed, of each two ounces, Quick Brimſtone ſix ounces, make all theſe into fine powder, and let them be well mixed: this muſt be given with his Oats, as is before inculcated; but he muſt firſt be watred, and then preſently let him be well rubbed, *body*, *neck*, *pole*, *legs*, *breaſt* and *belly*, and cloathed and littered warm, and an hour before you give him his Oats, put into his Rack a little ſweet wheat ſtraw, and ſo (I ſay) let him eat thereof the ſpace of one hour or better, and then give him his Oats mixed with this powder, which having eaten, give him Hay at your pleaſure; and thus doing, in ſhort time you ſhall perceive his Cold to be quite gone, and the ſooner if he ſhall be moderately aired an hour after Sun-riſing, and an hour before Sun-ſet, if the Sun do ſhine. Now if this Cold bring with it a violent Cough, as is often ſeen, then give him the aforeſaid Wheat bran boiled, together with the ſaid powder with his Oats, but then not above three or four days, for that the ſaid powder diſperſeth the corrupt and groſs *humours* that are in the *body*, which do occaſion the ſaid cough; and when you do perceive that he hath purged ſufficiently, keep him notwithſtanding to his white water, but an hour before you do water him;

Take a ſtick of the bigneſs of your thumb or better, of well nigh a foot long, and wrap a linnen clout about it four or five times, firſt dipped in Oil de-Bay, and put it into his *mouth*, and with ſome peice of leather thong, or other ſmall cord, faſten it to either end of the ſtick, and ſo faſten it over his *ears* like the Headſtal of a Bridle, like as Smiths uſe to do when they burn a Horſe for the Lampas, and let him drink with this ſtick in his mouth; which done, let him ſtand with it thus in his mouth an hour after at the leaſt, to the end he may lick and ſuck up the ſaid Oil, and when he is to eat his Oats, put among them this other powder following, *Viz.*

Take Fennel ſeed four ounces, Fenugreek two ounces, Cardimums one ounce, pound theſe groſly, otherwiſe he will blow them away in eating his Oats, and with his Oats put every night of this powder one ſpoonful, and keep him warm, and ſo uſe him as before is preſcribed. ***

Another.

Take Ivy-berries and dry them, and make them into powder, and ſo give it to your Horſe in Ale or Beer.

This I never tryed, and this is only for a Cough. Another for a Cough. Take of ſalt one pint, of Sallet Oil half a pint, Oil of Anniſeeds one ounce, brown Sugar-candy, in powder three ounces, give this with your horn to your Horſe three mornings together, and it will rid him of his Cough, and heal any putrefaction in his *Lungs* or any other inward parts whatſoever. This alſo I never tried, but it was highly commended to me. Another Receipt for a Cough, which I have found to be very good.

Take two new laid Eggs, and open the crowns, and get forth ſome of the white, and then put into theſe Eggs ſo much of the powder of Brimſtone as you can take up upon a ſhilling into either Egg; give him this every morning for ſome time, or till you ſee the Cough to go from him.

Another.

Take three new laid Eggs, and put them into a pint pot, then put ſo much of the beſt and ſtrongeſt White Wine Vinegar into the pot as will very well cover the Eggs, and let them lie in the Vinegar twenty four hours at the leaſt, then beat the Vinegar and Eggs together ſhells and all, and ſo give it your Horſe cold, and then ride or walk him an hour, and againſt his coming in, have this drink in readineſs, and give it him, *Viz.*

Take Hyſſop, Anniſeeds, Licoris, Grains, Long Pepper, Gentia, Elecampane dryed, of each three drams, make all the Spices into fine powder, and ſtamp the Hyſſop well, and ſo put all into good Sack one pint, and of good Ale alſo one pint, and of Honey one ſpoonful, and ſo boil it, and give it your Horſe blood warm, and ſet him up, and cloath him, and litter him warm, cauſing him to faſt three hours after it, and give him no cold water, But ſweet maſhes or white water; and this will cure him, for it is an approved good Receipt. *** Another very good.

Take

Take Wheat-Meal, Anniſeeds, Licoris, Polipodium of the Oak dried, Elecampane dried; make all theſe into powder, and mix them well: Take two ſpoonfuls of this powder, with a head of Garlick pilled and bruized, mix all theſe well together, and with your Wheat Meal and Honey as much as will ſuffice, make Pills thereof the bigneſs of a Walnut, and give your Horſe every morning three or four of theſe Pills, and ſo ſoon as he hath taken them, give him two new laid Eggs with their ſhells. **.

Another.

Take of life Honey three ſpoonfuls, of the beſt and whiteſt refined loaf Sugar one ſpoonful and a half, made into fine powder, dryed Elecampane Root made alſo into fine powder, one ſpoonful, and of Ambergreece two grains, mix all theſe very well together, and put it into an Egg-ſhell, and give him hereof at night late, and in the morning faſting, and ſo let him faſt for three hours after; and be the cough never ſo violent, it will both ſtay and cure the ſame **.* This is right good, for I have had very good proof thereof.

Another.

Take Benjamin and Brimſtone made into very fine powder, of each half an ounce, give this your Horſe with one pint of Muskadine, putting into it two new laid Eggs ſhells and all, broken and well beaten together, let it be given three mornings together This was commended unto me for a ſpecial good Receipt, but I never did make tryal thereof.

Another.

Take Nettle ſeeds, Anniſeeds, Raiſons of the Sun Stoned, Elecampane in fine powder, of each half an ounce, make all the ſpices and ſeeds into very fine powder, and cut the Raiſons very ſmall, and ſo boil all theſe in Muskadine or Sack a quart, with three ſpoonfuls of life Honey, then ſtrain it, and give it him three mornings together blood-warm. This I never proved.

Another.

Take of Rue one handful, chop or ſtamp it very ſmall, and put to it a pennyworth of Anniſeeds in very fine powder, make it up into Pills with ſweet Butter, and ſo give it your Horſe. **.* This I have found to be moſt ſovereign for a

Horſe

Horſe that hath a cold whether newly or formerly taken, either, wet or dry cough; it is alſo moſt excellent for a Horſe that hath been over-ridden, or any way wronged by labour. Now if his Cough be ſo violent as that it may endanger his *wind*; then

Take Calamint, Gentiana, Cominſeed, Licoris, Elecampane, of each two drams, make all theſe into fine powder, and confect them with life Honey and Butter mingled together and molten; and when it is cold, make it up into Pills, then rowl them in the Powder of Anniſeeds, and give him of theſe Pills three or four every morning, for two or three mornings together faſting, and after keep him warm, and let his drink be Maſhes or white water. *** But if he hath a Cough of the *Lungs*, give him theſe Pills. Take the Roots of Mallows newly gathered, Elecampane Roots newly alſo gathered, of each 1 handful, ſlice them thin, and boil them in fair water with Barly 2 handfuls, till the roots be ſoft, then ſtrain forth the liquor, and put into it a penny diſh of ſweet Butter, of life Honey 3 ſpoonfuls, and as much Bean meal as will make all into a paſte: then make it into Pills, and rowl them up in the powder of Anniſeeds, and give him 3 or 4 of them every morning faſting for 3 or 4 mornings together, keep him temperately warm, and during the time he taketh theſe Pills, let his drink be either ſweet maſhes or white water, and every day about mid-day, give him boiled Barly or Brewers grains. ***

Another for a Horſe that hath his Wind broken.

Take the leaves of Mullet, *alias* Mullen *alias* Horſe-Lungwort, and dry them, and make them into fine powder, and then make them up in Balls or Pills with ordinary honey ſo much as will ſuffice: Let theſe Pills be made of the bigneſs of an Egg, and give him of them 3 at a time, 14 or 15 days together, or longer if you ſhall ſee cauſe, and let him not drink any cold water during the time, and for a while after the giving of his Pills; and let his exerciſe be very moderate, and his Hay ſprinkled with water, and his Oats wet with good Ale or Beer, and in ſhort time he will be well and ſound again. ***. This is a moſt approved good Receipt, with which I have done Cures held impoſſible to have been effected.

Another,

Another.

Take Comin half an ounce, Anniſeeds, and Licoris, of each two ounces, dried roots of Elecampane three ounces, make them into fine powder, and boil them in a pottle of Ale or Beer to a quart, then ſtrain it, and give the liquor to your Horſe in a morning faſting blood warm, and ride him moderately upon it two or three hours, then ſet him up warm, and uſe him *ut ſupra*. This I never tryed, but he that gave it me did highly commend the ſame unto me. Thus have I given you many Receipts for a cold, and ſuch diſeaſes which are thereof dependent, whereof many are to my knowledge right good, and by my ſelf experimented, with which I have done cures which have been held very ſtrange, and beyond expectation.

Hippophilus. *Truly* Hippoſerus, *as touching theſe Maladies, ſomething there is in them, wherein I do earneſtly deſire to be yet better informed; and firſt I would gladly know what be the diverſities of the diſeaſes which do proceed from Colds; and how we may come to know one malady from another.*

Hippoſerus. Sir, in anſwer hereunto you muſt underſtand, that from a cold taken do iſſue many infirmities, if the ſaid cold be not ſpeedily prevented; as namely, firſt Coughs, as well wet as dry, Catars, Murs, Rhumes, Poſe, Ratlings in the *head*, Kernels, and inflammations under the *Chaul*, with Bunches, Knots, Puſtils, *&c.* It cauſeth alſo Hidebound, Feavers, Head-aches, Frenzy, Sleeping evil, weeping Eyes, Canker in the Noſe, Strangles, Quinſie, to have Gourded or ſwolen legs: It will cauſe the *hair* to ſtare, it will in time cauſe the mourning of the *Chine* (if there be ſuch a diſeaſe) ſhortneſs of breath; purſiveneſs, phthiſick, broken wind, (alſo if there be ſuch a diſeaſe) Freliſed, broken, and rotten lungs, glanders incurable, if it be not in time prevented, grief and pain in the *breaſt*, Anticor; it will alſo cauſe the evil habit of the *ſtomach*, dropſie, loathing of meat, foundring both in the *Body* and *feet*, tyredneſs, putrifaction, and inflammations in the *blood*, it will alſo cauſe many diſeaſes and inflammations in the *liver*, together with the ſiccity and aridity thereof, obſtructions, oppilations, coſtiveneſs and ſtoppings both in the *body* and *pores*, a conſumption in the *liver*, the overflowing of the

the *gall*, the unnatural working of the *ſpleen*, the Yellows, Stavers, the Colick and gripings, *belly bound*, lax and *bloody flux*. All theſe and many more diſeaſes and maladies do depend upon this one only infirmity we call the *cold*, and hence appears how needful a thing it is for a man who is the true lover of his *Horſe*, to be careful what in him lyeth both to keep his *Horſe* from cold taking, as alſo to know how to cure the ſame ſo ſoon as it ſhall appear, in performance whereof no ſmall diligence and art is required.

SECT. 14. C.

Hippoph. *YOU make queſtion whether or not there be ſuch a diſeaſe which is ſo commonly called the Mourning of the Chine: why is there not ſuch a diſeaſe?*

Hippoſerus. No truly, there is no ſuch diſeaſe, for that which is called the mourning of the *Chine*, is none other thing than a plain and rank Glaunders, which very few of our Engliſh *Ferriers* do know how to cure, which hath its firſt ſource and origen from a cold which being let run long, cometh to be a Glaunders, which in time doth waſte the *liver* of the *Horſe*, whereby he dyeth; for if for your better underſtanding you ſhall be pleaſed to open *Horſes* which do die of this diſeaſe, you ſhall evermore find the *Chine* and *pith* of the *Horſe* to be ſound and whole, but the *liver* periſhed, and his lungs putrified, by reaſon whereof the *Horſe* long before his death caſteth forth of his *noſe* much corrupt and ſtinking matter and filth; wherefore this malady cannot in reaſon be ſtiled the *mourning of the Chine*, but meerly the Glaunders; and for remedy thereof you ſhall have ſundry excellent Receipts when we ſhall come to handle this diſeaſe; and therefore till then I forbear to ſpeak any more thereof.

Hippophilus. *You queſtion alſo another diſeaſe called a* broken wind, *why this is ſo general a malady, as that no man but giveth it that name: what do you call it?*

Hippoſerus. Sir, as touching this infirmity, I ſay there is no ſuch, for you muſt underſtand that this diſeaſe ſo vulgarly called a *broken wind*, is truly a ſhortneſs of breath, or attaint or diſeaſe in the *wind*, Purſiveneſs, the Aſthma or Pthiſick,

ſick, as Artiſts do call it. Three cauſes there be of this infirmity, two whereof proceed from a cold formerly taken, and the third from another cauſe, as ſhall preſently be demonſtrated. The firſt is an exulceration of the *lungs*, which doth begin from a cold; the ſecond by clinging or growing together of the *lights*, whoſe origin came alſo of cold; and the third is a diſlocation of the *lungs*, and this laſt cometh by means of ſome violent or ſudden act or motion of the body, or by ſome fall whereby the *lungs* were become diſlocated, diſplaced, or turned in the *body* of the *Horſe*, every of which do occaſion *ſhortneſs of breath* by reaſon the *lungs* have not power ſufficient (being the bellows of the body) to open, ſhut and ply at pleaſure; and this is the cauſe why the Horſe heaveth at the *ribs* and *flanks*, fetcheth his breath ſhort and hot at the *noſe*, wheeſeth, and oft times reeleth when he is put to little that doth reſtrain his *wind*, and therefore ſo long as he is kept in the Stable at dry and hard meats, he heaveth more than when he is at graſs, for if you do waſh his Provender in Ale or Beer, and ſprinkle his Hay with water, you ſhall perceive him to heave the leſs: but when he runneth at graſs, he heaveth ſo little, as hardly to be ſeen, and the reaſon is, for that the Horſe having naturally a very moiſt body, the cold which he hath taken doth ſo condenſe and make thick thoſe *humours* which before were thin, which do (whilſt they were *tenues*) paſs moſt eaſily through the pores, but now they are become thick, viſcous, and ſlimy, ſtopping the pores in ſuch ſort as hardly to be able to *breathe*, but with greet labour and no leſs pain, which doth provoke him to heave and lift, by reaſon that the *lungs*, *pores*, and *pipes* are ſo ſtopped and oppreſt, as not to be able to perform their function and natural office, for which nature hath created them, and beſides thoſe ſtoppings do conſtrain him to cough and labour ſo extreamly, as to endanger oft times the breaking of a *vein*, from whence enſue many more inconveniences than this one: nevertheleſs you may have means to help his *wind*, but to recover him perfect and ſound again, I dare not abſolutely promiſe you, and if you be ſolicitous to underſtand more of this ſubject, to ſave both your own labour and mine, if you will be pleaſed to peruſe Maſter *Blundevile*, and Maſter *Markham*, they are able to give you ample ſatisfaction.

SECT. 15. C.

Hippoph. *What means have you to help a* Consumption?

Hipposerus. We have two kinds of Consumptions, the first is called the dry malady, the other the Consumption of the *flesh*: as touching the first, which commonly cometh at the first of a cold, taken, then it exulcerateth the *lungs*, which in the beginning sendeth forth thin matter from the *nose*, but after, when it is grown more tough and viscous, it runneth no more, but causeth a maceration and leanness through the whole *body*, whereby he droopeth and pineth away, and albeit he eateth and drinketh, yet it is without appetite, his meat doing him but little good. The signs to know it are these: his *belly* will be gaunt, and he will be Hidebound, his *flesh* will consume almost to *Skin* and *bones*, if you strike him on the *belly* it will sound hollow, his hair will stare, neither will he cast it in due season, when other Horses which be sound will do, he will cough hollow and faintly: the Horse that is troubled with this disease, well may he be kept for some time alive, but long he cannot be, for the malady is incurable, if it be too long let run: and therefore I leave him to Dogs and Crows in his languishing plight. The other *Consumption* is that of the *flesh*, which also beginneth of a cold formerly taken, which for want of remedy in time, occasioneth a general dislike and maceration throughout the whole body: it cometh from immoderate labour or travel by violent heat and cold taken upon it: it cometh also by riding him into the water after a greater heat given, and then set up presently negligently; as once it happened to a young *Nag* of good mettle and spirit, and of very great hope, the owner of which *Nag* delivered him to an *Ambler* to pace, who whilest he had him in agitation, hearing Hounds abroad made into them, and rode him hard all day to the death of the Hare; then coming home hot and all in a sweat, near to the *Amblers* house was a River with a Water-Mil, where he set him up to the skirts of the Saddle, and then brought him into the Stable where was neither cloth, litter, or any other thing to keep him warm, or wherewith to rub him, at which time he took so desperate a cold as never after to be cured: for in short time

Dry malady.

time after, he brought him to the *Gentleman* that did own him, when upon his coming home the *Nag* drooped, forſook his meat, and became very ſick; the *Gentleman* deſired me to endeavour the beſt I might for his recovery, for that he loved the *Nag* well. I ignorant of the cauſe of his Malady, went as I thought according to Art, I took *blood* from ſundry *veins*, I gave him a *Suppoſitory*, and after certain *Clyſters*, which I aſſured me were moſt needful for him: all that I did adminiſter wrought very kindly and well, but yet nothing could provoke in him an appetite, or be the means of any amendment, I then aſſayed him with frictions, and Cordials, but all was caſt away: airing or ought elſe would not prevail; then I perſwaded the *Gentleman* to turn him to graſs, it being in the middle of *May*, and a very ſeaſonable time, for I found him to be inwardly ſound, he ran at graſs about a moneth, but ſtill grew weaker, and every day more meager than other, and at length he grew to be ſo much infeebled by continual languiſhing as that being down, he was not able to riſe, but with help, in fine, ſhortly after the *Nag* dyed; then for my better experience I would needs have him opened, which being done; a ſounder *body* in a Horſe could not be ſeen, but I diſcovered the cauſe of the diſeaſe and death of this *Nag* in his *skin*,, for it being taken from him you might moſt evidently ſee the *Fat* which did lie next unto his *belly*, *brisket*, *ribs*, and *ſides*, to be ſo caked and hard, as that it not being diſſolved, the *Nag* could never after enjoy himſelf, which cauſed him to waſte and dwindle of his *fleſh*, and languiſhing die; which ſo ſoon as I eſpied, I preſently told the *Gentleman*, the owner of the *Nag*, that the *Ambler* had given him that Infirmity (the *Nag* being then very fat) and after in his heat put him into the water, which the owner examining found to be moſt true, as well from the report of honeſt neighbours who lived adjacent to the *Ambler*, as (after ſome ſmall preſſure from the ingenuous confeſſion of the very *Ambler* himſelf. And this I think fit to bring you for an inſtance, to the end you may be the more careful in avoiding the like inconvenience, and be the better able to judge of a Malady of this nature. But now as touching the beſt cure for a *Conſumption* of the *fleſh* (albeit there be many) yet I can recommend but only this one, which both Maſter *Blundevile*, and Maſter *Markham* have recorded, which is this, *viz.*

Conſumption of the Flesh.

Take a Sheeps head with the wool on, cleave it, waſh it very clean, and boil it in a gallon of fair water, until the fleſh come from the bones, then ſtrain the liquor from the fleſh, and put it into the broath of refined loaf-Sugar half a pound, of Cinamon, conſerve of Roſes, conſerve of Barberries, conſerve of Cherries, of each three ounces: and give your horſe of this broath a quart, every morning faſting blood warm; uſe this till four or more Sheeps heads be ſpent, and after every of theſe drinks let him be walked abroad, (if the weather be warm and not windy) otherwiſe walk him in ſome barn, or warm place, and let him faſt two or three hours after, and let him not drink any cold water in fifteen days after at the leaſt; but let his drink be either ſweet Maſhes, or white water, and for his Diet let that be what himſelf beſt liketh, and that given by little at once and often; and by this means he may recover both *fleſh* and ſtrength again in reaſonable time. *** Nevertheleſs when he hath gotten *fleſh*, depart with him ſo ſoon as may be, leſt upon any hard travel he happen to relapſe, as is moſt probable he may. With this Receipt I have recovered three Horſes, whereof one was a Horſe of a high price.

Hippophilus. *But tell me I pray you, were it amiſs (for this diſeaſe) to take* blood *from him before you* drench *him?*

Hippoſcrus. Yea, that it were Sir very much amiſs, for ſo to do, were certain death; for in caſes of *Conſumptions* you muſt take no blood at all, but rather labour to cheriſh the blood he hath; for his debility and feebleneſs will be ſuch, as that he conſuming ſo much in his *fleſh*, you muſt rather endeavour to procure his ſtrength than any way to hinder the ſame, which the loſs of *blood* may moſt eaſily do. Neither muſt you be too baſie in adminiſtring unto him *Purges*, but *Cordials*, as *Diapente*, *Diateſſaron*, *Duke* powder, *Cordial* powder, and ſuch like reſtoratives, alſo by giving him good meat, as good ſtrengthning bread and heartning, well made, and of purpoſe for him, if he will eat bread, ſometimes boiled Barley, and Oats, alſo boiled beans, and ſuch like hearty meat, as will reſtore him, and to give him ſometimes about mid day a quart of ſtrong Ale, or Beer, is very good, and will greatly comfort him. And thus keeping him warm, feeding him, and ordering him well, you may in time recover him again. *** And this is the beſt counſel I can give you for this infirmity.

SECT.

SECT. 16. C.

Hippoph. NOw *what say you to a* Convulſion ; *How do you cure that?*

Hippoſerus. A *Cramp* and *Convulſion* is one and the ſame Malady, which is a violent contracting or drawing together of *Sinews* and *Veins*, and *Muſcles*, as well through the whole *body*, as in any one member of the ſame ; yet doth it not always apprehend or ſieze the whole *body*, but takes one member or other, as ſometimes it layeth hold upon the *Eye*, ſometimes upon the *Tongue*, the *Jaws*, *Lips*, *Legs*, *&c.* which albeit it cometh by ſeveral means, yet principally it comes either through cold in the *body*, or elſe for want of *blood*, or laſtly by overmuch *purging*. The ſigns to know this diſeaſe are moſt eaſie ; for that *Horſe* that is therewith troubled, will have that member (for the time the fit is upon it) ſo ſtiff that a man with the utmoſt of his ſtrength is not able to ſtir the ſame, by reaſon that the *Sinews* and *Muſcles* will be ſo much contracted as not poſſibly to bring the limb to its priſtine ſtate, but only by rubbing and chafing the limb or member with warm cloaths ; and after the fit is over, it were very requiſite to ſweat him in the Stable in his cloaths, for two or three hours together ; and if the malady be in the lower parts, as in the *Legs*, then let the member which is taken be wiſped up with thumb bands of Hay made wet firſt, and after when the member is thus wiſped, to caſt thereon cold water, and after this his ſweating, let his whole *body* (but eſpecially the member taken) be anointed with the ointment of *Acopum* before mentioned in the ſecond Book *Chap* 14. *Sect.* 1. *A.* and to give him ſome of it inwardly with ſweet Sack, or Muſcadine : and thus have I recovered ſundry *Horſes* perplexed with this diſeaſe, giving him two or three drinks after of *Diapente*, and then to keep him warm, and to continue him for ſome time with ſweet maſhes, or white water ; but when you come to give him cold water again, let it be with exerciſe and airings after Sun riſing, and before Sun ſet, the Sun ſhining, and when there is no wind, or other cold nipping weather. But if you have not of this *Acopum* in a readineſs, then apply this *bath* or Ointment to the grieved place or *member*, *viz.* Take

Convulſion.

Take Pimpernel a good armful, Primroſe leaves, Camomile, Crowfoot, Mallows, Fennel, Roſemary, of each ſix handfuls, and fine upland Hay, cut and made about Midſummer, when the ſtrength and heart of graſs is at the beſt, a good quantity, put all theſe into a Lead or Cauldron, and fill up the Cauldron with fair water, and ſo let it ſteep eight and forty hours, then boil it until the herbs be ſoft, and *bathe* the grieved *member* therewith four days together, morning and evening, warmed; which done, apply ſome of theſe herbs to the places or limbs grieved, and keep them on with a thumb-band of Hay, wet in the ſaid decoction, and every day about noon anoint the ſaid viſited *member* with Petroleum, and Nerval, and Oil of Spike mixed together, and keep him warm, give him good meat and maſhes or white water, not only during the time of his cure, but a good time after, and let his airings be temperate, and his exerciſe moderate, and take heed of waſhing him after labour, for that probably was the cauſe of his *Convulſion.* ***

Another.

Take ſtrong white Wine vinegar, and Patch-greaſe, *alias* Peece-greaſe, of each like much, melt them upon a gentle fire, then with wheat flowr make it into a Poulteſs, and apply it to the grieved *member* good and warm, renewing it morning and evening, but before you do adminiſter this charge (by holding a bar of iron, or a chafing diſh of coals near) let him be anointed with Petroleum, Nerval, and Patch greaſe, and Oil of Spike, of each like much very well, and after bind on the charge all over the grieved place, dreſs him thus morning and evening, and give him moderate exerciſe and airings, and let him have maſhes and white water to drink, and keep him warm. This is very good. ***

Another.

First rake him, then give him the Clyſter preſcribed in Book [illegible] chap. 11. Sect. 8. Clyſter 4. then let two men (on either ſide of the *horſe* one) rub him well with ſoft cloaths all his *body* and *limbs* over, eſpecially the diſeaſed *limb*, then clooth him up warm, and let him ſtand upon the trench four [illegible] hours, to the end the Clyſter may work the more kindly, give him meat and white water, and ſo feed him for that

that da But I muſt tell you that ſo ſoon as you have given him this Clyſter, and before his friction give him this drink whereby to cleanſe his *body*, *viz.*

Take of white Wine one pint, Aloes half an ounce; Agarick half an ounce, all beaten very ſmall, and infuſed in the Wine, putting thereto of the pureſt clarified Hogs greaſe one ſpoonful, or for want thereof (and which is much better) of ſweet Butter ſix ounces, and give him this blood warm. The next day prepare in a readineſs this Unguent.

Take of ſtrong Ale two quarts, and of black Sope two pound, boil them together till they look black like Tarr, and herewith anoint, rub, and chafe him all over that the Unguent may ſink in: that done, cloath him up, and ſtuff him warm that he may ſweat well, but ſtuff *head*, *neck*, and *breaſt* well, let him ſweat thus two hours, then cool him by degrees, taking now a little from him, then a little, till he be brought to a good temper again, then keep him ſo, and about one of the clock at afternoon, give him a warm maſh or white water, and then ſome Hay, and an hour after that Provender. Let not this drink be given him above once during his whole Cure, but his *Clyſters*, *Sweats* and *Frictions*, till he be well; yet the *Clyſters* not every day neither, and let his drink be white water, wherein Mallows have been boyled, unleſs ſometimes you give him where with to comfort him a ſweet Maſh: but if he will not drink his white water boiled with Mallows, then let him have it without, and let his food be that which is ſweet and very good. This did I never try, but two ſeveral *Ferriers* who lived more than 100 miles diſtant the one from the other gave me this Receipt *Verbatim*, without ſcarce altering one word, and they both proteſted unto me they have cured ſundry *Horſes* which have been ſorely perplexed with this Diſeaſe.

Hippophilus. *What mean you by moderate and temperate* airing *of a* Horſe *?*

Hippoſerus. I do mean by moderate airing, that he be not Airing forth in airing too long, and by temperate airing, that a ſick *Horſe* if there be cauſe why he ſhould be aired, it be not done too late in the Evening, nor too early in the Morning; for that ſuch kind of airings will take too much from the Horſe that

is

is feeble or ſick: but in ſuch caſes, let him be walked to his airings in a warm Evening, an hour before Sun ſet at leaſt, and in a Morning an hour after the Sun is up, eſpecially if the wind be not too high, or blow too cold, and that the Sun ſhine warm: For by airing before Sun-riſing, and after Sun ſet (like as is to be uſed with running and hunting *Horſes*) will make a fat ſtrong *Horſe* both poor and lean, as not to have a Crow of *fleſh* on his back, as the Proverb is, and ſo feeble as not to be able to ariſe being laied, and therefore give not ſuch kind of airings to a *Horſe* that is infirm; but theſe which I do term the temperate airings, will greatly comfort the ſpirits of your *Horſe*, give him a very good appetite to his meat, and encreaſe his *fleſh* and good liking; whereas the late airings will be (as I ſaid before) very noxious to ſick, diſeaſed, or lean *Horſes*.

SECT. 17. C.

Hippoph. *HOw do you help a Horſe that groweth coſtive or belly-bound?*

Hippoſerus. The nature of this diſeaſe is ſuch as that the *Horſe* that is therewith troubled, cannot diſcharge himſelf, but with great pain and trouble, his ordure coming from him both very dry and hard. *Horſes* that are kept too much to hard, dry, and hot meats, are moſt incident to this Malady; ſometimes it cometh by eating too much Provender, eſpecially Beans, Peaſe, Tares, or Wheat, which albeit theſe Grains be more hearty than any other, yet they ſiccicate and dry up the moiſture, becauſe they beget more heat and coſtiveneſs in the body, than other Grains do, yea and *wind* too, and bad *humours* cauſing obſtructions; and ſometimes this coſtiveneſs cometh to a *Horſe* by reaſon he hath been kept to too ſpare a diet, as is uſually ſeen in *Horſes* in diet; for this hot and dry food doth ſuck up (like to a ſpunge) the *flegmatick* moiſture of the *body*, giving way thereby that *choler* is become the more predominant, ſo that the meat he eateth cannot be ſo well digeſted. This is a Diſeaſe very perilous, and the origine of many maladies; and it is eaſily known by its ſymptoms. And you may cure him after this manner, *viz.*

Take

Take the decoction of Mallows one quart, Sallet Oil half a pint, or freſh Butter half a pound, *Benedicta laxativa*, one ounce, give him this blood warm clyſter-wiſe, and then clap his *tail* to his *tuel*, and ſo cauſe him to keep it half an hour at leaſt, being walked up and down, then ſet him up warm, and it will work, whereby he will empty himſelf: and in due time give him a ſweet Maſh, and after Hay, and ſo keep him to maſhes or white water two or three days; but withal fail not to rake him before you adminiſter your Clyſter. *** This is a moſt excellent Receipt which you ſhall find in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 6. *Sect.* 7. *Clyſter* i. *C.* *** There be many other good *Suppoſitories* and *Clyſters*, which I have already and will hereafter ſet you down, which be very ſovereign for this malady. Coſtiveneſs or belly-bound.

SECT. 18. *C.*

Hippoph. WHat *diſeaſe is that we call the* Crowne-ſcab? *Hippoſerus.* This ſorance is a ſcab or cruſt which groweth upon the coronet or top of the *hoof*, next unto the *hair*; it is a filthy ſtinking and cancerous diſeaſe, and not only troubleſome, but painful to the beaſt, and it cometh commonly in the winter, whilſt the Horſe is in the Stable, like as doth the Scratches; and it is ingendred firſt by reaſon the *Horſe* from a *Colt*, till he came to be handled, was for the moſt part kept in moiſt, wet, and cold grounds; for no Horſes are inclinable unto this diſeaſe, but thoſe that are bred up in ſuch like grounds, The ſigns to know this malady is, that the *hair* will ſtare about the *coronet*, and become thin and briſly. The way to cure the ſame is,

Firſt to waſh and bathe the place well ſo far as the Scab or Sorance goeth, which is commonly round about the *coronet*, then ſhave or clip away the *hair* cloſe, then, Crown ſcab.

Take Turpentine, tried Hogs greaſe, and Honey, of each like much, a little of the powder of Bolearmoniak, the yolks of two Eggs, with as much wheat flower as will thicken it by working it to a ſalve, and apply this plaſter-wiſe, with a linnen cloth to the ſorance, renewing it every day once till it be whole: but let him not come into any wet during his cure. *** This is a very good one.

Another.

Take old chamber-ly, and ſet it upon the fire, and as the ſcum ariſeth, take it off, then put to it of white ſalt as much as will ſuffice, and as the ſcum ariſeth the ſecond time, take it away; with this liquor waſh and bathe the ſorance three or four times a day till it be whole. **** Another very good, which I have often uſed.

Take ſoft Sope, tryed Hogs greaſe, of each half a pound, Bolearmoniack, in fine powder ſo much as will ſuffice. Turpentine four ounces, make all theſe into one body, and ſo plaſter-wiſe apply it to the place, binding it on with a clout that it come not off, renewing it dayly till it do leave running, then waſh and bathe it in Vineger warmed, till the ſorance be clean dried up. ****

SECT. 19. *C.*

Hippoph. *How do you take away a* Curb?

Hippoſerus. This is a ſwelling a little beneath the *Elbow* of the *Hough* upon the great *Sinew* behind, and above the top of the *horne*, which cauſed the Horſe to halt, eſpecially when he beginneth to be hot, for by reſt it paineth him the leſs: it cometh either by a ſtrain, or by carrying ſome heavy burthen, or elſe he taketh it hereditarily from his *Sire* or *Dam*. The ſigns to know it is, by the long ſwelling in the place before mentioned. The cure is,

Curb. Firſt, ſhave away the hair, then with an Incle or Filletting bind the *Hough* ſtreight, above the joint, then with a ſmall ſtick beat, rub, and chaſe the *Curb*, like as you uſe to do in the cure of the *Splent*, then with a Fleam, or Knife peirce the skin through in two or three places, and ſo with your *Thumb* thruſt forth, and cruſh out the corrupt blood, and after convey ſo deep as you can get into every hole the bigneſs of two barly corns of *Arſnick*, and ſo having bound up the place, let it ſo remain by the ſpace of four and twenty hours, then open the place, and anoint it every day once with molten Butter, till it be whole. ****

Another.

Another.

Take Wine Lees one pint, a porrenger full of wheat flower, of Comin in fine powder half an ounce, mix all these well together, and being made warm upon the fire, charge the place therewith, renewing it every day once, by the space of three or four days together: and when you do perceive the swelling to be almost gone, then draw it with your hot Iron, and charge the burning with pitch and Rosin molten together, which must be applyed warm, to the end, the charge may stick on the better, and then presently clap on Flocks, and let it so rest till of it self it fall away: and let him come in no wet or water by the space of twelve or fourteen days after, and he will be perfectly cured. ***

Another.

Take a Bar of Iron, heat it red hot, and hold it near to the place till it become warm, then with your Fleam prick six or seven holes through the *Skin*, and anoint the sorance with Nerval, then take of Salt a spoonful, and of Verdegrease a penny weight in fine powder, with the white of an Egg, let these be well incorporated together, then take a little Flax or Hurds, and wet it in this medicine, and bind it to the place, renewing it every day once, and in short time it will be perfectly cured. *** All these Receipts I have used, and I have found them to be right good.

CHAP. VII.

SECT. 1. *D.*

Hippoph. *WEll now that we have made an end of this Chapter, let us proceed to another: Tell me I pray you, how may a* Dangerous Sickness *come to a Horse?*

Hippoferus. Sir, that which you call *Dangerous Sickness*, is of divers natures, proceeding from sundry causes, having every one its distinct symptoms, and therefore do require several remedies; wherefore that you may the better know how and when

Dangerous sickness how it cometh

when any ſickneſs cometh, obſerve I pray but theſe four principles following, and you ſhall never err. *viz.*

1 Firſt, that all ſickneſs cometh either by heats in over violent exerciſe, as when the Horſe (*v. g.*) hath his greaſe molten, the *heart* overcharged, *the vital blood* forced from the inward parts, and the large *Pores* and *Orifices* of the *heart* ſo obſtructed and ſtopped, that the *Spirits* cannot return back to their proper places, ſo as the Organs of the *body* cannot rejoyce, but by this means the *body* muſt of neceſſity languiſh, founder, and mortifie.

2. Secondly, dangerous ſickneſs cometh alſo by colds, as by indiſcreet, or negligent keeping, as well before as after long and violent exerciſe; and then it is the *head* perplexed, the *eyes* dulled, and pained, the roots of the *tongue* inflamed and ſwelled the *lungs* with rhumes tickled and offended, occaſioning ſtrong, and laborious coughing, and the *Noſtrils* often diſtilling and pouring forth filthy and corrupt matter.

3. Thirdly, dangerous ſickneſs cometh alſo by ſurfeit of food, either by eating too much, or too little of what is good, or alſo of that which is not wholſome; ſo as the firſt killeth, or at leaſt debilitateth the *Stomach*, oppreſſeth the *Heart*, and ſendeth up theſe evil fumes into the *Head*, by which are ingendred the Stavers, Frenzies, and other mortal diſeaſes; the ſecond putrifies the blood, and converts all its nutriment into corruption, from whence proceeds the Yellows, Farcin, Feavers, Mainges, and other ſuch like peſtilent lepſous and loathſome diſeaſes, which ſuffocating the *heart*, and clogging the *Stomach*, dilates and ſpreads it ſelf univerſally over the whole *body*, leaving no *member* free, and confoundeth every *faculty*, and *member* thereof.

4. Fourthly and laſtly, dangerous ſickneſs comes alſo by *accident*, as when a *Horſe* (*v. g.*) receiveth ſome deep or perilous wound or hurt, either in his *body*, or elſewhere in ſome *vital* or dangerous part, by means whereof nature is ſo far offended, as that incontinently a general ſickneſs ſeizeth upon the Horſe, which (not in opportune time prevented) death ſuddenly enſueth; and theſe infirmities are called by the more expert *Ferriers*, *Accidental Feavers:* for if you be pleaſed to obſerve well, you ſhall find the *Horſe* ſometimes trembling, ſometimes ſweating, ſome-

ſometimes cold, ſometimes burning, but never in good temper. And thus much briefly of theſe four points or grounds, which be the occaſion of moſt *dangerous ſickneſſes Accidental.*

Hippophilus. *What means hath a man to know the ſigns, whereby to diſtinguiſh theſe ſeveral ſickneſſes the one from the other?*

Hippoſerus. Very eaſily Sir, for if ſickneſs do proceed from the firſt of theſe four principles, to wit, from heats, then are the ſigns theſe, *viz.* The heavineſs of his countenance, ſwellings of his Limbs, eſpecially of his hinder legs, ſcowring and looſneſs of his body, in the beginning of ſickneſs ſhort, and hot breath, a loathing and forſaking of meat, *&c.* 1

If from the ſecond, *viz.* cold, then the ſigns are, a dejected *countenance*, dulneſs or ſleepineſs of the *eyes*, Puſtrils or hard Knots under the *Chaule*, yea and many times inflamed Kernels and ſwellings ſo high as to the very roots of the *ears*, a rotten or moiſt inward hollow cough, he many times chewing betwixt his teeth, ſome looſe, filthy, and flegmatick matter, immediately after his coughing, which in ſome caſe is not an evil ſign, by reaſon that thereby the cold rotteth and goeth away; whereas on the contrary ſide for a *Horſe* to cough clear and dry, doth demonſtrate a dry cough, which hath long time lurked in his *body*, ſorely feſtering and tormenting him inwardly, which is very difficile to cure, but at length diſcovers it ſelf by reaſon of the *creatures* languiſhing and general falling away of his *fleſh*; for his *belly* will be ſhrunk up, and when he drinketh much of the ſame, water will iſſue forth of his *noſe*, his *eyes* will be either watry, or matrative, and run continually through pain which he hath in his *head*, procured by means of his cold, and his *hair* will be rough, and ſtairing *&c.* 2. Dangerous ſickneſs how to know.

From the third, to wit, from ſurfet by meat, either natural or unnatural; the ſigns be theſe, a dulneſs of the *head*, *eyes*, and *countenance*, yea, and that in ſuch a violent manner, ſo as the *Horſe* will be hardly able to lift up his *head* from the manger, a dull and dead *eye*, and ſunk into his *head*, his *ears* prickt his upright, and the tops of them cold, as alſo his upper *lips* and *ſheath*, his pace reeling and ſtaggering, and (if the diſeaſe be far gone) he will be of a frantick and mad comportment, as by biting and gnawing the Rack and Manger, or whomſoever 3.

ſhall

ſhall come within his reach, and ſometimes by biting of himſelf, and by beating his *head* againſt the wall and floor, and other ſuch frantick poſtures and paſſions: but if the malady be not yet gotten into the *brain*, or do not occupy that place; but that it hath ſettled it ſelf more intrinſecall, in the *body* or *heart*, then you ſhall perceive by the whites of the *eyes*, the *lips* and *tongue*, this Diſeaſe to be the plain Yellows, and if the diſeaſe be far gone, then will the Yellows be diſperſed all over the whole *skin* and the *Horſe* ſweat in the morning when firſt you come to him, as if he had been ſorely ridden, or had an *Hectick Feaver*, and have a deſire rather to be lying than to ſtand, and when he ſtandeth, it will be with his *fore-legs* ſtradling the one from the other, and he will alſo have a looſneſs or ſcowring, eſpecially if the *Horſe* hath taken his ſurfeit by eating too many Oats, or other Provender, and by drinking ſuddenly after, which you ſhall the better know, becauſe the *Horſe* will in his *Ordure* void ſome of his Oats or other Grain whole, as not being diſgeſted, by reaſon that the cold water ſo ſuddenly taken, upon his over haſty eating (not being all chewed) will cool his *ſtomach*, and make him to ſwell; beſides the *Horſe* will have a general loathing and forſaking of his meat, which is likewiſe the common ſymptom of every kind of ſurfeit, and almoſt every degree of ſickneſs.

4. The fourth and laſt ground or principle is, that if his infirmity and ſickneſs do proceed from *accidental* means, then are the ſigns, a perplexed and troubled *body*, ſometimes ſweating at the roots of his *ears*, in the *flanks*, and behind the *ſhoulders*, againſt the *heart*, ſometimes he will be taken with a trembling all his body over, and ſometimes with a glowing and burning in his *vital parts*, as in the *temples* of his *head*, againſt his *heart*, on the inſide of his *fore-legs*, next to the *body*, and on the inſide of the *hinder-legs*, alſo his mouth will be dry and hot, his *tongue* will be ſubject to be inflamed and furred; *in fine*, he will have a loathing and averſion from meat: but only that he muſt eat, and a great drought and thirſt, and a great longing to drink cold water, and when he hath drunk what him liketh, yet will he nevertheleſs deſire to keep his mouth continually in the Water. Many other ſigns there be, whereby a man who is any thing at all skilful and cautelous, may by obſerving diſco-

diſcover when his *Horſe* falleth into any infirmity and ſickneſs, as when you do perceive that his countenance or poſtures do alter from their uſual cuſtoms, then be you well aſſured, your *Horſe* doth alter and decay in his health, Alſo you muſt obſerve his feeding, and how he doth eat, a, whether with a good *appetite*, or with a weak *ſtomach*, the firſt being good, the ſecond unkindly and unhealthy, as alſo how he doth diſcharge or empty himſelf, and how his *Urine* and the colour of his *dung* or *ordure* do alter; which if his *dung* or *excrements* be pale, and full of grains, then is it good, but if blackiſh and dusky (according as I have before in its due place handled) then be you confident, he hath much heat and drineſs in his body, by which means probably enſueth great and dangerous ſickneſs: very many other ſigns of ſickneſs there are, as the not caſting or ſhedding of his hair, in its due and proper ſeaſon, *hide-bound*, coſtiveneſs, laxativeneſs, the clinging up of his *belly* to the *flanks*, continual diſlike, drowſineſs, dulneſs, and heavineſs, when he hath wanted due ordering and feeding, *&c.* All which ſymptoms are ſo well known to every man, as that they need not be handled further in this place.

Hippophilus. *But now* Hippoſerus, *ſithence you have thus far diſcovered, what are the cauſes and ſigns of dangerous ſickneſs, I would gladly you would ſhew me how I may either prevent ſickneſs before it cometh, or cure the ſame at firſt appearance.*

Hippoſerus. Sir, in this caſe two things are principally and diligently to be conſidered. The firſt is to prevent ſickneſs before it ſhall approach, whereby it ſhall not offend at all, and the ſecond is, to take it at the firſt appearance, and ſo to prevent and hinder it, whereby to prevent the danger thereof. 1.

As touching the firſt, the beſt way will be three or four days before you put forth your *Horſe* to graſs, to take *blood* from him, and the next day to give him the drink of *Diapente*, half an ounce, and a pint and half of ſweet Sack, which you ſhall find mentioned in *lib.* 2. *Sect ſequent*, and ſo by degrees to abate his cloaths if he have had any, and it is alſo very good that when you do take *blood* from him, you do receive it in a *baſon* or *bowl*, and therewith anoint his *back*, *loins*, *fillets*, *breaſt*, and all ſuch like places about him with the ſame *blood*; for it is moſt wholſome, and doth comfort the *body* very much, cleanſeth the

Dangerous ſickneſs how to prevent.

the *skin*, and begetteth a general rejoycing throughout all the *vital parts* of the *Horſe*. But if you have no intent to put him forth to graſs, and yet would prevent inward ſickneſs, then fail not (when you have beſt means) to give him reſt, take no *blood* from him at all, (unleſs you may juſtly ſuſpect his *blood* not to be very good) but give him only a drink of *Diapente* or *Diateſſaron*, for either of theſe are the greateſt and beſt refiners and purifiers of the *blood* of any thing can be adminiſtred, and do cauſe the Horſe to avoid all yellow *choleric matter*, and all evil indigeſted *humours*, which may any way putrifie, inflame, or corrupt the *blood*. And obſerve moreover, that in adminiſtring of theſe drinks, if Sack or Muskadine be not at hand to be had, that then in the place of a pint and a half of either of theſe (which is the proportion I limit to a Horſe of a ſtrong, able, and corpulent *body*, but to a ſmall or weak Horſe one pint) you do take of good Ale or Beer, one quart, and the ſame quantity of *Diapente* or *Diateſſaron* formerly preſcribed; and if the Ale or Beer be made warm upon the fire, it will be the better. And thus much as touching the firſt point, to wit, the prevention of ſickneſs before it come; that it may not offend your Horſe at all. Now I come to the ſecond point, *viz.*

2. Dangerous ſickneſs how to cure.

To take ſickneſs at its firſt appearance, whereby to ſend it packing before it hath taken deep root in the *body* of the Horſe, ſo that it ſhall never come to danger of life or limb, then thus in few words. You muſt be very cautelous and vigilant in obſerving your Horſe well, and prie into him ſo narrowly, as to diſcover the leaſt ſymptom of ſickneſs, that may be able to peep out its head, which ſo ſoon as you ſhall deſcrie, then preſently (if need ſhall require) let him blood; and there ſeveral mornings together give him the drink of *Diapente*, and let him be kept warm, well rubbed, and have Maſhes or white water during that time, and ſome days after, which will be a very good means for him to remain in perfect health, ſtrength, and good eſtate of body; But if this *Diapente* or *Diateſſaron* be not to be had on a ſudden, then

Take Celendine half a handful, as well the roots as the leaves, well waſhed and picked, Wormwood and Rue of each half a handful, boil all theſe in ſtrong Ale or Beer from a pottle to a quart, and then ſtrain it well, and put into the liquor of

ſweet

ſweet Butter half a pound, and of ordinary Treacle two ſpoonfuls, and ſo give it him blood warm. *** and this is moſt effectual to the ends before recited.

SECT. 2. *D.*

Hippoph. *YOu ſpeak very much of* Diapente, *giving it very great commendations. I pray how do you make the ſame.*

Hippoſerus. The Receipt of *Diapente* doth merit more *Encomiums* than I am able to give it, for that it is ſo precious and ſovereign a Powder for *Horſes*, and it is compounded of five ſeveral ſimples, if it be rightly made. It is (I ſay) the moſt ſovereign thing which can be given to a *Horſe* by way of drench, whereby to cure him of very many inward diſeaſes. It is good againſt all infectious maladies, as Feavers of what nature ſoever, all ſorts of Peſtilences, or contagious colds, Coughs, wet or dry, Glanders, Surfeits, inflammations in the *blood*, or *liver*, Frenzies, Yellows; it purifieth, refineth, and purgeth the *blood* from all infection and corruption, it eaſeth the overflowing of the *gall*, and the working of the *ſpleen*; in a word, it cureth whatſoever diſeaſes the *body* of the *Horſe* may be inwardly inclined unto; and it is thus made, *viz.*

Take Ariſtolochia Rotunda, Gentiana, Baccalani, Myrrha Eboraci, of each like much, let theſe be firſt pounded ſeverally, and finely ſearced, and after weighed, ſo as the quantities may be juſt and even, not any one leſs, or more than another, and after ſo well mixed as may be poſſibly, and ſo put into a Gaily pot preſſed as hard as may be done, and after ſo cloſe ſtopped, as that no air can get into it; and thus you muſt make it and reſerve it for your uſe. This muſt be adminiſtred to a Horſe in Muskadine, if you drench him for a cold or Glaunders; If for other maladies, then in ſweet Sack, and the quantity muſt be a pint and a half: but if the Sack or Muskadine be not to be had, then give it in ſtrong Ale or Beer; and the quantity of this powder of *Diapente* muſt be two or three ſpoonfuls, unleſs to a ſmall, ſick, or feeble Horſe, then the leſs quantity according as in your own judgment and reaſon, you Diapente.

shall think to be most requisite. *** And thus is this so excellent powder of *Diapente* made, and such are its vertues.

SECT. 3. *D.*

Hippoph. *How do you make also your* Diatessaron ?

Hipposerus. This *confection* I have heard some call *Horse Mithridate*, and some *Horse-Treacle*, by reason of the inward virtue thereof, whereby to expel all poysons and contagious annoyances, and to drive them and all manner of sickness from the *heart*. And thus it is made, *viz.*

Diatessaron. Take first of the powder of *Diapente* two ounces, and put it into a clean stone Morter, that is not over-great, and put thereto of life or clarified Honey the like quantity, let the morter be made hot against the fire before you do put in your powder or Honey, and then with a pestil of wood work it, till it come to a very *Treacle*, which when you shall find to be sufficiently oompounded, then take it forth, and put it into a clean gally pot or glass, and so keep it very close stopped for your use, and when you have occasion to make use of it.

Take of this *Confection* half an ounce, and dissolve it in Muskadine or sweet Sack a pint and a half, and so give it your Horse blood-warm, and as occasion is proferred, add to it of *London* treacle one ounce, *** This *Diatessaron* is a *Confection* so sovereign, being as I said before, an *Antidote* against all infectious Diseases, it is a present cure for all sorts of feavers, or any other desperate or dangerous sickness, taking first *blood* from the *Horse* if there be cause.

SECT. 4. *D.*

Hippoph. *IS there nothing good besides these in case of desperate and dangerous sickness, supposing that neither* Diapente *nor* Diatessaron *can be had*?

Hipposerus. Yea Sir, if neither of these may be gotten, and that you are fearful of the *life* of your *Horse*, then do I counsel you thus.

Take

Take of the beſt Tar two Ounces, of Honey one ounce, black Sope two drams, and bay-ſalt a handful, incorporate all theſe well together, then take two egg-ſhels, the crowns only being broken ſo as you may get forth the meat, and fill them up again with this medicine, and put them down his throat, and walk or gently ride him up and down a quarter of an hour or more warm cloathed; that done, ſet him up warm, and litter him well, and let his drink be either Maſhes or white water for four or five days after, but let him faſt three hours after his medicine, and let his Hay and Provender be ſweet and good. *** This I have often experimented. Deſperate and dangerous ſickneſs.

SECT. 5. *D.*

Hippoph. *I Should think* Hippoſerus *that for change, Bread were good to be given ſometimes to a* Horſe: *I pray what is your opinion thereof?*

Hippoſerus If you mean ſuch ordinary *Horſe bread*, which our common Bakers uſed to make for Horſes (which is now long ſince out of date and uſe) I ſay it cannot be good for a Horſe, by reaſon it was ill made, and the Materials whereof it was compounded, nouriſh very little, nay it hurteth a Horſe much more than it can do him good, for it breedeth evil humours, and worſe blood in his body, it being made of bran and chiſel for the moſt part with a little courſe Rye-meal, to make it ſtick together, and ſo made up and kneaded with cold water, and after the outſide of the Loaves or Rouls are rowled in ground or rather bruiſed peaſe, which can in no caſe be good or wholſome. But if you have a deſire to give your Horſe bread, whereby he may the better endure labour, either in his travel or long journeys, or in Tilting, Hunting, or otherwiſe, then if you pleaſe to give him this bread, which I do here preſcribe you, it will give him ſtrength of body, be very much helpful to his wind, keep him from fainting in his labour and exerciſe, be it never ſo ſoar.

Horſe-bread. 1.

Take Wheat meal, Oat meal, and Beans all ground very ſmall, of each one peck, Anniſeeds four ounces, Gentiana, and Fenugreek, of each one ounce, Licoris two ounces, let all theſe be finely powdered, and ſearced, and add the whites and

yolks of twenty new laid Eggs, well beaten together, and put to the other ingredients, and ſo much ſtrong Ale as will knead it up, then make your Loaves like to Horſe bread, but not too thick, and let them be well baked, but not burned; let not this bread be given to your Horſe too new, and when you are to give it to him, let it be five or ſix mornings together without any Provender: and thus you ſhall have him well *winded*, luſty, ſtrong, hardy, and healthy, whereby to be able to hold out and retain his mettle to the laſt. Alſo when he is to be uſed or employed.

2. Take a thin linnen cloath, and put therein of white Sugarcandy one ounce, and as much powder of Anniſeeds, ſew up this to the Bit or Snaffle in a fine linnen cloath, when you are to take his back, firſt dipped in White or Claret wine, and ſo let him be exerciſed, or travelled with this in his *mouth*; this giveth moiſture to his mouth and ſtomach, it expelleth inward heat and faintneſs from his *body* and *heart*, and cauſeth him to forget his labour and travel, for it doth revive his *vital ſpirits*. *** Another kind of bread I will give you not much unlike the former, but ſomewhat better, and a greater cooler.

Take Wheat meal one peck, Rye meal, Beans and Oat meal, both ground very ſmall, of each half a peck, Anniſeeds, Licoris, of each one ounce, and white Sugarcandy four ounces, all in fine powder, the yolks and whites of twenty Eggs well beaten, and ſo much white-Wine as will knead it into a paſte, make this into great loaves, bake them well, and after they be two or three days old, let him eat of this bread, but chip away the outſide. ***

Hippophilus *What is the reaſon you chuſe of theſe grains, meal rather than flower, wherewith you make your bread?*

Hippoſerus. Sir, I prefer Meal far before Flower, by reaſon Flower is much more hot and binding, and therefore the courſer the bread is, the better it is for the Horſe, and the more wholſome; and the reaſon why I do put Rye into my latter bread is, becauſe Rye is a looſener, and a cooler, and therefore it will make him the more ſoluble.

SECT.

SECT. 6. *D.*

Hippopb. *What is good to dissolve and mollifie Tumours and hard swellings in the* Legs, *or other parts and* members *of the* Horse?

Hippocrates. *Tumours* and swellings sometimes come by heats gotten with over hard riding, whereby the *creature* being overmuch heated, the greace falleth down, and setling in the *Legs* and other parts, doth grow dry and hard, this breedeth Splents, Spavens, Curbs, Ring-bones, and the like sorances, which in truth are none other things than the proper *Tumours*; besides it doth occasion other Knots and Swellings, which are to be cured after this manner, *viz.*

Dissolve Tumours

Take the roots of Mallows, or of Holliocks of each two ounces, of Linseed, and of Fenugreek, of each six ounces, of the fat or grease of Hens or Capons, or for want thereof, of Neats foot Oil, a wine quart, of Wax six ounces; steep the roots and seeds being bruised in a pottle of white-Wine, when it is scalding hot, for three days and three nights, and the fourth day boil them in the same liquor, and add thereto when you begin to set it upon the fire, your grease and wax, putting also thereunto of Rosin three ounces, then let all these boil together a good while, and at the taking it from the fire put thereinto of Venice Turpentine two ounces, and so stir them together: and thus it is made fitting for your use, which being well reserved, will dissolve all hard swellings and *Tumours*, the Sorances being dayly anointed therewith. *** This I have by much practice found to be very good.

Another.

Take white Lilly Roots, Hemlock, Mallows, Bears-foot, Scabeous, Cuccoe-pints, of each one handful, chop them small, and infuse them for twelves days together in white-Wine, and Sallet Oil, of each one pint, then take wax four ounces, and Bean flowr twelve spoonfuls, and so boil it, and after strain it, and bring it to an Unguent, and therewith anoint the *Tumours* and swelled parts, which being done, apply this plaster to the places.

Another.

Another.

Take Darnel and red Docks, of each two handfuls, bruiſe them, and then boil them in Wine and Sallet-Oil, of each one pint, and Bean flower four Spoonfuls, and put thereto of Aſſes, or Oxes dung, ſo much as will ſuffice, when it is boiled to a Poulteſs, apply it *Plaſter-wiſe* and uſe this every day once till it be well. **** This is alſo very good.

Another.

Take Linſeed and pound it in a Morter, and of Fenugreek in powder, of each four ounces, Pitch and Roſin of each three ounces, Damask Roſe leaves dried two ounces, Pitch of *Greece* ſix ounces, boil all theſe together, and when you are ready to take it from the fire, add thereto of Turpentine two ounces, Honey ſix ounces, and Sallet Oil ſo much as will ſuffice; and thus applying this Salve Plaſter-wiſe to the place, it will mollifie any hard ſubſtance. **** This I have often tryed, and have found it to be very good.

SECT. 7. *D.*

Hippoph. BUt Hippoſerus, *is there any cure for a ſick Horſe, whoſe infirmity is ſo deſperate, and he ſo far ſpent, as to be generally judged to be almoſt at the point of death?*

Hippoſerus. Truly Sir, both my Maſter and my ſelf have done ſuch cures upon *Horſes*, which have been ſo deſperately ſick as you ſpeak of; inſomuch as the beholders have pronounced ſentence of death upon them, and the Owners would have been well content to have been ſatisfied, and well appayed with their skins and ſhooes: and I will ſhew you what our cure is.

Firſt, open the neck vein, and let him bleed well, then two hours after his bleeding,

Deſperate ſickneſs. Take of *Diateſſaron* half an ounce, and give it him blood warm in Muskadine a pint, or Sack for want thereof, or elſe if they be not on the ſudden to be gotten, then take good Ale or Beer, with the ſaid quantity of *Diateſſaron*, then having given it, walk him half an hour (if he be able) in the warm Sun, or if there be not Sun-ſhine, then in ſome warm Stable, or Barn, then ſet him up warm cloathed and littered, and let him be rubbed all over, as *Head*, *Pole*, *Neck*, and *Legs*, and eſpecially

cially twixt the *Ears*, for that greatly eaſeth the pain in the *Head*, by reaſon it diſſolveth and diſperſeth the *humours*; at noon unbridle him, and offer him a little ſweet Hay ſprinkled with water, which if he ſhall refuſe to eat, (as 'tis likely he will) then offer him ſo much bread as the quantity of a penny loaf, and let him eat it all if he will; but if he do refuſe to eat thereof alſo, then give him one gallon of the ſtrongeſt Ale-wort you can get of the firſt runnings ſo ſoon as it is Maſhed, but let it not be over hot, and before barm be put unto it, give him this I ſay blood warm; but if that cannot be gotten, then provide him in a readineſs againſt the ſame hour, a ſweet Maſh, which when he hath taken, fume his head with Olibanum, Storax, and Benjamin, and then let him be rubbed again as before, and ſee him warm kept as is uſual for ſick *Horſes* in *Phyſick*; and thus do for three days together in all points (*blood letting* excepted) for that muſt be once only (unleſs extraordinary cauſe do require the ſame) and aſſure your ſelf your *Horſe* will mend daily, and recover his health and ſtrength in ſhort time, and at three days end give him no more Maſhes, but in their ſtead let him have white water only: If by means of this ſickneſs he hath any Puſtils or Inflammations riſen under his *chaul*, then clip away the *hair*, and apply ſuch things thereunto, as may ripen them, and bring them to a head; and after break them with Shoomakers wax, or other ſuch like good things, and ſo let them run and heal at pleaſure. Alſo if you do find your *Horſe* to be coſtive by means of his ſickneſs, as commonly *Horſes* will be after Phyſick, then firſt rake him, and finding his dung to be hot, dry, and hard, give him the Suppoſitory of a Candle, ſhewed you in *cap.* 18, *Sect.* 27. *Suppoſ.* 1. of this ſecond Book. And this is the beſt *Suppoſitory* can be given him in a caſe of this nature. *** But if contrariwiſe you find him to have a ſtrong and violent lax, or ſcowring upon him, whereby he purgeth over-much, and ſo continueth, then be you aſſured, that he hath ſomething in his body wherewith nature is offended, which you muſt labour to remove, and for remedy thereof.

Take of new milk one quart, and put to it of Bean flower two ſpoonfuls, and as much of the powder of Bolearmoniack ſearched, boil theſe until the milk thicken, and ſo blood-warm

give

give it your *Horſe*, and in a morning or two faſting with a horn, and it will ſtay his looſeneſs. *** But if this do not, then ſhall you.

Take of red Wine one pint, or Tinto the like quantity, and put into it of *Burſa Paſtoris* one handful, and of Tanners Bark in fine powder half a handful, the outſide being firſt taken away, then boil it till the herb do begin to be ſoft, then ſtrain it, and put thereto of Cinamon powder two ſpoonfuls, and ſo give it him blood warm one or two mornings, and this will infallibly ſtay his flux: and if you cannot get *Diapente*, or *Diateſſaron*, then give him this drink.

Take of *Dragon-water* one pint, *London Treacle* one ounce, warm it till the Treacle be diſſolved, and ſo give it him blood warm; give him this drink three mornings together; and for his drink otherwiſe, let him have ſweet Maſhes three mornings only, and after till he be well recovered, let him have no cold water by any means, but only white water, and through Gods aſſiſtance he will be ſoon reſtored to his former health. *** Theſe things I have often practiſed to good purpoſe.

SECT. 8. *D.*

Hippoph. *WHat is to be done to a* Horſe *that droopeth, pineth, or languiſheth?*

Hippoſerus. This Diſeaſe cometh by cold taken, or by ſome unnatural ſurfeit, by reaſon of over hard riding, or by being waſhed after an extream heat; the ſigns to know it is, he will feed, but with no appetite; neither will the meat he eateth diſgeſt well with him; for, give him Oats, and you ſhall find many of them come forth whole in his *ordure*, beſides, he will be lank in the *belly* and *flanks*, and his *fleſh* will fall away. The cure for ſuch a malady, is firſt to

Drooping Take *blood* from him as well as in the *neck* as *ſpur veins* for that the *blood* is moſt corrupt and naught; the next rake him, and adminiſter unto him the *Clyſter* preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 6. and *Sect.* 7. *Clyſt.* 3. *C.* the next day after he hath taken his *Clyſter*, give him this drink.

Take of new milk warmed as much as will ſuffice, the yolks of three new laid Eggs, of Pepper made into very fine powder a half

a half penny worth, of Anniſeeds, Myrrha, Bay berries, Turmarick powdered alſo, of each half a dram, of ordinary Treacle one penny worth and a little Saffron powdered, pound all the ſimples that are to be pounded, every one by it ſelf, and mix them well with the relidue, and infuſe them in the milk a whole night, and the next morning give it to the *Horſe* blood warm, and after order him as you are accuſtomed to do to ſick *Horſes* in *Phyſick*; but let him have this drink five mornings together, and keep him to Maſhes or white water, and if during that time you do not find his appetite to come unto him better than before, then let him reſt four days, and at four days end give him this drink, *viz.*

Take Bay berries, Juniper berries, Ariſtoloch root, Ivory, Myrrha, of each two ounces, make all theſe into fine powder, and ſearce them, and let them be well mixed, boil of this powder two ſpoonfuls in ſtrong Ale one quart, or Muskadine or Sack one pint, which is much better, adding thereto, when you take it from the fire, ſo much Pepper finely beaten, as will lie on a ſix pence, and ſo much grated Ginger as will lie upon a ſhilling, and ſo blood warm adminiſter it to your *Horſe*; then ſo ſoon as he hath taken this drink, trot him gently a mile or two upon fair ground, and then ſet him up warm, and cauſe him to ſweat in the Stable an hour, but not too violent, and after cool him diſcreetly, and by degrees; and give him this drink and ſweats three times, to wit, every other day, and after the taking of theſe three drinks: Take of burnt Sack one pint, and put to it of Arement two good lumps made firſt into fine powder, and give it your Horſe two mornings, that is to ſay, having given it once, let him reſt, and then give it him for the ſecond drink four days after. *** And thus have I cured ſundry Horſes of this infirmity.

SECT. 9. D.

Hippoph. *What cure have you for a* Dropſie?

Hippoſerus. This diſeaſe hath an apparent ground more than conjectural; for it never cometh to be known by any ſymptoms, but only when the *Horſe* falleth into diſlike, and loſeth the true and perfect colour of his hair and skin, and

when he loſeth his *ſpirit*, *mettle*, *ſtrength*, *cheerfulneſs*, and *ſtomach*: and therefore we ſee it cometh principally for want of good nouriſhment and digeſture, which paſſeth into melancholy, it proceeding either from the *ſpleen*, or from the *liver*, or both, the *blood* being corrupted, and converted into a thin and watry ſubſtance, and ſometimes it cometh of over much reſt, for want of moderate exerciſe, which I do judge to be the more probable. Some *Ferriers* do affirm that there be three kinds of this diſeaſe, but I could never obſerve more than one only, which hath its origin either of *melancholy*, *blood*, *water*, or *wind*, but chiefly of water, by reaſon that the *belly* and *legs* of a *Horſe* will ſwell, and that a *watry humour* runs betwixt the *skin* and the *fleſh*; and if you lay your finger hard upon the ſwoln places, when you ſhall take it away, there will be in the place a pit for a ſmall time after. The ſigns to know it are, that he will be ſwelled both *body* and *legs*, he will be alſo ſhort breathed, loſe his *ſtomach*, have in his *body* a continual drought, but yet when he cometh to drink, he will not drink much, but pudder long with his *Noſe* in the water, he will be as if he had a general conſumption over all his *body*, and in time he will pine and fall away to the very *bones*, and his *flanks* and *buttocks* will be dry, and his *hair* will ſhed and pill off with every rubbing, &c. The cure is, firſt let him *blood*, to take away the cold thin wateriſh, or wheyiſh *blood*, that better may come in its place, then cover him warm, and give him a ſweat in the Stable; but if he will not be brought to ſweat in the Stable (as many times it ſo falleth out) then exerciſe him abroad till he ſweat, and bring him into the Stable again, and cloath and litter him warm, and let him be well rubbed, and give him Sallow leaves, or the leaves of the Elm tree green, Rie-blades, Sedge, or graſs, to keep his *body* open, and when you do give him Hay, let it be ſprinkled with water; then give him this drink:

Dropſie.

Take of Ale one gallon, ſet it upon the fire, and ſcum off the froth, as it riſeth, then put into it of Wormwood, and of Rue the tender tops and leaves without ſtalks, carefully picked, of each a handful, and ſo boil the Ale to a quart, then take it off, and ſtrain it well, and diſſolve into it of the beſt *London* Treacle three ounces, and put alſo into it of long Pepper

and

and Grains both made into fine Powder, of each one ounce, then brew all these well together till it be but blood-warm, and so give it him to drink; then bathe and anoint the Legs that be swelled with Train-Oil twice a day, till the swelling go away; and give him Mashes or white water, and feed him with such meat as he will best eat, changing his diet dayly, and give it him by little at once; and after some small time thus spent with him, if the weather be seasonable, turn him to grass, and he shall do well and become sound again. **** This is all the Dropsie I do know, howsoever many *Ferriers* do talk much of another kind which they do call the *Feltrick*, which is not truly a Dropsie, but a disease distinct from the dropsie, unto which young *Horses* are inclinable, that from *Foles* and *Colts* are bred in Fens, Moors, Marshes, moist and wet Grounds, and Commons, by means whereof they will swell exceedingly under the belly, and so soon as they do come to be handled and backed, whereby they may be provoked to sweat, they will presently have inflammations under the *Chaule*, run at *nose*, fall into an incurable Glanders, and in a word become inwardly rotten: the cure is,

Feltrick.

First with your fleam strike him in sundry places under the *belly* where the swelling is most rank, and so let the corrupt *blood* and filth issue forth, by the space of an hour or two, then wipe the places clean and dry, and then

Take of Buck-lie made very strong with chamber-lie and the Ashes of Ashen wood, and dissolve into the Lie of Unguentum Populeon, and Dialthea, of each one ounce, or as much as will suffice, according to the Lie you have; and being made good and hot, wash, bathe, and anoint the swelling therewith morning and evening till the swelling be quite gone, and after every dressing trot him up and down by the space of a quarter of an hour, which will be a very good means to cause the *humour* to dissolve, and so to depart the sooner and the better; and for two or three days give him fasting a quart of good Ale, and of *Diapente* two spoonfuls, which must be immediately before his troting forth, after his dressing, and so set him up warm, and give him white water. **** And thus have I cured many *Horses* of the *Feltrick*.

SECT. 10. *D.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to take dead fleſh out of a ſore?*

Hippoſerus. We uſe ſundry ſorts of corroſives wherewith to cleanſe foul wounds, and to eat any dead, proud, and naughty fleſh out of ſores, to the end they may heal and carnifie the better and more kindly: but yet omitting all ſorts of powders and other corroſives to corrode and eat away dead fleſh, I will teach you a moſt precious Unguent, which will take off any dead, proud, ſpungy, or bad fleſh, in the *foot*, or any other part of the *body*, be the wound never ſo deep or ulcerated, and it will not only take away all proud, dead, and naughty fleſh, but it will alſo cleanſe, and heal up the ſame very ſoundly in ſhort ſpace: And this Unguent is thus made and compounded.

dead fleſh. Take of common Honey two ounces, Roach-alum, Verdigreaſe, and Vineger, of each one ounce, ſublimat two drams; let all be made into fine powder, and boil it a few waumes, keeping it ſtill ſtirring, and then take it from the fire, and keep it in a gally pot, ſtopped for your uſe. Apply this Unguent upon lint or fine hurds, to the Sorance once a day, and it cureth ſpeedily, and ſoundly; but then obſerve that every day before you dreſs the ſore, you cleanſe, waſh, and inject into the wound the water taught you in the next *Sect.* which I will ſhew you for a Puncture or deep wound. *** And this is an approved cure, and beyond all peradventure.

SECT. 11. *D.*

Hippoph. *WEll ſhew me then what is good for a* Puncture *or deep wound?*

Hippoſerus. If it be in the *foot*, or any other part of the *body*, if you can come well unto it, or if it be an Impoſthumation unbroken, ſcald it firſt with the medicine of red Tar, Hogs greaſe, Bay ſalt, and green Copporas deſcribed in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 16. *Sect.* 10. for the *Poll-evil*, then waſh the wound with this water.

Take red Sage, Plantane, Ribwort, Yarrow, Bramble leaves, Roſe-

Rosemary, Hyssop, and Honey-suckle leaves, of each one half handful, boil them in white Wine one point, and as much of Smiths, or coletrough water, then add thereunto in the boiling, of common Honey one spoonful, and as much Alum as a Walnut, and a bright black piece of Sea-cole, the bigness of an Egg unbroken, then let this boil till the one moity be consumed, then strain it hard, and wash the sorance therewith, and if the wound be deep, inject of this water with a syringe or squirt every day, when you dress him: and by this doing you shall cleanse the wound, take away all dead and bad flesh, and heal up the wound, both soundly and speedily. **** This is a most approved Receipt. Deep wounds.

SECT. 12. *D.*

Hippoph. *WHat is best to be applyed to a desperate* Strain?

Hippoferus. If it be so desperate an old *Strain* as that it be held incurable if it lieth in the *Shoulder* or other hidden and fleshy part of the *body*, or that the *Horse* have a *Fistula*, *Poll-evil*, or other inflammation, or swelling, then use but this one medicine, and it will cure the same, *viz.*

Take a large earthen vessel, or crock, of one, two, or three gallons more, and fill it almost to the top with *Asmart* and *Brooklime*, of each like much, and mix them well, then fill it up to the top with old chamber-lie as can be gotten, so that all the herbs be quite covered and more, then stop it close with a board or some such like thing, and so keep it for your use, for it never can be too old; now when you have occasion to use this Medicine for any grief aforesaid, then take an earthen Pipkin, and put thereinto as well of the liquor, as of the herbs so much as shall suffice for your present use, and boil it well upon the fire. Then if it be for a strain in the *Shoulder*, you shall take an old boot, and cut off the foot, so as you may draw it over the *Horse foot* and bring it up above the *knee*, almost to the *Elbow* of the *Shoulder*, keeping the neather part of the boot as close and straight to the leg as may be, but the upper part which is to cover the *shoulder*, must be wide and spacious; then into this boot thrust all this mixture, so hot as the Desperate strain.

the *horſe* can ſuffer it, and lay it faſt and cloſe about the *ſhoulder*, eſpecially before and behind; then drawing up the upper part of the boot, ſo faſten it to the *Mane*, and about his *Neck*, as that it may not by any means ſlip down, but keep conſtant and firm; and thus you muſt apply this Medicine to the place, till the grief depart; this is the moſt violent of all medicines, and fit for no *creature* but a *horſe* to endure, yet in ſhort time it will bring forth whatſoever evil matter lieth in the *joynts*: and if you have occaſion to apply this to a *Fiſtula*, *Poll evil*, or any Impoſtumation, or ſwelling, then may you ſpare the boot, and only lay on the medicine in manner of a *Pultis*, and it will be ſufficient. **** This is a very approved Receipt.

SECT. 13. *D.*

Hippoph. *WHat means have you to diſſolve Greaſe or Glut in a fat or ketty horſe, after a ſtrong ach or violent exerciſe?*

Hippoſerus. For a thing of this nature, I have ſeen this ſcowring adminiſtred, *viz.*

Diſſolve greaſe. Take of ſweet Sack one quart, and ſet it upon the fire, either in a Baſon, or open Skillet, and when it is ſcalding hot, put into it of Roſin one ounce, made into very fine powder, then by degrees, a little after a little, convey it into the Sack, continually ſtirring it as you put it in, for fear of clotting, and when the Sack and it is very well incorporate, take it from the fire, and put into it of Sallet Oil half a pint, and ſo ſtir them well together, and as it cooleth, put alſo into it of brown Sugar-candy, made into fine powder one ounce, and when it is only blood-warm, give it to your *horſe*, ſo ſoon as he cometh from his exerciſe, and then being ſet up, let him be well rubbed, and cloathed warm, and well littered, and let him faſt three hours after it, and let the *Groom* remain continually with him during theſe three hours, till you do give him meat, yea and an hour after, neither let your *horſe* all that time ſtand ſtill long, nor ſleep, but be kept ſtirring, and moving, for that the medicine will by that means work the more kindly, and when you ſhall give [illegible] be you ſure that neither [illegible] give

him

him some cold water, but either a sweet mash or white water. This knowing [illegible] to a strong, lusty, able [illegible] had in agitation for a hunting match but it wrought so violently, and made him so extreme sick for more than twenty four hours after the taking thereof that I never durst be so hardy, as to put the same in use: nevertheless the Creature did very well recover again, and won his match.

SECT. 14. *D.*

Hippoph. *HOw may a man come to know what are the diseases of the* Liver?

Hipposerius. Assuredly Sir, the diseases of the *Liver* are many, but yet the true and certain grounds, how to discover them is beyond every *Ferriers* skill to compass; nevertheless, that there be many, and those several and distinct infirmities in the *Liver*, no man needs make doubt: for if the *Liver* be either too hot, or too drie, too moist, or too cold, it may easily be diseased, which must needs occur to the *Horse*, either by intemperate riding or labour, or by evil food, or by means of evil and corrupt *humours*, which do gather to the place, or by the overflowing of the *Gall*, or when *Choler* is predominate, it being chiefly ingendred through heat, like as cold begetteth *Flegm*, which causeth the sickness and indisposition of the *Liver*, together with its pain and anguish, whence proceed inflammations, and Impostumations, stoppings, obstructions, knobs, yea, and very pernicious Ulcers, every of which do cause the general Consumption and disease thereof. If the disease of the *Liver* do proceed from any hot cause, it is more easie to be discovered, then if it came from any cold cause, for that it doth discover it self by these apparent signs, *viz.* He will be lean and fall away of his *flesh*, he will loath his meat, and that which he eateth doth him little or no good, for want of ready digestion, his *ordure* will be very offensive, his thirst great, and he will be very much subject to a loosness: whereas on the other side, if the Disease ariseth from any cold cause, you cannot discern it by any of these signs, for that he will be in very good liking and state of *body*, eat his meat with

a good appetite, his *excrements* will have no evil savour when he dischargeth himself, he will drink orderly and temperately, neither will he be loose or costive; wherefore if it come of any cold cause, we must then endeavour to find out its symptoms. Now if a *horse* be diseased in his *Liver*, the infirmity must (I say) proceed from an Inflammation and impostumation, or from an Ulcer. If it come from a cold cause, it cannot be an inflammation, nor impostumation, for that these two do both come from a hot cause as all the learned do know full well, and therefore of necessity it must be an Ulcer, which proceedeth from a cold cause, and the signs to know it are, continual coldness of his *body*, his *hair* will stare, and he will be subject to great feebleness, faintness and debility of *body*, and the reason is for that the ulcerated matter doth diffuse throughout the whole *body* its evil vapours, which corrupteth and very much offendeth the heart in such wise, whereby to occasion and hasten the death of the poor Beast; if in time the malady be not discovered, and skilfully and by Art cured: I have treated sufficiently upon this subject, to wit, of the nature of this infirmity, and the signs how to know the same. And therefore I think it time we do go to the Cure.

Disease of the Liver. So soon as you have discovered this disease, first let him *blood* on both sides the *neck*, the first day, and the next day let him *blood* in both the *spur-veins*, then give him this drink, *viz.*

Take Hyssop, Cows-lips-leaves, Liver-wort, Lung-wort, *alias* Molin or Molet leaves, Harts-tongue, of each a handful; then take Gentiana, Aristolochia rotunda, Fenugreek, Enula-campana dried, and long Pepper, of each like much, so as when they be pounded and searced, you may have of each a spoonful; chop the herbs, and then mingle them with this powder, and put to it of life Honey one spoonful; then boil all these ingredients in a quart of strong Ale, until a moity be consumed, and strain it well, and so give it him blood-warm, and keep him warm, and having made him fast three or four hours after this drink, give him Barly boiled; but if he shall refuse to eat thereof, by the reason the drink hath made him dry and thirsty, then give him a warm Mash, and after the bladed Barly again; but let him not have this drink, but the day after he hath been let *blood* in the spur-*veins*, give him this drink three times, but

let

let him alwaies reſt three daies betwixt every drench, and give him white water for fifteen daies after his laſt drink, and let him every day be well rubbed, and this will cure him. *** I have often made trial of this cure, and I have found it to be very good, and it is alſo ſingular for the *lungs*; but if you do ſuſpect the *Liver* to be waſted, then give him this drink, *viz.*

Take of ſtrong wort, either of Ale or Beer, and give it him to drink in a morning, having faſted all night from meat and drink; and three hours after he hath drunk his Wort, give him Oats baked in the Oven, and do thus for three or four days together, or longer, as you ſhall ſee cauſe, and he will be ſound again. *** But if you ſuſpect his *liver* not to be very ſound, then

Take a good root or two of Polypodium of the Oak, made very clean, and of Liverwort *alias* Mullet one handful, cut them very ſmall, then take of Rubarb ſcraped or grated into fine powder, ſix peny weight, and three or four days in a moneth give it him in his provender early in the morning two or three hours before he drinketh, and let his drink be white water during his cure, and once in ſix months make trial of his *blood* by opening a *vein*, whether it be pure or corrupt, ſo as you take it from him accordingly, that is, the greater quantity if the ſame be bad, and the leſs if it be good, and adminiſter help as cauſe ſhall require it. *** This is alſo a moſt ſovereign Receipt.

SECT. 15. *D.*

Hippoph. *YOu have formerly delivered me many good Receipts for colds, but yet would I gladly have ſomething which ſhould be good for a* Horſe *that runneth at the* Noſe.

Hippoſerus. Very well Sir, I will therefore give you that which ſhall be very good, and which I have often proved. Firſt then if you ſhall find your *horſe* to have taken a cold, and therewith he runneth at the *noſe*, whereby he may be in danger of a Glanders, let him *bleed* at the *neck-vein* well, then

Take of Aſſafetida, the quantity of a hazle nut, and diſſolve it in a ſaucer full of white Wine vineger, then take Lint or fine Hurds, and dip it into the medicine, and ſo ſtop it into the Cold, or running at the Noſe.

ears of the *horſe*, and with a needle and thred ſtich up his *ears*, ſo as the medicine get not forth the next day, take the dry moſs which groweth upon an old pale of a Park, or other pale, or upon the limbs of an old Oak, one handful or better, chop it ſmall, and boil it in a pottle of new milk, together with a green root of Elecampane cut into thin and ſmall ſlices, and ſo let it boil till half the milk be conſumed, then ſtrain it, and preſs it throughly, and before it be cold, put into the milk a good piece of ſweet Butter, and of ordinary Treacle ſo much as will ſuffice, and ſo give it him blood warm. **** This is alſo good for the *head-ach*, Frenzy, Stavers, Poſe, Cold, Cough wet or dry, ſhortneſs of breath, rotten *lungs*, Glanders, mourning of the Chine, Lax, looſeneſs, Bloody-flux, or the like diſeaſes.

SECT. 16. *D.*

Hippoph. *WHat may a man apply to a* Horſe *to cauſe him to draw up his* Yard *?*

Draw his yard. *Hippoſerus.* This is a Diſeaſe which cometh of weakneſs in the *back* or *kidneys*? either through over riding, or ſome leap or ſtrain, or by means of a cold; and ſometimes it cometh by a terrible ſtripe given him upon the *loins* againſt the *kidnies*, or upon the *yard* it ſelf, or by wearineſs or tiredneſs; the ſign to know it, is by the unſeemly hanging of the *member*, and the cure is thus:

Firſt waſh and bathe all the *yard* and *ſheath* with white Wine made warm, and after that anoint it with Oil of Roſes, and life honey mingled together, and ſo put up the *yard* into the *ſheath*, and with a ſoft boulſter of Canvas, keep it from falling down, and dreſs him thus every day once till he be well, and let his *back* and *fillets* be kept warm, and anointed with Acopum, or if you have not Acopum, then apply this charge unto his *back* and *fillets*.

Take Bolearmoniack, the whites of Eggs, Wheat meal, Sanguis Draconis, Venice Turpentine, and ſtrong white Wine vineger, of each of theſe as much as will ſuffice, mix them well, and charge his *back* therewith, his *ſheath* and his *ſtones*, and he ſhall be well.

Another.

Another.

Take the Aſhes of Aſhen wood, the whiteſt, fineſt, and beſt burned, and ſearce them, one pound, of red-clay dried, and made into fine powder, half a pound, Bolearmoniack half an ounce powdered; boil all theſe in as much Verjuice of the Crab, as will make it liquid like pap, and with it, anoint his Yard, Sheath and Stones, morning and evening, and he ſhall be preſently cured. *** This is ſpecial good.

SECT. 17. *D.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to draw a thorn, ſtub, iron, ſplinter, nail, or what elſe out of the* fleſh *of the Horſe?*

Hippoſerus. If the ſtub, thorn, or whatſoever elſe it be, that is gotten into the *fleſh* be ſo deep that you cannot come to it to pluck it forth with your fingers or pliers, then lay to the place a good quantity of black ſope, and ſo let it lie all night, and in the morning it will make it ſo appear, as you may come to take hold of it with your inſtrument; but if it be gotten into the *fleſh* ſo deep, as that the ſope cannot do it, then muſt you open the *fleſh* by the way of inciſion, ſo deep till you may come to take hold thereof with your inſtrument, and ſo pluck it forth, which done, heal up the wound with the Ointment taught you in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 10. *Sect.* 4. *G.* and ſo cloſe it up, but be certain that you do heal it from the bottom, leſt it break out again. *** This is the moſt certain way for this cure that I do know. Draw a thorn.

SECT. 18. *D.*

Hippoph. *WHat good drink is to be given, whereby to preſerve the* Lungs?

Hippoſerus. If you have no great occaſion to fear *horſes lungs*, your then you may adminiſter to him in his Provender only ſuch Powders as you ſhall find preſcribed you already *lib.* 2. *cap.* 2. *Sect.* 43. but if you have juſt cauſe to ſuſpect that his *lungs* may be rotten, fretized, or broken, then to heal or make them ſound again, or at leaſt to give him great eaſe, for you may know it by theſe ſigns, *viz.* his *flanks* will beat when he cougheth,

which he will often do, but principally when you give him riding or exerciſe, and the ſlower they beat, the older and more dangerous the diſeaſe is; he will alſo draw his *wind* ſhort, he will groan oft, but moſt in lying down, and riſing up, and be very fearful and loth to cough. The cure is,

Take Tartar made of white Wine Lees, which you may have of the *Apothecaries*, or if you pleaſe you may make it your ſelf. (For it is none other thing than the thickeſt of the Lees of white Wine well dried and made into powder.) Take (I ſay) of this one ounce and a half, of hyſſop and of Colts-foot, of each half a handful, of Hore-hound one handful, of Elecampane in fine powder, Anniſeeds, and Licoris, of each one ounce, of brown Sugar-candy four ounces, boil all theſe together in good Ale one quart, and when it is half boiled, put into it of Hyſſop water, and of Colts-foot water, both twice diſtilled, to take off their crudities, of each one pint, and ſo boil all again together, and then ſtrain it, and give it your *Horſe* blood warm. *** If your *Horſe* hath been exerciſed, being foul, or having been in diet, then he hath been over-much uſed to Clyſters, Drinks, Rakings, Purgations, Sweats, Vomits, and the like; give him this drink then, and you ſhall find it to be moſt ſovereign for him, and the cleaner he is within, the better is its operation, and will work more kindly in his *body*; and at what times you are to Tilt, Hunt, Travel, or exerciſe him, give him but one pint of this drink in the morning faſting before his going forth, for it will ſo help his *breath*, whereby (through moderate exerciſe) he will be much the better able to go through with his work, than otherwiſe he could have done. *** And this drink I have often proved, Alſo if you do find him to be either diſeaſed, or ſick in his *lungs*, or that they be any way fretized, then give him this drink.

Take of tried Hogs greaſe two ounces, and of *Diapente* three ſpoonfuls, put theſe into a quart of water, wherein Barly hath been boiled till it burſt, and warm it in the fire till the Hogs greaſe be diſſolved, and ſo blood warm give it your ſick Horſe, and three hours after give him of the Barly warm to eat, and either ſweet maſhes or white water to drink. *** This was taught me by an *Italian* Rider in *Paris*, and I have often made uſe thereof, and have found it to be ſpecial good, howbeit for the

the time it will cauſe him to be very ſick, but have no fear, for it is right good for this malady.

Another.

Take Muskadine or ſweet Sack one pint, life Honey three ſpoonfuls, Myrrh, Saffron, Caſſia, and Cinamon, of each like much, make all theſe into fine powder, and mix two ſpoonfuls of this powder with your Muskadine and Honey, and give it him warm with a Horn, give him this drink fifteen daies together, continuing to give him Maſhes, and white water, and this is a moſt certain Cure. *** But if you do find that his Lungs be rotten and impoſtumated, then

Take of the Juice of Purſlain half a pint, and mix therewith of the Oil of Roſes ſo much as will ſuffice, and put thereto a little *Tragantum* ſteeped before in Goats, Ewes, or Cows milk, and give him thereof to drink ſeven Mornings together: but this drink will but only ripen and break the Impoſtume, which you ſhall know to be done, by his exceeding ſtinking breath, then ſhall you give him in fine powder Caſſia three ounces, and ſeven Raiſins of the Sun ſtoned, boil theſe in Muskadine one pint, and blood warm give it him, and it will heal up his *lungs* again. *** This is very good.

SECT. 19. *D.*

Hippoph. *IS there nothing to be given to a* Horſe *wherewith to prevent diſeaſes all the whole year?*

Hippoſerus. As touching the prevention of all diſeaſes, I have ſpoken before, I think ſufficiently, but yet I will teach you one thing, (for that you are deſirous to learn, and learning is no burthen) which may be worth your notice, for I will keep no ſecret from you; ſithence it is my Maſters pleaſure, I ſhould dilate the utmoſt of my skill and Art.

Firſt, therefore the ſpring of the year coming on, a time when new blood beginneth to come, and that ere long graſs will be able to take heart, whereby the better to give nutriment to a *horſe*; the firſt day of *April* open a vein in the *Neck*, to ſee the better how the *blood* is: if good, take the leſs, if bad, then the more: then from that day until the firſt of *May*, give him this which I ſhall preſcribe you, and let him have it every

every day without fail, morning and evening during the whole month of *April*, from the firſt day to the laſt, which is before his turning out to graſs, or ſoyling, which ſhould be about the middle of *May*, and let him have the ſame alſo all the whole month of *October* (like as you muſt do in *April*) after you have taken him from graſs, about *Bartholomewtide*,) and do as you before have been taught in all points. That which I preſcribe is this.

Diſeaſes to prevent.

Take a Buſhel of old Rie, ſweet and clean, well purged, or ſifted from duſt, ſtones, lome, feathers, cobwebs, or any ſuch like filth, and put it into a clean iron pot, dry, and without water, I mean ſuch an iron pot, in which uſually fleſh meat is boiled, for ſuch a like veſſel is beſt for this our purpoſe, it taketh leſt harm, and is much more wholeſome than Braſs, Copper, or any other metal: ſet this pot thus dry, and without water over the fire, and put into it your Buſhel of Rie (for a leſs quantity you cannot well have) and as it beginneth to wax hot, keep the Rie with continual ſtirring, even from the bottom, without any intermiſſion, until you have ſo parched the Rie that it becometh black and hard, which to be ſo, will ask good heat, and no leſs labour to ſtir it up and down in the pot, when you do find that the Rie is ſufficiently parched, which you ſhall know by its blackneſs, dryneſs, and hardneſs, take it from the fire, and put it into ſome other clear and dry veſſel, which ſo ſoon as it is cold, let the veſſel be kept cloſe ſtopped, and ſo kept for your uſe. Now when you are to uſe of this Rie, take two or three good handfuls of it, and let it be beaten to fine powder and given to your Horſe mingled with his Provender, at every watring, morning and evening, or other times when you uſually give him Oats; do this theſe two entire months of *April* and *October*, for that all men do hold, that in theſe two months the *blood* turneth and altereth, as we alter his diet from hard and dry meat, to graſs; and ſo likewiſe from graſs to dry meat; for this Rie thus parched and ordered, doth refine the *blood*, cool the *Liver*, and purgeth the *Spleen*, ſo as the whole ſtructure of the *Body* is thereby the better eaſed and freed from all ſuch bad and unnatural *humours*, which would otherwiſe make the *body* inclinable to ſundry Maladies and Diſeaſes, which this Rie preventeth; and therefore if

if you be willing to keep your *Horſe* ſound, and free from Diſeaſes, order him in theſe two moneths according as I have preſcribed you, and you ſhall be ſecure. *** This I have oft made uſe of, and it is good.

SECT. 20. *D.*

Hippoph. *HAve you any comfortable Drink to adminiſter to an* Horſe *that is very ſick?*

Hippoſerus. I have heretofore ſhewed you divers, but yet I will give you one more.

Take of good white Wine one pint, of white Sugar-Candy, and of Cinamon, of each one ounce, of Cloves half an ounce, Saffron three drams, of Sugar refined three ounces, make all theſe into fine powder, then take Mithridate two ounces, Honey of Roſes four ounces, mix all theſe well together, and put it to the Wine, and make it blood warm over the fire, and ſo give it him, and now and then as he ſtandeth upon the trench, let him chew upon the end of a Bulls pizel, ſome *Arman*, let him be cloathed and littered warm, and remain faſting upon the trench three hours, and after give him a ſweet Maſh or white water, and after order him as is uſual for a ſick Horſe. *** This is one of the beſt preſervative drinks that I know, and I have had great proof thereof. Drink comfortable.

SECT. 21. *D.*

Hippophilus.

WHat remedy have you for a diſlocated joynt.

Hippoſerus. Let it be firſt put into its right place, then in the binding up apply this plaſter.

Take Wheat Bran, and Hogs greaſe, of each as much as will ſuffice, make them into one body, and make thereof a plaſter of Hurds, and ſo apply it to the place, and after bind and ſwathe it up, and the *joynt* and *Member* will be well again, having reſt. Diſlocated Joint.

SECT.

SECT. 22. *D.*

Hippophilus.

WHat *diſeaſe is that is called* Tranchaiſons?

Hippoſerus. This term we have from the *French*, which is only a pain or griping in the *belly*, cauſed partly of wind, and partly of cold, and eſtſoons of both, and our Engliſh term is, the *Colick*, which is a moſt grievous pain, ingendring many infirmities, as I have before declared in its due place: notwithſtanding becauſe you have given me the *French* term, I will give you two or three *French* Receipts for the ſame diſeaſe, albeit I never did experiment any of them, yet I do hold them to be good.

Diſeaſe of Tranchaiſons or the Colick.

Take of Arquequamis one ounce, make it into juice, and put to it of white Wine one pint, and ſo give it to the *Horſe*, which done, anoint his *privy members* with this Unguent, Take of Garlick unpilled, as much as will ſuffice, and ſtamp it well and mix with it of Sallet Oil as much as will ſuffice, and ſo bring it to an Unguent, and therewith anoint the *yard*, *ſheath*, and *cods*, and it will both give him eaſe, and cauſe him to ſtale ſuddenly, by which means he will amend.

Another.

Take Cinque-foil half a handful or Pentaphyllon, beat and ſtamp it well, and moiſten it with warm water, and ſo give it him to drink.

Another.

Take of the powder of Siliris Montana, D'quare, and of Cumin of each an ounce, and put them into white wine one pint, and ſo give it him, then ſo ſoon as he hath taken this drink, trot him out for half an hour, a good round trot, eſpecially up the hill, and after bring him into the Stable, and cloath and litter him warm.

Another.

Another.

Take of Fenugreek, and of Cumin of each one ounce, make them into fine powder, and with white Wine a pint, give it him blood-warm, and trot him out as before.

SECT. 23. *D.*

Hippophilus.

HAve you no way to dry ſores?

Hippoſerus. Yea Sir, and I will give you ſome Receipts for that purpoſe. Take egg ſhels, and burn them almoſt black: take alſo the upper leather of old ſhooes, and burn them to a cole; take alſo a Charcole, quick-lime, and green Copperas, burned in a well nealed earthen pot, until it be red: take of each of theſe a like quantity; and beat them together to fine powder, and ſtrew this powder upon the ſore or galled place, and every time you dreſs the ſore herewith, waſh it well with ſtrong Vinegar or Chamber-lie warmed. *** But if it be an old ulcer, or cankerous ſore, then take Maſtick, Frankincenſe, Cloves, Green Copperas, Brimſtone, of each like much, Myrrh double as much as any of the former ingredients, beat all theſe by themſelves to fine powder, and mix them well, then take of this powder and burn it upon a chafing-diſh of coles, but be careful it flame not, then as the ſmoak or fume thereof ariſeth, take of fine lint a good handful or two, and hold it over the ſaid ſmoak or ſteam, ſo as it may receive all the ſaid ſteam into the ſaid lint; then when it is throughly well perfumed, put the lint into a box, pot, or glaſs, and be ſure to ſtop it up ſo cloſe, as that not the leaſt air can poſſibly come into it (for the leaſt air will deprive the lint of its virtue) and ſo keep it for your uſe; and when you have occaſion to make uſe thereof, firſt waſh the ſore with new made chamber-lie warm, either as it cometh from the man, or elſe warmed upon the fire, then dry the ſore again, and laſtly lay ſome of this lint to the ſore, and ſo make it up, and do this twice every day, and you ſhall find it to be a ſpeedy and perfect cure. *** But if you would dry up the ſcratches in the heels of your *horſe*.

Dry up Sores.

Lint wherewith to heal ulcers or old ſores.

Take then chamber-lie which is old made, or ſtale, and rock or roch Alum as much as will ſuffice, boil them together, and reſerve it thus well boiled in a glaſs, or other clean veſſel well ſtopped, then take of green Nettles the ſtrongeſt, moſt angry, and keen, two handfuls, and lay them thin upon ſome plate, or other broad thing, and ſo dry them either before the fire, or in an Oven, after houſhold bread is drawn, then make it into powder very fine; this done, take of Pepper, and make it alſo into very fine powder, being finely ſearced, ſo as it may be of like quantity with the powder of Nettles, and ſo mix them well together, then keep this powder in a dry glaſs, cloſe ſtopped, and when you may have occaſion to uſe this powder, firſt waſh the ſore with the ſaid liquor of Alum and Chamber-lie made blood warm, and ſo having purged, cleanſed, and dryed the ſorance well with a clean linnen cloath, ſtrew and lay on your powder, and thus do after travel or exerciſe every day once during the time of his reſt, and this will cure him throughly. *** This cure I have often practiſed.

SECT. 24. *D.*

Hippophilus.

What diſeaſe is that which is called the Arraiſtes, *and how it is cured?*

Arraiſtes or Rats tails.

Hippoſerus. This is alſo a *French Epitheton* which we call the Ratts tails being a kind of ſcratches, of this Diſeaſe I have ſpoken before in the Letter *A.* and therefore I will now leave entreating further thereof.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

SECT. 1. *E.*

Hippophilus.

WHat is to be given to a Horſe *that hath eaten a* Taint?

Hippoſerus. A *Taint* is a kind of red worm, which many *Ferriers* will ſay can do a *Horſe* no harm, but they are much miſtaken, for I have known *Horſes* to die with eating it; but if he have eaten a *Taint*, the ſigns will be, that he will be ſick, and forſake his meat, and he will ſwell in all his *body*, alſo his *eyes* will ſo ſwell that you would think they would fall out of his *head*, he will draw in and out his *breath* very ſhort, and his *tongue* and mouth will be very dry and hot, and peradventure bliſtered, but he will be eaſily cured, for ſo ſoon as you ſhall perceive him to forſake his meat, and that he doth begin to ſwell, then be you confident that he hath eaten ſome unwholſome thing, for this inconvenience ſeldom cometh to any *Horſe*, but at graſs only. The cure is,

Eat a Taint.

Take of the Urine of man as it cometh warm from him, one pint, of bay ſalt one handful, ſtir theſe well together, and give it him with a horn, and after walk him up and down half an hour, and he is cured. *** This I have ſundry times tried, and it is a certain cure.

SECT. 2. *E.*

Hippophilus.

WHat cure have you for a Horſe *that hath eaten a* Feather?

Hippoſerus. This may be gotten as well in the Stable, as abroad at graſs; in the ſtable through the negligence of the *Keeper* or *Groom*, in not duſting, ſhaking, or picking, and ſearching his Hay and Provender well, and by not looking narrowly, that no Feathers be among his Hay, Oats, or Provender, when he giveth him his meat, either in the Rack or Manger, he may alſo get a Feather at graſs, as he

feedeth in a Meadow, or Paſture, where Swans, Geeſe, Ducks, Turkies or other Poultry or Fowls do lye and feed: they in the Summer ſeaſon, mowting, and mewing their Feathers, whereby the *Horſe*, graſing and feeding in thoſe places, may eaſily and unawares eat a Feather, which being taken into the *Weſand*, will ſtick faſt there, which will ſo ſuffocate him, as that it will provoke him to cough ſo vehemently, as if his Heart would break, for it will ſtick ſo faſt in his *Throat* or *Weſand*, as that he can neither ſwallow it down into his *Body*, nor caſt it up at his *Mouth*. The cure is.

For a Feather. Put the chord of your Drenching Staff into his *teeth*, and hold his head upon high, then take of Verjuice of the crab one pint, and two new laid Egs, and beat them together, ſhels and all, with the Verjuice, and ſo give it him with a Horn, and ſo ſoon as he hath ſwallowed the ſame give him a few ſmall branches of ſavin, and this will carry away the feather into his *ſtomach*. *** This I have very oftentimes done, and made him well again.

SECT. 3. *E.*

Hippophilus.

But then what Cure have you for a Horſe *that hath eaten a* Spider, *which I take to be much more perilous to the life of the* Horſe?

Hippoſerus. The ſigns to know this is like to that of the *Taint*, but only that he will ſmell much more, and this may befal him rather in Winter than in Summer: for which give him this drink.

Take Urine of a man newly made one quart, of Rue, Betony, Scabious, Pimpernel, Dragons, of each a like much, but in ſuch a quantity, as in the whole, all will amount but only to one handful, chop theſe herbs together ſmall, and let them boil together in the Urine a little, adding thereto of Bay ſalt, and Sallet-oyl of each one ſpoonful, and ſo give it him blood warm. *** Now if it be in Winter.

Take

Take of Urine one quart, Arement one lump, *Ariſtolochia rotunda*, Mithridate, of each one dram, Engliſh Saffron one ſcruple, Sallet-oyl one ſpoonful, Bezoaritone three grains, let theſe be ſet on the fire and given him blood warm, if it be in ſummer, turn him to graſs, and if need be rake him, and then convey into his *Tuel* a ball of freſh Batter. But if it be in winter, let him be alſo raked, and give him of the blades of green Rie to a good quantity, and for his Provender, let it be for two or three meals, of ſcalded bran and Hempſeed, and let his drink for three or four daies be white water. *** Theſe are all approved medicines. Eat a Spider.

SECT. 4. *E.*

Hippophilus.

WHat is good for a blow on the Eye, *whereby as well to ſave the* Eye, *as to aſſwage the ſwelling thereof?*

Hippoſerus. This needs no ſtudy as well to find out the means how it cometh, as the ſigns to know it, for both are apparent enough, there only remaineth to treat of the Cure

Shave off the hair from off and about the place ſwelled; having firſt well bathed it in warm water, then

Take the tendereſt tops of Wormwood, Pellitory, and Branca-Urſina, of each half a handful, chop the herbs very ſmall, and then beat them to an Ointment with old Boars greaſe ſo much as will ſuffice, then put to it of live Honey and Wheat flowr, of each one Spoonful, and of Linſeed Oyl three Spoonfuls, boil theſe over the fire very well, keeping it with continual ſtirring, and when it is ſufficiently well boiled, ſtrain it into a Gally pot, and keep it ſtopped, and as occaſion is offered, anoint the place ſwelled herewith. *** Eye a ſtroak.

SECT.

SECT. 5. *E.*

Hippophilus.

WHat remedy is to be had for the Eye *that is charged with a Film, Pin and Web, or with Dragons, &c.*

Hippoſerus. Theſe diſeaſes in the *Eye* do come ſometimes by means of ſome pain in the *head*, which cauſeth a Rheume to fall into the *Eyes*, and ſometimes by means of Rheums themſelves, which cauſing the *Eyes* to water, do ingender theſe diſeaſes, and ſometimes again it is occaſioned by means of a ſtripe, or Hay-duſt, or ſome hame which may be gotten into the *Eye*. I need not deliver you the ſigns whereby to know them, they are viſible to the ſight. The cure therefore is thus.

Eye Film, Pin and Web, Dragons. Take Camfire of Sal-*Armoniacum*, or for want of either of theſe, white Sugar-Candy: any of theſe three being made into very fine powder, and blown into the *Eye* three times a day, are moſt ſovereign to cure theſe diſeaſes in the *eyes* of a Horſe, but Sal-*Armoniacum* is the very beſt of them all. *** But if a Film or Pearl, without a pin and Web do grow in the Eye, then take up both the two *weeping veins* firſt, which are under the Eyes; and then give a *Cauterize* to either place, *viz.* to open the *skin* all along to the very Eyes, and put into each of them, a quill cut in the middle, then oftimes cleanſe them, and comfort the places *Cauterized* or *rowled* with *Unguentum Populeum*, and waſh the Eyes every day three times with *eye*-bright water, mingled with the juice of Smallage, and about fifteen days after, take away the quils, and after waſh the *eyes* with cold Fountain water. Another. But if it be a Pin and Web, then

Pin and Web, Take Cuttle-bone, Tartar, Salt Gem, of each like much, make them all into pure fine powder, and with a quill blow of this fine powder well mixed, into his *eye* two or three times a day or oftner. *** This have I tryed and found to be ſpecial good. But if it be a Pearl that the Horſe hath in his Eye; then

Pearl or Film. Take the angrieſt tops of red Nettles, and ſtamp them well; and

and put them into a fine clean linnen Rag, then dip the Nettles as they be in the Rag, into Beer, but yet very slightly, and so wring forth the juice of the said Nettles, into some clean thing, which done; put to it a little Salt so much as will suffice, made first into fine powder, and when the Salt is dissolved, convey one drop of the Medicine into the grieved Eye, morning and Evening, and this will take away the Pearl, and the Eye will become as clear as the other. **** This I have often tryed, and found it to do rare cures in this kind. Now for a Pin and Web, any of these ensuing will cure it.

Take the sword of a Gammon of Bacon and dry it, and dry it, and make it in powder, and blow thereof into the grieved Eye. **** This is good.

Another.

Take the juice of ground-Ivy, *alias* Ale-hoof, Celendine, live honey, and womans milk, of each of these so much as will suffice, mix all these well, and put it into the *eye* of the *Horse*. ****

Another.

Take the powder of the bottom of a brass pot, the outermost black being first taken off, and the next powder let be blown into the *eye* of the *Horse*, and it will help him.

Another.

Take the powder of burnt Alum, or of a black flint, or the powder of Ginger, either of these made into fine powder, and blown into the *eye* of the *Horse*, will help a Pin and Web.

Another.

Take Salt Arment, and make it into very fine powder, and put thereto of live honey and fresh butter, of each so much as will suffice, incorporate all these well together, and so convey

of

of this medicine into the *eye* of the *horſe*, and this will cure a Pin and Web. *** But if there be a *Haw* in the *eye*, this every *Smith* can take away; nevertheleſs whereas all other *Ferriers*, that ever I ſaw work upon this diſeaſe, do uſe to take it away from the outſide of the *eye*, I do take it away from that part which lieth next of all to the *eye*, and I do find my way to be much better, and a ſafer way, as well whereby to preſerve the *ſight* of the *eye*, as alſo the *waſh*, and ſo ſoon as I have cut out the haw, I do uſe to waſh the *eye* with white Wine, and the juice of Celendine mingled together, of each a like much; for this healeth the ſorance, and keepeth the eye from rankling. Now I have oft times ſeen the *French Mariſhals* take up the *waſh* of the *eye* with a Spaniſh needle, threded with a double brown thred, and to pluck forth the haw ſo far as he well can, then with a pair of ſizers to clip off the haw ſo cloſe as he can: But I cannot commend this manner of curing the haw, for by that means he cutteth away the *waſh* of the *eye*, which indeed is the beauty of the *eye*, whereby the horſe becometh *blear-eyed*, which is in him a very great eye-ſore, he being thereby very much diſfigured. *** But if your *Horſe* have gotten a *canker* in his eye, then

Haw.

Eye a Canker.

Take Ale-hoof (which indeed is your true ground Ivy) and ſtamp it well in a morter, and if it be very dry, then moiſten it with a little white Roſe-water, or the water of Eye bright diſtilled, as much as will ſuffice, and ſo ſtrain it into a clean glaſs, and therewith waſh, bathe, anoint, and taint the ſorance therewith, and in ſhort time it will cure it. *** This is very good to cure a Canker, a Pin and Web, *blood ſhotten eyes*, or any ſuch grief in and about the *eyes*; and I have often made uſe of this medicine. Another much better.

Take of ſtone Copperas (a thing known to few, and therefore very hard to get) but in the ſtead thereof you may uſe ordinary white Copperas, make it into fine powder as much as will ſuffice, (for I muſt leave the quantity to your own diſcretion) and put it into a ſmall Pipkin, and put thereto ſo much very fair, clear, running, or Well-water, as will fill up the Pipkin to the very top, then ſet the Pipkin upon a few coals, and cauſe the water to boil, but ſo treatibly, as it may but only ſimper, and as the ſcum doth ariſe, take it away with a feather, continuing ſo to do, till the ſcum do leave to ariſe any more, and when

when you have ſufficiently well boiled it, take it off, and let it ſtand till it be through cold, then pour away the clear from the bottom, which muſt be caſt away, and the clear kept in a glaſs Vial, very cloſe ſtopped and bound up for your uſe; which being thus carefully kept, the water will remain in its perfection long yea a whole year together or longer. This water cureth almoſt all diſeaſes in the *eyes*, as Films, Pearls, weeping eyes, Pin and Web, Dragons, Cataracts, dimneſs of ſight, Blindneſs, Rheumatick, watry, ſtroak, blow or ſtripe of, or in the *eye*, and ſo conſequently in many other caſes of the like nature. *** And of this water I have had great experience.

Another.

Take Sal-Armoniack, Lapis Tutia prepared, Sagina, called in Latine *Panicum Indicum*, and of Ginger, of each half an ounce, and of white Sugar-candy two ounces, powder all theſe, and ſearſe them, and being well mixed, put this powder into a clean and dry box, very cloſe ſtopped, and ſo keep it that no air come to it for your uſe, and when you have occaſion to uſe of this powder, take a little thereof, and mix with it of the juice of ground-Ivy, *Alias* Ale hoof, as much as will ſuffice; and ſo twice a day convey thereof into his *eye* with a feather, till it be throughly whole. *** This is a principal good receipt, I will give you another ſpecial good Receipt which will cure all manner of ſoar eyes.

Take the leaves and roots of Vervine, ordinary hony, and Roman Vitriol, of each like much; beat, bruiſe, and mix theſe together, and put it into a ſtillatory glaſs, and diſtil it by Balnea-Maria, with a gentle fire, and the water you take into your Receptacle, put into a Vial-glaſs, and keep it very cloſe ſtopped, that no air get into it, and when you are to uſe of the ſame water, pour of it a little into a ſilver ſpoon, and mix with it of the fat of a Hen or Capon a ſmall quantity, and therewith anoint the ſore *eye* twice a day, and it will cure the ſame perfectly. *** I will give you another Receipt which will take the film from off the *eye* albeit there be a very great and thick skin grown.

Take the gall of a Hare, and live honey, of each like much, put them together into a ſpoon, and hold the ſpoon over the fire, till the medicine be blood warm, and with a feather convey part

of this medicine into the *eye* of the *Horſe*, and thus dreſs him morning and evening, and in ſhort time it will take it quite away, ſo as the *eye* will become as bright and clear again as ever it was before. *** This Receipt I do hold no whit inferiour to any of the former, for I have often made uſe thereof. But if your *Horſe* have gotten a ſtripe in the *eye*, then let him *blood* in the *neck*, and in the *weeping vein*, on the ſame ſide where the ſtripe is, then

Take white Roſe water, and the white of a new laid egg, beat them very well together, then waſh and bathe the *eye* well therewith, and lay round about it with your ſplatter this charge reſtringent. Take Maſtick, Bolearmoniack, Sanguis Draconis, the white of a new laid egg, and white wine vineger of the ſtrongeſt, beat firſt the hard ſimples to a very fine powder, and then ſearſe them, and they muſt be beaten ſeverally, then mix them altogether with the white of the egg, and the vineger ſo well wrought, as that the medicine come to a thick Ointment, and with this charge the ſorance round about the *eye*, and this will keep off the *humour*, and when that you find that the *eye* doth begin to amend, then waſh and bathe the *eye* twice or thrice a day, or oftner, with cold Fountain or Well water, ſo freſh as it is taken or drawn out of the Well or Fountain, and if after you ſhall perceive that there doth grow a *film* or *skin* over the *eye*, then take it away by blowing or putting the powder of Camphire, or Sal *Armoniacum*, or white Sugar-Candy in fine powder, according as I have before preſcribed you. *** This is a moſt ſovereign Receipt: Alſo if your *Horſe* in his *eye* have gotten a ſtripe. Take of freſh butter wherein never came ſalt, the quantity of a Walnut, and put it into his *ear* on that ſide, where the ſtripe is, and it will help him.

Give a charge.

Another.

Take Lentels or gray peaſe, and champ or chew them in your *mouth*, and then whilſt they be in your *mouth*, blow and breathe into your *horſes eye*, but not any of the Peaſe by any means; do this every day often, and a little after waſh the ſore *eye* with cold fountain water, till it be whole. *** But yet I will teach you another Receipt which will take off a Pin and Web, Film, thickneſs, or any other foulneſs which may be in the *eye* whatſoever, whereof I have had great experience, and have done many rare cures in this kind, *viz.*

Take

Take the ſhels of ſeven or eight eggs, cleanſe them from all manner of inward ſlime, and dry them well within, then lay thoſe ſhels between two new Tiles, or old, ſo they be made very clean and free from Morter, and then lay them in the glowing embers, and cover them all over, and on every ſide with burning hot embers, and ſo let them lie a good ſpace, until the moiſt ſubſtance be quite taken from them, then take them up and beat the ſhels to very fine powder, and ſearſe the powder, then with a Gooſe-quill blow off this powder into your *Horſes eye*; do this twice every day, and it is a certain cure. **** But if you do find the *eye* to be fed with any *Rheumatick humour*, or that it be inflamed, or that it hath gotten a bruiſe, ſtripe, or the like, then

Take of the pureſt and whiteſt refined loaf Sugar, one ſpoonful and an half, let it be made into fine powder, and ſearſed, or elſe of the beſt white Sugar-Candy (which is much better) the like quantity, let it be finely powdred and ſearſed, and mix it with ſo much May or ſweet Butter (wherein never came Salt) as a Walnut, and add alſo to it ſo much of the former powder of Egg-ſhels as of Sugar-Candy, make theſe into one body, and bring it to a ſalve, and put thereof into the *horſes* eye, morning, evening, and noon, and this will make the eye to be clear, ſound, and whole again. **** This Unguent doth purge, cleanſe, cool, and comfort the *eye* of the *horſe*, and helpeth greatly his *ſight*; make uſe of this, for it is very good. But if the *eyes* be inflamed, which you may eaſily know by the red ſtrakes which will be in them, then

Take Thuris Maſculi, the Marrow of a Lamb, Saffron, Cuttlebone, of each one ounce, of the Oil of Roſes one ounce, and the whites of ten new laid Eggs, beat and incorporate all theſe very well together, and then with a feather put ſome of this medicine into his *eyes* once every day. **** This receipt is very good, for I have had great trial thereof.

Another.

Take of white Starch made of Wheat, Frankincenſe, live-honey, of each as much as will ſuffice, make all theſe into one body, and with a feather apply it to the grieved *eye*.

Another.

If the inflammation be great, let him *blood* in both the *temple-*

veins, and in the *weeping veins*, and then waſh his *eyes* with *womans milk*, and life honey mingled together. **

Another for a wart or ſpongy *excretion* growing near to the *eye* of the *horſe*, which commonly doth proceed from a condenſed flegm that deſcendeth to the *eye*, which in time will cauſe the *eye* either to conſume or to grow little, if it be not prevented, which muſt be done thus.

Eye a wart.

Take Roch Alum and burn it, and then add unto it ſo much white Copperas unburnt, grind them together to very fine powder, then lay a little of this powder juſt upon the top of the wart, but take heed none get into the *eye*, for it is a ſtrong corroſive, and will corrode; let the Wart be thus dreſſed once every day, and in a ſhort time it will conſume and eat it quite away never to come more. ** But as touching Lunatick eyes, this word Lunatick is derived from the *Latine* word *Luna*, which ſignifieth the *Moon*, and the reaſon why this diſeaſe takes its denomination from thence, is, for that at certain times of the *Moon*, he will ſee well, and at other times a little, but then at other times no whit at all; and therefore this diſeaſe is called *lunatick*, and this kind of blindneſs we do hold to be the very worſt of all other, but when he doth ſee you may know it by the colour of his *eyes*, for then they will be dim and yellowiſh, but when he ſeeth nothing, then will they look fiery and red. This diſeaſe cometh ſometimes naturally, taking it hereditarily, either from the *Stallion* his *Sire*, or from the *Mare* his *Dam*, by whom he was begotten, and foled: it cometh alſo ſometimes by means of evil *humours* which deſcending from the *head* make their reſidence in and about the *eyes*, and theſe naughty *humours* are occaſioned by the means of intemperate riding, drawing, or other laborious exerciſe, in which the poor *creature* hath been put to do more than nature was able to perform; wherefore by one of theſe waies the malady cometh; the cure is thus;

Lunatick Eyes.

Take Pitch, Roſin, and Maſtick of each like much, melt them together, and having beforehand provided in a readineſs two round Plaſters of Leather, the breadth of a 20 ſhilling piece of Gold, lay and ſpread the medicine hot upon theſe two plaſters, and ſo hot as the *horſe* can ſuffer them, apply them to his *temples*, cauſing them to ſtick faſt to the *skin*, and let them there remain until they ſhall fall off of themſelves, then rowel him on the face

face just under his *eyes* with a very small *French Rowel* the breadth of a three-pence at the most, and let it be turned every day once, the space of 12 or 15 daies, then take forth the *Rowel*, and heal up the Orifice with the green ointment prescribed you in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 10. *sect.* 4. *G.* and this will undoubtedly very much help his *sight.* *** *Another.*

Shave away the *hair* the breadth of a shilling on either side of the *head* upon the *temple-veins*, and after apply to the place this charge.

Take Taca-Mahaca, and lay it upon those places which were shaven, and clap upon them flocks of the same colour, then make incision, and put in two *French Rowels*, as is shewed in the cure going before to bring down the peccant *humours*, and let the *eyes* be washed twice every day with the medicine before taught you, made of ground-Ivy, Honey, Celendine and womans milk, *** This is very good for this disease, and this I can boldly commend unto you to be a very good medicine, for I have often used it. Now as touching *sore eyes* which must be cured by medicine, you must understand that the *eye* is the most delicate part of any one *member* in all the whole *body*, it is the *Torch* or *Candle* which doth give light to the whole *body*, it is the guide which doth usher the *body*, and to carry it from danger, so as it shall not at any time either stumble upon rocks or blocks, or fall into any precipice; wherefore great regard ought to be had how you do at any time tamper or meddle with this so choice a *member*, lest instead of endeavouring to cure one *sore eye*, you put out both, a thing often seen and known, and therefore the medicine which you apply to the *eyes* ought evermore to be new made, yea in a manner every day, for that when once they begin to grow stale, they become sharp and asper, perplexing the poor beast, much more than otherwise; neither are they so wholsome, nor so powerful, whereby to perform their office for which they were made and compounded. If you have a *horse* which is but weak of sight, the less *blood* you take from him, the better it will be for the continuance of his sight; for by taking much *blood* from a *horse* weakly sighted, will on a sudden cause him to become *stone blind*, like as by experience I have often knovvn and observed. But novv to conclude this Paragraph, because I have not yet handled one part appertaining

to

to a *ſore eye*, viz. for an *eye* which by an *unlucky ſtroke* or *ſtripe* is broken and beaten out of the head of the *horſe*. I will give you one only Receipt, which can never be parallel'd: to wit,

Take Alum, and firſt burn it in a fire pan, and after when it is burned ſo, put it upon the hot coles, and let it burn there till all the moiſture be quite conſumed, and it becometh as light as a feather, as white as ſnow, and ſo brittle as that it will break with every touch, unleſs it be very carefully handled, when it is ſo brittle as that it will run to Aſhes with every ſmall preſſure, and that the taſt of Alum remaineth little in the ſaid Alum, then it is ſufficiently burned; then take of this powder, as much as will ſuffice, and mix it with live-honey, and ſtir them well together, as that you do bring it to an Unguent, put of this every day morning and evening into his *eye* with a feather, and ſo hold your hand upon the eye a pretty while, that the medicine cannot ſuddenly get forth, and by thus doing in few daies it will be throughly cured, though the eye be utterly loſt.

SECT. 6. *E.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to take away a* bony excretion, *or a* fleſhy?

Hippoſerus. This malady of a *bony excretion* cometh moſt commonly by the means of *cauſticks*, and burning *corroſives*, which be laid to wounds that are neer to the *bone*, as when the wound is either in the *leg*, or about the *paſterns*, for that the *fleſh* being extremely burned and mortified by ſuch *cauſticks* and *corroſives*, it doth cauſe an *excretion* to grow upon the *bone*, which by the unskilfulneſs of the *Ferrier* the wound is healed up, but the *excretion* doth remain ſtill upon the *bone*, which becometh an *eye-ſore*, unleſs it be afterwards taken off, which occaſioneth a new cure, and over and above it enforceth oft times the *Horſe* to halt: ſometimes again an *excretion* cometh by the *Horſe* being galled with a lock or fetters, having been long continued upon the ſame *foot*, without changing or removing in time convenient. But howſoever it cometh, the cure is,

Excretion. Take Elecampane root newly gathered, and cleanſe it from its earth, and wrap it up in a brown paper, then wet the paper, and ſo heat it in the hot embers, and ſo roſt it as you would do

do a Warden; when it is throughly well roſted, that it be like pap, ſo hot as your *horſe* can ſuffer it (for it muſt not ſcald him) after you have with a ſtick (like as you do a ſplent) rubbed, knocked, and chafed the *excretion*, bind this roſted root cloſe unto the place, and ſo let it remain on 24 hours before you remove it, and in two or three times thus dreſſing it, the *excretion* will rot and conſume to nothing, and this will alſo take away a ſplent. *** This is very good.

Another.

Take the oil of Origanum, and every morning and evening, or oftner, take a little upon the brawn of your thumb, and rub the place, and it will therewith in time conſume, and quite take it away. *** And this will alſo take away a ſplent.

SECT. 7. *E.*

Hippoph. WHat will cure an *Impoſtume in the* ears *of a* Horſe?

Hippoferus. This diſeaſe proceeds from ſundry cauſes, as by means of ſome blow with ſome ſtaff or other ſuch like thing, which he receiveth about the *ears* or *poll*, or elſe by means of ſome hurt he may get by being wrung or galled with a new or hard hempen halter, eſpecially if a knot be neer or upon the place; ſometimes it comes alſo of a cold taken in the *head*, and ſometimes again by means of bad and *peccant humours*, which reſiding in the *head*, do make their paſſage by the *ears*; it is eaſily known by its much burning, glowing, and ſwelling, and by the *horſes* unwillingneſs to be touched and handled about that place; if it be an impoſtumation, then thus it muſt be cured.

Ears impoſtumated.

Take Linſeed and make it into fine powder, and wheat flower, of each half a pint, ordinary Honey one point, tried Hogs-greaſe one pound, mix all theſe well, and warm them upon a fire, keeping them continually ſtirring: then take of this Ointment and ſpread it upon a linnen cloth, or upon a plaſter of leather, the breadth of the ſwelling only, and apply it warm to the place, and renew it once every four and twenty hours, till it either do break or be ſo ripe as that it may be opened, which muſt be done downwards, that the corruption may eaſily iſſue away, then heal it up with this Salve.

Take

Take Mel Roſarum, Sallet-oil, and ordinary Turpentine, of each two ounces, incorporate them well together, and make for the *horſe* a biggin, or night-cap to keep on the medicine, taint the ſore to the bottom dipped in this ointment, and apply alſo a plaſter of the ſaid ſtuff upon the ſore, renewing it every day till it be whole and ſound, *** But if the Impoſtumation be broken of its own accord before you do perceive it, then

Take oil of Roſes, Venice Turpentine, and common Honey, of each like much, mix them well together, and ſo making it blood warm upon a few embers or coles, dip ſome black Wooll in the Medicine, and ſo ſtop up that *ear* therewith which is grieved, renewing it once a day till it be whole. *** But if the *ears* be only inflamed, then ſtop of this aforeſaid medicine into them, and it will both eaſe him, and take away the inflammation. ***

Another.

Take of Pepper made into fine powder duſt, tried Hogsgreaſe one ſpoonful, the juice of Rue one handful, the ſtrongeſt white Wine vineger two ſpoonfuls, beat all theſe very well together, and if the Swelling, Impoſtumation: or Inflammation be either in the *Ears*, *Face*, *Head*, or *Throat* of the *Horſe*, if you take either black Wooll, fine Lint, Flax, or Hurds, and dip it into this Medicine, and ſo ſtop both his *ears* therewith, and then ſtitch them up, that it get not forth, renewing it once in two days, till the ſwelling be clean gone, your *horſe* will be certainly cured. *** But if the grief be in any other part of the *body*, then with this Unguent you ſhall anoint the grieved or ſwolen place once or twice a day till it depart. *** But if the ſwelling be neer or about the *Cods* or privy parts, then

Firſt, bathe the place well with cold water, and after being made dry again with a cloth, anoint it with the ſaid Ointment every day once or twice, and you ſhall find it to be a preſent cure. *** This alſo cureth the *Ulcer* and *Canker* in the *Noſe*, and it is a ſure Cure for the *Vives*. *** I have often cured all theſe maladies with this Receipt.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

SECT. I. F.

Hypophylus.

VV*Hat Cure have you for the* Farcin?

Hyppof. Of all the Diſeaſes whereunto *Horſes* are inclinable, this of the *Farcin* is the moſt loathſome, moſt ſtinking, and the moſt filthy, wherefore for the ſame I ſhall ſet you down many cures, but firſt I intend to diſcourſe ſomewhat of its Nature, and how it comes to a *Horſe*: This diſeaſe we here in *England* do for the moſt part call the *Farcy*, and (*Secundum vulgus*) it is called the *Faſhions*, for ſo Maſter *Markham* doth ſtile it: But Maſter *Blundevile*, the *Italians* and the *French*, do give it the name of *Farcin*, to which denomination I do the rather incline, by reaſon we take the ſaid name from the *Italians*, and the *French*, for that truly I do find that to be the proper name of the ſaid infirmity, derived from the word *Farcina*, which is a diſeaſe moſt infectious, poyſonous, and dangerous, being never ſo little let alone, or neglected. It is a kind of creeping *Ulcer*, beginning with hard knots; and Puſtils, and after dilating and ſpreading it ſelf into branches (like a Vine or Ivy) doth not ceaſe from running until ſuch time as it hath viſited every part and member of the *Body*, for *Quaſi Cancer ſerpit*, it commonly beginning either in a vein, or near to ſome *Maſter-vein*, which feedeth and nouriſheth the diſeaſe, that is the cauſe of its diffuſion. It its ingendred ſometimes of corrupt *Blood*, which heats and ſurfets have occaſioned in the *Body*; ſometimes by hurts and wounds received, as alſo by ſome Cankerous and poyſonous thing, as ruſty Spurs, Snaffles, Bits, or the like; it is alſo taken from another *Horſe*, which is faln into the ſame diſeaſe, alſo by hewing one *Leg* againſt another, and being ſmitten with ſome ſtaff whereon are hard knots, and ſundry ſuch like means and ways; it comes alſo to a horſe by ſurfeits given him, which finding no other way of avoidance, layes hold of this diſeaſe, whereby the *Blood*, being overmuch heat, his greaſe molten, and his taking a ſudden cold, which is moſt frequent after great heats, then growing in the *Body*, and eſpecially in the *Bloud*,

ſuch obſtructions, corruption, and putrefaction, not having any means to vent it ſelf, or to avoid, or evacuate, but by this way only, by growing into Knots, Puſtils, Ulcers, or the like, which be ſo contagious and infectious, ſo as if but any other *Horſe* do but gnaw or lick with his teeth or tongue, upon the place infected, he will be aſſuredly within a ſhort time after himſelf infected alſo; and when once a *Horſe* is ſtrucken or infected with this leprous malady, if he be not preſently and skilfully cured, it is as infallible death to him, as if he had either his *throat* cut, or his *braines* beat out with a *Butchers Ax*; wherefore if in this caſe your *Horſe* be viſited with this miniſtrous diſeaſe, I could wiſh you would carefully obſerve two things: The firſt is, that ſo ſoon as you do perceive this malady to appear upon him, that you preſently ſequeſter him from his fellows, into ſome other Stable or ſtall by himſelf alone, for fear he might infect them, for that it is catching: And ſecondly to be very diligent in omitting no time or opportunity, in getting him adminiſtred unto for his Cure. The ſigns of this diſeaſe are ſo plain and familiar, as that it needeth no deſcription. I will paſs to the cure. To the end therefore you may go the more ſecurely to work, whereby you may make it an able and perfect cure, eſpecially if you find the Puſtils to be malevolent, and greatly inflamed, then the firſt day let him *Blood* in or near to that *Maſter-vein*, which doth moſt feed and nouriſh the *Farcin*, then ſo ſoon as you have well *blouded* him, give him this purge, *viz.*

Farcin.

1

2

Take of Aloes, made into fine powder, one ounce, and a quantity of *London* Treacle, ſo much as will ſuffice, and of life honey ſo much as will ſuffice, mix theſe well together, and give it him in a morning faſting, and ſix hours after give him white water, neither needeth this *bloodying* him, or purgation, any way hinder him from being dreſſed for his diſeaſe, for that *blood-letting* doth not only hinder it from running any further for that time, and the Purge ſendeth the diſeaſe from the *Heart*, to the end it may no way annoy that place. Wherefore for the perfecting of the cure,

Take of Oyl de-Bay two ounces, of Euforbium made into fine powder one ounce, incorporate both theſe well together, that they may become but one body, then ſearch for the firſt origen, or ſpring where the firſt knots did begin, and ſo continue

ſearching

ſearching till you find out the laſt, clip away the *hair* from off and about all theſe knots, and anoint them very well with this ointment once every three days: and after you have thus dreſſed him three times, if you do not find the Farcins to be killed, and that the knots do not dry up, then bathe the place three days together with the ſtale or Urine of a Cow or Ox, and with the herb called *Lions foot*, in Latine *Leontipodium*, both boiled together, and this will cure him. **** This medicine I never made uſe of but once only, and it cured the *Horſe* unto which I did adminiſter the ſame. **** Another.

The nine leaves of pot-herb called Beets of the ſmalleſt but ſoundeſt leaves, and nine grains of Bay-ſalt, beat theſe very well together to a ſalve, and in a morning before Sun riſing put this medicine into both his *Ears* by equal portions, and put into them after it a little wooll, to keep in the medicine, and ſo ſtitch up his *Ears*, and let him ſtand ſo with meat and white water 24. hours at the leaſt, then take forth the wooll and ſtuff, and he is cured. **** With this Receipt I have cured ſundry *Horſes*. Another. If your *Horſe* have a *Farcin* in any of the four quarters of his *Body*, let him *Bleed* well in the *neck-vein* faſting, then

Take of Arſenick two ounces, and put it into a piece of new cloth, and bind it up with a piece of new Pack-thred, and faſten it unto the *mayne* of the *Horſe*, this is to be thus adminiſtred, if the Farcin be only in the fore-parts; but if the diſeaſe be as well in the hinder-parts as in the fore-parts, then hang alſo the like quantity of Arſenick made up in a cloth like as was the former, and hang that alſo upon his *tail*, and the more you ride, work, or travel, and exerciſe him, the better it will be for his diſeaſe; to qualifie and rid the ſame; and the more ſpare his dyet be, the ſooner he is cured, provided you keep him warm in the Stable, and for ſome time you muſt give him white water. This cure I did never try, but it was taught me by great *Mariſhal of Paris*, one who had the repute of a very honeſt man, and a moſt skilful Farrier, who proteſted unto me, that he had perfectly cured many *Horſes* with this receipt. Another.

Take white Bran prepared, like as you ſhall find preſcribed you, *lib.2. cap.2. ſect.4. F.* how to make fat a *Horſe*, and give it him a day before he is to be dreſſed, and let him eat it ſo hot as well he may: continue him to this diet three mornings

together, then let him *bleed* well in the *neck-vein*, but give him no Hay that day he *bleedeth*, but ſweet Wheat ſtraw only, neither let him either eat or drink in four hours after, and then let his drink be white water. And two days after his *bleeding*, you ſhall begin to give him again his Wheat-bran prepared as before, which ſhall continue for ſix days together, during which time you ſhall give him every evening with his Oats this powder and theſe roots following, *Viz.*

Take of Comin, of Linſeed, of Fenugreek, Sileris-Montani, of each two ounces, quick brimſtone four ounces, let all theſe be powdred, and mix them well, and give it at one time with his Oats, ſo much as you may put into an egg-ſhell, the meat being firſt taken out; let him be thus uſed daily by the ſpace of ſix days. Thoſe days being ended,

Take the root of Salerike, the root of Taſſus-Barbatus, the root of Valerion, and the root of Lappaiſon, of each like much, chop them all very ſmall, as herbs to the pot, which being thus well mixed, give them to the *Horſe* without Oats if he will eat them, if not, then otherwiſe in Pills; and when you give him the roots, do not give him the aforeſaid powder, and ſo continue him with theſe roots ſix days together, which ſix days ended, cauſe him to be *blooded* again on the other ſide of the *neck*, but then let him not *bleed* ſo much as before, and order him as before after the firſt *bleeding*: nor ſhall you give him either powder or roots, but let him be ſtill kept warm, and have his ordinary allowance of meat; as well of Hay as of Oats, and then for ſix days after; every evening after he hath drunk white water, give him one evening of this powder with his Oates, and the next evening of theſe roots, and if you find not the *Farcin* to dry up to your mind, continue then this powder, and theſe roots for ſix days more, and thoſe days being paſt, give him good Hay and good Oats, and not any longer the powder, or the roots: and thus following theſe directions punctually, your *Horſe* ſhall be perfectly cured, and be brought into good ſtate and health again, neither ſhall the relicks of the *Farcin* remain in any part of his body; and if there be any knots remaining, they ſhall break, purge, cleanſe, heal, and dry up, the main cauſe being taken and purged away. Of this my ſelf had never trial, by reaſon that many of the ingredients were not eaſily to be had. Another,

Take

Take black Elebore, and add to the herb ſome of its juyce, put unto it old Boars-greaſe, and boil it until the juyce be quite boiled into it, whereby to bring it to a perfect unguent, with which you ſhall anoint and rub the knots or bottoms of the *Farcin*; but before you do apply this unguent, let the *hair* be ſhaven or clipped away from and about the knots. *** With this receipt I have cured only one *Horſe*. Another:

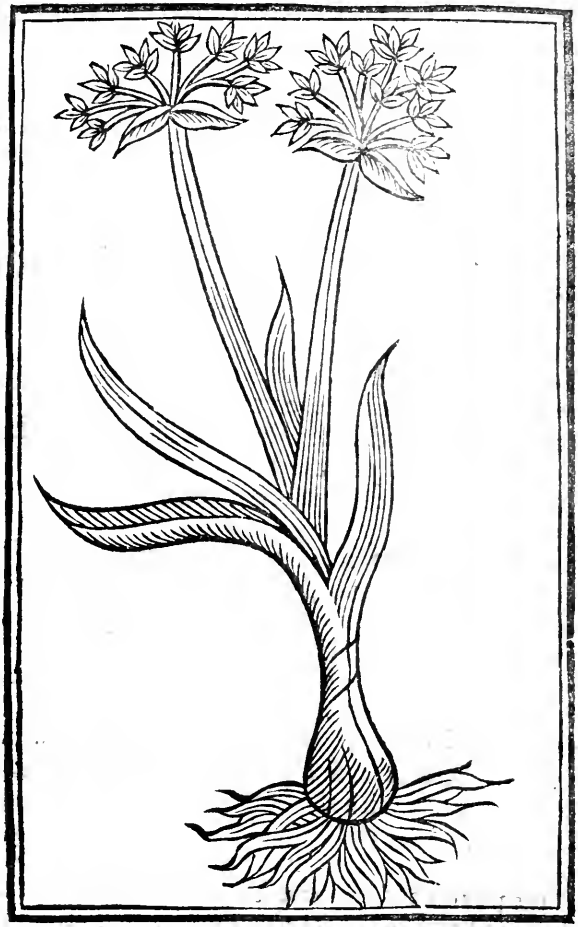
Take five or ſix handfuls of four leaved Plantane with the roots of Bay ſalt one handful, and ſo much Comin as you may well take up, with your thumb and two fingers, beat the Comin to fine powder, and then ſtamp the Plantane and Salt well together with the Comin, and after they be well incorporate, let it ſteep and infuſe 24. hours, then ſtrain and wring it hard, and give the liquor thereof to your *Horſe* in a morning faſting, but you muſt take *Blood* from him the day before, and he muſt ſtand upon the *Trench* ſix hours before you give him the ſaid drink, and you muſt alſo put into his *ears* the juyce of Rue, and then ſtitch up his *ears*, and ſo let him remain 24. hours; but if the malady ſhall continue (which I think it will not do) then muſt you let him *Blood* again, and give him the aforeſaid drink. This I never tried, but he that taught me this, did aſſure me that there is no kind of *Farcin*, but this receipt will cure. Another.

Take firſt the herb *Moly*, it groweth in mariſh grounds, you muſt take 10, 11, 12, or 13. of the roots (or according to the ſtrength, greatneſs or corpulency of your *Horſe*) let your roots be in the number, or quantity. Take alſo of White wine one pint, then take of bay Salt one handful (which was never uſed) and put it into the White wine, then take of white Wine vinegar half a pint more or leſs, but firſt note, you muſt take the roots of the ſaid *Moly*, and let it be gathered a day before you are to uſe it; you muſt only take the roots thereof, (and caſt away the reſidue) for that they are moſt uſeful, and after you have ſo done, take theſe great roots and waſh them clean, ſo as no filth do remain upon them, then take the ſaid roots and bruiſe them, and ſteep them in the Wine with the Salt and Vinegar, in an earthen Pipkin, and ſtop it cloſe that no air get into it, and let it infuſe ſo a whole night, then about ſeven or eight of the clock in the morning, ſtrain it, and give it him to drink, and after he hath taken it, cover him up warm, and let him be walked.

Molior Abuaplantique.

walked four hours; but above all things, you muſt not give him any Oats in four days after, but inſtead of Oats give him Wheat-bran prepared, and let his drink be white water; neither muſt you ſuffer him to go forth of the Stable in three or four days after at the ſooneſt; and then after that you may ride or work him at your pleaſure; neither muſt this drink be adminiſtred warm, but cold. *** This is a known certain cure among the *Mariſhals* in *France*, by reaſon I could never find the herb *Moly* growing in *England*, I could never come to practiſe the cure here; nevertheleſs I will give you the deſcription of this ſaid herb *Moly*, and how it groweth, together with its true Effigies:

It



It groweth (as I ſaid before) in mariſh and wet grounds, it reſembleth the herb called Scolopendion, or Sorrel, only the leaf is bigger and broader, the flower is like to the white Violet, but leſs, about the bigneſs of a purple wild Violet, and it is as white as milk, it ſmelleth ſtrong like Garlick: its root is little and round, which is moſt ſoveraign to heal the overtures of the *matrix*, being beaten with the ointment of Ireos, applied as a

Peſſure.

Peſſure or Plaiſter; *Homer* ſaith that the *god Mercury* was the firſt Inventor and finder out of this plant, and the *gods* for the excellency thereof, named it *Moly*: ſee *Theophraſtus*, *Paracelſus*, and *Dioſcorides*.

Albeit that all theſe receits be very good for the *Farcin*, yet are not all *Horſes* cured with one and the ſame medicine; and moſt certain it is, that the moſt infallible way to cure the *Farcin*, is to give him the *fire*: in the practice not only of this cure, but of many others alſo, which are to be adminiſtred inwardly, it is greatly behoofefull that the *Farrier* be mindful to obſerve the ſtrength, age, quality, and ability of the *Horſe* to which he is to adminiſter, and accordingly to mix and apply his Ingredients. Another.

Firſt let him *blood* on both ſides the *neck* and *ſpurveins*, and let him *bleed* a good quantity, then take Hemlock, Cinque-foil, or Five-leaved-graſs, and Rue; of each like much; ſtamp them and ſtrain them, and put the juyce thereof into his ears, and ſtitch them up 24. hours, and it is a certain cure, *** For with this I have cured ſundry *Horſes*. Another.

Firſt let him *bleed* well at the *neck vein*, then take Trifora Magna; and Aloes Platice, of each two ounces, and as much Barly-bran; mix all theſe, and diſſolve it in oil-olive one pint, and put thereto of white Wine one pint, and then divide it into two parts or moities, and ſo give it two mornings together to your *horſe* faſting with a horn, that is to ſay, either morning the one moity: this done, take as much black Sope as a Walnut, half as much Arſenick in fine powder, and work them into one *body* to a ſalve, then with the point of a knife ſlit or open all the hard knots or puſtils, and ſo put into every of them the quantity of two Barly-corns of this Salve, which will eat forth the cores, and kill the poyſonous *humours*, then where you ſee the wounds, and places red and fair, heal them up by anointing them with freſh Butter molten and made hot, and then ſtrew upon them the powder of Bolearmonack. *** This is a moſt approved good receipt, and by my ſelf often practiſed. Another.

Take the juice of Rue, and of Aqua-vitæ, of each one ſpoonful and a half, beat them well together, and by equal portions convey it into both his *ears*, then ſtitch them up for 24. hours ſpace, and he is infallibly cured. *** This is an excellent cure, and by me often uſed. Another.

Firſt

Firſt waſh all the places that be raw or ſwelled with Chamberly, or white Wine vinegar warmed, then take of Salt one handful, of white Wine Vinegar one pottle, of Allum diſſolved in the Vinegar one ounce, of Verdigreaſe, and green Copperas, both made into fine powder, of each one pound; melt all theſe upon the fire, and every day waſh the ſores, and places ſwelled therewith warm, twice a day, morning and evening. This I never did experience, but it was commended unto me by a worthy Knight, who averred unto me, that he had cured therewith very many *Horſes* of the *Farcin*. He alſo ſaid that he had cured ſome with this Receipt following, *viz.*

Take Tar, Tallow, and Horſe-dung, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, incorporate all theſe upon the fire, and anoint him therewith hot. Another,

Take Hempſeed one pound, and bruiſe it well, then take Rue and Salt, of each one handful, of the leaves of Mallows two handfuls, boyl all theſe in fair water, two quarts, unto a moyty, then ſtrain it, and give it your *horſe* blood-warm, give him of this two mornings, but not two mornings together, but let him ſtay one morning betwixt, then take a good quantity of Chamberly and Hemlock ſo much as will ſuffice, and boil them well, and waſh the ſores till they be quite whole and dryed up, *** This is a very good receipt. Another,

Take the herb with the root called *Digitalis*, in Engliſh, *Sopeglove*, alias *Fox-glove*, a good quantity, bind it up into a fine linnen rag, and if the *Farcin* be in the forepart of the *Horſe*, hang it upon the *main*, but if in the hinder part, then hang it upon the *tail*, and this will cure him. This I never did experience; But now I will give you for a cloſe, the beſt and moſt certain cure for this diſeaſe, that I ever yet knew: and with which I have perfected more rare cures of this nature, then of all the reſidue before inculcated. And thus it is. Another,

Take of Rue, the leaves and tender tops only, without any the leaſt ſtalks, a good handful, firſt chop them ſmall, and then ſtamp them in a Morter to a very ointment, when they are ſo well pownded, put thereunto of the pureſt white tryed Hogs greaſe one ſpoonful and ſo work them together to a perfect ſalve, or unguent; that done, ſtop into either *ear* this whole quantity by equal portions, and put a little wooll upon the medicine, to cauſe them to keep in the better, and ſo ſtitch up his *ears*, and

let him remain in the Stable four and twenty hours at the leaſt, and then unſtitch his *Ears*, and take forth the wooll, and either put him forth to Graſs, or elſe if he be to be wrought, work him, for the more his labour is, and the more ſpare his diet is, the ſooner he is cured. *** This I commended to you for the beſt and moſt certain cure I could ever meet with; for with this Reciept only, I aſſure you on my credit, I have cured more then 100 *Horſes*, many of which were by other *Ferriers* holden for incurable, and ſentenced to be food for *Hounds*. The *French* do alſo call the diſeaſe, *Mall de ver*.

SECT. 2. *F.*

Hippoph. I *Have heard of another kind of* Farcin *called the Water*-Farcin.

Hippoſ. Truly Sir, in anſwer to this, I by obſervation of this diſeaſe do find, that there is but onely one kind, albeit I will not denie, but that ſome one may be more malignant then another, according to the conſtitution of the *Horſe*, who is viſited therewith, by reaſon that *Choler* may be in that *Horſe* more predominant then in another *Horſe*, of any of the other *Humours*, for then it cometh forth more dry; but if the *Horſe* be naturally Rheumatick, then may it appear more watry and moiſt, and ſo of the reſidue; but ſtill it is but one and the ſame infirmity, for more ſorts I could never find. But touching this watry *Farcin*, as you are pleaſed to term the ſame, the *French* giveth this name, *viz. la Louppe* which is in *Engliſh* the *Wolfe*, and they gave me the reaſon why they do ſo call it, to wit, becauſe it feſtreth the fleſh, eating and corroding therein inwardly, and it beginneth moſt commonly in the feet, rather then in any other member of the *Horſe*. And for this diſeaſe a famous *French Mariſhal* of *Paris*, gave me this enſuing cure, but I never yet made tryal thereof, *viz.*

Wet Farcin.

Firſt waſh the place, and ſhave away the hair, and ſearch the place well with your finger, and let forth the corruption, but be ſure you ſearch it to the very bottom.

Take then Horſe-dung, or Gooſe-dung, Wine, Salt, and Vinegar, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, and make thereof a Salve, and ſo Plaiſter-wiſe apply it to the ſorrance, binding it on, and the third day open it; and dreſs it up again, as before,

fore, and do this every third day till it be whole; but be ſure you do every time you dreſs him, examine the very bottom. This he aſſured me to be a very perfect cure.

SECT. 3. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHat is the diſeaſe called the* Flanks *and how is it cured?*

Hippoſ. This is when a *Horſe* hath gotten a wrench, crick, ſtroke, or other grief in his *Back*, which is called of the *French Farriers*, *Flanks*; the cure is this,

Firſt ſhave away the *Hair* from the place grieved, then lay on this charge.

Take Bolearmoniack, Cumfry, *alias* Conſolida-Major, Galbanum, Sol Armoniack, Sanguis Draconis, his own Blood, Burgundy-Pitch, Maſtick, Olibanum, of each like much, ſo much as will ſuffice; ſtamp and beat all theſe together, with Wheat-meal, Vinegar, and the whites of Eggs, ſo much as will ſuffice, and ſo make it into a charge, and therewith charge the place grieved, then clap upon the top all along the *Chine* and *Back* of the *Horſe*, a Sheeps-skin, coming hot from the ſheep, and change it every day, and at three or four days end he will be well, but let the charge lie upon the place until ſuch time as it do fall away it ſelf, and keep him warm.

SECT. 4. *F.*

Hippoph. *HOw may a man bring in few days his* Horſe *to be fat, or at leaſt in good liking, ſuppoſing him to be ſound?*

Hippoſ. Sir, over-much riding and exerciſe will bring the fatteſt *Horſe* that ever trod upon the Earth to become poor, bare, and lean, and ſo will too early, and too late airing, bad diet, evil keeping lingring after *Mares*, and ſpending upon them, lingring after Graſs, and the like: But if your *Horſe* be poor, bare, lean, and feeble, ſo that his Stomach be good to meat; I will give you a Receipt, which (if you do duely obſerve my rules, juſtly as I ſhall deliver them) you ſhall get him up into *Fleſh* in twelve or fourteen days. *Fat Horſe.*

Firſt therefore take *Blook* from him, if you do find it groſs,

or Flegmatick, for otherwiſe he cannot poſſibly mend; then inſtead of Oates in the morning, you ſhall give him Wheat-bran, prepared after this manner. Set over the fire a great Kettle, and fill it almoſt full with fair water, and ſo ſoon as it boileth, put in your Wheat-bran, and ſo let it boyl a quarter of an hour at the leaſt; then take it off, and let it ſtand to cool, and about four or five in the morning give him of this Bran ſo hot as he can eat it, then for his drink give him of the ſame water, and at night give him Oates and white water, and let him be kept covered and littered warm, but if it be Summer, let not the Stable be too hot, but temperate, and at night give him with his Oates alſo the quantity of what you may convey into an Egg-ſhel of this Powder following, with which you muſt continue him the ſpace of eight days, or according as you ſhall ſee cauſe. You muſt underſtand that this Bran thus prepared, is the onely thing which drieth up his naughty, groſs, and corrupt *Humours*, and doth the better prepare the body to aſſume luſt, courage, ſtrength and fleſh, together with the help of the Powder, which is this,

Bran prepared.

Fat a lean Horſe.

Take of Comin, Fœnugreek, Sileris-Montani, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linſeed, of each two ounces, Quick-Brimſtone, ſix ounces, make all theſe into Powder, of this Powder, give him every night the quantity of an Egg-ſhel full, with his Oats, as I have before preſcribed, but he muſt be firſt watered with white water which ſo ſoon as he hath drunk let his whole *Body* be rubbed, then cloathed, and littered, which being done, then give him a ſmall ſheaf of Wheat-ſtraw, ſweet, good, and well threſhed into his Rack, and let him eat thereof by the ſpace of an hour; which done, give him Oats mixed with his Powder, which when he hath eaten, give him Hay at your pleaſure, remembring to keep him warm, but ſo as with moderation; and let him be alſo well rubbed, eſpecially againſt the Hair, and by this doing you ſhall ſoon perceive him to mend exceedingly, but you muſt put alſo into his Oates, together with its former Powder of Nettle-ſeed two handfuls every time, for that is the thing which principally will cauſe him to Battle: It will alſo greatly avail his amendment, if he be aired every morning and evening an hour after Sun-riſing, and an hour before Sun-ſet, if the wheather be warm, and the Sun do ſhine. *** And this I do aſſure you is the moſt exquſite courſe can be taken, whereby to

ſet

ſet up a lean *Horſe*, and to make a poor *Horſe* fat in little time, and with ſmall charge.

SECT. 5. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHat help have you for the falling of the Fundament?*

Hippoſ. This malady cometh to a *Horſe* ſometimes by cold, ſometimes through weakneſs and meer poverty, and ſometimes by means of a laxativeneſs and flux of *Blood*, when ſtraining to expel, the *Horſe* is not able, and by that means the *Fundament* cometh out, the cure is,

Falling of the Fundament.

Take white Salt, made into very fine Powder, ſtrew a little upon the Gut, then take a piece of Lard, and firſt having boiled Mallow-leaves till they be ſoft, take of theſe leaves and beat them well with the Lard, and when it is ſufficiently beaten, make it up like to a *Suppoſitory*, and apply it to the place every day once, till it be whole. *** This I have often tried.

SECT. 6. *F.*

Hippoph. *I Should be very glad to know what you can ſay of* Feavers?

Hippoſ. Sir, as touching *Feavers* in *Horſes*, I ſay that they be as ſubject to them, as man is, as alſo that theſe Feavers are of ſeveral natures, which cannot be denied, which may moſt eaſily be diſtinguiſhed and known, if you pleaſe diligently to obſerve. A Feaver cometh many times, either by intemperate riding or travel, or elſe through bad and unwholſome diet: And all *Feavers* for the moſt part have their ſourſe from theſe Effects, if you add thereunto evil Air.

SECT. 7. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHy* Hyppoſerus, *how do you define a* Feaver? Feaver *defined.*

Hippoſ. I define it thus. A *Feaver* is an unnatural and intemperate heat which beginneth at the Heart, dilateth it ſelf through all the Arteries and Veins of the whole Body of the *Horſe*, hindring all his natural motions: Howſoever ſome *Farriers* are pleaſed to make them more ſorts, then I will

will queſtion their *Phyſical* and learned diſtinctions, for I could never conclude them but in a few, as *Quotidian*, *Tertian*, *Quartan*, and *Peſtilent*, and yet all theſe be of one nature, albeit ſome more malignant then others be, onely a *Hectique Feaver* is of a different nature from the former, and ſo alſo a *Peſtilent Feaver* may be. Now as touching *Feavers* which come in the Spring, Summer, Autumn, or Winter, I cannot ſee why they ſhould be *Feavers* different in nature from theſe other, for there are not any of theſe, but may come to a *Horſe* in any of theſe Seaſons.

SECT. 8. *F.*

Hippoph. *From whence do Feavers proceed?*

Hippoſ. Firſt, Sir you muſt underſtand that *Feavers*, are of two ſorts, that is to ſay, Ordinary and Accidental. The ordinary Feavers are thoſe that come of Surfeits, over-riding, and labour, unwholſome meat, as moiſt, raw, mouldy, and muſty bread, corn, provender and hay, of what nature, ſort or condition ſoever; but your Feavers *Accidental* come of ſome terrible ſtroke or deep wound, bringing therewith inſufferable pain, dolour, and grief to the poor beaſt; again, your *Ordinary* Feavers come oft times by the extream violent ſcorching of the Sun, but moſt commonly in the *Canicular* days, as when your *Horſe* is abroad at Graſs, where is either want of water, or having ſuch as is neither good or wholſome, or elſe where is want of houſing ſhelter to go into, or ſhady Trees to be under, and ſuch kind of *Agues* do prove for the moſt part either *Hectick* or *Peſtilent Feavers*, for by that means his *Blood* becometh inflamed, whereby the *Humour of Choler* is predominate. Now Sir, if you be pleaſed to obſerve ſtrictly and carefully, you ſhall alſo find that Feavers do come many times alſo from a quite contrary cauſe; as from cold taken upon hard riding, or great labour, and by having at ſuch time cold water given him to drink, or by waſhing or walking, having ſweat much, or by being out too late in the criſp or putting in of the evening, or upon day breaking, eſpecially near or among Fenny, Mooriſh, or Mariſh grounds, by reaſon that naughty vapours do ariſe from ſuch kind of places. *Feavers* alſo do accrew to *Horſes* when upon hard riding and great toyl, you give your Horſe cold water drawn out of a Well, which being much colder

colder then either River or Pond water, doth more chill the the Horſe inwardly, whereby he is much more diſtempered, cauſing him to quake, and to ſhake exceedingly after his drink, which occaſioneth crudities, and an evil habit in the Stomach, which doth beget and ingenders an *Ague* or *Feaver*, wherefore after ſweating and great labour, I do adviſe you that whatſoever is given him, be firſt ſet over the fire to take away the chilneſs, whereby your Horſe may take the leſs damage, for that Feavers taken of this nature, do commonly prove peſtilent Feavers, whoſe nature is to infect all his fellows which are in the ſame Stable or Room with him, if he be not either ſpeedily removed from his conſorts, or elſe ſuddenly cured; and the reaſon hereof is moſt evident for that when as a Horſe hath been all the whole day travelled (eſpecially in the Winter) and brought into the Stable all hot and ſweating, when in ſhort time after his *Blood* and *Pores* begin to be ſettled, and to return to his Heart again, and to his Intrals, then if you give him cold water, you may inſtantly perceive him to fall into a formal quivering and ſhaking for a time, which being once paſſed over, you ſhall ſee him moſt palpably aſſume a moſt extreme and violent burning, and peradvanture after falls into a moſt deſperate ſweating, whereby is moſt eaſie to be found in him a general diſtemperature throughout his whole Body, together with a formal and dangerous Feaver, wherefore if the Farrier be not more expert, it may ſtick cloſer unto him, and remain longer by him then a buſhel of Oats will do. But a Feaver which doth proceed either from the corruption of the *Blood*; or from the contagion of the *Air*, (according as I have before intimated) that I ſay is moſt frequent, albeit not ſo well known to all *Farriers*, and I am able to affirm thus much of theſe kind of *Feavers* out of mine own long experience, that they are of that extreme violence, and ſo malignant, and their Poiſon of that infinite force, as that if through their own violence they be not able of themſelves to bring the creature viſited therewith to his end; yet will theſe convert their Malice into other mortal maladies and diſeaſes, which will in time prove as noxious, to wit, into the Yellows, Stavers, Glanders, Dropſie, Conſumption, Farcin, &c. unto which a peſtilent Feaver is evermore the precurſor: In ſo much as if the Farrier be not very skilful and cautelous in obſerving and knowing the true *Symptoms* of

theſe

these kind of diseases, he may easily instead of labouring to effect a Cure, through his misprision, mis-carry therein.

SECT. 9. *F.*

Hippoph. *What be the true* Symptoms or *signs whereby to know a* Feaver?

Feavers how to know.

Hippos. If you do observe him well, you shall perceive him so soon as he beginneth to be *Feavourish*, and when the fit first cometh upon him, to hang or hold down his *Head*, and if at first coming it beginneth with a cold fit, then will he quake and tremble, and when his cold fit is over, then will he glow and burn throughout his whole Body, his *Breath* will be very hot, and he will fetch his wind thick, and his *Nostrils* will be very open, and his *Flanks* will beat thick; he will forsake his meat, and reel oft times as he goeth, his *Eyes* will be swelled, they will water, and be mattrative, he will fall away and consume in his *Flesh*, his *Stones* will hang low, he will desire and offer oft to lie down, and yet being laid he will rise suddenly again, he will have great desire to drink, neither will he drink much, and yet you would think that all the water in the Thames would not be sufficient to quench his thirst, for he will covet evermore to keep his mouth in the water, albeit he will drink very little, and his sleep will go from him. And these are the best, most certain, and apparent *Symptoms* that I do know of a Feaver.

SECT. 10. *F.*

Feaver Ordinary.

Hippoph. *What are the best cures for these ordinary* Feavers?

Hippos. If the Feaver be *Quotidian* and daily, then take the yolks of three new laid Eggs, and beat them well with seven spoonfuls of the best Aqua vitæ, and put unto it of ordinary Treacle, a spoonfull, and so making it blood warm over a few hot embers, give it him, and then take his back and ride him until he do begin to sweat, and then bring him into the Stable, and cloath, whisp, and litter him warm, so as he may sweat an hour in the Stable, but then cool him by degrees, and let him fast three hours after, but let him *Blood* before you drench him, in the neck and mouth, and give him white water or Mashes. This drink would be given him one hour before the fit cometh. *** This is very good. Another, Take

Take white Wine one pint, of Aloes one ounce, made into fine Powder, of Agarick half an ounce, Anniſeeds and Licoriſh, of each one dram in fine Powder, and add thereto of life Honey one ſpoonful, let all theſe be made warm upon the fire, and ſo give him blood warm: Then take his back, and ride him into a good ſweat, and ſet him up, cloath him, litter him, and ſtop well his body, head, and breaſt, and let him ſweat ſo two hours, then by degrees cool him, and when he is cold let him be well rubbed and cloathed up again warm, but not to ſweat any more, and let him ſtand upon the Trench three hours after his ſweating, then unbit him, and waſh his tongue and mouth, with Alum, Vinegar, Sage, and water boiled together, that done, give him a little Wheat-ſtraw to eat, and an hour after a Gallon of ſweet, dry, and clean Oats, well dreſſed and ſifted, but lay not all at once before him, but three or four handfuls at a time continuing thus to feed him, till he hath eaten up his whole Gallon, and at night give him a ſweet Maſh. And the next morning let him bleed at the neck and mouth, the quantity of a quart or leſs, if the blood be good, but if you do find the blood to be black, thick, hot, inflamed, yellowiſh, frothy, or otherwiſe evil coloured, take then from him two quarts, after keep him warm, and let him purge, and for four or five days after, give him either warm Maſhes, or white water. *** This I have likewiſe known to be very good. Another,

Firſt let him blood in the Neck and Mouth, then,

Take Germander, Sallet-oyl, and life-Honey, of each four ounces, of Gum, Dragagant, dry red Roſes, of each one ounce; put theſe pounded and chopped very ſmall into good Ale a quart, and warm it, and ſo give it him, then ride him till he ſweat, and order him as the former cure. Of this I did never make tryal. Another,

Take of the tops of Time one handful, boyl theſe in a quart of Beer, until the Time do begin to wax tender and ſoft, then ſtrain it, and put to it, of brown Sugar-Candy, in Powder two penny-worth, Anniſeeds in fine Powder one penny-worth, and two penny-worth of ordinary Treacle, when all theſe are well diſſolved over the fire, give it your *Horſe* blood warm, but you muſt remember that you do let him blood before you do give him this drink, in the *Neck* and *Mouth*. *** This I have often tryed and found it right good. Another,

Take of ſtrong Ale one quart, and of Worm-wood half a handful, long Pepper, Grains, and the Powder of dried Rue, of each one ounce, London Treacle two ounces, boyl them to a third part, then take it off, and ſtrain it, that done put into it of brown Sugar-Candy in Powder, half an ounce, and ſo give it him blood warm. *** This at twice giving will certainly cure his Feaver. Another,

Take Stone-Crop, of the juyce thereof four ſpoonful, put this juyce into ſtrong Ale one quart, and ſo give it your Horſe, then let him be walked, (if the wind be not too cold and ſharp) an hour, then ſet him up, and cover him ſo as he may ſweat an hour, then cool him by degrees, and let him drink no cold water by any means, and let his Provender be good, old, dry, and well ſifted Oats, but againſt the fit cometh (whether the Feaver be *Quotidian*, *Tertian*, or *Quartan*) let him be kept faſting, for the longer he is faſting, and more empty upon his ſick days, the ſooner will his Feaver leave him. *** This is a well approved Receipt, and let this ſuffice for ordinary *Feavers*, provided that when his fits be gone from him, and that he appeareth more lightſome and well, it will be very good and wholſome for him if you cauſe him to be had abroad, and walked warm covered, and aired in due time, in the warm Sun, and that will greatly comfort him, and revive his Spirits.

SECT. 11. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHat ſay you now to the* Feaver Hectick?

Hippoſ. I ſay Sir, it is a moſt dangerous and mortal Feaver, and ſo malignant, as that if a skilful Farrier be not with him in time, it is certain death, and firſt it beginneth with a Conſumption in the fleſh, it proceedeth of a hot Humour ingendered firſt in the Stomach, which too much Phyſick hath occaſioned, and by taking away of too much Blood from him in his youth without neceſſity; wherefore it is a thing moſt perilous to take blood from young Horſes upon every ſlight cauſe, and not to be over ready with Phyſick, but only in caſe of great neceſſity. The ſigns to know this Feaver from any other, are to look in his mouth, and to draw forth his Tongue, and you ſhall find both his Mouth and Tongue raw, and marvellous hot, and having little Appetite

to

to meat, his flesh will consume and waste, and seem loose, if you strike him with your hand upon the buttocks, the flesh thereof will quiver and quake, and he will be continually subject to quaking and shaking all his whole body over: Besides he will be very much inclined to sweat as he standeth in the Stable. The cure is, First to make this Lotion for his mouth.

Take of running water, or Well water two quarts, and put thereto of Sage, of Yarrow, of Ribwort, of Plantane, of Bramble-leaves, and of Honey-sukcle-leaves, of each one handful, with common Honey one spoonful, boyl all these to the Consumption of one moiety, and a little before you take it from the fire, put to it the quantity of a Walnut of Allum, and two spoonful of Vinegar; when that is dissolved take it off, and drain the water from the herbs, or else slightly strain it, which water you shall keep for your use, and when you would wash his mouth therewith, fasten to a stick a ragg, and so wash his Mouth or Tongue twice or thrice a day, and this will make his Mouth well again; or else if you do wash his Mouth with the Sirrup of Mulberies, it is very wholsome and good. *** after give him this drink,

Take of Aloes one ounce powdred, of Garlick half an ounce, Anniseeds and Licorish of each half an ounce, make first your Aloes, Anniseeds, and Licorish into fine Powder, and after bruise your Garlick a little, putting thereto of Brown Sugar-Candy three ounces, in Powder, and add thereto of white Wine one pint; warm this, and so give it your Horse, then let him be ridden a little, and so set him up warm, and let him be set upon the Trench three hours before, and three hours after, and then either give him sweet Hay or green Corn, or the leaves of Sallowes, and towards night give him this drink every other day, for three mornings, continuing him with Mashes or white Water, and let his Oats be very well sifted, and in short time, he will do well again. *** With this Receipt I have cured sundry Horses, but then forget not to wash his Mouth daily with the aforesaid Lotion. But if in all these several *Feavers* you do find him either to be costive, and very hot in his body, then you may do well to administer that *Clister* prescribed you in *lib. 2. chap. 6. sect. 2. Clister 2. letter C.* *Feaver Hectick.*

SECT. 12. F.

Hippoph. *What say you now to a* Feaver Peſtilent?

Hippoſ. It is a diſeaſe moſt contagious, for it is ſo malignant, as that it will infect ſo many Horſes as be in the Stable where he ſtandeth, and it proceedeth from one of theſe two cauſes, *viz.* Either from an infectious Air, or from the Corruption of the Blood, inflamed by means of intemperate riding and exerciſe. The ſigns are theſe, the Horſe will hang down his Head in the Manger, as if he ſlept, his Eyes will water much, and inflammations will ariſe at the roots of the Ears, as if he had the Vives.

Feaver Peſtilent. The beſt cure I ever knew was this, with which I have cured many Horſes, viſited with a Peſtilent Feaver; firſt let him bleed well in the Neck-vein, reſerving the Blood in a clean Baſon, which when it is cold will be very bad, and ill-coloured, then waſh his *Mouth* with the Lotion ſpecified in the precedent Section, Secondly apply to the Temple this Plaiſter.

Take of Camomile, of Goats-milk, of the juyce of Sage, of Sallet-oyl, of white Wine-vinegar of each four ſpoonful, of Red-roſe-leaves dried one handful, which muſt be either of a Red-roſe-cake, or otherwiſe Red-roſe-leaves dried: Beat them all in a Morter till they become one body, and ſo thick as that you may ſpread it Plaiſter-wiſe upon a linnen cloath, then ſtrew upon the Plaiſter two or three Nutmegs made into fine Powder, then make it good and hot, putting the back-ſide of the Plaiſter into a Pewter-diſh, over a Chafing-diſh of Coals, and ſo adminiſter it warm to the Horſe; for his drink let it be ſuch water wherein have been boiled Violet-leaves, Mallows, and Sorrel, but if the fit do hold him violently, then

Take of London-Treacle three ounces, and diſſolve it in Muskadine, one pint, and ſqueeze into it the juyce of two or three good Lemons, and ſo adminiſter it with a horn: And this will preſently put the fit from him, for the preſent. The Nature of this Feaver is ſo malignant, and ſo contagiouſly hot, as that it will furr the Mouth exceedingly, and cauſe ulcers and ſores to breed in the Mouth and Throat: Wherefore you ſhall do the more carefully, if every day you do look into his Mouth, and if you can perceive it to be furred, and clammy, then fail

you

you not to wash his Mouth and Tongue, either with the Sirrup of Mulberries, or the Lotion water taught you in the precedent Section, and if through his great heat you do find your Horses body to be costive, then shall you administer this Clister.

Take of new Milk, and of Sallet-oyl, of each half a pint, and of the decoction of Mallows, and of Violets of each one pint, adding thereto of Sene one ounce, and of Century half an ounce, administer this Clister Blood-warm, and by thus ordering your Horse, you will infallibly cure him of his *Feaver Pestilent*; for I my self have cured many, and I never failed in any one. *** Provided you do give him during the time of his Physick, continually morning and evening, either sweet Mashes, or white water, and be also dieted and ordered as is fitting for a Horse that is in Physick.

SECT. 13. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHat Disease is that which of some is called the* Flying Worm?

Hippos. This malady is the same which the *French Marishals* do call *ver volant*, which we in *England* do call a *Tetter* or *Ring-worm*, and by reason it runneth up and down the body upon the skin, it is called by the name of the *Flying Worm.* It cometh by a heat in the Blood, whereby is ingendered a bilous, sharp or hot Humour which breedeth to a *Tetter* or *Ring-worm*, but most commonly it seizeth the Rump of the Horse, running down all along the joynts, till it get into the Tail, where I have known it to remain so long, until such time as it came to be a *Canker*: But yet sometimes again, it will seize some fleshy part of the body of a Horse, and so torment him through its continual itching, as that the Horse will (with frequent rubbing himself against Posts, Pales, Trees, and Walls. &c.) as also with his Teeth (if he can come to the place) bring away the hair, yea the skin and flesh also. And this disease many ignorant Farriers have taken to be nought else but the Louse of a Hog, which to kill or destroy, they only apply a little Sope; but I have often known it to prove another thing, *viz.* a formal *Ring-worm* or *Tetter.* It is easily known by the falling away of the hair, by reason of the Horses

continual

continual ſcrubbing when it is in the fleſhy part, but if it get into the joynt betwixt the top of the Rump and the Tail, then you ſhall know it by a kind of Scab, which you may with your finger feel, and if you ſcrape or pick it away, then will iſſue forth by little and little a kind of thin water, which being let long run, will in time run down into his Tail, from joynt to joynt, and there become a *Canker*, as I ſaid before; wherefore to prevent this inconvenience, if the *Tetter* be in the joynt, then,

Flying worm or Tetter.

Take of Precipitate two drams, and put it into a ſmall Vial-glaſs with fair water, much more then will cover the Powder, keeping it cloſe ſtopped, and with this water waſh the place every day once, and it will infallibly cure it. And always ſo ſoon as you have dreſſed the ſorrance with this water, and ſtopped it up again cloſe, then ſhake it together, and ſo let it remain until its next dreſſing, which ought to be twice a day. But if the *Tetter* or *Ring-worm* be in any fleſhy part, it is killed by bathing the ſorrance in the juyce of Southern-wood, Maudlin, and Rue, of each like much ſtamped together and ſtrained, and ſo let the place be waſhed and bathed therewith every day once or twice, till it be whole. *** I have thus cured many *Tetters*.

SECT. 14. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to keep a Horſe that he be not tormented with* Flies?

Hippoſ. Theſe *Flies* are a vermine which are more bold then welcome to a Horſe, for what by their buzzing, their biting, and ſtinging, they do infinitely annoy and afflict the poor beaſt, cauſing him many times to falter in his travel, and loſe his pace, and moſt commonly through his nodding and other evil poſtures and geſtures, provoked by theſe Flies, they cauſe him ſo to fret, as to loſe his rain and comely carriage of his body, whereby he hath been much undervalued; beſides in his travel theſe Flies do ſo cauſe him to fret and fume, that he both overtoyleth himſelf in his way, cauſing him to ſweat ſo much, as that he loſing his mettle, hath many times thereby inflamed his Blood, and brought upon himſelf ſickneſs, together with a diſtemperature throughout his whole body.

So

So likewiſe being at Graſs, at what time the Fly is too buſie, they do provoke him to run, and to ſcope about, by which means he being many times very full, it cauſeth crudities and raw digeſtions to ariſe in his Stomach, which breedeth Surfeits, or other maladies; wherefore for prevention thereof,

Take the leaves of Gourdes, Pumpions, or wild, or Garden Cucumbers, ſtamp them, and ſtrain them, and with the juyce thereof waſh your Horſe all over, and the Flies will not come nigh him. *** Of this I have made often tryal. Another,

Take an Apple of Colliquintida, and ſlice or ſhred it into ſmall pieces, and boyl it in Oyl de Bay, and ſo anoint your Horſe therewith, and the Flies will not approach him. *** This is alſo good. Another,

Take Mallows, ſtamp and ſtrain them, and with the juyce thereof waſh your Horſe, and it will keep away the Flies. *** This is an approved good thing alſo. Another,

Take Verdegreaſe made into very fine Powder, and boyl it in Vinegar, and waſh him therewith, being careful that none get into his Eyes or Ears. *** This is the beſt, and will laſt longeſt.

SECT. 15. *F.*

Hippoph. *What is good to mollifie the* Foot *of a* Horſe?

Hippoſ. If your Horſe hath been foundred, and that after being cured, his *Soles* and *Hoofs* do wax dry and hard, they be either ſhrunk, or in peril of ſhrinking, then firſt take off his ſhooes, and let him be pared ſomewhat cloſe, but not too near; which done, with Bee-wax molten anoint the ſoles with the ſaid molten Wax, with a Gooſe-feather, and ſo ſet on his ſhooes again, then three days after,

Take tryed Hogs-greaſe and Tarr of each four ounces, of fat Pitch and of Turpentine, of each two ounces, melt and mix all theſe together, and firſt ſtop his Feet therewith, and after anoint the Coffin of the Hoofs good and thick with the ſame Receipt. And this is the beſt mollifier can be had in a cure of of this nature. *** I have often uſed it. *Feet to mollifie.*

SECT.

SECT. 16. *F.*

Hippoph. *What remedy have you for the* Fig *in the* Foot of a Horſe?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe is ſo called by reaſon of that naughty fleſh which groweth upon the fruſh or heel, which is in likeneſs and ſhape of a Fig, from whence this malady and ſorrance taketh its denomination; and the French alſo give it the very ſame Epitheton, viz. *la Figne*, which ſignifieth a *Fig*. It cometh by means of ſome hurt which the Horſe hath formerly received in his Foot (which was not well headed) by ſome nail, ſtub, thorn, bone, or ſtone, and oft times by ſome over-reach, upon the heel or fruſh. It is apparent to the Eye, and therefore needs no other Remonſtrance. The cure is,

Fig in the Foot. Cut away the Hoof, ſo as there may be a convenient ſpace betwext the Sole and the Hoof, to the end the *Fig* may the more eaſily be cured, then put to the ſorrance a piece of Spunge which you muſt bind cloſe upon the *Fig*, which will eat it off to the very root, then heal up the ſore with the green Ointment taught you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 10. *ſect* 4. *G.* *** This I have found good. Another,

Cut away the *Fig* cloſe, either with your Inciſion-knife, or elſe burn it off with a hot Iron (which is the better way) and ſo lay unto it for two days after tryed Hogs-greaſe to take away the fire.

Take then the tops of the moſt angry young Nettles you can find, pound them very ſmall, and ſo lay them upon a linnen cloath, juſt the bigneſs of the *Fig*, then take the Powder of Verde-greaſe, and ſtrew it upon the chopped Nettles (which muſt be done before you lay it to the ſorrance) and ſo bind it upon the ſorrance, renewing it every day once, till the Hoof have re-recovered the ſore. *** This I do know to be a moſt certain cure, for it never did fail me.

SECT. 17. *F.*

Hippoph. *But now what ſay you to a* Fiſtula? *How do you cure that?*

Hippoſ. A *Fiſtula* is a hollow Ulcer which maketh its way crooked,

crooked, proceeding oft times from naughty and malignant Humours; ſometimes it is ingendred from ſome wound which hath not been well healed; ſometimes it cometh by means of a ſtripe, which having been ſtrongly laid on, that it hath bruiſed the fleſh to the bone, whereby it hath putrified inwardly, and either brake forth of it ſelf, or was opened by the Farrier; and thus it cometh to be a *Fiſtula*; ſometimes it cometh by a wrench, or pinch with a Collar in drawing, or by being wrung by the Tree of a bad Saddle; and ſometimes it gendreth of its own accord by the means of peccant and bilous Humours, which hath long lain lurking in the body of the Horſe. The ſigns how to know it are ſo manifeſt, as that it needeth not an *Ecce*. The way how to cure it, is to ſearch to the bottom either with a probe of lead, or elſe with ſome other thing which will bend and yield which way ſoever the concavity of the ſorrance leadeth it: And when you have found the bottom thereof, let it be opened down-wards, if it may poſſibly be done, to the end the Corruption may the better iſſue from the place; then taint for two or three days with tryed Hogsgreaſe, thereby to cauſe the hole to be wider, and then inject this water following:

Fiſtula.

Take of Sublimate, and of Precepitate, of each ſo much as will lie upon a three pence, of Allum, and of white Coperas, of each three ounces, burn all theſe in an Earthen-pot, but firſt rub the bottom with a little Oyl, that it may not burn there; this done burn them all together, then take of fair clear water, two quarts, boyl this water firſt by it ſelf, and ſcum it in the boyling, then take it from the fire, and put in as much of this Powder as will lie upon a ſhilling at twice, and thus it is made. But if you be deſirous to make this water of more ſtrength and efficacy, take then fair water, and Coltrough or Smiths water, of each like much, and of white Wine-Vinegar a third part, and with the aſhes of Aſhen-wood, make lye of them, with the water and Vinegar, and ſo make your water with this Powder and lye, and the former ingredients, according as before is taught you. Inject this water with a Syringe into the ſorrance, and in ſhort time it will kill the Fiſtula, and heal it up.

*** This is a moſt approved and infallible cure. Another,

Take of the beſt Honey one pint, of Verdegreaſe one ounce, make it into fine Powder, and ſo boyl them together upon a ſoft fire, three quarters of an hour; that done, ſtrain it into a Gally-pot, and ſo keep it for your uſe. *** This is a moſt precious unguent wherewith to taint a Fiſtula or Poll-evil, for it goeth down to the bottom, it eateth away all dead and evil fleſh, whereby to cauſe that the carnifying fleſh may heal the better. *** This I have often tryed. I have alſo another *Ægyptiacum*, which I make thus,

Take Honey one pint, white Wine-vinegar half a pint. Allum three ounces, and Verdegreaſe finely powdred, one ounce and half, boyl all theſe together till it be thick; this is a good *Ægyptiacum*. But if you deſire to make it yet ſtronger, then put to theſe Ingredients of Mercury, Sublimate in fine Powder one ounce, and of Arſenick three ſcruples powdred alſo, and ſo boyl them with the former Ingredients. This laſt will kill any Fiſtula or old Ulcer whatſoever being dreſſed therewith: But the other which is made only of Vinegar, Allum, and Verdegreaſe, may be applyed to a Fiſtula in the mouth, without prejudice to the Horſe. *** Of both theſe I have made often tryal.

SECT. 18. *F.*

Hippoph. *HAve you not ſome good water beſide, wherewith to waſh a* Fiſtula *or old ſore?*

Hippoſ. I can give you a moſt excellent water, which is this,

Take white Wine-vinegar four pints, of Camphire and of Mercury Precipitate, of each half an ounce, green Treacle three ounces, red Sage, Yarrow, and Ribwort, of each one handful, of Honey, and of Hogs-greaſe, of each half a pound, boyl all theſe together until the one half be conſumed, and then ſtrain it, and ſo waſh and cleanſe the wound with the Liquor. *** This is ſpecial good. Another no whit inferiour to the former.

Take of Coaltrough water, four quarts, firſt boyl it by it ſelf a good while, and ſcum it ſo long as any ſcum doth arife,

ariſe, then ſtrain it through a fine cloath into a clean pot, and throw away the grounds, which will be black and naught, then waſh the Poſtnet clean wherein it was boyled, and put in your water again. Then take of white Copperas, of Allum and of Verdegreaſe, of each one pound; beat them all into fine Powder, and put them into the water, and boyl them all together, and when it is boyled as much as will ſuffice, which will ſoon be done, let it ſtand to ſettle a while, then pour the clear into a Glaſs, being firſt cold enough, and ſo keep it for your uſe. But the Powder which remaineth in the bottom, you may dry and keep in a box by it ſelf, for it will heal and dry up any ſore or Ulcer. This water being injected with a Syringe of Wood or Pewter will cure any *Fiſtula* whatſoever, if it may come to the bottom thereof. *** Of this water I have had great experience. But you muſt underſtand that theſe ſeveral Waters will only kill the cankerous Humour of the *Fiſtula*, and therefore after the Malice thereof is quelled, you muſt heal up the ſorrance with the green Oyntment preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 10. *ſect.* 4. *G.* or elſe with ſome carnifying Salve or Unguent. Another,

Search the depth thereof with your Probe, as before is taught you, but be certain you find the bottom, then if the bottom be where you may boldly make Inciſion, do it, and that ſo wide as that you may thruſt in your finger to feel whether any bone or griſtle be periſhed, or whether there be any Spungy, looſe, dead, or proud fleſh therein, which muſt firſt be gotten forth either by Inciſion, or by corroſive; then take of common Honey four ounces, and of Verdigreaſe one ounce, made into fine Powder; boyl theſe together, keeping it always boyling, and ſtirring it till it look red, then with a taint of Hurds taint it to the bottom, and make it ſo faſt that it get not forth, and renew the taint every day once, till it have done mattering, making the taint every day ſhorter then other, and ſprinkle upon it a little flaked Lime. But if you cannot come to taint it to the bottom of the *Fiſtula*, then take ſtrong Lye, Honey, Roch Allum, white Mercury, of each as much as will ſuffice, and boyl them together, and inject it to the very bottom of the *Fiſtula*,

ſtula, and it will kill it. *** But if the *Fiſtula* be in the *Head*, then,

Take the juyce of Houſeleek, and dip a lock of black Wool into it, and put the ſame into his *Ears*, and ſo ſtitch them up, renewing it every day till it be whole. This cure hath been highly recommended unto me, but I never had opportunity to make proof thereof. Another,

Take Roman Vitriol, Roch Allum, and Roſe-Water, of each two ounces, boyl all theſe on a quick fire, till they come to be as hard as a ſtone, then beat it into fine Powder, and when you dreſs the ſore, make a taint, which being dipped in Unguentum *Ægyptiacum*, rowl it then in this Powder, and ſo convey the end of your taint down to the very bottom of the *Fiſtula*. This is the beſt way alſo to cure a *Poll-evil*, and this Powder being laid upon an old ſore, will both heal and dry it up. *** This I only made twice proof of, the firſt time to a *Fiſtula*, and the ſecond time to *Poll-evil*, both which cures I perfected. But now you would gladly know how to ripen and break a *Fiſtula*, wherefore

Take Brook-lime, Mallows, Arſmart, of each like much, boyl them in old Chamber-lye, till the herbs be very ſoft, and apply theſe herbs to the ſwelling, neither do you renew it in two or three days, and then it will both ripen and break any Impoſtume. *** This I have often uſed, and found very good. And let this ſuffice for this malady.

SECT. 19. *F.*

Hippoph. *NOw let us come to the* Feet, *How do you cure the* Fetlock *being hurt?*

Hippoſ. If this ſorrance cometh by any wound, by the biting of a Dog, or by being caſt in a Halter, then the beſt way to cure the ſame is,

Take unſlaked Lime, and the yolk of an Egg, of each like much, beat them together to a Salve or Unguent, then mix therewith the juyce of one head of Garlick, and a little Soot, and with this anoint the ſore till it be almoſt whole, then to *skin* the ſame.

Take Sallet-oyl, and oyl of Roſes, of each one ounce,

of

of Turpentine three ounces, and of new wax one ounce, melt them all together, and add to it a fourth part of the Powder, Verdegreaſe, and herewith anointing the ſore, in few days it will heal it, and skin it up very ſoundly. *** This is a very well approved Receipt. But if your Horſe have gotten a ſore Foot by means of any channel nail, or bruiſe, by treading upon a ſtone, which after rankleth inwardly, or by other accident; then firſt raiſe the skin with your Cornet, and lay upon the ſorrance, Wheat-flower and Bores-greaſe well incorporate together, and dreſs him therewith twice a day, for two days together, and at the ſecond days end,

Take the Powder of quick lime, Soap, and Tallow, and mix them well together, and for three days or more apply it to the place; dreſſing it alſo twice a day, then waſh the wound with hot Vinegar, and put upon it Caprinel, till it be whole. This I never tryed. But if the Hoof do weep, or froath by ſending forth thine, watry, or froathy ſtuff; then open the top thereof with your Cornet, ſo as the wound may become hollow round about the extremities thereof, ſo far forth as that you may come to the Maſter vein, to break it in ſunder; which done, let it bleed at pleaſure what it will, and when the vein hath ſtanched, fill up the wound with Salt finely Powdred, then take Hurds and ſteep them in Vinegar, and ſo ſtop the wound therewith and bind thereto a cloath to keep the ſame from falling away, and it will cure it. *** But if the *Sole* be *Hoof*, and in danger to fall away, draw it round 'twixt the Sole and the Hoof with your drawing Iron, and ſo take out the Sole quite, and then ſuffer his Foot to bleed well, then apply to it this Plaiſter.

Frothy or weeping Hoof.

Take the whites of Eggs, and beat them a little, and ſo laying them upon Hurds, apply it to the Foot, and bind it on, that it fall not off, and let it remain on ſo by the ſpace of two days, which ended open it, and waſh the Foot with ſtrong Vinegar warmed, and then fill the Sole with the Powder of Salt and Tartar mixed together, and ſo bind it up with the Hurds ſteeped in ſtrong Vinegar, and thus dreſs it till it be whole. Theſe two Receipts were taught me by a famous Farrier of *Paris* in *France*, but I never had occaſion to make uſe of it, howbeit I eſteem them to be very good. But if your

your Horſe be foundred in the Feet, and that he hath not been foundred above four days then with this enſuing Receipt you may eaſily ſet him upright, and make him ſound again in four days more. The Cure is this,

Foundring in the Feet.

Firſt, let him blood in the Neck, Breaſt, and Spur-veins, and take from him of blood two quarts, which you muſt receive in a Baſon, or other clean Veſſel, with which make this Charge as followeth,

Take the blood, and put into it eight new laid Eggs, ſhells and all, beat them well with the blood, put to it of Bolearmoniack in fine Powder half a pound, ſtrong white Wine-Vinegar one pint, Sanguis Draconis three ounces, in fine Powder, make this up with Wheat-meal good and thick, ſo much as will ſuffice, with this charge his Back, Reins, Breaſt, Thighes, Fetlocks, and Soles, and ſpread two cloaths Plaiſter-wiſe, good and thick and apply them to the Coffin of his Hoofs and bind the forelegs above the Knees good and ſtreight, with broad Filletting or Liſts, then ride him two hours upon a hard way, which if it be paved or pitcht is the better, his Feet having been pared reaſonable neer before hand, and when you do bring him into the Stable, let his Feet be ſtopped with this Charge.

Take Rye, or Wheat-bran, Ox or Cow-dung, Sheeps-ſuet, Turpentine (which muſt be put in laſt) let your Sheeps-ſuet be of the fat of the Loyn of Mutton, and minced very ſmall; melt and heat all theſe upon the fire, and mix them very well in the heating, and then put in your Bran to make it into a ſtiff Paſte, all which being through hot, then laſt of all put in your Turpentine, and ſo incorporate all very well together, with this ſtop your Horſe, who being thus three or four days charged and ſtopped, ridden and kept warm, and not ſuffered to drink cold water, but either Maſhes or White water, he will be ſound in four or ſix days. *** This is a moſt excellent Receipt, for with it I have recovered many foundred Horſes. If it be a dry foundring, eſpecially with too long ſtanding in the Stable, then firſt pare him ſomewhat neer, and let him bleed well in the Toe veins, then,

Take Eggs and roſt them blew hard, raked up in the hot Embers,

Embers, and together with the Powder of Commin, ſtop his Feet therewith ſo hot as they may be taken out of the Embers, and put over the Sole a piece of Leather with ſplents cloſe, to keep the Eggs that they come not forth.

Take then a great Onion, pill and ſtamp it, and let it infuſe or ſteep four and twenty hours together before, in the ſtrongeſt white Wine-Vinegar you can get, ſo much as will ſuffice, ſo that it may be in readineſs againſt you have ſtopped your Horſe, which muſt be given him to drink with a horn faſting, and after let him be warm covered, littered, let him ſtand upon the Trench three hours, and after that you may give him meat, and white water. *** This is a moſt approved good cure. If your Horſe have been long foundred, as a month or better, to make a perfect cure, and to ſet him up ſound again, it is needful the Soles of his Feet be taken out, by which means, new and better will come in their Room, wherefore when you do intend to take them off, have in a readineſs theſe things, *viz.*

Take the tender tops of Iſope three handfuls, pound them to a maſh in a Morter, wherewith to ſtanch his bleeding, then have alſo further in a readineſs this Receipt. *Foundred long.*

Take Snails in the ſhells, and break the ſhells ſo much as will ſuffice, and take forth the Snails, and reſerve them, then take Bay-ſalt one handful, and of the tender tops of the angrieſt red Nettles you can find, two or three good handfuls, beat them with your Snails and Salt in a Morter to a very Salve, then take out the Sole, then preſently ſtanch the bleeding with your Iſope, and ſo ſoon as the Foot leaveth bleeding, apply to the Foot your other medicine, of Snails, Salt, and Nettles, and ſo bind up the Foot with cloaths, and ſo let it remain four and twenty hours, then open it, and heal up the ſorrance with your green Ointment taught you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 10. *ſect.* 4. and within two days you ſhall ſee a new Sole coming. *** This is right good.

But if he be foundred both in Feet and Body at once, and the ſame time, as it falleth out oft times, through indiſcreet and immoderate riding, by a moſt violent heat given him, whereby the blood is become inflamed, and his greaſe molten: Then firſt rake him, and give him the Cliſter preſcribed you *Foundred in the Feet and Body.*

in

in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 11. *ſect.* 8. *C. Cliſter.* 8. and the next day let him Blood in the Neck-vein to a good quantity, reſerving the blood, and keeping it from clotting, by continual ſtirring till it be cold; reſerve I ſay of this blood half a pint, by it ſelf, to put into his drink and the reſidue keep wherewith to make a Charge; Now for his drink, let it be thus made,

Take of good Sack one pint, of the blood you ſaved for his drink half a pint, of *London* Treacle, and of Diapente, of each one ſpoonful, and of mans ordoure, warm as it cometh from him, the quantity of a Walnut, brew and mix all theſe well together, and give it him to drink blood warm. This drink thus given, Charge him with this Charge.

Take the reſidue of the blood you kept, and put unto it twelve new laid Eggs with their ſhells, and beat them together, then put thereunto Bolearmoniack in Powder four ounces, Vinegar half a pint, Sanguis Draconis in Powder three ounces, and with Wheat-meal thicken to a convenient Charge. Charge his Back, Breaſt, Loins, Legs, and Feet herewith, both above and beneath the Knees, laying it on againſt the Hair. This done, then

Take unſlaked Lime, and Orpiment, of each like much, q. s. and diſſolve them in running water, and let it ſtand two good hours, and after it is thus prepared, take as much Matroſetum as will bring it to a thick ſubſtance, which being made good and hot, anoint the Coffins of his Hoofs therewith, eſpecially about the Cronets, and ſtop alſo the Soles of his Feet with the ſame medicine, and if you let him blood in the Toe-veins well, it will be the better, and he will be the ſooner, better, and ſounder cured. *** This way have I cured two Horſes foundred in the Body and Feet, never having applyed it but into thoſe two only; But if your Horſe be Hoof-bound, then

Take Turpentine and Sheeps-ſuet, of each half a pound, Wax a little, as much as will ſuffice, Sallet-oyl half a pint; boyl all theſe together, but put in your Turpentine laſt, and as theſe boyl, keep them with continual ſtirring, and herewith anoint his Hoofs once a day well, or once in two days, and he will do well. *** But if it be but an ordinary heat in the Feet newly taken, then

Take Wheat-bran and Hogs-greaſe, and make them to a Poultiſs,

Poulteſs, and apply it as well to the Coffins, as the Soles, and he will be well again. Theſe two latter Receipts a worthy Knight taught me, but as yet I never made uſe, but of the former, which I have found very good. *Hoof bound.*

SECT. 20. *F.*

Hippoph. *But yet*, Hippoſerus, *you have not ſhewed me how this malady cometh.*

Hippoſ. That was but forgotten, Sir, I will now therefore do it. A foundring in the Feet cometh evermore after great and over violent labour, whereby the whole Body is become diſtempered, the peccant and malignant Humours ſtirred, the blood inflamed, and the Greaſe molten, which falling down into his Feet, there ſetleth, and in a ſhort time after, to wit, in twenty four hours the poor creature is hardly able to ſtand, or if he do, it is after a very feeble manner, holding his four Feet together, ſo as you may eaſily with your hand throw him to the ground; beſides, he will ſtand trembling, quaking, and ſhaking, as if he had a ſhaking Ague, nor would he ſtand at all, unleſs he be enforced, for the Soles and Coffins of his Feet will be ſo ſore, his joynts and ſinews ſo ſtiff and benummed, that he cannot ſtand but with very much anguiſh and pain: Wherefore if he may have his mind, he would always be lying, and his whole Body will be diſtempered, and ſo much abound with heat, as rather to deſire cold water, rather then meat, which if it be given him, then will he quake and quiver anew, and be in ſuch pangs for the time, as that you would think he would aſſuredly die. This diſeaſe cometh alſo to a Horſe by being watered when he is very fat, and ridden till he do ſweat, cauſing him to take ſudden cold therewith: Alſo after a great heat taken, to be ſet up without exerciſe upon the cold Planks, without litter, or to be waſhed, or walked after great labour: The Horſe being very hot and ketty, (for this infirmity falleth moſt commonly upon fat Horſes, but very ſeldom upon lean) alſo to water your Horſe in ſhallow places, or waters where the water aſcends not higher then his *Paſterns* by which means through the ſudden coldneſs of the water at his Feet, cauſeth

the molten Greaſe deſcending unto the Feet, to cake and congeal, which is the prime ground of this malady. And this not only my ſelf, but all the moſt perite Farriers do with an unanimous aſſent acknowledge. And therefore I do admoniſh you and every man, who is a Horſes friend,

1 Firſt, to be very careful not to exerciſe his Horſe too ſoon after his taking up from Graſs.

2 Secondly, whilſt he is very fat, that do not over-travel, over-labour, or over-toyl him.

3 Thirdly, that having travelled hard, and to prevent his foundring, let him be more gently ridden an hour before he cometh to his lodging, to the end he may be cool, and the more free from danger.

4 Fourthly, if one hour before you get to your lodging, you ride him into ſome River, or other watring place up to the Belly, (but not deeper) then water him by degrees, ſtill betwixt every draught, ſtirring and removing him a little, it would not be amiſs; but then ſo ſoon as you be come forth of the water, it were very good you did continue him in the ſame pace, going neither faſter nor ſlower, (like as I have before inculcated) it will be the better alſo, and your Horſe out of danger of foundring.

5 Fifthly, forbear evermore (eſpecially if your Horſe be heated) to water him in any ſhallow place.

6 Sixthly, beſide his being warm ſet up with litter enough, let him have ſtore of rubbing, as well of his Legs as Body, for it is a moſt wholſome thing, it diſſolveth molten Greaſe very much, and it doth diſſipate and ſend away bad Humours.

7 Laſtly, picking and ſtopping of his Feet in time of journeying, and after, is very good and profitable. And thus have I ſhewed by what means this malady cometh to the Horſe, howſoever many other ways there are, which I have touched, by reaſon they are ſo vulgarly known to every man, and therefore your ſelf cannot be ignorant of them.

SECT. 21. *F.*

Hippoph. HOw *do you help the* Foundring *in the* Body?

Hippoſ. This cometh oft times by eating too

too much Provender whilſt the Horſe is yet very hot, ſuddenly given him after great labour, whereby his meat not being well digeſted, from whence doth occaſion crudities, raw digeſtion, and the evil habit in and about the Stomach, whereby many ill Humours, are ingendred, which will ſoon be diffuſed throughout the whole Body, by which means the very vigour and ſtrength of the Horſe becometh to be much decayed, and in a manner quite loſt, enfeebling every joynt and member in ſuchwiſe, as to loſe almoſt the uſe of going; and being once laid not able to riſe again without help; nor can he either dung or ſtale, but with mickle pain. Foundring in the Body cometh alſo ſometimes, when by travelling and the Horſe very hot, you ſuffer him then to drink his fill of cold water, and after do not give him exerciſe enough, which might warm the ſame in his Belly; wherefore it is moſt certain that the Greaſe being molten, and the Blood inflamed, the Humours being ſtirred and diſſolved, will preſently reſort to its Center, which if they once ſettle in the Body, it muſt be in and about the Heart, if not, they then muſt down lower; to wit, either to the Legs or Feet, and there reſiding, ingender theſe and ſuch like maladies, whereof we have entreated; wherefore by eating and drinking out of its due ſeaſon, begetteth an evil habit of the Stomach, ſo as if oftentimes preſent cure be not had, the Horſe becometh deſperatly ſick, which ſickneſs will mathematically uſher in his death. Now the ſigns whereby to know when a Horſe is Foundred in his Body be theſe: The Hair will ſtare, and he will be very chill, he will ſhiver and ſhake after cold water, and whilſt he is drinking the water ſome of it will iſſue out of his Noſe, and after two or three days his Legs will ſwell, eſpecially his hinder Legs, and after a while they will begin to pill, he will begin to have a dry cough at firſt, but after it will be more moiſt, and then his Eyes will water, and his Noſe run with white Flegmatick ſtuff, and he will forſake his meat, and his Head will ſo much pain him, as that he will not be able to hold it out of the Manger, and ſeem as if he were always ſleeping, &c.

SECT. 22. *F.*

Hippoph. *From whence proceedeth this word* Foundring?

Hippoſ. From the French word *Fundus*, which is melting, which word we many times uſe in our Language, and therefore when through extreme toyl and labour of riding or other exerciſe, the Greaſe is diſſolved, and falls to running, we ſay then that the Horſes Greaſe is molten, and that he is foundred; for whereas the French calleth foundring in the body *Morfundu*, it is none other thing with us then plain foundring, or a Surfeit given in the body of a Horſe. As for the cure, the beſt way is, and moſt agreeable to Art, to purge him, but not in that violent manner, as we uſe in caſe of other diſeaſes, but firſt to rake him, then to adminiſter to him this Cliſter.

Take of Mallowes three handfuls, and boyl them in fair water two quarts to one quart, then ſtrain it and put to it freſh ſweet Butter ſix ounces, and of Sallet-oyl half a pint, and ſo adminiſter it to him Cliſter-wiſe blood-warm; that done, walk him up and down in the warm Sun, or in ſome warm Houſe, until he do begin to empty himſelf, then keep him faſting three or four hours, keeping him warm, and to a Stomach for three or four days, but let him have but that one Cliſter only, and let all his Hay be ſprinkled with water, and let his drink be either ſweet Maſhes or white water, which when he hath drunk, give him the Malt or Bran to eat, and let his Provender be very little for fourteen days after, eſpecially if his diſeaſe came through glut of Provender: Nevertheleſs the day after his Cliſter, give him this cordial drink,

Take of Muskadine one quart, of Sugar two ounces, of Life-Honey four ounces, of Cinamon half an ounce, Licoriſh and Anniſeeds, of each one ſpoonful; all theſe made into fine Powder, put them into the Muskadine, and warm them on the fire till they be diſſolved, and then give it him blood-warm, then walk him in the Sun or warm Houſe an hour, then ſet him upon the Trench warm cloathed and littered, and ſo let him ſtand three hours faſting, unleſs ſometimes you put

a

a little Armen into his mouth, then give him Hay ſprinkled with water, and after an hour a ſweet Maſh, or white water, and then a few Oates well ſifted and duſted, and this by a little at once, remembring to take blood from the Neck-vein, the ſame morning you give him this drink, and that a little before he taketh it, and prick him alſo in the mouth, and the next day after this drink, perfume his head with Storax, Benjamin, and Frankinſence, and ſo order him according as you in your diſcretion ſhall think to be moſt meet, only remember to Air him every day abroad if there be no wind, (for wind is hurtful to him) and thus doing you may recover him, and make him a ſound Horſe again. *** This is ſingular good. Another,

Firſt give him this Cliſter, take the flowers of Melelote, Anniſeeds and Licoriſh, Linſeeds, Sileris Montani, of each half an ounce, Polipodium of the Oak two ounces and half, Agnus Caſtus one handful, the Herb Mercury, Mallows, Pillitory of the wall, Branca urſina of three handfuls, make a decoction of all theſe, letting it boyl to a quart, then put to it of red Wax one ounce and a half, of Caſſia newly drawn three ounces, of Diafennicon, two ounces of Benedicta, one ounce of Oyl of Nuts, as much as will ſuffice, and of all theſe make your Clyſter according to Art, which you ſhall give to your horſe ſo ſoon as you do ſuppoſe or ſuſpect him to droop, and after this Clyſter hath done working, give him the drink preſcribed in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 9. *ſect.* 10. *F.* which is very proper and good, provided you do adminiſter it as ſoon as you do perceive your Horſe to be foundred in the body, and withal adding to the drink the juyce of three great Onions well beaten and ſtrained into white Wine, and that he be dreſſed, aired, ridden, and ordered as is fitting and uſual for Horſes in Phyſick. *** This I have made tryal, and do find it to be good. Another,

Take a head of Garlick, of Pepper, of Ginger, and of Graines, of each two penny worth; make all theſe into fine Powder, and put them into ſtrong Ale one quart, and ſo give it him to drink blood-warm: Give him this drink two or three mornings, and order him as is before preſcribed. And when you do find that he hath gotten ſtrength, let him blood

blood in the Neck and Spur-veins. *** This is very good. All cordial drinks are good for this infirmity.

SECT. 23. *F.*

Hippoph. *What is your beſt cure for a falſe* Quarter?

Hippoſ. A falſe Quarter is a very evil ſorrance, it is a rift, crack, or chinck, which is moſt commonly upon the inſide of the Hoof, yet ſometimes (though rarely) it happeneth upon the out ſide, it is occaſioned ſometimes by evil ſhooing, by evil paring, and ſometimes by graveling, or a prick with a nail or ſtub: Nevertheleſs which way ſoever it cometh, it will cauſe the Horſe to halt, and watriſh blood will many times iſſue out of the rift or chinck; the ſigns are needleſs to recite, they be ſo manifeſt: The only way to cure this malady and ſorrance is, firſt to take off the ſhooe, and to cut away ſo much of the Hoof on that ſide where the grief is, as that the ſhooe being immediately ſet on again, the chink may be wholly uncovered, then open the chink to the quick with your drawing iron, and then fill up the rift with a rowl of hurds being dipped in this Unguent.

Falſe quarter.

Take Turpentine, Wax, and Sheeps-ſuet, of each like much, melt them together, and your rowl of hurds being dipped therein, ſtop the rift therewith, renewing it once a day till it be whole, and thus the riſt or chink being with this Ointment cloſed in the top, draw the place betwixt the hoof and the hair with a hot iron overthwart that place, which will cauſe the hoof to grow, and ſhoot all whole downwards, and when your Horſe goeth upright and ſound again, let him not be ridden with any other ſhooe until the hoof be throughout hardened, neither let him be ridden upon any hard ground, till his hoof is become very ſound and perfect. *** Another,

For falſe Quarter, and to cauſe the hoof to grow:

Firſt prepare a flat piece of Wood, making it an inch broad at leaſt, and ſo ſlender as that it will bend like a hoop, which muſt be alſo ſo long, as that it may come well-nigh twice about the cronet of the hoof: Then when you are to bring it about the hoof have in a readineſs a piece of fillitting,

ting, which muſt be long enough, which you muſt cut into two pieces, then having brought the hoop about the cronet with one piece of the fillitting, bind faſt the top of the hoop, which faſtning muſt be behind againſt the heel, and bound very ſtraight and hard, and then the fillitting ſo bound muſt be twiſted three or four times, and ſo brought about upon the hoop, and the ends made faſt upon the hoop: Then take the other piece of fillitting, and ſew it upon the top of the firſt filliting, which you bound about the Hoof, and then let it be ſewed as well upon one ſide of the Hoof as the other, ſo faſt ſewed on, as that it cannot get off. Now you muſt underſtand that before you do binde the foot of the Horſe with the wooden hoop and fillitting, you muſt prepare the ſorrance of the ſaid falſe quarter, by drawing the place with your drawing iron, ſo cloſe and neer, till you come almoſt to the very quick, and then will iſſue out a kind of ſweaty or dewy moiſture, which you ſhall perceive, then is it time to bind on the hoop and fillitting, according as I have before preſcribed you, but yet before you do any thing at all unto the foot or falſe quarter, have your Salve in a readineſs which is to be applyed to the chinks of the falſe quarter, *viz.*

Take of the roots of Lingua Bovis, green, and newly gathered, of the roots of Conſolida-Major, and the root of Mallowes, all newly gathered, of each half a pound, theſe muſt be waſhed and ſcraped very clean, and cut into ſmall pieces; let theſe roots be boyled in Aligant two quarts, until the Wine be boyled quite away, and that the roots become very ſoft, then pound them very well, and ſtrain them through a fine Searſer, and that it may ſtrain the better, reſerve a little of the Wine as it boyleth, wherewith to moiſten it in the ſtraining.

Take of Venice Turpentine, of new Wax, and of Burgundy-Pitch, of each half a pound, of black Pitch four ounces, of the oldeſt Oyl Olive one quart, put theſe things with the former Ingredients into a clean Kettle or Poſnet, but yet after this manner, *viz.*

Firſt the roots, then all the other things by themſelves, the one after the other, the Turpentine only excepted, which muſt be put in when all the other Ingredients be molten; you

you muſt let all theſe boyl until all the Wine be conſumed and the Ingredients be very well incorporate, and then put in the Turpentine, and then when it hath boyled one waum or two, take it from the fire, and keep it with continual ſtirring, till it be cold, and ſo keep it in ſome clean Veſſel for your uſe; you muſt alſo add unto theſe things (which I had almoſt forgotten) of Frankincenſe four ounces made into fine Powder.

This Salve is to ſoften and mollifie the hoof, whereby to make it to grow; having thus prepared your Salve, before you bind the hoof with the hoop and fillitting as before is ſhewed, anoint and rub very well, where the hoop and fillitting is to be placed, with the Salve, and then bind on the hoop with the ſaid fillitting, that done take hurds and rowl it up into a rowl, the full length of the chink of the quarter, and having firſt anointed the hurds very well with the Salve, lay it upon the chink of the falſe quarter, and ſo bind the hoof up with the two long pieces, of the aforeſaid fillitting, which were ſewed unto the other piece of the aforeſaid fillitting, which bound and made faſt the hoop: And let him not be dreſſed but once every three days, untying all, as well the hoop as fillitting; continue him to this kind of dreſſing, fifteen or twenty days, or otherwiſe according as your diſcretion ſhall think to be requiſite.

Now when you ſhall find that the Salve hath brought up the hoof, and that now you know not how to harden it, and make it ſolid and ſound, to make an able cure thereof, apply this inſuing Salve, Take of the ſtrongeſt white Wine Vinegar one quart, Diers-galls, of green Copperas both bruiſed, of each four ounces; boyl theſe in the Vinegar to the Conſumption of a Moiety, then ſtrain it, and put unto it of old Sallet-oyl one pint, and ſo boyl it again, until the Vinegar be all conſumed, which you ſhall know by ſtirring it with a little ſtick, and drawing the ſtick forth letting it drop into the fire, and if that which droppeth from the ſtick into the fire, do not crakle then let it boyl yet longer, for then it is not enough, but when it is ſufficiently boyled by dropping in a little of the medicine, it will burn without crackling, then take Lithergy of Gold, and Lithergy of Silver, of each half

half a pound, make them into very fine Powder and ſearſe them. Take then the Skillet from the fire, and let the medicine ſtand till it be almoſt cold, then mix well the Lithergy and put them in, for if they ſhould be put in whilſt the Liquor is hot, they would fly forth of the Skillet again: Then ſet the Skillet upon the Coals again, and ſo let it boyl upon a gentle fire, otherwiſe you ſhall not be able to keep in the medicine, and ſo boyl it up, and keeping it continually ſtirring until it become to be of a deeper and darker gray, and do cleave unto the thing with which it is ſtirred, and that it doth rope like unto Glew, then add unto it of new Beeswax three ounces, which muſt be firſt molten by it ſelf, and then put alſo into the medicine of Soot made into very fine Powder, and which is made of Wood, and alſo of white Lead in Powder, of each three ounces, theſe I ſay being made into very fine Powder, muſt be put into the medicine, after it is taken from the fire, and by continual ſtirring made half cold, and ſo ſet it upon the fire again, and kept by continual ſtirring until it be throughly incorporate, and thus it is made; and when it doth begin to be ſo cold, as that it may be handled, then make it up into Rowls, and ſo keep it for your uſe. And when you are to uſe the Salve, take away the hoop Fillitting and all, and all anoint the Hoof with the Salve, and ſo bind upon the Hoof a linnen cloath to cauſe that the medicine may remain on, and let him be anointed therewith, every day once till the Hoof be ſo hard as that he may be able to travel. *** This receipt I do hold to be the moſt Soveraign of any that ever was yet known, which was taught me by a French man, who was ſo careful to give me ample inſtructions therein, as that he bound on the hoop and Fillittings (which are the moſt difficult parts of the Cure) in my preſence, for he was very deſirous to have me fully inſtructed therein.

SECT. 24. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHat diſeaſe is that which is called the* Flanks?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe called the Flanks is different from the former, neither have we no proper name

for it, unleſs we will name the ſame the *Pluriſie*, for the Epithete, we have from the French, who ſtyle the ſame *Malde-Flanks*, it is when your Horſe is troubled with overmuch abundance of blood, whereby he either ingendreth a Mainge, or elſe falleth dangerouſly ſick thereby, who by reaſon he hath been oft times let blood before, his body now will look for it, whereof he miſſing, falleth either into very dangerous, or no leſs loathſome Maladies; the cure is,

Flanks or Mal-de-Flanks.

Firſt take blood from both ſides the Neck, and three days after in both the Spur-veins, in the mouth, and in the Temple-veins; then give him a drink of Diapente and ſweet Sack, and he will do well. *** This is very good.

SECT. 25. *F.*

Hippoph. *What good Charge have you wherewith to ſtop the* Feet?

Hippoſ. I think I have ſufficiently ſhewed you already, notwithſtanding for the reſidue, I do remit you to its proper place, when and where I will give you ſtore of good Receipts, and therefore I leave it for the preſent.

SECT. 26. *F.*

Hippoph. *What is good to ſtay a* Flux?

Hippoſ. This cometh of cold taken, ſometimes by reaſon nature is offended with ſome Cholerick Humour proceeding from the Liver or Gall, into the Guts. It cometh oft ſooner, when a Horſe drinketh too much, preſently after the eating a great quantity of Provender, for by that means the water coming to the Provender, cauſeth the Provender to ſwell, whereby crudities are bred in the Stomach, and ſo conveyed down to the Guts, which occaſioneth his Flux, alſo it cometh by travelling too ſoon after Provender, it not being well digeſted before: And it will come alſo to a Horſe by drinking cold water when he is very hot, and after (the water not being preſently warmed in his belly) is the cauſe of a Lax or Flux. It will alſo come by eating of a Feather, Hendung, Spider, ſome venemous worm, or other troubleſome

troubleſome creature; and therefore my counſel is, not to ſtop a Flux too haſtily unleſs you do find that your Horſe do purge too too violently, and then be you well aſſured, that nature is not a little offended, for it will bring him in ſhort time to a great weakneſs, and debility of Body; give him therefore firſt the Cliſter Laxative, which you have taught you in *lib. 6. chap. 6. ſect.* 8. *Cliſter* 21. *letter C.* and *Flux.* that will carry away from him all that may any way offend him, and a day after give him this drink,

Bean-flower, and Bole-Armoniack Powder, of each three ounces, mix them with Red wine or Tent one quart, give it him blood-warm, and after keep him warm in the Stable, and let him have Hay and Oats, by a little at a time, and that often, and either ſweet Maſhes or white Water. *** This is very good. Another,

Take of red Wine one quart, and Bay-ſalt one handful, and brew them well together, and with a horn give it him, and this will ſtay his ſcowring. *** This is alſo an approved Cure. Another,

Take of Wood-aſhes finely ſearſed, and of Bolearmoniack made into very fine Powder, of each like much, put them into the Water that he is to drink, and let him drink thereof morning and evening, and this will ſtay his Flux. *** But if it be a violent ſcowring, proceeding from the eating of a Feather, or ſome other naughty thing, ſo as this will not ſtay it, then

Take the Intrals of a Pullet, or great Chicken, all but the Gizard, and mix with them of Spicknard one ounce, and make him ſwallow it, and this will infallibly ſtay his ſcowring, yea if it be a bloody Flux. *** This ſpecial good.

SECT. 27. *F.*

Hippoph. *What good Receipt have you to mundifie, cleanſe, and heal foul and old ſores?*

Hippoſ. I had thought Sir, you would not have fallen upon this till it had come to its proper place, when and where we ſhould have the particular matters of Sores by themſelves, together with their cures: But ſith hence you are pleaſed to

touch them in this place, I will give you one Receipt which cannot eaſily be parallel'd.

Foule and old Sores to mundifie.

Take of green Copperas, and of Salt-Peter, of each half a pound, Bay-ſalt, and Salt-Gemma, of each three ounces, Arſenick one ounce; put all theſe finely powdred into a Stillitory-Glaſs, the Pot or bottom thereof well nealed, and put alſo thereunto of the ſtrongeſt white Wine Vinegar one pint, ſet the Pot on the fire, and put on the head, cloſing it with Cute of Hermes, and being thus placed in the Furnace, make under it a ſtrong fire, by the ſpace of five or ſix hours, and with your Receiptory take the firſt water that cometh, for that is the very ſtrongeſt and beſt, after an hour the fire will be out of the water, then ſtop up the Glaſs very cloſe, and ſo keep the water for your uſe. The next water is alſo good, but not ſo ſtrong as the firſt, but reſerve it alſo by it ſelf, as you do the firſt. And when you are to waſh any ſore therewith, be very careful that you lay none of this water upon either ſinews or veins, for that will burn them in ſunder; but where Ulcers and fouler old Sores be in fleſhy parts, this Water will work wonders if wounds be waſhed with it, and you careful in the application thereof. *** Of this I have had great experience. Another I have taught me by an expert Mariſhal of *France*, but by reaſon of the extreme violence thereof I never durſt uſe it, which is called the Spirit of Tin, which will alſo mundifie all ſorts of old Sores, and the French Mariſhals do uſe it much. And this is the Receipt, *viz.*

Spirit of Tin.

Take Mercury one ounce, and put it into an old clean Pewter Porringer, and fill up the Porringer with Plantain water, and with your finger ſtir the Mercury about the Porringer, till it be quite diſſolved, and then the water will become white, then let it ſtand an hour in the Porringer, then pour forth the water into a clean Glaſs-vial, and then you ſhall ſee in the bottom of your Porringer, the Tin run liquid like unto Quick-ſilver, or like as if it were melted, for that is your Spirit of Tin, and thus it is made.

SECT.

SECT. 28. *F.*

Hippoph. *WHat is to be adminiſtred to a Horſe that forſaketh his meat?*

Hippoſ. There be many cauſes that may make a Horſe to forſake his meat, and yet not be ſick at all, and alſo by occaſion of ſickneſs that either coming upon him, or elſe which hath already ſeized him. And firſt a Horſe may forſake his meat, and forbear to eat for ſome time, no whit ſick, as when he ſhall linger after Mares, or after Graſs being weary of dry meat: Again, he may forbear his meat, and yet not be ſick, by means of ſome accident or inconvenience bred in him, or befaln unto him, as by having the Lamps, Barbs, Giggs, Bliſters, Bloody rifts, Tongue hurt, pain in the Teeth, or ſome ſuch like infirmity in or about his Mouth, theſe may be cauſes that may induce him to forbear to eat, and yet the creature not ſick, but otherwiſe healthy and hungry, and fain would feed, but either cannot or dare not. Alſo a Horſe may forſake his meat, being through the inconſiderateneſs of his keeper cloyed, whereby he doth loath his meat; ſometimes through over Airings morning and evening, ſometimes again by ſuffering him to eat being very hot after great ſweating, upon immoderate riding and toyl, or after water or waſhing being very hot. Theſe and many more may be the cauſes why a Horſe may forſake his meat, and yet not be ſick. And he may alſo forſake his meat, by reaſon of ſickneſs enſuing, as upon Colds, Rhumes, and Catarres newly taken, and beginning to be felt upon him: So alſo he may forſake his meat, by reaſon of ſickneſs which hath already ſeized him, as in caſe of Glanders, Feavers, Morfounding Conſumptions, Dropſie, and the like, whereby it is made moſt apparent that he feedeth not becauſe he is already ſick. As touching the firſt point, if you do perceive him to forſake his meat, and that you cannot eaſily find the reaſon thereof, then the firſt thing you do, ſearch his Mouth, Lips and Tongue, and if you do find any thing there amiſs, let it be preſently amended, but if you cannot find any thing amiſs, then examine his Keeper, and if you may perceive

that

that it came through his default or negligence, either by the cloying him with Provender, or otherwiſe, according as I have heretofore touched, then give him a few branches of Savin, and let him be aired abroad, keeping him upon the Trench faſting to procure him a Stomach, and then feed him by degrees, and that by little at once, ſo he will fall to his meat again with good appetite, feed heartily, and do well again. *** But if you do find that his forſaking of meat cometh by means of any ſickneſs which hath already ſeized him, then give him this drink, *viz.*

Forſaking meat. Take of white Wine one quart, Polipodium of the Oak, a red Colewort leaf, Hore-hound, Mints, ſhe-Holly, Juniper-berries, Ginger, Parſly-ſeeds, Fennel-ſeeds, of each three ounces, beat them into fine Powder what is to be powdred, and chop and ſtamp the herbs ſmall, and ſo put all into the Wine, and boyl them a pretty while, then ſtrain it, and give it your Horſe blood-warm, then leap his back, and Trot him ſoftly upon fair ground an hour, but not ſweat by any means, then ſo ſoon as he cometh into the Stable, cloath and litter him warm, and waſh his Mouth with Water and Salt, and ſet him upon the Trench, and put over his Noſtrils a fine linnen Ragg ſteeped in ſowr leaven, infuſed firſt in the beſt and ſtrongeſt white Wine-vinegar, and the juyce of Sorrel, and let him ſtand ſo three hours at the leaſt, then unbit him, and bring him meat, but by little at once, for fear of cloying his weak Stomach, neither let him have any Maſhes, or cold Water, but white water only, until ſuch time as he hath found him his Stomach again. *** This I have often made tryal of, and have found it to be right good. Another,

Take Rue and Pepper, of each like much, ſtamp them together to a thick Salve, then take a good lump thereof, and put it up a good way into his Mouth, and let him champ and chew it a good while, and ſo ſoon as you do ſuffer him to open his Mouth, he will put it out, and fall to feeding heartily. *** This is not inferiour to the former. Another,

Take the leaves of Briony, and give him them to eat, and it will bring him to a good Stomach ſuddenly. This was taught me by a very good Farrier, who avowed it to me to be ſpecial good, but I never made tryal thereof.

SECT.

SECT. 29. *F.*

Hippoph. *How to cure the running Frush?*

Hippof. This is a naughty ſorrance, which I have heard rural Smiths to call the Frog, by reaſon that it breedeth in that ſpongy part of the Heel which they call the Frog. This ſorrance comes ſometimes when the Smith inconſiderably as he pareth that part, doth go to the quick, whereby it bleedeth, which after becometh ſore, and cometh to the running Fruſh, for that the Horſe being travelled, whilſt it is raw, and ſo that gravel getting into it, doth cauſe the place to rankle and impoſtumate, and it will come in ſhort time to be a running ſore, which will ſo ſtink, as not well to be endured: Sometimes again it cometh by reaſon of evil Humours which do fall down into the Legs, and makes its way out at the Fruſh, it being the ſofteſt and tendreſt part of all the Foot. And ſometimes it cometh by a bruiſe which the *Horſe* may eaſily take by treading upon ſome ſtone, which inwardly corrupting, putrifieth, and ſo is ingendred a running Fruſh. The ſigns to know it is, the *Horſe* will go lame, either upon hard or durty ways, whereby the gravel doth get in, and fret and pain him at the quick; and you ſhall perceive that when he reſteth, the Fruſh will weep, ſending forth watry ſtuff from the Fruſh. The way to cure it is,

Take ſtale Chamberly, and boyl it with a good quantity of Allum, and keep it in a Glaſs cloſe ſtopped. Then take of red Nettles two handfuls, the ſtrongeſt and keeneſt, dry them that they may be made into fine Powder, then look what quantity of this Powder you have, add alſo unto it the like quantity of Pepper, made alſo into very fine Powder, and mix them very well together, and keep it either in ſome dry Bladder, or Box for your uſe alſo; and when you have occaſion to uſe this water and Powder for this ſorrance, firſt take off the ſhooe, and open the Fruſh, ſo that you may come unto the very bottom, then waſh the ſorrance very clean and well with this water made warm, then put on the ſhooe again, but firſt let it be hollowed, that it hurt not the Fruſh, and *Fruſh running.*

and let the Heels of the ſhooe be wide enough, then the ſorrance being thus clean waſhed and purged from all gravel and mattrative ſtuff, and the ſhooe ſet on as aforeſaid, fill the wound full with this Powder, and ſtop it with Hurds, and ſplent it that the Hurds may keep in the Powder, and that nothing get to the ſore, and thus waſh and renew the Powder to the place grieved every day once, and in a week or little more it will be perfectly ſound and whole again, provided you ſuffer not any dung to come to the grief, and that he tread not in any wet during the time of the Cure, neither ſhould he go forth of the Stable. *** And thus have I cured many *Horſes* of this malady. Another,

Take of Soot and Bay-ſalt, of each one handful, and pound them very well together, (having opened and waſhed the ſorrance, as before is ſhewed) and put unto your Soot and Salt the whites of three new laid Eggs, and ſo temper and beat all well together, till you bring it to one entire body, then dip ſome Hurds therein, and ſo ſtop not only the place it ſelf, being opened and made raw, but all the ſole beſides, and ſo ſtop up the Fruſh, ſplenting it in ſuch ſort whereby the medicine may be kept in, and thus let him be dreſſed once a day, and ordered as before is premoniſhed, and he ſoon will be whole and ſound. *** This I have often proved, and cured many ſorrances of this nature.

SECT. 30. *F.*

Hippoph. *What is beſt to cure a* Fret?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe you call the *Fret*, is only the griping and pain in the Belly, which cometh of ſundry cauſes. The French do call it *Tranchaiſons*, which do ſignifie gripings, it is the plain Collick, cauſed of wind, ſometimes bilious and ſharp Humours, which deſcending from the Stomach, go down into the Guts and there torment him; and ſometimes it cometh by reaſon of Worms, Bots, or Truncheons, which do ingender in the Stomach or Guts of the *Horſe*, which do feed and gnaw upon the Panch or Guts, putting him to mickle pain and perplexity. The ſigns are, he will forſake his meat, lye down oft, and tumble, and when he

he ſtandeth he will eftſoones ſtrike at his Belly with his hinder Legs, he will alſo ſtamp with his fore Feet, and turn his Head towards his Belly, and look upon it, and he will many times ſweat at the flanks, and ſeldom any where elſe; and if the malady be of wind, then ſhall you perceive his Belly to ſwell, eſpecially towards the flanks: The cure is,

Take of good Ale two quarts, of Fœnugeek four ounces, *Fœn.* of Bay-berries ſeven ounces, of Long Pepper four ounces, of Ginger one ounce, Water-Creſſes two handfuls, Sage and Nettles, of each one handful, beat to Powder the Spices, and chop the Herbs ſmall, and boyl them in the Ale till one Moiety be conſumed, then ſtrain it, and ſo give it him blood-warm, and then cover and litter him warm, and let him ſtand upon the Trench ſix hours after. But yet as ſoon as he hath his drink, rope up all his Legs to the Body, not ſuffering him to lye down, and cover him ſo as that he may ſweat for one hour only, and then cool him by degrees, and let his drink be either ſweet Maſhes or white water, and he being thus ordered in two or three days he will be well. This I have often uſed. Another,

Take the Intrals of a great Chicken, caſting away the Gizzard, rowl them up in Bay-ſalt and the Powder of Brim-ſtone, and ſo give it him down his Throat, then preſently let him be gently ridden, or walked, till he doth dung, and at night give him a Maſh or white water, and he is cured. This is alſo very good. But if you have cauſe to ſuſpect that he hath the Bots then rake him, and in his raking ſearch for Bots, which if you find any ſticking upon the great Gut, pluck them all (or ſo many as you can find) away, whereby you may be confident that the Bots is the cauſe of his grief, wherefore apply ſuch Remedies and Medicines which I have formerly preſcribed you for Bots, Truncheons, and Worms in *lib. 2. chap. 5. ſect. 15.* where you ſhall find ſuch Receipts as will cure him. *** But if you do perceive this grief of his cometh of wind, then make uſe of ſuch Receipts which you ſhall find by me before inculcated for the Collick, in *lib. 2. chap. 6. ſect. 11. lit. C.* where be very good Remedies for this malady.

CHAP. X.

SECT. 1. *G.*

Hippophylus.

WHat is to be done to cure a galled Back?

Hippoſ. There be ſo many ways which doth occaſion it, as that it would be an endleſs labour to deliver every particular thereof. But becauſe you do motion the *galled Back* only, I will firſt ſpeak ſomething thereof. A *galled Back* cometh commonly either with the Saddle, the Pannel, Pack-Saddle or Male-Pillion, which through evil ſtopping, or defect of ſtopping, may very eaſily gall the *Horſe*; ſo alſo may the fault be in the Tree, which may be ſo badly made, ſo as that let the Sadler be never ſo ſufficent, skilful, or careful, yet ſhall it both gall and hurt him; ſo alſo may the Tree of the Saddle be either broken or crackt, if it at any time happen, be you then confident that it can never be ſo amended or repaired, but that do what you can it ſhall hurt the back of the *Horſe*, and theſe be the moſt frequent and ordinary ways whereby to gall the back of your *Horſe*, howbeit, I paſs over Male-Pillion, Cloak-bags, Portmantues, Truſſes, and the like. The ſigns to know a galled back are eaſie, for either the back will be apparently ſwelled, or the Hair fretted off, the skin either broken or raw, or the back either inflamed or impoſtumated, every of which is eaſily to be determined by the Eye; or if his *Back* be wrung with the Saddle, and yet not come to be viſible to the Eye, yet may you come to the knowledge thereof, if taking off the Saddle, ſtroking your hand all along the Back, you ſhall perceive him either to ſhake his Head, or to winch with his Tail, to rouze or ſhake, to ſtamp or ſtrike with his Feet, to offer to bite, or the like, whereby you may come to know it, and very eaſily to find out the place grived. Now if the Back be ſwelled, and before it be impoſtumated, ſo ſoon as you ſhall take off the Saddle, and find the ſame, clap upon the ſwelling a little of his wet litter, and ſo ſet on the Saddle again, and

and let him remain with his Saddle on all night, and in the morning the ſwelling will be abated, and the place it ſelf becometh whole and ſound again. Now if the hair be but galled off, ſo that it doth not impoſtumate, anoint the place but with a little Butter and Salt melted together, and in twice dreſſing the place will be whole; but if the *Back* be ſo *galled*, as that it is become raw, then the cure is thus, *viz.*

Take three parts of Sheeps-dung newly made, and one part of Rye, or Wheat-flower, and dry the flower, and then mix it well with the Sheeps-dung, kneading it as into paſte, and making it into the faſhion of a Cake, and after brake it a little, and apply the Powder thereof warm unto the place. **** This will heal him very well. But I may very well ſpare the labour in reciting any more Receipts for this matter, conſidering I have ſufficiently already handled them in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 5. *ſect.* 1. *letter B.* *Galled Back.*

SECT. 2. 6.

Hippoph. WHat ſay you to a Galde *that cometh by the Shackle?*

Hippoſ. This kind of *Gallings* being ſo frequent, as to be known to every one, both the manner how it cometh, and in the ſigns how to know them, needeth not much diſcuſſion, nevertheleſs I will give you an experiment or two of mine own, and ſo leave it to its more proper place.

Take new Milk three quarts, Plantane one handful, boyl theſe together till one part of the Milk be conſumed, then take Allum ſix ounces, and of white Sugar-Candy one ounce, beat them both to fine Powder, and ſo put it to the Milk, and add alſo unto it of white Wine Vinegar ſix ſpoonfuls, then boyl it a little till there do come upon the top a tough Curd, then ſtrain it, and keep the Whay, caſting away the Curd, and with this Whay firſt made warm, bathe and waſh the ſore, the hair being firſt clipped cloſe away; and having thus waſhed the ſorrance, and wiped it dry, then apply your green Oyntment mentioned in the fourth *ſect*, of this Chapter; but in caſe where the *Galde* is not broken, yet likely *Galled with the Shakle.* *A Whay.*

likely to break, there you ſhall only apply the medicine taught you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 16. *ſect.* 10. *L.* for the *Poll-evil.* *** This Whay is alſo good to cure the bloody Rifts, Bladders, Canker in the mouth, Barbs, Pappes, and all Feavers and Maladies in the *Mouth.* Another,

Take Life-Honey ſeven ſpoonfuls, and Verdegreaſe half an ounce, and boyl them till the Honey be half conſumed, and that it become red, then put it into ſome clean pot, and anoint the ſorrance therewith, made warm twice every day, and when you have thus anointed it, caſt upon the place Hurds cut very ſhort, to keep on the Oyntment, and this will in ſhort time heal it up very ſound. *** This is moſt Soveraign for any *Shakle gald*, which cometh either by *Lock*, *Cord*, or *Shakle*; but if your *Horſe* be deſperately *galled* in any part of his Body, as by the *Girt*, or otherwiſe, then

Take of Verjuyce of the Crab two quarts, of green Copperas two penny-worth, and boyl them together to one pint and a half: And waſh the ſorrance therewith very well, and after fill up the hole (if any be) with the powder of Red Lead, and ſo let it remain three days untoucht, then waſh it as before, and fill it with your red Oyntment again, and thus in two or three times dreſſing it will heal up, be the *galling* never ſo dangerous. *** This I have often uſed.

SECT. 3. *G.*

Hippoph. *What is beſt to be done to a Horſe that is* Gravelled?

Hippoſ. This malady cometh when a *Horſe* in his travel hath gotten *Gravel* betwixt the *Sole* and the *Hoof* which ſetleth at the quick, and there fretteth and feſtreth, you ſhall ſoon know it by his halting, and complaining upon the ſame Foot, which ſo ſoon as you do perceive, take up the *Foot* and you ſhall feel it warmer in that place, then in any other part of the *Foot*, and if you make tryal with your Pinſors you ſhall perceive him to ſhrink, and to yield when you nip him againſt that place: Take off the ſhooe and with your drawing iron draw the place, till you come unto the quick, pick forth all the *Gravel*, and cruſh forth the matter and blood clean, then

Gravelling.

waſh

waſh the ſore clean with your Copperas water, taught you in the next enſuing *Paragraph*, then pour upon the ſore ſheeps Tallow, and Bay-ſalt molten together, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, and let it be poured into the wound ſcalding hot, then ſtop up the hole with Hurds, and ſet on the ſhooe again, and at two or three times dreſſing it will be whole, but till he be through well do not travel him, neither let his *Foot* come into any wet. *** This is a certain cure. Another,

Search and draw the place as before, and get forth all the *Gravel*, then ſtop the place with Hogs-greaſe, and Turpentine molten together, pouring it into the wound ſcalding hot, and ſtop it up with Hurds, and tack on the ſhooe, and keep his *Foot* from wet, and he will ſoon be whole: This is alſo very good. Another,

Be you certain that you have gotten forth all the *Gravel* and Corruption, then

Take Virgin-wax one ounce, Roſin, and Deers-ſuet, of each two ounces, Bores-greaſe half an ounce, and of Sea-green, *alias* Houſe-leek one head, incorporate all theſe together in a Morter, then melt them over a gentle fire, and ſo apply it hot to the ſorrance, and ſtop it up with Hurds and tack on the ſhooe, and in few dreſſings it will cure it. *** This is a ſpecial good cure.

SECT. 4. *G.*

Hippoph. *HOw do you make your green Oyntment, you do ſo ſo much commend?*

Hippoſ. Sir, this Unguent which I do ſo much commend unto you, is the moſt rare, and Soveraign thing that I ever yet ſaw or knew, for the cure of any ſores, whether old or green, *Ulcers*, *Fiſtulas*, *Poll-evils*, or what elſe, for where this Oyntment cometh, no proud or dead *Fleſh* will grow; no *Flies* will adventure neer the place where this Oyntment is laid, and for a *Horſe* or *Mare Filly* that is cut, gelt, or ſplad, anoint but the place, and they will neither ſwell or feſter, whereby the creature is the further off from danger, for this Unguent doth not only heal ſoundly and well, but ſpeedily alſo; provided you lay nothing upon the wound or ſorrance,

rance, where the Oyntment is adminiſtred as neither Hurds, Lint, Plaiſters, or the like, unleſs you may have occaſion to taint a wound which is extraordinary deep, neither that for any long time, or too often, and beſides the ſeldomer, the wound is dreſſed, as once a day, or once in two days, it will heal the better and faſter, eſpecially if it be brought into good forwardneſs of healing. And together with this Unguent, you may do well to waſh the ſorrance, with the water I call the Copperas water, which by reaſon it is always firſt to be uſed, I will ſet it down firſt, and the green Oyntment ſhall aſſume the ſecond place.

Copperas water. Take fair water two quarts, and put it into a clean Poſtnet, and put thereto of green Copperas half a pound, and of Salt one handful, and of ordinary Honey one ſpoonful, and a branch or two of Roſemary, boyl all theſe till one half of the water be conſumed, and a little before you take it from the fire, put to it the quantity of a Doves-Egg of Allum, then take it from the fire, and when it is cold put the water into a Glaſs, and ſtop it up cloſe, and keep it for your uſe; and when you are to dreſs any ſore, firſt waſh it clean with this water, and if the wound be deep, inject it with a Seringe. *** This water of it ſelf will cure any reaſonable ſore, or wound (but the green Oyntment being applyed after it is waſhed) will heal any old *Ulcer*, or *Fiſtula* whatſoever, if they come to the bottom of them, and for green wounds, they have not their fellow; the *Green Oyntment* is thus made,

Green Oyntment. Take a clean Skillet or Poſtnet, and firſt put into it of Roſin the quantity of a Walnut, which being molten, put to it the like quantity of Wax, and when that is alſo molten, put to them of tryed Hogs-greaſe half a pound, and ſo ſoon as that is molten, put into the reſt of common *Engliſh* Honey one ſpoonful, when all theſe are molten and well ſtirred together, then put in of ordinary Turpentine half a pound, and ſo ſoon as it is diſſolved, take it from the fire, and put into the Skillet of Verdegreaſe made into very fine Powder one ounce, and ſo ſtir it all together, but be careful it run not over, for that the Verdegreaſe will cauſe it to ariſe, then ſet it again upon the fire, till it do begin a little to ſimper, then

then take it off, for if you ſuffer it to boyl it will turn red, and loſe its vertue of healing, and become a corraſive, then ſtrain it through a cloath into ſome earthen Pot, or Pipken, and keep it for your uſe, laying ſomething upon the mouth of the Veſſel, that duſt get not into it, and if it be not ſtrained, then the grounds in the bottom will corraſive a ſore, and not heal it. *** This is the moſt ſoveraign Oyntment that I could ever know, for with it I have done ſo many great cures, as have made me admired by *Farriers* themſelves, who have courted me not a little for this Receipt, yea they have proffered me ten pounds to teach it them; This cleanſeth a wound, be it never ſo foul, or infected with dead, proud, ſpungy or naughty *Fleſh*, it carnifieth, and healeth abundantly, and withal ſo ſoundly, and firmly, as that it doth never more break forth, it draweth forth Thorns, Splinters, Nails, and all ſuch things in the *Fleſh*, and in a word it cureth all ſorts of ſores and wounds.

SECT. 5. *G.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to be adminiſtred to a* Horſe *whoſe* Greaſe *is molten*?

Hippoſ. As touching this infirmity I have ſufficiently ſhewed you before how it cometh, the ſigns how to know it, and how to cure the ſame, and therefore I may now forbear to ſpend any more time in the Declaration thereof, only I will give you one ſingular Receipt more, and this it is.

Greaſe melten.

Firſt, take *Blood* from the *Neck-vein*, to a reaſonable good Proportion, to the end all his inflamed blood may be let forth, then give him to eat either Bran prepared as you are ſhewed in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 9. *ſect.* 4. *F.* or dry Bran whether he will eat beſt, but if he will eat neither, and that he doth empty himſelf over much, then give him the Cliſter Reſtringent preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 6. *ſect.* 8. *Cliſter* 3. *letter C.* or elſe if you pleaſe, you may give him the 8. *Cliſter* in the ſame *ſect.* either of theſe two ſo often as need ſhall require you may give. And if his appetite be not good, give him Arman preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 2. *ſect.* 2. *letter A.* and two days after let him *Blood* in both the *Flank-veins*, and if you cannot eaſily

eaſily find them then in the *Spur-veins*, and the next day after that give him to drink, two quarts of water warmed, and put into it of white Wine Vinegar one pint, for this will very much refreſh his *Body*, and then the next day give him this drink,

Take of Tiſan three pints, of loaf Sugar finely powdred three ounces, of Cordial powder one ounce, of Life-Honey four ounces, give him this to drink blood-warm. In maladies of this nature you muſt forbear to adminiſter ſuch drugs as be hot, for by ſuch means more *Horſes* dye then do recover and live: For ſuch kind of drink as this is, being wholly cordial, are beſt for this infirmity. *** This cure I do aſſure you I have often adminiſtred, and have done very much good, and made many great and deſperate cures therewith.

SECT. 6. *G.*

Hippoph. *WEll, now let us come to the* Glanders.

Hippoſ. Withal my heart, Sir. As touching this diſeaſe which we do call the *Glanders*, it is of all others the worſt, noiſome, and moſt infectious, inſomuch as that *Horſe* that hath it, if he be not removed and ſeperate from his fellows, will infect ſo many as ſhall be with him in the ſame Stable and Room. To find out the depth, root, and true nature of this diſeaſe, I have greatly laboured, as alſo how to cure the ſame. I have alſo had much conference with many of the moſt famous and exquiſite *Mariſhals* and *Farriers* abroad, and I have ſeen very much of their practiſe therein, ſo alſo have I very ſerious diſcourſes with a number of our beſt *Farriers* and *Smiths* at home, but I find not one in twenty can ſpeak truly to any purpoſe of the nature of this diſeaſe, and therefore I do not wonder that they cannot cure a diſeaſe whereof they are ſo much to ſeek. Nevertheleſs what I do underſtand of this diſeaſe, I will ingeniouſly deliver unto you. The *Glanders* is an infirmity which proceedeth firſt of cold taken, which being neglected, will in time come to be the *Glanders*; you ſhall firſt perceive it by the inflamed Kernels and Knots which may be felt under the

the *Chaul* of the *Horſe*, and as they do grow in bigneſs, ſo do the *Glanders* grow and increaſe within the Body of the *Horſe*, which firſt beginning with a thin Rheum, aſcendeth up to the Head, and ſetleth neer to the Brain, and ſo venteth it ſelf at the Noſe, which yet may be eaſily cured, as I have before inculcated, where I entreated of Colds, afterwards it grows thicker, and then it is worſe to cure, but yet faiſable enough, in longer time it cometh yet to a thicker ſubſtance, and its colour is Yellowiſh, much like unto Butter, and then it is more hard to cure, but yet curable, albeit that now it is come to be a perfect *Glanders*: But when it cometh to be a Viſcuous, and of a tough and ſlimy ſubſtance, and of a Green colour, and to ſtink terribly, and that it hath now run ſome months, or peradventure half a year or better, as alſo having ſome ſmall ſpecks of a reddiſh colour in it, then is it not every *Farriers* work or Art to cure the ſame, for in a caſe of this nature the ableſt *Farrier* may receive the foil, and the *Horſe* die under his hands and cure, as I have often by experience have been an Eye witneſs, albeit there hath been no defect in the Farrier, either in Art, Induſtry, Care or Diligence. I do therefore aver that I would not have any man, (be he never ſo expert an Artiſt) to promiſe to himſelf the cure of every *Horſe* he ſhall take in hand, by the reaſon that the *Glanders* it ſelf is the thing he muſt cure, but in taking upon him to cure that malady, he muſt before he can have perfected his cure, cure him alſo of many other diſeaſes, which the *Glanders* will bring along with it, as (*v.g.*) the Conſumption of the Fleſh and Lungs, Griefs and Aches in the Head and Brain, inflammations under the *Chaul*, diſeaſes in the Liver, Purſiveneſs, Hide bound, Dropſie, ſwelled Legs, and many other infimities too prolix to repeat, all which (I ſay) are inherent to the *Glanders*, and its Origine, that it is of Cold paſt all peradventure, howſoever it ſometimes cometh of Surfeits, ſometimes of Morfounding, ſometimes by Infection, all which (the laſt only excepted) taketh its firſt ſource, from Cold, and when it runneth (as before I ſaid) Greeniſh with Reddiſh ſpecks, accompanied alſo with an offenſive or ſtinking Breath, then are his Lungs ulcerated, by means whereof the cure is the more deſperate

and difficile. I do therefore adviſe all Farriers my Brethren, who ſhall at any time take upon them this Cure, that they do firſt prepare the Body of the *Horſe* with ſuch Preparatives and Phyſick, as are meet to expel his peccant Humours, which muſt be alſo very carefully adminiſtred, yea and that according to the ſtrength and Ability of the *Horſe*; for the *Horſe* cannot chooſe but be feeble and weak, having of a long time before been viſited with a Sickneſs of this nature; yea, peradventure a whole year or two before together, during which time he hath continually waſted and languiſhed, wherefore he cannot be ſtrong, but a very weak *Horſe*, and therefore his Phyſick muſt be very gentle, yet ſuch alſo which may have operation whereby to work, otherwiſe Phyſick is but caſt away. The ſigns how to know this Diſeaſe need no further Deſcription, and therefore I will proceed to the Cure, for the which I will deliver you many Receipts, ſome whereof I have well experienced, to which I will give my particular Mark, like as I have formerly done. And I do the rather inſert the more Receipts, becauſe (as I have before remembred) that Receipt which will not cure one, will cure another.

Glanders. The firſt therefore that is to be done in this caſe, is, to prepare his body by giving him for four or five daies together, inſtead of his Oats and Provender, wheat Bran prepared, like as I have before ſhewed you in the caſes of ſick *Horſes*, eſpecially in *lib. 2. chap. 9. ſect. 4. F.* to qualifie and dry up his moiſt and bad humours abounding in him, then let him bloud in the Neck, and the next day rake him, and give him this Cliſter. Make a decoction of Mallows one pint and a half, and put unto it of freſh Butter, four ounces, and of ſallet Oyl a quarter of a pint, and adminiſter it bloud warm, and then with a ſtrap of leather tie it to his Tail, and then faſten the other end of the ſaid ſtrap to his Surſingle, ſo ſtraight that his tail muſt be cloſe to his tuell, that he cannot purge till it be looſned, then mount his back, and let him be gently ridden, ſometimes a foot pace, and ſometimes an eaſier trot for half an hour, then ſet him up warm cloathed and littered, and let him ſtand upon the Trench three hours, during which time he will purge kindly, then give

give him white Water and Hay, and at night a few Oates, for he muſt be kept to a ſpare diet. The next day anoint two long Gooſe-feathers with the powder of Brimſtone and freſh Butter, being firſt well wrought together, till it be brought to the colour of Gold, put them into either noſtril, and faſten them to his headſtal, as before taught you, and ſo ride him an hour or two, for this will purge his head, and cauſe him to ſend forth mattrative ſtuff which abideth in his Head and Lungs, then bring him in and take them forth, and an hour after give him Hay and white Water, and Bran prepared, which alſo he ſhould have given him before his riding abroad. The next day give him his Clyſter again, and ſo let him reſt for that day, but ordered in all things as before, the next day give him his Gooſe-feathers again, anointed as before, and ordered in the like manner as you did before, and all this is, but to prepare him for his after Drink, but remember to keep him alwaies warm, and let him be evermore faſting and empty, when he is to have any kind of Phyſick adminiſtred unto him, and let him be aired Morning and Evening, if the Sun ſhine, or that it be otherwiſe warm and calm weather. And having thus begun with him, three days after give him this Drink.

Take of Aquavitæ half a pint, and of White-wine one pint, Ariſtolochia-Rotunda, Agarick, Gentian, Bayberries, Myrrh, Ivory, Aloes, of each three drams, make all theſe into fine Powder each one by it ſelf, then mix them very well, and put them into a clean Poſnet with the Wine and Aquavitæ, and ſo warm it upon the fire, then being well brewed, give it him blood-warm. This Drink muſt be given thrice, to wit, every third day, and he made to faſt three hours after, and after ordered as is accuſtomed with *Horſes* in Phyſick, during which time, and ſome time after, let him drink no cold water, but moſt commonly white water, which once or twice in a week may be changed into a ſweet Maſh, and let him eat the Bran and Malt, and dyet and feed him ſo, as that he may be kept to a Stomack, but be careful you neither cloy, nor pine him: Inſtead of the Oates which you ſhould give him, let them ſometimes be changed into Bread if he will eat it; and ſometimes you may give him inſtead of Oates, ſome

Wheat either in the Ears, which is beſt, or elſe Wheat threſhed and cleared ready for the Mill. *** Truly with this Cure as I have ſet it you down, I have recovered many *Horſes*. But you muſt underſtand that this Malady as it hath run along upon the *Horſe*, before it come to that height, as to be ſo rank a *Glanders*, to be termed the mourning of the *Chine*, ſo will it ask a long time to cure, and therefore you muſt not think that it can be cured with this one onely courſe of Phyſick, but you muſt let him reſt a few days, whereby he may the better gather ſtrength, and then to him again and again, but take no more Blood from him; and as you do perceive him to gather Fleſh, and get Strength, ſo let his Exerciſe be increaſed, but withal, ſo as not to overlabor him, or to cauſe him to ſweat violently, nor yet ſtrain his Wind too much. *Another*,

If you do find that together with his *Glanders*, he hath the Strangles, that is, that he be oppreſſed with Inflammations under his *Chaule*, clip away the hair from about the place, and clap a piece of Sheeps-skin newly killed, over all the place, which muſt be daily renewed, and you muſt keep warm, not only the place, but his Poll alſo; then,

Take Baſilicon, old Bores-greaſe, and Dialthea, of each four ounces, and of Oyl de Bay one ounce, beat all theſe very well together, then anoint the place inflamed, once every day at the leaſt, and then put to the Sheeps-skin, and ſo keep it on till it be ripe enough, then open it, and put into the Orifice a taint of Baſilicon for three or four days, then heal up the wound with Taints of Ægyptiacum, preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 4. *ſect.* 4. *lit. A.* and during the time of his Cure, give him Wheat-bran, as well dry as prepared; and for his Drink, let it be white Water, unleſs ſometimes a Maſh; keep him warm, and after five or ſix days ride him abroad with a Gooſe-feather in his Noſe, anointed as is before adviſed you; and if he do run at Noſe very much, then take a ſtick, and wrap a fine linnen Rag about it, anoint it very well with black Sope, and put it into his Noſtrils a good way, but not ſo as to cauſe him to bleed, and do this three or four times a day: or elſe

Take the ſeed of Pordo accenta, and bruiſe it, made up in ſweet

ſweet Butter, ſo much of the Seed as you may take up betwixt your Thumb and two Fingers at a time. *** This is very good. *Another*,

Take the Ointment of the Oyl de Bay, and Unguentum Agrippa, of each like much; rub the Inflamation place, every night with this unguent well mixed, then apply unto the place a piece of a Sheeps-skin with the Wooll on: But this Medicine is much better in Winter then in Summer, by reaſon that this unguent of it ſelf is very hot; wherefore in the ſummer Seaſon, inſtead of ſuch hot unguents take two ounces of theſe that be cooler, with three roots of white Lillies roſted or boiled, or Rye leaven ſix ounces, of old Hogs-greaſe as much as will ſuffice, and of the tender tops of Iſop halfan ounce; mix all theſe together, and make thereof an unguent, with which rub and anoint the place well, and after apply it to the place Plaiſter-wiſe; this done, cover the place with a piece of Sheeps-skin, the Wooll being on, and continue to do this till it be ripe and ready to be opened, blow alſo into his Noſe of Euforbium, and black Elebore pulverized, of each like much, to the bigneſs of a haſle-nut of either, then put into each Noſtril a long Gooſe-feather, firſt dipped in Oyl de Bay; which Pouder and Oyl will cauſe him to caſt forth much of his *Glanders*, and of his bad humours which do feed them. *** This Medicine if it be rightly applyed, will cure him. *Another*,

If your *Horſe* together with his *Glanders* be troubled with inflamed Kernels under his Chaule, then giẽ him this Drink.

Take of Elecampane dryed, Anni-ſeeds, Fennel-ſeeds, Commin, Pepper, Grains, Licoriſh, of each three drams, all pulverized, and add thereto two heads of Garlick pilled and bruiſed; boil all theſe in ſtrong Ale, two quarts to a moiety, then ſtrain it, and ſet it over the Fire again, and put unto this Liquor the quantity of a Tennis-ball of tried Hogs-greaſe, and let it remain no longer over the Fire but until the Hogs-greaſe be molten, and ſo adminiſter it blood-warm with a Horn; this done, leap his back, and trot him gently a mile upon fair Ground, and ſo home again, then ſet him up warm cloathed and littered, cauſing him to ſweat in his cloaths

two

two hours, then by little and little ſlake his cloaths, cooling him by degrees, till you have brought him to his former coolneſs, and as he doth begin to leave off ſweating, let him be well rubed till he be dry, then two hours after this give him a ſweet Maſh, and uſe this drink and ſweating ſundry times, every ſecond day for a week. The next week

Take Wheat-meal, Horehound, Anniſeeds and Licoris made into very fine Powder, of each as much as will ſuffice, make a paſte thereof with ordinary Honey and Sallet-oyl, of each as much as will ſuffice, then every morning make three Pills the bigneſs of a great Walnut apiece, and give them to the *Horſe* three Mornings together, keep him all this time warm, and let his drink be white Water, and his Manger-meat be either Wheat-bran prepared, or dried Bran; but if he have Kernels under his Chaule, then either ripen them, as you were taught before, or elſe burn them with the flame of a Candle, and open the *Skin* with an inciſion Knife, and then put into the Orifice the root of a red Dock, giving it a ſlit or two, and it will draw his Cold quite away from under his Chaule. But firſt you muſt underſtand that the Drink laſt before mentioned, ought to be applyed before you apply any other Medicines; and my Counſel is withal, that you do purge him before you give him this Drink, or any other Medicines, for purging doth the better prepare the Body of the *Horſe*, whereby to cauſe his Phyſick, of what nature ſoever, to work more kindly. *** This Receipt I have often tried, and have perfected very great Cures therewith. Another very ſoveraign, after your *Horſe* hath taken the Drink next above preſcribed.

Take Gumma Guiacum, Amber, Coral, of each half an ounce, make all theſe into very fine Powder, and infuſe it into red Wine, one quart, with a good quantity of Cinamon Arkanet Powdred, and give it to your *Horſe* two mornings together blood-warm, and ſo order him as is uſual with other Drinks, *** This is alſo very good. Another.

Firſt give him this Drink following, but firſt purge him two days before; take of Tanners Owes new made, wherein never came Hides, one pint, of Sallet-oyl four ſpoonfuls, two heads of Garlick, pilled and bruiſed, Featherfew and Selandine,

landine, of each one handful chopped very ſmall, Anniſeeds and Licoris, and Bay-berries, all finely pulverized, of each one ſpoonful; boyl all theſe a little, and ſo give it your *Horſe* blood-warm twice a week faſting, and he being thus four times drenched, will be perfectly cured. This I never tried, but I have been aſſured by able *Farriers* that it will cure the Glanders be it never ſo old. Another.

Take ſtrong Ale one quart, Tar a quarter of a pint, two heads of Garlick, pilled and bruiſed, and give it your *Horſe* faſting, warm once in four days, till he be throughly cured. This I never tried. Another.

Take of the neweſt and ſtrongeſt *Tanners* Owes one pint, Venice Turpentine ſhaved one ounce, Bay-berries in fine Powder one ſpoonful, Saffron powdred one penny-worth, *Ariſtolochia rotunda* one ounce, *Guiacum* two ounces, both in fine powder, incorporate all theſe upon the fire till the Turpentine be diſſolved; then give it your *Horſe* blood-warm two mornings in a week, reſting three days ſtill betwixt, till he be cured, which will be in four or five times giving. Another.

Make Pills of Venice Turpentine with Paſt of Barly-flower, and give them to your *Horſe*, and they will cure him. Another.

Take baked Barly-flower two parts, the duſt of Oaken Bark, and Bay-berries in fine Powder of each one part, make a Paſt thereof with new Tanners Owes, and ſo make them into Pills, with the Powder of Cinnamon three parts, and Saffron one penny-worth, and ſo give them to your *Horſe*. Another for the *Glanders* and Conſumption of the *Lungs*, which muſt be given after you have made trial of the Drink before preſcribed, which beginneth thus; take Elecampane, Anniſeeds, Fennel-ſeeds, *&c.* and finding that your *Horſe* is not therewith cured, give him theſe Pills following.

Take Barly-flower baked in an Oven, Cumfrey-roots, Burſa-Paſtoris, Bramble-leaves, or the red and unripe Berries growing upon Brambles, which we do commonly call Balck-berries; theſe unripe Berries are much better then the Bramble-leaves, of each one handful, of Alkanet one dram, boil all but the Barly-flower in Tanners Owes newly made, ſo

ſo much as will ſuffice, and when it is throughly boyled ſtrain the Liquor from the other Simples, reſerving only the Liquor, and ſo make a Paſte thereof with your Barly-flower, adding thereto of the duſt of Oaken-bark one handful or two, then make this Paſte up into Pills the bigneſs of a good Wall-nut, give him four of theſe at a time, rowled up in the Powder of Cinnamon two parts, and one part in the Powder of Saffron, and uſe this till he be well, not adminiſtring theſe Pills every day, but every two or three days, till you do find him well. *** This I do recommend unto you for a ſpecial good Receipt, for that therewith I have effected many great Cures in this kind, but then withal let his drink be white Water, and ſometimes a ſweet Maſh, as in all other Cures for this Infirmity, and withal put into his white Water Bramble-leaves, and Knotgraſs bruiſed, and be you very careful that he take no cold, but be kept warm during his Cure, and ayre him Morning and Evening in the warm Sun, if there be no Wind; and every time you lead him forth to be ayred, at his going forth of the Stable, ſpirt into his Noſtrils the Juice of wild Dayſie-roots, mingled with the ſtrongeſt White-wine-vinegar, which will purge his Head exceedingly, and cauſe the *Glanders* to run forth abundantly. Another, being an excellent Pill for the *Glanders*, which I have often uſed, and that to great good purpoſe.

Take Venice-Turpentine waſhed, half a dram, incorporate it with the Powder of Brimſtone, Alkenet, and Oake-bark duſt, of each like much, ſo much as will ſuffice to make up into Pills, give him every Morning two of theſe Pills faſting, as big as a good Wall-nut every one, till he be well. *** Another which is a very good Drink, wherewith to diſſolve the *Glanders* and Cold, after other Drinks have rotted and ripened them.

Take of Muskadine one quart, of Figgs cut and ſliced ſmall, a quarter of a pound, live Honey one ſpoonful, Saffron pulverized one pennyworth, Ginger and Elecampane of each one dram in powder, Pepper in fine powder ſo much as will lye upon a Sixpence, freſh or ſweet Butter the quantity of an Egg, boil all theſe together a pretty while, then ſtrain it, and blood-warm adminiſter it, only adding to the Drink

Drink the Yolks of two new laid Eggs well beaten into the ſaid Drink, and after walk or ride him moderately a little ſpace, and then ſet him up warm, and order him as in other phyſical Drinks. *** This I have often tryed, and do approve it for ſpecial good: for this openeth the Pipes, cauſing him to void much Filth, and it begetteth a good ſtomack to meat. Another moſt excellent,

Firſt before you do adminiſter any Drinks or Medicine, give him this Purge.

Take of the beſt and ſtrongeſt White-wine-vinegar one pint, and put it into a Pot, and put to it two new laid Eggs, and ſo let them ſteep in the ſaid Vinegar four and twenty hours at leaſt, and then give them to the *Horſe* four Mornings together, and ſo ſoon as he hath taken them, let him be ridden a while gently and then ſet up warm, and ſet upon the Trench till one or two of the Clock, then give him white Water, and ſometimes a ſweet Maſh, and let his Provender be moiſtned with Ale or Beer, and his Hay ſprinkled with Water, and this will cauſe him to purge and ſcowre from him much Flegme and Filth: three or four days after you have purged him thus, give him the drink preſcribed you before, which beginneth thus, *viz.* (take of Tanners Owes new made, wherein never came Hides, one pint, of ſallet Oyl four ſpoonfuls, two heads of Garlick, *&c.*) which being adminiſtred as is in the ſaid Cure preſcribed, and he ordered as is convenient for *Horſes* in Phyſick, will aſſuredly cure him. This I never made uſe of, but it was recommended to me for a ſpecial good one. Another,

Give him the laſt mentioned Purge of Eggs ſteeped in Vinegar, and keep him to it for four or five Mornings together, then for four days together after, give him a new laid Egg, ſhell and all, with as much powder of Brimſtone as will lie upon a ſhilling, then for ſix mornings after, give him every morning a Pill of waſhed Venice Turpentine, made up with the powder of the Root of Alkanet, and let every of theſe Pills be of the bigneſs of a good Wall-nut, let him take this Medicine evermore in the Morning faſting, and faſt after it till noon, and after order him as in other Phyſical Drinks: and withal you muſt know that until ſuch time as he be per-

fectly cured, he muſt not be put to any hard Labor, either by riding or otherwiſe, for that will rend a new, and break open again, the *Ulcer* being newly healed, which as yet be but green and tender. *** And this is a very good Receipt. Another for a *Glanders* or any Cold newly taken.

Take the long Moſs growing upon the Lymbes of old Timber-oakes, but not that which groweth upon the main Body or the Trunk of the Tree, gather thereof a good quantity, dry it and make it into Powder, and give it your *Horſe* four mornings together, in clear new Tanners Owes, one pint, mixing with the ſaid Owes and Powder, old red Wine one pint, let this Drink be given him with a Horn blood-warm, and for four days after cover and litter him warm, and ſet him upon the Trench, and let him there remain faſting during thoſe four hours; and for the time he taketh this drink, let his Manger-meat be dry hard Bread well baked, and his Rack-meat old dry Hay, but no Oates, and mix with his Bread ſome of this dryed Powder, being the Moſs of the Oak, together with Featherfew, water-Germander, and Sordium all dried and made into Powder, and let his Drink be freſh Tanners Owes, wherein came never Leather or Hides, and give it him with a Horn, if otherwiſe he ſhall refuſe to take it, but howſoever let him not drink or take it but blood-warm only. This was taught me by a worthy Knight, who affirmed that he hath often uſed the ſame, and that he hath done very great Cures therewith, but I having many other approved Receipts, did never make trial thereof, nevertheleſs it ſeemeth probably good. Another which I have often uſed.

Take ſix heads of Garlick, pill the Cloves, and ſtamp them well, then put unto it of life honey ſix Spoonfuls, and of wheat Meal, ſo much as will ſuffice, to make it into a Paſte, making thereof Pills every one of the bigneſs of a good Wall-nut, and ſo give him theſe Pills three or four at a time, and after them three new laid Eggs, and after them caſt into his Mouth of Bay-ſalt one handful; this muſt be given faſting and before he drink, at ſix or ſeven a Clock in the Morning, then let him be ridden until he do begin to ſweat, then bring him into the Stable and cloath him warm, and litter him,

and

and ſo let him ſweat an hour, then cool him by degrees, and after he hath faſted ſix hours give him meat, but no drink until ſix a clock in the evening, which let either be a ſweet Maſh or white water, and if need ſo require, let him have theſe Pills three mornings, reſting every one a day betwixt, and thus ordering him, he will be perfectly cured. *** This I have often proved, and have cured many *Horſes* of Colds and *Glanders*. Another very good,

Take of Bay-berries one ounce, of Licoriſh two drams, of brown Sugar-candy, Nutmegs, and Ginger, of each a penny-worth, of Garlick a half penny-worth, let all theſe be beaten and mixed, then take of Chamberly that is four days old, one quart, and boyl it by it ſelf to a pint, and put to it of ſweet Butter a half penny-worth, and with it the reſidue of the Ingredients, and ſo give it him blood-warm, &c. *** Another moſt Soveraign receipt for the *Glanders*; and whereof I have had very great experience.

Firſt cleer his Head by pricking him in the Mouth, and rub the place with Salt whereby to cauſe it to bleed the more, then take two long Feathers of a Gooſe-wing, well anointed with Oyl-de-Bay, thruſt it up and down his Noſtrils, which will open and purge his Head, alſo perfume his Head with the ſtalks of Garlick broken into ſmall pieces, with a Tunnel, or with a thick cloath caſt over his Head, the better to receive the ſmoak into his Noſtrils, and do this morning and evening, keeping him to a ſpare diet and moderate exerciſe, whereby the better to cleanſe his Head and Stomach, and to empty him, by which means the Brain will be the better quieted. To perfume him alſo with Frankinſenſe, Storax, and Benjamen, of each like much well mixed together, is very Soveraign; but two or three days after, let him blood in the Neck, after this let him be walked abroad, or gently ridden (if the Horſe be of ſufficient ſtrength) to get him breath, then adminiſter unto him this drink,

Take of Muskadine one pint, of London Treacle an ounce and a half, ſweet Butter three ounces, give him this blood-warm, take then tryed Hogs-greaſe, and rub and chafe him under the *Chaul* very well therewith, and leave him anointed thick therewith, then make him this Poultiſs,

Take of Mallowes two handfuls, of Worm-wood, Smalage and Rue, all ſmall ſhred and ſtamped, of each one handful, of Wheat-Bran, and of tryed Hogs-greaſe, of each one quart; boyl all theſe together, continually ſtirring them until the Hogs-greaſe be almoſt conſumed, and bind it under his *Chaul* ſo hot as he can well ſuffer the ſame, and keep his Head (eſpecially his Poll) very warm, leaving only Air for his Mouth and Noſe, and light for his Eyes. Then perfume him with Frankincenſe, and keep him warm in the Stable, and ſo let him reſt with this Poultiſs four and twenty hours. The next morning give him early of the beſt new Ale, one quart, with Anniſeeds, and Licoriſh, made together into very fine Powder, one ſpoonful, and a good piece of ſweet Butter, give him this with a horn blood-warm, then put into either Noſtril a long Gooſe-feather well dipped in Oyl-de-Bay and freſh Butter well mixed together, then remove the Poultiſs, and if you do find the Ternels and Inflammations too ripe, open them, and let forth the matter, and taint the Orifice with Turpentine and Hogs-greaſe molten together, then warm ſome of the Poultiſs you left, but not ſo hot as before, and lay it to the place, and let it ſo remain until the next day, his Head being ſtill kept warm, let his Manger meat be old clean Oates, well ſifted and moiſtened in new Ale and Muskadine, if he will eat them ſo, if not, then Ale alone, and let his Rack meat be Wheat-Straw well threſhed, and let his drink be white water for ten days after, and then let him not have afterwards any cold water, but with exerciſe, and let him ſometimes inſtead of white water, a ſweet Maſh, keeping him to a ſpare diet, and let him be every day Aired, either by riding or walking, if he be able to be brought out of the Stable, but then evermore keep him warm after it, and let him either by exerciſe in moderate riding, or in his cloaths in the Stable, ſweat a little every day once, and after let him be rubbed dry, neither let him ſweat in his cloaths. Put alſo into his Provender the roots of Elecampane, white Lillies, and Polipodium of the Oak newly gathered, made clean and chopped very ſmall, to the quantity of two ſpoonfuls every time, and give him no Provender but when he is very hungry, and fail not to continue

continue this courſe of Phyſick and diet by the ſpace of ten or twelve days together, and when theſe days be ended, give him this purging drink.

Glanders a purging drink.

Take of white Wine one quart, or where Wine may not eaſily be acquired, then the like quantity of good new Ale, Aloes an ounce and a half, made into fine Powder, of Agarick half an ounce, the powder of Elecampane two ſpoonfuls, of Life-Honey three ſpoonfuls, brew all theſe well together, and give it him blood-warm, and keep him warm, ſix days after let him blood in the Neck, and if the blood be good, then take not above a quart at moſt from him, but if it be naught take then a pottle from him; after this, order him both in feeding and exerciſe very moderately, and by this means you ſhall recover him, and bring him to his Priſtine health again. **** Another Receipt for the *Glanders*, very precious, which I have often tryed.

Take Life-Honey as much as will ſuffice, and mingle it with his Oats, rubbing the Oats and Honey together betwixt your hands, ſo as the Honey may be very well mixed with the Oats; let him eat his Oats thus mingled with the Honey until ſuch time as he be perfectly cured, which will be when you ſhall perceive him wholly to have left the running at the Noſe. **** I had this cure from one of the ableſt Farriers I ever knew in *England*, and I have cured many *Horſes* therewith. Another,

Take of Sallet-Oyl, and white Wine-Vinegar, of each three ſpoonfuls, beat them well together, and put it into one of his Noſtrils three mornings together, and ſo likewiſe convey it into his other Noſtril the like quantity of Oyl and Vinegar three mornings together, remembring that evermore when you do adminiſter this medicine, you do preſently put up into the ſame Noſtril a long Gooſe-feather dipped firſt in Oyl-de-Bay, ſtirring the Feather up and down in his Noſtril, which will cauſe him to ſneeze and ſnuff forth the Viſcous Corruption which remaineth in his Head. Keep him all the time warm, and let his drink be either ſweet Maſhes or white Water. **** Of this I have oft times made tryal, and it is ſpecial good as well for *Glanders*, as for any cold, if the *Horſe* run at the Noſe. Another right good,

Take

Take of Diapente and clarified Honey, of each one ounce, and with good Sack one pint, give it him blood-warm, being firſt well brewed together, drench him herewith eight mornings together, and ſo ſoon as you have given him this drink, inject into his Noſtrils this Receipt following,

Take the Powder of Ariſtolochia-rotunda, as much as will ſuffice, and mix with it white or Claret Wine in ſuch a proportion as may make it liquid, and inject or ſquirt it into his Noſe. *⁂* Or elſe,

Take the juyce of Selendine, mingled with fair water, and inject it into his Noſe. *⁂* Or elſe,

Take Roch Allum and Salt diſſolved in white Wine, and inject that up into his Noſe. *⁂* Either of all theſe are very good to cauſe to caſt ſuch naughty Corruption forth of his Noſe and Head, that doth much oppreſs him, which Lotions are to be adminiſtred evermore after the aforeſaid drink. *⁂* Another alſo very good drink,

Take Tanners Owes new made, and new Milk, of each one pint, Sallet-Oyl half a pint, one head of Garlick, pilled and bruiſed, a little Turmerick in fine Powder; boyl all theſe together as much as will ſuffice, then take it off and put in your Sallet-Oyl, and ſo give it him blood-warm; give him this drink three times in fifteen days, that is to ſay, once every five days, and every time you do adminiſter it unto him, convey half a hornful into each Noſtril, and let him ſtand upon the Trench three hours after, warm cloathed and littered, and then give him a ſweet Maſh, and ſuch meat as is dry, ſweet, and wholſome, but during the time of his Cure let his drink be white water. *⁂* This is very good. Another very good,

Take of fair water two quarts, of Comin, made into fine Powder and ſearſed two ounces, and of the inward Rine of Elder ſix handfuls; boyl this to a Moity, then take it off, and when it is half cold ſtrain it, and put into the Liquor half a pint of Sallet-Oyl, and give him thereof at his Mouth three hornfuls, and at either Noſtril half a hornful, then leap his back, and ride him moderately till he be warm, ſo ſet him up warm cloathed and littered, and three or four hours after give him a warm Maſh, but let him eat ſome Hay firſt. *⁂* This I can aver to be very good both for *Glanders* and *Cold*. Another,

Take

Take Oyl-de-Bay, and ſweet Butter, of each half a pound, Roſemary ſhred very well and ſmall half a handful, Garlick one pound, beat the Garlick unpilled in a ſtone Morter, with a wooden Peſtel very well, then put to it your Oyl, Butter, and Roſemary, and ſo make it into one body, then with Wheat-flower ſo much as will ſuffice, make it up into Pills, and give him three or four of theſe every day for ten days together, and order him *ut ſupra*. Of this I never made tryal, but it was recommended unto me for a ſpecial good Receipt. Another,

Take Cloves, Long-Pepper, Brown Sugar-Candy, and London Treacle, of each two ounces, beat the Sugar-Candy and Spices to very fine Powder, and put to them your Treacle, and after add to theſe Ingredients, of good Sack or Muskadine one pint, and firſt warm it upon the fire, and when it is almoſt cold enough to be given him, put to it of Sallet-Oyl three penny-worth, and ſo blood-warm give it him, and in giving convey into either Noſtril half a hornful of this drink, and then order him *ut ſupra*. Another,

Take of new Milk one quart, warm from the Cow, two heads of Garlick pilled and bruiſed, boyl theſe together, keeping them with continual ſtirring, then take it off, and let it cool, and a little before it be cold enough to give him, put to it of Life-Honey two ſpoonfuls, and of Sallet-Oyl half a pint, give it him blood-warm, reſerving for either Noſtril half a hornful, then order him *ut ſupra*. Theſe latter Cures I never made tryal of, but I think them to be very good. Another,

Take Iſop, ſweet Margerom, Lavender-Cotton, the roots and crops of Elecampane, of each one handful, chop and ſhred all theſe together very ſmall, and boyl them in good Ale or Beer, ſo much as will ſuffice, then ſtrain it, and when the Liquor is almoſt cold, break into it two new laid Eggs, and ſtir it well together, and ſo give it him blood-warm, give him this drink three times, that is every third day. This hath been recommended unto me for a very good Receipt, whereby to cure not only the *Glanders*, but the mourning of the *Chine*, but I never made uſe thereof.

But now ſith hence I am come almoſt to the end of my Receipts,

ceipts for this infirmity, I will give you two Receipts, the one for the *Glanders*, the other for the mourning of the *Chine*, which are Maſter *Markhams*, which he ſtileth thus. Two moſt certain and newly found out Medicines, which will without fail cure any *Glanders*, though our *Farriers* hold it impoſſible. The cure. If your *Horſe* his cold be come to the worſt *Glanders*, which is a continual running at the *Noſe*, and hath ſo run by the ſpace of divers months, ſo that the *Farriers* can do no good, then ſhall you take better then two handfuls of the white cankerous Moſs which groweth upon an old Oaken pale, and boyl it in Milk two quarts, till one part be almoſt conſumed, then ſtrain it and ſqueeze the Moſs well, which done give it your *Horſe* luke-warm to drink, then take two Geeſe Feathers, and take ſweet Butter, as a bigg Walnut, and with the Powder of Brimſtone, finely beaten and ſearſed, work them together with your Knife or Splatter, till the Butter be brought to a high Gold colour, then take two clean Feathers the longeſt in all the Gooſe-wing, and firſt at the quill ends with a Needle faſten two long Threads, then with your Salve anoint the Feathers all over, which done in the dry Powder of Brimſtone, rowl them over and over, then putting the Feathers ends formoſt, open the *Horſes* Noſtrils, and thruſt them up into his Head, then take the threads, which are at the quills ends, and faſten them on the top of the *Horſes* head, which done ride him abroad for an hour or two, Airing him in this manner morning and evening, and when you bring him into the Stable, after he hath ſtood tyed up a pretty ſeaſon, untye the threads, and draw out the Feathers, and wiping them very dry, lay them up till you have the next occaſion to uſe them, and keep his body warm. This diſeaſe you muſt underſtand, cometh not ſuddenly, but grows out of long proceſs of time; ſo likewiſe the cure muſt not be expected to be done in a moment, but with much leiſure: Therefore you muſt continue your Medicine, as your leiſure will ſerve, either every day, or at the leaſt thrice a week, if it be for four or five months together, and be ſure it will in the end yield your deſire.

Now the ſecond and well aſſured, and certain Medicine

is

is to take Elecampane roots, and boyl them in Milk till they be ſoft, that you may bring them to Pap, then with a horn give them to the *Horſe*, together with the Milk lukewarm, being no more then will make the roots liquid, then having anointed your Gooſe-feathers put them into his Noſtrils, and ride him forth as before is ſhewed. The other receipt for the mourning of the *Chine*, he entituleth thus,

A moſt rare and reproved Medicine, to cure any high running *Glanders*, called the mourning of the *Chine*, held of all men incurable. This diſeaſe to my knowledge, there is not any Smith or *Farrier* in this Kingdom can tell how to cure: For it comes not to the extremity, till the *Horſe* hath run at the *Noſe*, a year or more, and have at the roots of his *Tongue* a hard Lung gathered, which will not be diſſolved. Now for mine own part it is well known, that I have cured many with this Medicine only:

Take of *Agri-pigmentum*, and of *Tuſſilaginis*, beaten into fine Powder, of each four drams, then beating them with fine Turpentine bring them into a paſte, then make of it little Cakes or Troſches, as broad as a Groat, and dry them. This done lay about two or three of them on a Chafingdiſh of Coals, and cover them with a Funnel, ſo that the ſmoak may come out only at the end thereof, and ſo without any loſs aſcend up into the *Horſes* Head through his Noſtrils, then ride the *Horſe* till he begin to ſweat; this do once every morning, before water, till the running be ſtopped, which will be in very ſhort ſpace, conſidering the greatneſs of this diſeaſe. *Perfume.*

Theſe be Maſter *Markham*'s two great Cures, which by reaſon he hath ſo great Encomiums of their Vertues, and alſo what great Cures he hath wrought and perfected with them, I think it not amiſs to inſert them in this place. Thus I have delivered unto you a great number of Receipts for this one diſeaſe, many of which I have found very good, ſome I could never have means or occaſion to prove, and therefore I muſt expect prompt opportunities, in the interim I do remit them to my brethren to practiſe. But I will now conclude this Chapter, with one only Receipt more, which I do eſteem my Maſter-piece of this Malady,

having had much experience thereof, nor did it ever fail me upon often tryal made. This cure is called, The black drink of the *Glanders*. The Cure. Firſt prepare his *Body* with Bran prepared, and after with a Cliſter, and your Gooſe-feathers, as before hath been taught you. This done,

The black drink for the Glanders.

Take new made Chamberly, and of the beſt and ſtrongeſt white Wine Vinegar, of each half a pint, then take of Muſtard-ſeed two or three ſpoonfuls, and make Muſtard thereof with Vinegar, and let it be very well ground, that done, put your Vinegar and Chamberly to the Muſtard, and ſo ſtir them well together. Then take of Tar and Bay-ſalt, of each like much, ſo much as will ſuffice, incorporate them well together, and convey ſo much thereof, as three Eggs-ſhells will hold, the meat firſt taken forth, and having firſt prepared theſe things, let the *Horſe* be taken forth out of the Stable (being kept that night to a very ſpare diet) and ride him till he begin to ſweat, then give him the three Eggs-ſhells filled with the ſaid Tar and Salt, and ſo ſoon as he hath taken that, give him with a horn the forenamed drink made of Chamberly, Vinegar and Muſtard, all at the mouth, excepting only two ſmall or half hornfuls, which let be conveyed into his Noſtrils, which ſo ſoon as he hath taken, let him be ridden again, ſo much as before you did, then bring him into the Stable, cloath him up warm and litter him well, and ſo let him ſtand upon the Trench until three or four of the Clock, then unbit him and give him a warm Maſh, and order him in all things as is uſual for *Horſes* in Phyſick. Give him this Medicine or drink every other or third day, three or four times, and it is an infallible Cure. *** This Cure I got from a Noble Knight, who had done many Cures therewith, who was very preciſe in teaching it, and ſince I came to know thereof, I have perfected many great Cures therewith, upon *Horſes* far ſpent with the *Glanders*, inſomuch as if it be rightly and carefully adminiſtred it will cure the rankeſt *Glanders* that is. And with this Cure I conclude this Chapter.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

SECT. 1. *H.*

Hyppophylus.

VVEll Hippoſerus, *ſith hence we have finiſhed this Chapter, let us go to the next; and tell me, what means have you to help the falling away of the* Hair *from the* Main *and* Tail *of a* Horſe.

Hippoſ. Sir, this diſeaſe cometh ſometimes by a heat which the *Horſe* hath taken, which hath ingendred a dry *Mainge* in the *Main* and *Tail*, which is the occaſion of the ſhedding of the *Hair* from thoſe parts, and ſometimes it cometh by a Surfeit, cauſing evil *Humours* to reſort to thoſe parts, which is the cauſe of the falling away of the *Hair*, and I have alſo known a *Horſe* to ſhed the *Hair* both of *Main* and *Tail* after he hath been violently and dangerouſly viſited with the *Stavers*, the ſigns are evident. And the cure is,

Hair from the Main and Tail falling away.

Firſt take blood from the *Neck-vein*, if it be only in the *Main*, but if in both *Main* and *Tail*, and then after you have opened the *Neck-vein*, and taken from thence a reaſonable quantity of *Blood*, then ſlit the *skin* of the inward part of the *Tail*, next to the *Tuel* from the Buttocks to the fourth *Joint*, and there with your Cornet you ſhall find a hard Griſtle which the *French Mariſhals* do call *Barivole*, raiſe it up with your Cornet and take it forth: That done, fill up the cliſt with Salt finely beaten, and then with a hot iron ſteep it in Buckly; burn the Tail in ſundry places, and then anoint the places ſo burned with Hogs-greaſe till they be whole. *** This cure I got in *France* among the *Mariſhals* there, whom I ſaw cure ſundry *Horſes* of this malady, and I my ſelf have cured four or five after the ſame method. If it be both in the *Main* and *Tail*, and that you be fearful to experiment this cure by reaſon you never ſaw the manner of it, then ſearch both *Main* and *Tail* well with your finger as aforeſaid, and anoint the places with this Unguent. Take Quick-ſilver, and tryed Hogs-greaſe (the Quick-ſilver being firſt mortified

with falling ſpittle) incorporate them very well together till the Hogs-greaſe be of a perfect Aſh-colour, and anoint the ſorrance therewith every day once, holding a hot bar of iron neer, to cauſe the Oyntment to ſink in, and in three or four days thus dreſſing him, he will be well. *** This is a very good Receipt, and I have often uſed it.

SECT. 2. *H.*

Hippoph. *But then what is good to make the Hair to grow again?*

Hair to grow.

Hippoſ. Take the dung of a Goat newly made, ordinary Honey, Allum, and the blood of a Hog, the Allum being firſt made into fine Powder: Boyl all theſe together, and rub and anoint the places therewith every day, and it will cauſe the Hair to come again apace. *** This is ſpecial good.

Hippoph. *What is good for the* Headach?

Headach.

Hiproſ. Firſt let him *blood* in the *Mouth*, and rub it with Salt to cauſe it to bleed the more, then take two long Feathers of a Gooſe-wing well anointed in Oyl-de-Bay, thruſt them up and down his *Noſtrils*, whereby to open and purge his *Head*, and then perfume his *Head* with the ſtalks of Garlick broken into ſmall pieces, as is before ſhewed, keeping him to a ſpare diet, and moderate exerciſe, the better to cleanſe his *Head* and *Stomach*, and to empty himſelf, by means whereof the *Head* and *Brain* will be the better quieted. It were very good alſo to perfume him with Frankincenſe, Storax, and Benjamin, groſly beaten and well mixed, of each like much, as will ſuffice, but two or three days after let him blood, and give him white water for eight days after, during which time you may do well ſometimes to give him a ſweet Maſh. *** This is very good.

SECT. 3. *H.*

Hippoph. *What is good to help the* Heels *that be* ſcabbed?

Hippoſ. You ſhall many times have ſmall dry Scabs upon your *Horſe Heels*, which will not be greatly noxious to him, and thereupon the beſt cure for his Keeper daily

daily to anoint them throughly with the Oyntment made of Elbow-greaſe. But if there be any running *Humour* iſſuing from the *Heels* of the *Horſe* then let him ſtand every day morning and evening up to the Belly in water till the Scabs do contract, then make a convenient *Cautherize* neer to the *joynts*, as well croſs as thwartwiſe, then heal it up as you uſe to do *kibed Heels*. ***This is very good. *Heels ſcabbed.*

SECT. 4. *H.*

Hippoph. WHat *is good for* Heels *that be kibed?*

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe the *French* do call *Javarrs*, which is a kind of Scratches, and the cure is to *Cautherize* the middle of the ſwelling along, both long and croſswiſe; that done take Ox-dung reeking hot, mix it upon the fire with Sallet-Oyl, and apply it to the ſorrance, once and no more, then do afterwards as I preſcribed you in the cure of a Splent in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 18. *ſect.* 17. *S.* This I never tryed. *Heels kibed.*

SECT. 5. *H.*

Hippoph. WHat *cure have you for Heels that are troubled with the* Mellet*?*

Hippoſ. This ſorrance we call the *Mellet*, is a very dry ſcab that groweth upon the Heel, ſometimes on the one and ſometimes on the other Heel; ſometimes it cometh of corrupt Blood, ſometimes of a blow given by the *Toe* with the *hinder Foot*, for the *Mellet* grows commonly upon the *Heel* or *Fore-foot*, and ſometimes for want of good rubbing and dreſſing after Tavel; it will alſo have a dry chop without any moiſture at all. The ſigns to know it is eaſie, to wit, it will ſoon be felt with your hand. To cure it I have before ſhewed you in ſect. *præcedenti.* But yet I will give you one Receipt more for the ſame cure, whereof I have made often tryal, and it is very good. *Heel Mellet.*

Take of ordinary Honey half a pint, black Sope a quarter of a pound, mix theſe together, and put thereto four or five ſpoonfuls of Vinegar, and as much Allum finely beaten as a Hens-Egg unburned, and of Rye-flower two ſpoonfuls, mix

mix and incorporate all theſe well together, and having firſt clipped or ſhaven away the *Hair*, apply this medicine Plaiſter-wiſe to the ſorrance, juſt ſo far as the ſorrance goeth, and let it ſo remain five days, and then take it away, and waſh all the Legg, Foot and ſorrance with powdred Beef-broth, and after rope his Legs with Thumbands of ſoft Hay wet, and he will be ſound. But then you muſt underſtand that when at any time you do dreſs the ſorrance, you do not fail to take off the dry ſcab, or what ever cruſty thing ſhall be upon or about the place, and by waſhing and cleanſing the ſore that you do make it marvellous clean. ***This is a very good Receipt.

SECT. 6. *H.*

Hippoph. *What is good to help a Horſe that is* Hide-bound?

Hippoſ. This malady is when the *skin* of the *Horſe* doth cleave to the *Fleſh*, as you cannot with your hand pull up the *skin* from the *Ribs*; ſometimes it cometh through extreme poverty and maceration; and ſometimes through the indiſcretion of the Groom for want of good tending; ſometimes of a Surfet taken by over-riding, aed violent heats given him, and then waſht, or negligently ſuffered to ſtand long in the cold or in the rain: And ſometimes again it cometh of corrupt *Cholerick blood* ſiccicating the *Fleſh*, which wanting its natural courſe, cauſeth the *skin* to ſhrink and cling together, and ſo cleave the *Bones* and *Fleſh*; it alſo maketh him ſick, and to have a gaunt *Belly* ſhrunk up to his *Flanks*, and his *Hair* will ſtare, and his *Legs* will ſwell: And by theſe ſigns you may know the diſeaſe it is ſo conſpicuous. It cauſeth alſo ſiccity and aridity in the *Liver* and *Lungs*, cauſing great torment throughout all the whole *Body*, and his *dung* will be very hard and dry, and of a naughty ſavour, for his Body will be very coſtive, and if he have not help in reaſonable time, if death it ſelf enſue not, yet will at laſt other deſperate maladies attach him, whereof the leaſt will be the *Mainge*, which will not eaſily or ſuddenly be cured. The cure is to let him *Blood* either on both *ſides* the *Neck*, or on both the *Spur-veins*, then cloth and litter him warm, and do no more unto him that

that day, more then to give him good meat and white water, for cold water he muſt not drink till he be throughly well again. The next day give him this drink.

Take of white-Wine one pint, of Sallet-oyl one pound, of Venice Turpentine one ounce, of Mithridate, of Loaf-Sugar, and of Caſſia prepared, of each two ounces, of the milk of ſweet Almonds half a pint, and of Verjuce of the Crab one penny-worth, mix all theſe well together, and warming it upon the fire, give it to the ſick *horſe*, let him have this drink ſix or ſeven mornings together, always having a ſpecial care to the ſtrength of the *Horſe* as well in this, as in all other your cures. *** This is a cure I have uſed very often and have found it to be ſpecial good. *Another* ſingular good receipt, firſt, anoint his body all over with *Acopum* and *Sack* warmed together, or elſe with this *Bath*. *Hide-bound.*

Take fair water, Mallows, Smallage, Roſemary, and Bay-leaves; boil all theſe in the water till they ſhall become ſoft, and ſo *bath* his whole *body* therewith warm, and when you have dryed him again, anoint him with this unguent.

Take of Hogs-greaſe tryed one pound, Camomile, Mallows, Grunſel, Smallage, of each one handful, chop the herbs very ſmall, and boyl them with the Hogs-greaſe a good while with a ſoft fire, then ſtrain it, and wring forth the oyl that cometh of the herbs, and with this Unguent anoint his *body* all over, for it will both ſupple and looſen his *skin*: the next day give him this drink.

Take of Muskadine and of ſtrong Ale, of each one pint, Grunſel, Rue, Smallage, Roſemary, and Betony, of each like much: all together amounting to a handful. Then take Gum-Dragagant one ounce, two heads of Garlick pilled and bruiſed: let all theſe boyl in the Muskadine and Ale, to the conſumation of one pint, then put to it of ſweet Butter a penny-worth, and when it is molten, take it from the fire, and ſtrain it very hard, and ſo give it him bloud-warm. Let this drink be divided into three parts, wherefore give him one part the firſt morning, the other ſecond parts, the ſecond and third mornings following; for you muſt underſtand that when I ſaid that this drink muſt be boyled to the conſumati-

on

on of one pint; my meaning is, that it muſt boyl till one part be conſumed, and not otherwiſe; and in the interim you muſt keep your *Horſe* very warm, and let his drink be either ſweet Maſhes or white water, and four days after he hath been thrice thus drenched, give him this other drink. Take Aniſeeds, Licoriſh, Fennelſeeds, Bay-berries, Elecampane dryed, Fenugrick, Turmerick, of each like much, all made into very fine powder, and ſearſed, let two ſpoonfuls of this powder (being well mixed,) be infuſed in good Ale one quart, with Sallet oyl two ſpoonfuls, give him this drink four mornings together, wherein you are to obſerve that the firſt time you are to adminiſter this drink to your *Horſe*, you are to put into the Ale two ſpoonfuls of this powder, and the other three mornings, but one ſpoonful: keep him warm, and order him as is behooveful for a ſick *Horſe* that is in *phyſick*, and he is certainly cured. *** This is a ſpecial good Receipt.

Another,

Let him *bloud* in both the *flank veins*, then take of good white Wine one quart, and put thereto of Sallet-oyl three ounces, of Cummin one dram, Anniſeeds and Licoriſh, of each two ounces, make all theſe into very fine powder, and ſearſe them, and give it him blood-warm, then ſet him up, and let him be throughly rubbed againſt the *hair*, and along the *back* and *ribs*, and nape of the neck, half an hour together, then cover all his *back* with a *Sack* made throughly well ſoaked in a tub of water, and when it hath drained a while, lay it upon him, and upon that, two houſing cloaths at the leaſt, and gird them cloſe unto him well wiſped, which will bring him into a ſweat, which truly will be the prime cauſe whereby to reſtore him to his priſtine ſanity, but let him not ſweat above an hour at moſt, and cool him by degrees, taking away the Sack firſt, and keep him to ſweet Maſhes or white water during the time of his *phyſick*, and longer; let him be thus drenched, ſweated, and ordered, ſeven days together, and give him in ſtead of his Oates, Barly boyled, and dry Beans bruiſed in *a Mill*, and good old ſweet Hay, well ſhaked and duſted, and ſometimes green *Mault* from off the *floar*; and after eight days let him *bloud* in both the *breſt veins*, but take not above a pint of *blood* from him

him in all, and that day you *bloudy* him, give him of good Sack one pint, and put to it of Sallet-oyl a quarter of a pint, and of *London* Treacle one ounce, warm this upon the fire, and brew them well together, and ſo adminiſter it bloud-warm, then leap his *back*, and ride him till he ſweat, then ſet him up warm cloathed and littered, and at night give him a ſweet Maſh, putting into it the powder of Brimſtone two ſpoonfuls, and he will be well again. *** This is very good. Another;

Take Hogs greaſe two drams, and of the juyce of Dragon wort one ounce, of Incenſe half a dram, of Sirrup of Roſes three ounces, diſſolve all theſe in Tiſan one pint and a half, ſet it upon the fire till all be diſſolved, and ſo give it him bloud-warm, and exerciſe him moderately upon it till he do begin to ſweat, then ſet him up warm, and exerciſe him moderately upon it till he do begin to ſweat, then ſet him up warm, and let him faſt three hours after, and this will ſcoure from him all his infection, looſen his skin, and procure a good appetite to meet, provided you take *bloud* from him the day before, and (if as well in this receit as in all the former) you do give your *Horſe* a *ſuppoſitory* the day before you drench him, you will much better and ſooner perfect your *cure*, eſpecially if you find him *coſtive*, otherwiſe a gentle *Clyſter* will not be amiſs. *** This is a well approved cure, and I have often uſed it.

SECT. 7. *H.*

Hippoph. *How do you cure a* Horſe *that is* Hipſhot? *Hippoſ.* Sir, this cometh ſundry ways, that is to ſay, either by a ſtroke with another *Horſe*, or by a wrench, by which means the *bone* may be ſlipped out, and then it muſt be put in again, or by a ſtrain, which may cauſe him to halt, or by means of ſome thorne which he may get by leaping or running among buſhes, which muſt firſt be gotten out, otherwiſe the place will feſter, and he go lame. The cure is, firſt let him *bloud* in the *thigh veine*, on that ſide whereon the grief is, then charge him with this *charge* we call a *Honey charge*, preſcribed you in the next *Section*, and ſo put upon the other

foot a *pattenſhooe*, and let him not lie down in ten days (if that the *bone* have been out) after bathe the place well with that bath which is already taught you in *lib. 2. chap. 5. lit. B.* and the Receipt beginneth thus (take Smallage, Ox-eye, and Sheeps-ſuet, &c.) and put into the *Bath* ſome of the ſaid *Honey-charge*, and if this do not cure him (as it is moſt probable it will) then apply to the place this *Ceroene* (as the *French* do term it) which is a Searcloath very hot, and this *Ceroene* is thus made:

Take of black Pitch half a pound, of Maſtick two ounces, of Galbanum four ounces, of fat Pitch and of Turpentine, of each half a pound; melt theſe in a pot together, and when it is half cold, charge the place up to the *hanch*, and ſo overthwart the *reins* of the *back*, and if he be not cured at the end of eight or ten days more with this *Ceroene*, or *Searcloth*, then take it off and apply to the place grieved this Unguent:

Take of Oyl de-Bay, Althea, tried Hogs-greaſe, of each half a pound; incorporate all theſe together to an unguent, and therewith anoint, rub, and chafe the place grieved, and he ſhall do well. *** This is a very good Receipt, and I have made great uſe thereof.

SECT. 8. *H.*

Hippoph. HOw *do you make this Honey-Charge*, Hippoſerus?

Hoppoſ. I will ſhew you Sir, Take of Wheat-meal two pound, and put a little Wine to it, as much as will ſuffice, put it into a Kettle, as if you were to make a Poulteſs, and when it is well mixed, add to it of Bolearmoniak in fine powder, half a pound, of common Engliſh Honey one pound, then ſet it upon the fire, and boyl it, keeping it continually ſtirring, and put to it in the boyling, of black pitch half a pound, ſtill ſtirring till it be boyled ſo much as will ſuffice, and when it is almoſt enough, put to it of ordinary Turpentine half a pound, of Oyl de-Bay, Comin, Althea, Sanguis Draconis, Bay-berries, Fenugrick, and of Linſeed-meal, of each two drams, boyl all theſe together again, ſtill ſtirring them

them till they be well incorporate, and herewith charge the grieved *members* of the *horſe*. *** This is the very beſt charge that I do know for ordinary griefs of this nature; but if you be to apply this to many *horſes*, then muſt you double your ingredients according to the number of your *horſes*. This *charge* is ſingular good for any ſlip or wrench in the ſhoulder, hip, or other member, for all ſorts of ſcratches, and for ſtifneſs of *ſinews* hurt or any way offended, as alſo for a *hip-ſhot* or *diſlocation*, or for a *horſe* that is overwearied with travel, as alſo to draw away all bad *humours*, to aſſwage ſwellings and tumours, and it will ſerve in the place of a *white plaiſter*. And this I have often tried.

SECT. 9. *H.*

Hippoph. *WEll now let us come to treat of the* hoof; *what have you good to mollifie the* hoof, *and to cauſe it to grow?* *Hoof to grow.*

Hippoſ. I gave you a very good receit in *lib. 2. chap 6. ſect. 3. lit. C.* but now I will give you more which ſhall be very good. Take Elder-leaves, and of Wal-wort, of each like much; ſtamp and ſtrain them till you have gotten of the juyce one quart, or better, then take of Mutton or Deers ſuet clarified, three pound, Turpentine, Honey, and Sallet-oyl, of each one pound: boyl theſe till all the juyce be conſumed into the other ingredients; then when it is cold, reſerve it, and when you have occaſion to uſe it, anoint the *hoof* therewith. *** This is very precious. Another as good to cauſe the *hoof* to grow. You muſt obſerve this rule *viz.* you muſt at what time you would have him *ſhod*, cauſe his *hoof* to be pared well and even, and to open the *heels* and *fruſh* well, and ſo let him be *ſhod* up; which muſt be done when the *Moon* is three days in the increaſe after the *change*, by which means the *hoof* will grow more in eight days then (if he had been pared and ſhod in any other time of the *Moon*) in fifteen days, both faſter and better; then to ſupple the *hoof*, and to cauſe it to grow the more, Take Goats-greaſe, Turpentine, Sallet oyl and new wax, of each two ounces, melt them together, then whileſt they be hot, add to it of ordinary Ho-

ney three ounces, of Sanguis-Draconis one dram, in fine powder: incorporate all these together, and bring them to an Unguent, with which anoint and rub the *hoofs* of the *horse* daily, which may well be done by using to each the quantity of a hasle nut of this oynment, which will cause the *hoof* to grow more in fifteen days, then without it in three months, and if you add to the former ingredients, of the juyce of the herb called *Hepatica*, six ounces, and of the root called *Hosmanderigalis* two ounces, it will be much better. For if you do find that the aforesaid Unguent do not make the *hoof* to come away to your mind, then will this addition assuredly do it. *** This is a very good receit. Another,

Take Sallet-oyl four ounces, new Wax and Turpentine, of each one ounce, Goats-grease three ounces, melt all these together, and being all molten, take it from the fire, and put into it of Horse-grease, Agrippa, and of Marciaton, of each one ounce, beat and incorporate all these together with the other ingredients, till it be through cold; with this oyntment, rub and anoint the *coffins* of the *hoofs*, especially about the *cronet* at the *hair*, every day once, and it will grow very much. *** This is singular good. Another very good,

Take of Hogs-grease three pound, of patch or peece-grease two pound, Turpentine one pound, new Wax half a pound, and of Sallet-oyl one pound, melt, and mix all these together, bringing it to an Oyntment, and herewith rub and anoint the *Coffins* of the *horse* especially about the *Cronets*, near to the hair.*** But if your *horse* be prickt in shooing, or otherwise accidently hurt in or about the *Sole*, draw forth the *Nail* first, or whatsoever was the cause of his harm, then take a few of the longest hairs from his *Tail*, and wrap them about the point of the said *Nail*, and cast the said *Nail* (thus wrapped up in the *Hair* (into the fire, and he will go sound, and upright again: provided you do not suffer any other *Nail* to be driven in the place of the former.*** This may have supposed to be a *Charm*, but I for my part do not think it to be any such matter. I have often used the same, and have evermore found it to make a perfect Cure.

Now as touching hurts and bruises in the *feet*, most certain it is, that a *horse* will many times have a *sore foot*, which will run

run with water and matter about the *Fruſh* and *heel*, which many will ignorantly imagine to be a diſeaſe in the *Foot*, not knowing how it might come, when as it is nought elſe but a very bruiſe, gotten by treading upon a ſtone or ſtub, and I have cured many *horſes* in this wiſe, *viz.* Take a wild or garden Colewort, and beat it with old Bores-greaſe to an Unguent, and apply it unto the Sorance, then leap his back, and ride him an eaſie Trot upon ſward ground, to the end the Medicine may the better enter into the *ſore*, and thus dreſſing him once a day he will ſoon be well.***This is very good. But if your *horſe* have a weeping *hoof*, or ſmall clifts, which diſeaſe the *French* do call *la Corne que Eſcume*, the *Coffin* which frotheth or weeſeth; Then the cure is; Firſt to open the place with your *Drawing iron* or *Cornet*, I mean the outward part thereof only, till you come unto the *Maſter Vein*, which you muſt break with your *Cornet* and ſuffer it to bleed ſo long as it will, then fill up the wound with the powder of Salt, and hurds ſteeped in Vinegar, and bind them ſo on that they fall not off, and thus by dreſſing it every day once, and in ſhort time it will be well. This cure I never tried my ſelf, but I have been preſent ſundry times in *France*, where I have ſeen this cure fully perfected by *Mariſhals* there. *Hoof-weeping.*

But if the *hoof* be *looſe*, then: take Bettony, Roſemary, Rue, Red-Mints, Tanſie, Sothern-wood, of each like much: bray all theſe herbs with Tar, ſo much as will ſuffice, and the powder of Bole-Armoniack, ſo much as will ſuffice, and apply it to the *hoof*, till you find that it be faſt again. **** This alſo is very good. *Another*, Take Tar, Brimſtone in fine powder, Wheat-bran, and the Urine of a Man-child: boyl all theſe to a Pultis, and apply it hot to the *hoof*, and this will faſten it. **** This is ſingular good. But if the Vein lie bare in the *ſole* of the *hoof* to grow over it, whereby it becometh ſound again, make this Plaiſter, and apply it to the Sorance. *Hoof-looſe.*

Take Stone-Pitch, and Roſin, of each two ounces, Brimſtone in fine powder one ounce; melt all theſe together till they be well incorporate, then when you take it from the fire, add thereto of Turpentine one ounce, and ſo ſtir them all together, and as it cooleth, make it up into Rowls, and when *Hoof-hurt.*

you

you would uſe it, pour the ſame into the *Orifice* by the help of a red hot-iron, and ſo all about the Sorrance, then clap Hurds upon it, and over that a piece of Leather, cut and ſhaped for the purpoſe, and ſo ſplent it to keep it faſt on. Uſe thus to dreſs him twice or thrice, and he will be cured. *** This is very good. But if the *foot* have taken any harm by an over-reach, ſtub, prick, or gravel, then making the wound very clean, and laying it bare,

Take Sope, and Salt of each like much, ſo much as will ſuffice, make them to an Unguent, then firſt waſh the Sore with Chamberly and Salt, or Beer and Salt, and dry it again, with a linnen rag, then bind on the Medicine, and let it ſo remain four and twenty hours; and do thus if the wound be great three or four days together: then having with this Medicine exhauſted all the *Venome* (which it will ſoon do;) take of Train-Oyl one ſpoonful or two, and much Ceruſe, that is, white lead in fine powder, and ſo work them to a thick ſalve; then apply that to the ſorrance plaiſter-wiſe till it be whole; which will not be long, for nothing doth dry up ſooner, or is more kindly, or Natural for the breeding of a new *hoof* than this. Another moſt ſoveraign for a *hoof-bound.*

Hoof-bound. Firſt pluck off the Shooes, and ſhooe him up again with *half Moon or lunet ſhooes*, then eaſe with your drawing-Iron or Rape the quarters of the *hoofs* on both ſides of the *Feet*, from the *Cronet*, down to the end or bottom of the *hoofs*, ſo deep till you perceive as it were a dew to come forth, and if you make two Raſes it will be the better, and enlarge the *hoofs* the more, that done anoint the *hoofs* above next to the *hair*, about the *Cronet* with this oyntment:

Take of Turpentine one pound, of Wax, and of Sheeps or Deers-Suet, of each half a pound, of Tarr, and of Sallet-oyl, of each half a pint; melt all but the Turpentine together, and when it is almoſt ready to be taken off from the fire, put in your Turpentine, and ſo ſtir it well together till it be cold. Let his *hoofs* be anointed therewith once a day till you do perceive he mendeth, and then let him be ridden upon ſoft, moiſt-ſwardy-ground, an hour or two every day once, for the ſpace of a *Month*, and if he do not grow well at the *Months* end,

(as

(as I am confident he will) then take of the *Lunet-ſhooes*, and pare his *Soles*, *Frushes*, and *Heels*, ſo thin, till you may ſee a dew to come forth, and the *blood* ready to ſtart, then tack on his *Shooes*, and *ſtop* all his *Feet* as well within as without, with this Charge:

Hoof bound a Charge.

Take of Cow or Ox-dung, and of Wheat-Bran, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, of tryed Hogs-greaſe, and of the Kidney of a Loyn of Mutton, of each one pound, of Turpentine, and Tar, of each half a pound, melt all theſe together (the Turpentine excepted) which muſt be put in, when it is almoſt ready to be taken from the fire, continually ſtirring it, to the end the Ingredients may be the better mixed. Let this *Charge* be laid on good and hot, renewing it every day once by the ſpace of nine days, to the end the *ſole* may ariſe: But if this will not do it, then take out the *ſoles* clean, and after you have ſtanched the bleeding with the tender tops of Iſope well ſtamped in a ſtone Morter, then apply the medicine of *Snails*, Bay-ſalt, and red Nettles ſhewed you in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 9. *ſect.* 18. *F.* renewing it once a day for three days, and after you may heal up the *Feet*, and bring a new, and perfect *ſole* with your green Oyntment ſo often recommended unto you in many other of my *Cures*; and thus you ſhall rectifie the *Hoofs*, and make him ſound, but then you muſt be ſhod with *Lavels* again, and turned forth to Graſs. *** But if he hath ſtood in the Stable with little exerciſe, whereby he may be in danger of a *dry Foundring*:

Hoof brittle.

Take of Turpentine, of Sheeps-ſuet, and of Wax, of each one pound, of Sallet-Oyl one pint, of Tar half a pint, melt all theſe upon a ſoft fire, and ſtir them in the melting until they be all well incorporate, but put in your Turpentine laſt, which being well molten put it up in a clean Veſſel, and keep it for your uſe, and herewith anoint the *Hoofs* of your *Horſe* daily, they having been firſt waſhed very clean, and wiped dry, and this will conſerve his *Hoofs* ſupple and moiſt, keep them cool, and make them very tough and ſound. *** This I have often uſed. But if the *Hoofs* be ſomewhat ſtreight, and yet the *Horſe* not *Hoofe-bound*, then adminiſter this Medicine to his *Feet*.

Take

Hoof ſtraight. Take the fat of Bacon, the Sward cut away half a pound, of white Sope three ounces, Balm one handful, and five or ſix ſprigs of the tender tops of Rue, chop, and ſtamp all *Hoof looſe.* theſe together very well in a Morter, and then fry them, and lay them to the *Hoofs* reaſonable hot, and keep him from coming in any wet till he be well, and being thus dreſſed every day once, his *Hoofs* will in ſhort time be ſound, well and eaſie to him again. *** This Receipt is very good. But let us diſcourſe of a *looſe Hoof*, yet a little more. Take of Tar three ſpoonfuls, of Roſin three ounces, of Tanſy, Rue, Mints, and Sothren-wood of each one handful, pound all theſe very well adding to it of ſweet Butter half a pound, of Virgin Wax half an ounce, and ſo try them altogether till it come to be a thick Salve, and apply it Plaiſter-wiſe warm to the *Hoofs*, ſeven or eight days together, and this will cure him, and faſten the *Hoofs* again. *** This is very good. But if his Hoof be otherwiſe hurt, either by ſome other *Horſe* treading upon his *Hoof*, or by any other accident, then

Hoof troden upon or hurt. Take an Egg, and Soot ſo much as will ſuffice, to be beaten with the ſaid Egg till it be ſtiff like a Salve, then add to it of Sallet-Oyl and Harts-horn made into Powder, of each two or three ſpoonfuls, boyl this to a thick Salve, continually ſtirring it in the boyling, and apply it to the *Hoofs* Plaiſter-wiſe, daily dreſſing them till they be whole. This I never made tryal of, howbeit it was commended to me to be a ſpecial good Receipt. Another very good to make a brittle or pomized *Hoof* tough.

Hoof brittle to make tough. Take freſh Butter one pound, Wax and Turpentine of each half a pound, melt firſt the Wax, then put to it your Butter, and when that is molten put in your Turpentine, and ſo ſtirring them well together, reſerve it to your uſe, and when you do uſe it, apply it thus: Make a Buskin of Leather, ſo as it may be buckled or tyed above or upon the *Paſtern-joynt*, and then lay on ſo much of the medicine as will cover the *Hoof* all over thick, and then put on the Buskin, and faſten it to his *Leg* or *Paſtern*, and let him ſtand ſo night and day till you have occaſion to ride or exerciſe him, dreſſing him thus once a day, and the longer you uſe this medi- *Hoof to grow.* cine, the better will be his *Hoof*. *** I have often made tryal

tryal of this Receipt, and I have found it to be very good. But if your *Horſe* hath his *Hoof* broken, and that you have a deſire it ſhould grow, then

Take Garlick pilled ſeven ounces, Rue three handfuls, Allum powdred and ſearſed ſeven ounces, old Bores-greaſe two pound, beat all theſe together with Aſſes-dung one handful, and then boyl it, and ſo reſerve it, and anoint his *Hoofs* therewith, and they will grow very faſt. *** This is very good. If he be hurt by being caſt in his *Halter*, then

Halter caſt

Take of Wax and Turpentine, of each one ounce, melt them together in a Pot: Take then of Verdegreaſe and Hogs-greaſe, of each one ounce, and incorporate them well together raw, *viz.* without boyling, the Verdegreaſe being firſt made into very fine Powder, and put into another Pot by it ſelf: Then when you have occaſion to uſe it whereby to dreſs a ſore: Take firſt of that you made of Turpentine and Wax two parts, and then of that other which was not boyled, made of Verdegreaſe and Hogs-greaſe a third part, and mixing them well together in the Palm of your hand, anoint the ſorrance therewith; thus doing every day once or twice, it will be whole, remembring to clip away the *Hair* firſt from about the place. And this is a moſt excellent Receipt. *** I have often proved it.

SECT. 10. *H.*

Hippoph. *WHat may a man beſt apply to the* Hoof *of a* Horſe *that is ſwelled, as if he were in danger to breed a* Blood *or* Bog-Spaven?

Hippoſ. This cometh ſometimes to young *Horſes* when they be too hard ridden and journeyed in their youth, which is the cauſe they ſwell in that place, by reaſon the *blood* falling down there ſetleth, which if it be not ſpeedily removed, will aſſuredly beget a *Wet-Spaven*. The cure is, anoint the place ſwoln four or five days together with natural Balſome, and after repreſs the *Humours* with this charge, having firſt given fire to the place lighted.

Take Oyl of Roſes two ounces, Bolearmoniack in Powder one ounce, Wheat-flower half an ounce, and the white of

Hoof ſwell.

an Egg, beat and incorporate all theſe together, and after you have ended to anoint the place ſwelled with Balſome: Charge every day for four or five days after, the place herewith, and he will be well. *** This is very good.

SECT. 11. *H.*

Hippoph. *What is good to dry up* Humours?

Hippoſ. This kind of drying up of *Humours*, is but only to reſtrain them for working too much upon wounds, whereby the better to cure them. The way therefore is,

Firſt bathe the ſorrance well with hot molten freſh Butter, and then ſtrew upon it the powder of Roſin for a day or two; then take of the thickeſt Cream, and of Soot, of each as much as will ſuffice, and work them to a thick Paſte, and ſo apply it to the ſorrance Plaiſter-wiſe, and it will both dry up the *Humour* which poſſeſſeth it, and heal up and skin the ſore in a ſhort ſpace. *** This I have often uſed, and it is right good.

SECT. 12. *H.*

Hippoph. *What is beſt to cure the hurt in the* Shoulder, *or the* Member?

Hippoſ. There are many things good for a malady of this nature, and when I come to treat of Sprains, Sores, and Wounds, I ſhall deliver them unto you, and therefore I will now refer them to their proper place, only I will give you one for the preſent.

Hurt Shoulder. Take Oyl-de-Bay, Dialthea, freſh Butter, Oyl of Turpentine, of each two ounces, boyl and mix them well together, and when they be well incorporate, anoint the place grieved therewith ſo hot as the *Horſe* can well ſuffer it without ſcalding, and let him be thus anointed twice or thrice a day, and give the *Horſe* moderate exerciſe by walking him a Foot-pace gently up and down. And this is a certain and an approved remedy. This I never tryed, but a great *Farrier* who is cryed up for famous, taught it me, and wiſhed me to make uſe thereof.

SECT.

SECT. 13. *H.*

Hippoph. *WHat do you hold good wherewith to cure old Hurts?*

Hippoſ. The only beſt way to cure and dry up old hurts and ſores, is this: Take old ſhooes and burn them to Coals, and then beat them to fine Powder, then add to it unſlaked Lime and ordinary Honey, as much as will ſuffice, to bring it to a ſtiff Paſte, which done, knead them all together unto a Paſte, and ſo make it into a Cake, and then lay it upon a Fire-pan, and ſo let it be well baked; which done, make it into fine Powder, and every day once put of this Powder into the Wound, and it will heal it up, nothing ſooner. *** This I have often uſed, and it is very good, and herewith we do conclude this Chapter. *Hurts old to cure.*

CHAP. XII.

SECT. 1. *I.*

Hippopherus.

WHat is good to help any imperfection in the Feet *?*

Hippoſ. Firſt pare the *Feet* very thin, open the *Heels* and make the *Shooes* wide, large, and hollow: If the imperfection come by *Foundring*, then

Take a good quantity of Ox or Cow-dung, Tar, and Hogs-greaſe of each half as much, and of Soot the like quantity, as of either Tar or Hogs-greaſe, boyl all theſe well together, and herewith ſtop the *horſe feet* very hot, and continue thus to do daily, and it will not only take away any anguiſh, but alſo ſtrengthen the *hoofs*, and make them ſo perfect as that they will be able to endure labour, but when you travel your *horſe* (for exerciſe is very good for him) let him be ſtopped herewith hot; but if cold, add then thereto the whites of Eggs as much as will ſuffice, for that will cool his *feet* very well, and it will comfort the *Fruſh* very *Imperfection in the Feet.*

very much, but if the *hoof* be naturally brittle, and by ſoundring become dry and ſtreightned, then to enlarge the ſame, and to make it the more tough, and to grow the better alſo: Take of Hogs-greaſe, Turpentine, and Maſtick of each like much, and half ſo much Lard as of either of them: Melt all theſe but the Turpentine on the fire, and when it is well diſſolved take it off, and then put in your Turpentine, ſtirring it well till it be throughly incorporate; then keep it in a ſtone Pot by it ſelf, and when it is through cold be ſure to ſtop the Pot very cloſe, and ſo reſerve it for your uſe. With this Salve anoint the *Coffins* (but eſpecially the *Cronets*) every day twice at the leaſt, and it will cauſe the *hoof* to grow very much, and become tough and ſound. *** This I have often uſed, and it is very good.

SECT. 2. *I.*

Hippoph. *What is good to cure an* Impoſtumation?

Impoſtumation to ripen.

Hippoſ. To rippen any ſwelling which doth impoſtumate, you ſhall know by the heat, for if you lay your hand thereon, it will be hot and burn; wherefore to prepare and make it ready to be opened,

Take Mallow-roots, and white Lilly-roots, of each like much; bruiſe them, and put to them Hogs-greaſe and Lineſeed meal, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, and boyl them till they be ſoft, and ſo Plaiſter-wiſe apply it to the grief.

SECT. 3. *I.*

Hippoph. *What is good for any inward ſickneſs in a Horſe?*

Hippoſ. I have ſhewed you that ſufficiently before in *lib.* 2. *chap.* 3. *ſect.* 6. *A.* where I gave you three excellent receipts together; nevertheleſs if you do find that your *horſe* do not thrive, but droop and impair, I will here give you one receipt more which I do know to be moſt ſingular, and will do him much good, and whereof I have had very long and great good experience. Firſt therefore if you do ſee cauſe, take *blood* from him, but not otherwiſe, and if he be ſubject to coſtiveneſs, then adminiſter unto him either a

Cliſter

Cliſter or a *Suppoſitory*, and the day following give him this drink;

Take Ariſtolochia Rotunda, Bay-berries, Gentian, Anniſeeds, Ginger, and of Trifora-Magna, of each one ounce: Beat all the ſimples to very fine Powder, and mix them well together; then take of white Wine one quart, of Sack the like proportion, which is better, then put of this Powder, and of your Trifora-Magna one ſpoonful into the Wine, Sallet-Oyl half a pint, and of Mithridate two drams, warm theſe upon the fire, and ſo adminiſter it blood-warm, and let him be exerciſed as well before as after his drink, but not ſo far as to ſweat by any means, neither let him drink any cold water in four or five days after, but either warm Maſhes, or elſe white water. *** This is moſt Soveraign for any inward ſickneſs, droopings, forſaking of meat, Feavers, Colds, Coughs, or the like. *Inward ſickneſs.*

SECT. 4. *I.*

Hippoph. *YOu ſpeak hereof adminiſtring a* Suppoſitory, *but what* Suppoſitory *were beſt to be given in a caſe of this nature?*

Hippoſ. I will ſhew you Sir: If your *Horſe* be ſo ſick whereby you fear to give him any ſtrong medicine, and that he be coſtive withal, then give him this *Suppoſitory* following,

Take of Honey ſix ounces, of Salt-niter, one ounce and a half, of Wheat-flower and of Anniſeeds in fine Powder, of each one ounce, boyl all theſe to a hard thickneſs, and then make it into *Suppoſitories*; and firſt anoint your hand with Sallet-Oyl or ſweet Butter, and the *Suppoſitory* alſo which he is to take, and ſo convey it into his *Fundament* a pretty way, and after tye his *Tail* betwixt his *Legs*, as I have elſewhere ſhewed you: Or elſe hold it cloſe to his *Body* with your *hand*, by the ſpace of a quarter of an hour at the leaſt, till it be throughly diſſolved, and this will cauſe him to purge kindly, and it will very much cool and looſen his *Guts*: Then you may be the more bold to adminiſter what Drinks, Cordials, or ther things which you may think moſt requiſite for his recovery. *** *Inward ſickneſs a Suppoſitory.*

SECT.

SECT. 5. I.

Hippoph. *What is good to ripen inflammations, Puſtils; and Kernels, which do grow under the* Chaul *of the* Horſe?

Hippoſ. This cometh to a *horſe* that hath either Cold or Glanders, which muſt be diſſolved, otherwiſe the *horſe* can never be cured: Wherefore take Wheat-Bran two handfuls, and ſo much Wine, Ale, or Beer, as one quart, with which to thicken it, put to it of Hogs-greaſe half a pound, boyl theſe together till the liquor be quite conſumed, and ſo apply it to the place ſo hot as the *horſe* may well ſuffer it, renewing it every day once, till it do of it ſelf break, or be ſoft to be opened, then let forth the Corruption, and taint it with a taint of flax dipped in this Salve. Take of Turpentine and of Hogs-greaſe of each like much, and of Roſin and Wax a much greater quantity; melt all theſe together, and with the ſaid taint dipped in this medicine, put it into the wound, and renewing it every day once till it be whole. *** This is an approved receipt. But if it be an inflammation impoſtumating in any other part of the *Body*, take then the Grounds of a Beer-Barrel, four quarts of Smalage, Penny-Royal, Winter-Savory, Cumfrey, Rue, and of the leaves and berries of the Miſſeltow, of each two handfuls, chop all theſe very ſmall, and put them to the ſaid Grounds, and put to it of Sheeps or Deer-ſuet tryed one pound, and three or four handfuls of Rye or Wheat-Bran, ſo much indeed as will ſerve to boyl this to a *Poultiſs*, and when it is boyled as much as will ſuffice, apply it to the place, and if the ſwelling be very much impoſtumated, it will break it, or at the leaſt ſo ſoften it, that it may be opened; if it be hard at what time you put your *Poultiſs* thereunto, it will ſend it back again without any more to do. *** This I have very much experimented, and have found it to be right good. But if he be troubled with the *Strangles*, and that he is very much inflamed under the *Chaul*, then cure them thus: Take Baſilicon, old Bores-greaſe, and Dialthea, of each four ounces, of Oyl-de-Bay one ounce, incorporate all theſe very well together, and firſt clipping away

Inflammations.

away the hair from under the *Chanl*, anoint the ſwelling and inflamed place therewith very well; this done, bind upon it a piece of Sheeps-skin, with the Wooll next to the inflammation, that the warmth thereof may the better help to ripen the *Puſtils*, which being ripened, open them, and let forth the Corruption, that done, taint it firſt for three or four days with Baſilicon only, but after heal up the ſorrance with your black *Ægyptiacum*, taught you in *lib. 2. chap. 4. ſect. 4. A.* and during the time of this cure, let him eat good ſweet Hay, and Bran inſtead of Oats, and let his drink be only white water. *** This is a moſt excellent receipt.

SECT. 6. *I.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good for a* Joynt *that hath in it any Ach, Numneſs, Weakneſs, or Swellings which cometh of any cold cauſe?*

Hippoſ. This cometh ſometimes of a Strain and ſometimes of a Cold, taken after a great and violent riding or labour. The ſigns are apparent, and the Cure is,

Take Acopum, and mixing it with ſweet Sack, all to rub and chafe the *Joynt* grieved therewith. And if it come of Cold, it will at four or five times thus doing, cure it. *** This is ſingular good. Another, *Joynt grieved.*

Take Aqua-vitæ, and warm it upon the fire, and therewith bathe and rub the grieved *Member* very well, and hold a hot bar of Iron before it, to cauſe it to ſink in the better; take then a Rag, and wet it in the ſame Aqua-vitæ, and laſtly take Pepper finely powdred and ſearced, and ſtrew it good and thick upon the ſaid wet Rag, and ſo bind it to the place grieved; then take a dry Rowler of Linnen, and ſwath the place therewith, and ſo let them remain; and thus do every day once, and in ſhort time it will recover him. *** Of this I have made often tryal.

SECT. 7. *I.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to increaſe the* Hoof *of a* Horſe?

Hippoſ. I have given you ſundry good Receipts

ceipts before, but I will add one more, which the moſt *famous Mariſhal* of all *Paris* gave me, which he recommended unto me for *Tresbonne*, but I never had yet a good occaſion to make tryal thereof. The Receipt is this,

Increaſe the Hoof

Take of the Oyl of Hemp-ſeed, of Wax, of Venice Turpentine, Roſin, Pitch, Bay-ſeeds dryed and powdred of each half a pound, Roch Allum two ounces, mix all theſe together, and let them boyl ſoftly upon a gentle fire, then ſtrain it through a Hair-cloth, and keep it for your uſe. With this anoint every day the *hoofs* of your *Horſe*, and this will cauſe them to grow very much. This is probably a good Receipt.

CHAP. XIII.

SECT. 1. *L.*

Hyppophilus.

How do you cure the Lampas, Hippoſerus?

Hippoſ. This is a malady that every common Smith can eaſily cure, by putting into the mouth of the Horſe a good big bat of Wood, whereunto two long pieces of the *Head-ſtall* of an old Bridle is nailed at either end, which will cauſe him to keep open his *mouth*, and then holding up his *lip* with your left hand, burn away the rank *fleſh* with a hot Iron made of purpoſe, and after rubbing the place with Salt, and giving him Bran for Oats three or four days at the moſt, he will be whole. *** This diſeaſe is a ſwelling proceeding from rankneſs of *blood*, which groweth in the *mouth* adjoyning to the *Fore-teeth*, which ſaid ſwelling is an impediment to his feeding; it is apparent enough to be ſeen, and therefore it needs no further remonſtrance. *** Nevertheleſs I will ſhew you how the *Mariſhals* in *France* do uſe to cure the *Lampas*, from whom I had the Cure, and wherewith I my ſelf have cured many *horſes*.

Lampaſs.

Take a roſted Onion, and very hot put it upon a Clout, or upon Hurds, and with it rub the *Lampas* very much, and do this two or three times a day till it be whole. *** But many

many times they burn away the *Lampas*, like as do our *Smiths* with an Iron inſtrument, which they do call a *Biſtory*, which is the very ſame that our *Smiths* uſe here in *England*.

SECT. 2. *L.*

Hippoph. *HOw do you ſtop a* Lax *or* Looſneſs, *when it cometh to be violent?*

Hippoſ. Very eaſily Sir, but I had thought I had handled that point ſufficiently before, in letter *F.* where you made your demand touching the *Flux* in a *Horſe*, notwithſtanding I will give you other very good Receipts by me almoſt forgotten. To illuſtrate the manner of it's coming, and the ſigns how to know the ſame, I hold unfitting for this place, by reaſon I have ſufficiently already performed it. Take of Allum one penny-worth powdred, Bole-Armoniack powdred one ounce, put theſe into Milk one quart, continually ſtirring it till the Milk doth become all of a Curd, give him this with a horn, and it will ſtay his *Lax* be it never ſo violent. *** This I have uſed. Another, *Lax to ſtop:*

Take Bean-flower, and Bole-Armoniack in fine powder, of each four ounces, put them into red Wine one quart, and give him this with a horn blood-warm. Let his drink be white water, only inſtead of Wheat-Bran, put in flower, and that for three or four days after; then let him *blood* in the *Temple-veins*, and give him warm Maſhes, made of ground Malt and Bean-flower, and having drunk up the Wort, let him eat up the reſidue, but if this do not ſtay him within two days, then put in each *Noſtril*, Sallet-Oyl, and that will do it. *** This is ſpecial good.

SECT. 3. *L.*

Hippoph. *WHat means have you to raiſe a lean* Horſe, *and to cauſe him in ſhort time to become very fat?*

Hippoſ. I have ſhewed you this before, but yet I will give you a Receipt which you yet have not.

Take Elecampane dried, Comin, Turmerick, Anniſeeds, of each two ounces, Grundſel half a handful, boyl all theſe very *Lean Horſe to make fat.*

well with three heads of Garlik picked, a little bruiſed in Ale four quarts, then ſtrain it well, and give unto your *horſe* of this drink one quart, in a morning faſting blood-warm, and then ride him upon it till he do begin to be warm, but not to ſweat, and thus do for four mornings together, and within ſome ſhort time after, turn him to Graſs, if the time of the year be ſeaſonable, and he will feed wonderfully and fatten ſuddenly; but if the time of the year do not ſerve for Graſs, then ſhall ye keep him in the Stable, and beſides his former drink, you ſhall give him in his Oats this Powder, *viz.* Take the Powder of Elecampane dry, and of Cumin, both pulverized and ſearced of each like much: Mix them well together, and every time you give your *horſe* this Provender; take of this Powder half an ounce, and ſtrew it by little and little among his Provender for fear of offending him, till he hath eaten up all clean, and do this but fourteen days together, and you ſhall perceive you *Horſe* to thrive, mend, and proſper after a ſtrange manner: provided that you do give him ſeaſonable Airing, moderate Exerciſe, and Maſhes or white water. *** This is marvellous good.

SECT. 4. *L.*

Hippoph. *What is to be done to a* Horſe *whoſe Legs do ſwell?*

Hippoſ. If this ſwelling be only in his fore-Legs and not behind, then is it a ſign that this his Swelling came by over-violent labour, when the *Horſe* was very fat, (eſpecially inwardly) by reaſon that the Greaſe that was molten fell down into his *Fore-legs*, which if it had ſtaid in his *Body*, muſt of neceſſity have engendred either an *Anticor Feaver*, or a *Surfet* to the great peril of his Life; the ſigns are known by the ſwelling and therefore to anoint them with *Acopum* were very good. But the beſt cure is, firſt to take up the *Thigh-veins*, then with your *Fleam*, to prick the places moſt ſwelled, and hotteſt in ſundry places, eſpecially below, to the end that the corrrupt *blood* may iſſue forth; then

Legs ſwelled.

Take of White-Wine lees one pint, of Cumin bruiſed one ounce, boyl them together to a Poultis with Wheat flower, three handfuls; then with a cloth apply it to the place good

and

and warm, renewing it every day once, and if in two or three days it doth draw it to a head (as it is very probable it will do) then lance it and heal it up either with Shooe-makers Wax laid on upon a Plaiſter of leather, or elſe with a Salve made of the yolk of an Egg, Wheat-flower, and common Honey well wrought together to a Salve, which you muſt alſo apply Plaiſter-wiſe. *** But if it do not come to a head, and yet the ſwelling continue; then

Take of Pitch, and of Virgin-wax, of each three ounces, Roſin half a pound, of the juyce of Iſop, and of Galbanum of each half an ounce, and of Mirrah-lecondary half a pound, of Bdellium-Arabicum, Populeon, and of the drops of Storax, of each half an ounce, and of Deers-ſuet half a pound, boyl all theſe together in an earthen Pot, and when it is cold; take of Bitumen half a pound, Bolearmoniack and of Coſtus, of each one ounce and half; make all theſe into fine Powder, and then incorporate them well with the other, and ſo boyl them all over again very well; that done, pour this whole mixture or medicine into cold water, and ſo make it up into rowls like a Salve for Plaiſters: And when you are to uſe it, ſpread thereof upon Plaiſters of Leather, which muſt be ſo large as to cover the *Legs* full as far as the ſwellings are, which (if any thing can do it) this will aſſwage the ſwelling, and give very much ſtrength, and comfort the the *Senews* and *Nerves*: Neither is this Plaiſter to be removed ſo long as it will remain on. *** This I have applyed to many *Horſes* very much annoyed with *ſwoln-Legs*, and brought them to their former ſmallneſs, when as *Farriers* have ſpent much time upon the Cure, and given it over at laſt. But if the ſwelling do fall into the *hinder-Legs*, or into all *four-Legs* together (being but a bad Sorrance (cauſing them to burn and ſwell exceedingly, and the *hair* to ſtare, the cauſe whereof coming, (as I have before ſaid) from immoderate Riding, heat, and labour whereby the Greaſe melting falleth down into the *Legs*, by reaſon the *Horſe* cannot void it in his Excrements, or elſe being over hot, he is waſhed or negligently ſet up without ſufficient ſtore of litter and rubbing ſo as the taking cold, the *Blood* with the Greaſe ſetleth in the *Legs*, and there congealeth and ſo cauſeth them to ſwell.

This ſorrance alſo cometh by having his feet beaten (eſpecially in the Summer) with being ridden and galloped upon hard ground, which firſt occaſioneth wind-gals, and thoſe alſo cauſe the *legs* to ſwell, which truly is the worſt kind of ſwelling of all other, by reaſon that *lameneſs* doth immediately follow it, unleſs great Art and diligence be ſpeedily applyed for prevention thereof. Wherefore the ſigns being ſo apparent, need no remonſtrance, and therefore I will paſs on to the Cure, which is thus,

Take Populeon, Nerve-oyl, Hogs-greaſe, of each one ounce, incorporate them very well together, cold, and anoint the ſorrance therewith morning and evening four days together, and at four days end, take of Claret-Wine-lees one quart, boyl it upon the fire with ſo much Bran as will bring it to a *Poulteſs*, apply this to the place grieved Plaiſter-wiſe with a cloth good and hot for four or five days more, renewing it every day once, and in a ſhort time he will be ſound again. *** This is a moſt excellent receipt which I have often experimented. Another, The ſwelling of the *legs*, may eaſily be cured, if in the beginning they be often times in the day laved and bathed in cold water, unleſs the malady come of too great a ſurfet, wherefore if this of cold water will not do it, then,

Take of Common honey one pound, Turpentine, common-Gum, meal of Linſeed, meal of Fenugreek, of each four ounces, Bayberries made into very fine powder ſearced, three ounces, mix and boyl all theſe together well, and when you take it from the fire, put unto it of White-wine one pint, and then boyl it over again till it do become thick, ſpread this upon a cloath reaſonable hot, and wrap it about the members ſwelled, and do not renew it above once in a week, and it will cure them. *** This is a certain and moſt approved cure. Another. If you take up the *veins*, and make them to *bleed* below and not above, and then rope up the *legs* with thumbands of ſoft Hay wet in cold water, and then caſt more water upon them, in ſhort time he will be ſound and well again. *** This is alſo very good.

SECT.

SECT. 5. *L.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to cure the* Leproſie?

Hippoſ. This is a moiſt *maing*, very infectious, which cometh by means of great ſurfets, taken by over-riding, which is very eaſie to be ſeen and known, and therefore needs no further deſcription. The cure therefore is: firſt, let him *bleed* well in the *neck*, then ſcrape away the ſcurf with an old Curry-Comb, Oyſter-ſhel, Hair-cloth, or ſome ſuch like thing, till the ſorrance do look raw, and that it be ready to bleed, then anoint the raw places with this ointment.

Take Arſnick, or Reſalgar, and tryed Hogs-greaſe, (the Arſnick, or Reſalgar being firſt beaten unto very fine powder) incorporate theſe well together to make them into a perfect ointment; then tie up the *head* of your *Horſe* ſo high to the Rack, as that he may not be able to bite, rub, or lick himſelf, and ſo anoint the places therewith, and cauſe the ointmeut to ſink the better in by himſelf, and ſo anoint the places therewith, and cauſe the ointment to ſink the better in by holding a hot bar of iron neer to the place as you anoint him, and let him ſtand ſo tied three hours, and then waſh away the Unguent with the ſtrongeſt Chamberly you can get, and waſh him ſo throughly, that you may be aſſured you leave none of the ointment upon the *Horſe*, and then unty him, and give him meat: and thus dreſs him once every day till the ſores be quite dryed up. *** This is alſo good for Scratches and Kibed-heels.

Leproſie or elephantick malady.

SECT. 6. *L.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to kill* Lice *in a* Horſe?

Hippoſ. Lice commonly cometh to a *horſe* when he is very poor, eſpecially when he runneth abroad in the Winter-time in ſome Wood, Coppice, or places where are many high trees, for that the dropping of the trees falling upon the *Horſe*, together with his poverty, doth cauſe them to engender, and albeit they may be at firſt but a few, yet will

will they in ſhort time multiply abundantly: ſometimes alſo a *Horſe* will catch them by ſtanding neer to another *horſe* that is *lowſie*, and ſo long as he be viſited with them, he can never proſper, but remain very meager and lean. You may eaſily know when he is anointed with this kind of *vermine*, for that he will often ſcrub and rub himſelf againſt Walls, Poſts, and Doors with his *mouth* and *hinder-feet*. The way to deſtroy them is,

Take Staves-Acre, and boyl it in running water, and waſh him all over with that water warm, and it will kill them. *** Another:

Lice. Take Quick-ſilver two ounces, and firſt kill it with faſting Spittle, and when it is throughly mortified, take Hogs-greaſe tryed, and ſo work them together till it become of an Aſh-colour, and anoint him therewith, and it will in twice or thrice dreſſing, kill them all. *** Another:

Take Tobacco as much as will ſuffice, and ſhred it very ſmall, and put it into ſmall Beer, and put to it of Allum powdered, as much as will ſuffice, and when the Allum is diſſolved, waſh him therewith, and it will kill them. All theſe I have often tryed, and have found them to be very good.

SECT. 7. *L.*

Hippoph. *How do you make your powder of* Lime *and* Honey, *with which you do heal and dry up ſores?*

Hippoſ. Take of Engliſh Honey, and of quick lime newly taken from the Kill unſlaked, of each as much as will ſuffice, beat your Lime into fine powder, and with your Honey and your Lime knead it into a Paſte, and when it is throughly wrought make it into a thin Cake, then lay it upon a clean fire-pan, and ſet it upon the fire, and ſo let it bake, and as it is baking take the ſoles of two old ſhooes and caſt them into the fire, and let them burn until they have done flaming and that they do become to be a fire-coal; then take them forth, and when the Cake is baked ſufficiently and cold, beat the Cake together with the burnt ſhooes ſoles to very fine powder, and ſo keep this powder in a bladder or dry box for your uſe.

*** This

*** This will heal and dry up any wound or old ſore, and I have often and long uſed this powder.

SECT. 8. *L.*

Hippoph. WHat diſeaſe is that we call the Low-worm?

Hippoſ. This is the diſeaſe which I cannot diſtinguiſh from Saint *Antonies-fire*, or the *Shingles*, for that it hath the ſelf ſame *Symptoms*, and this I have cured. This is a *Worm* that breedeth in the *back* betwixt the *skin* and the *bone*, and runneth along the *breaſt* to the *brain*, and when it cometh to touch the *pannicle* of the *brain*, it maketh the *horſe* ſtark-mad. You ſhall firſt diſcover it by theſe ſigns, *viz.* preſently after a long and tedious journey, the *horſe* will be ſick and forſake his meat; and ſtand out of length with his *feet*, bending down his *back*, and he will often make offer to piſs, but cannot, and if he do, yet will it be but very little at a time, and that in the *ſheath*, and in time he will fall mad, gnaw the Walls, Rackſtaves, and Manger, and bite and ſtrike at every man that cometh within his reach or danger: and theſe be the moſt pregnant and apparent ſigns; and this diſeaſe doth deceive many a good *Farrier*. For albeit that this infirmity may be many times among *horſes*, yet *Farriers* being ignorant thereof, by miſtaking it meerly for the *Stavers*, and applying remedies only for that cure, do thereby loſe many a good *horſe* through their miſpriſion. But now to come unto the Cure it ſelf, I will give you two Receipts, the former of which I learned of a *Farmer* in *Suffolk*, who was cried up for a very expert man in this *faculty* (as indeed he was, and hath perfected in my preſence many a great Cure.) Then thus,

Take of Acrement a quarter of a pound, ſix heads of Gar- *Lock-warm.*
lick clean pilled, of Rue and Turmentile that beareth the Yellow flower, of each one pound, ſtamp all theſe in a ſtone Morter, and put to it ſo much white-Wine, as that when it is ſtrained there may be of the juyce and Wine two quarts, when you have of this liquor in a readineſs, let your horſe blood under the *tail* a good quantity, then ſtanch him, and dividing this pottle of liquor into ſix parts, give it him ſix mornings together, that is to ſay, every morning one part

or

or portion, till he hath taken it all, and by that time he will be perfectly cured. **

The second Receipt was taught me in *France* by a famous *Mariſhal* of *Burbon*, who hath cured very many *horſes* of the ſelf ſame malady, but in a quite contrary way: For whereas the firſt Cure was wrought by medicine, this ſecond is perfected by giving of fire. Take an Iron with a Button at one end, and make it red hot, then burn him therewith upon the top of his *forehead*; and a little under his *fore-top*, and another in the *fore-top*, and four other in the *neck*, clean through upon the *creſt*, whereof two of the holes muſt be upon the one ſide of the *creſt*, and two on the other ſide; and to take away and kill the fire, put into every hole Unguentum Roſarum, and then let him *blood* in the *neck vein*, and he is cured. *** This is alſo an approved Cure. The French do call this malady *ver-coquin*, and the *Italians* do name *Vermiforme*, but they both have but one manner of Cure for the ſame. This *Ver-coquin*, or *Low-worm* is a living *worm* which breedeth upon the *back-bone*, running a long the *neck*, and ſo by degrees cometh to the *head* of the *horſe*, where with its hard *beak* it firſt *pierceth* the *panicle*, and then worketh it ſelf to the very *brain* of the *creature*, where it lieth biting, gnawing, and feeding, cauſeth the *Horſe* to become enraged, and to die mad, if otherwiſe he be not cured in time, and therefore the *French Mariſhals* do affirm, that the prime remedy wherewith to kill and deſtroy this *worm*, is, by fire, and they hold that it cannot be deſtroyed any other way.

SECT. 9. *L.*

Hippoph. WHat remedy have you to help the diſeaſe of the Lungs?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe of the *Lungs* is a malady which is firſt engendred of cold taken, and let run till the *horſe* be either fretized or putrified in the *lungs*, at what time they become inflamed, and to come at laſt to rottenneſs and corruption: the means how to come to the knowledge of this infirmity is, that by careful obſervance you may perceive his *flanks* to beat, and his ribs to work, but moſt chiefly when he *cougheth*, and then

then the more ſlowly they do beat and heave, the more old and dangerous is the diſeaſe; he will alſo draw his breath at his *noſe* ſhort, and yet weakly, and he will groan often, and principally when he lyeth down and riſeth up, and when at any time he *cougheth*, he will ſeem to chew ſome thing betwixt his *teeth*, and from his *noſe* will iſſue much corruption. The Cure is,

Take of *horſe-Lung-wort*, *alias* Mullet, it groweth in every place with broad hoary ſoft leaves which do feel like Velvet, ſhred it, ſtamp it and ſtrain it, then take of Fenugreek a good ſpoonful, and of Madder as much, make them into fine powder, and give this to your *horſe* in Muskadine one pint, or elſe in good Ale one quart, and adminiſter this unto him every other day for twelve or fourteen days, and ſprinkle his Hay with water, and let his Oats be waſhed in good Ale, and let his drink be white water, and ſometimes ſweet Maſhes.*** This is very good. Another;

Take a Snake, and cut off the *head* and *tail*, and flea it, and after cut the ſame into pieces the length of your finger, and roſt it as you would and Eele upon a Spit, but do not baſt it with any thing, for it will baſt it ſelf, reſerve carefully the oyl that drippeth from it, and herewith anoint the *breaſt* and the *four ſhort-ribs* of the *Horſe* which be againſt the *Lungs*, but clip away the hair firſt from about the place where you are to anoint him, otherwiſe the hair will take up much of the ſaid Oyl; and thus doing often for ſome time you ſhall recover his *Lungs* again, and make him perfectly ſound. This was taught me by a great *Mariſhal* of *Tours*, but I never could come to make tryal thereof.

CHAP. XIV.

SECT. I. *M.*

Hippopherus.

NOw Hippoſerus *that we have ended this Chapter, let us proceed to another; and tell me what is good to cure a* Malender?

Hippoſ. This is a noyſom ſorrance which groweth upon the inward part of the *fore-legs* in the bending of the *leg* over againſt the *knee*: it is a ſcab hard and dry, which hath a chop or chink upon it, and it hath hard and ſtubborn ſtaring *hairs* growing in and about it, not much unlike to *Hogs-briſtles*, by which means it cankereth, and corrupteth the *fleſh*, which will cauſe the *horſe* to go ſtiff, and to halt at firſt ſetting forth till he be warm, like as doth the Scratches. It cometh either through the negligence of the *Groom* for default of rubbing, and due and orderly dreſſing, or elſe from the corruption of the *blood* through hard and immoderate riding; and thoſe *horſes* are moſt eſpecially ſubject thereunto, which have long *hair* growing all along the *legs* from the *paſtern* up to the top of the *thigh*, as moſt commonly have your *Flanders* and *Freez-land-horſes*, by reaſon that the *hair* in that place, being thick, long, and ſhaggy, doth gather ſand, durt, and other filth, which not being continually taken off by the induſtry of his *Keeper*, will ſcald, burn, and fret into the joynt, and ſo breed this kind of ſorance. I have already ſhewed you the ſigns how to know it, now I will alſo give you very many receipts wherewith to cure it, many of which are ſpecial good. Firſt therefore (whatſoever you have to apply unto this ſorance) fail not to waſh and ſhave away the hair from off and about the ſorances; firſt then,

Malender. Take black-Soap, Unguentum Populeon, and freſh Butter, of each like much as will ſuffice: mix them well together, and ſo bring them to a formal Unguent, and apply it to the ſorance every other day till it be whole. *** But you muſt withall underſtand that unleſs you do pick away and rub off the dry cruſt or ſcurf, as well as waſh and ſhave away the hair which doth annoy the ſorrance, you do nothing in the perfecting of the Cure, for be you confident unleſs you do this, the *Malender* will not be taken away, nor any medicine that you ſhall apply to it, be able to heal it up. Another,

Take black-ſope and allay it with Buck-lye, and waſh the place well wherewith: this done apply unto the ſorance a plaiſter of Gooſe-dung, and renew it twice a day till it be whole. *** Another,

Take quick-ſilver, and kill it in Orpiment, then take Buck-lye

lye, and mix ordinary durt which lyeth in the ſtreet (wherein muſt be neither ſtones nor gravel) with the Buck-lye, Quick-ſilver, and Orpiment, and herewith anoint the ſorance twice a day if need be, and when the ointment is well rubbed in, then clap a plaiſter of the ſame medicine to the grief every time you do anoint it. **. This is very good. Another;

Take of the ſtrongeſt white-Wine-Vinegar, and boyl it, and ſo boyling hot, rub the Malender therewith twice every day till it do bleed, that done, put upon it the powder of Verdigreaſe good and thick, and ſo bind it on with a clout, and let it ſo remain till a cruſt come thereupon, and when you ſhall find the cruſt to be dry, and withal to chop, anoint the grieved places with tryed Hogs-greaſe, and that will cauſe the cruſt to fall off, and the ſore to heal up. ** This is a moſt excellent Cure, and it did never fail me. Another;

Rub the ſore with the oyl of Hempſeed, or with the oyl of Nuts, or with ſharp Muſtard, but the oyl of Hempſeed is the very beſt, if it may be had. This was taught me by a *French Mariſhal*, but I never made tryal thereof. Another;

Firſt rub off the outward ſcurf till it *bleed*, then bind upon the place this medicine; take of black-Sope, and of Quick-ſilver mortified with faſting ſpittle as much as will ſuffice, and ſo work them to a ſalve, and plaiſter-wiſe bind it to the ſorance, renewing it every day once till it be killed, and after heal up the ſore with freſh or ſweet Butter. Another;

Take *Glovers-ſhreds* which he cuteth from his white leather, and boyl them in *Vinegar* of the beſt and ſtrongeſt till they be ſoft, bind this to the *malender* very hot, and it will perfectly cure the ſame. I did never make tryal thereof, but it was given for me very good. Another;

Take the fat or lard of Bacon one pound, red Lead, Verdegreaſe and Letharge of gold, of each two ounces, make them all into fine powder, and boyl them well together with the ſaid fat of Bacon, keeping them in the boyling continually ſtirring; then having very well cleanſed the ſore, and made it raw, anoint it with this medicine morning and evening till it be clean dryed up. ** This is very good. Another, which is only to anoint the ſorrance with the oyl of Turpentine, and

it will heal it up, and make it marvellous ſound. ***. And this will likewiſe cure Scratches, Sores, Hurts, or the like maladies in a *horſe*. Another,

Take a ſalt barrelled Herring out of the pickle, which hath a ſoft row, and cut off the *head* and *tayl*, and caſt them away, then mince all the Herring very ſmall, and put it in a ſtone morter, and put thereto of black-Sope two ſpoonfuls, and of Allum powdred half an ounce, ſtamp all theſe things together till you have made them to be of one body, and plaiſter-wiſe apply it to the Malender, renewing it once a day for three days; And this will kill the *humours* that feedeth it; which once done, anoint the place with oyl of Roſes, and that will cauſe the Cruſt to fall away, then waſh it once every day with Chamberly, and ſtrew upon it the powder of Oyſter-ſhels, and it is made whole and ſound again. This I dare promiſe to be a very good Receipt.

SECT. 2. *M.*

Hippoph. *WEll what ſay you to the* Mainge?

Hippo. This of all other is the worſt, vildeſt, and moſt filthy, and it will cauſe the *Horſe* to be ever rubbing, ſcrubbing, and ſcratching. It is a formal *Leproſie*, and the *French* do call it the *Elephantick malady*, by reaſon that *Elephants* are very much ſubject thereunto. The hair will ſtare and in many places pill and fall away, and a lothſom Scurf, will be upon the places touched therewith, and he will infect all other *horſes* which reſide in the ſame Stable with him: Wherefore ſo ſoon as the malady may be eſpyed, let him be ſeperated from his fellows, whether in the Stable, or abroad at Graſs. This diſeaſe cometh of corrupt and melancholy *blood*, by means of its overheating, and ſometimes by feeding upon naughty and unwholſom meat. It is ſo eaſie to be diſcovered, as that it needs no other diſcription, then what hath been already ſhewed: and I will give you many good Receipts for this Malady.

Take Spurge, Salendine, Brimſtone, all in fine dowder, of each three ounces, Hogs-greaſe tryed, new-Wax, Sheeps-ſuet, and quick-Silver well mortified with faſting-ſpittle, of each

each two ounces; melt and incorporate all theſe two days together, and ſo bring them to an oyntment, then firſt waſh and make raw the places infected with ſtale Urine and green Copporas boyled together, the infected places being ſcraped, and made raw with a Curry-comb or ſome ſuch like thing, and then anoint him with this Unguent, but firſt of all you muſt take *blood* from the *neck-vein*, the day before you dreſs him with this Unguent. *** This is one of the beſt Receipts for a *Mainge* that I have, and with it I have done very many rare Cures.

Take the roots of Elecampane newly gathered, and the root of red-Docks, of each like much, ſlice and cut them thin, and put unto them of Chamberly three quarts, and of Bay-ſalt, one handful: boyl theſe till one quart be conſumed, then take it off, and with a rag faſt'ned to the end of a ſtick, waſh the places infected very hot, you having firſt made the places raw with an old Curry-comb, Oyſter ſhel, &c. Uſe this four or five mornings together, then ſome three mornings after anoint the places grieved with this Oyntment.

Take quick-ſilver one ounce, let it be well mortified in faſting-ſpittle, and mix with it ſo much Hogs-greaſe as a Hens-Egg, or better: then take Powder of Brimſtone ſo much as will ſuffice, and incorporate all theſe very well together, and anoint all the Maingy places therewith till they be perfectly whole. *** This is very good. Another,

Take the Oyl of Pilchards, and of chamberly of each one quart, Guinny-powder, and of the Powder of Brimſtone, of each three ounces, White-Wine-Vinegar one pint, boyl all theſe together till they be thick, make the places raw, and anoint them therewith three times in nine days, that is to ſay every three days once, and this will cure him. *** This is very good, but you muſt not forget evermore for this Malady, to take ſtore of *blood* from your *Horſe* a day or two before you do adminiſter any thing unto him, for until ſuch time as the *Melancholy* and *corrupt blood* be firſt let out, he will not eaſily be cured. Another for a Mainge, Itch, or Running Scab, *&c.*

Take as much Auripigmentum finely powdred, and mixed with Hogs-greaſe as will bring it to be yellowiſh, but not too

too yellow a colour, anoint the places infected therewith, and it will kill it in three or four dreſſings: This Unguent will take away both the Scab and *hair*, together: but have you no fear, for it will not be long'ere new *hair* will come in it's place. *⁂* With this receipt I have cured very many *Horſes*, who have not been a little over-run with this diſeaſe. Another,

The firſt day let him *blood* on the left ſide of the *Neck*, then two days after open the other *Vein*, and three days after that let him *blood* on the *Spur-Veins*; and laſtly two days after that under the *Tail*, and let him *bleed* in every of theſe *Veins*, then ſcarrifie all the places and waſh them with new Brine made very ſalt: that done anoint the places with this Unguent.

Take of quick-ſilver one ounce, tryed Hogs-greaſe one pound, Brimſtone made into fine powder four ounces, Rape-oyl one pint. Firſt kill the quick-ſilver with faſting-ſpittle, and then incorporate them together throughly with all the other Ingredients, and having anointed all the raw places with this Ointment, cauſe it the better to ſink in by holding a bar of hot-Iron near to the places, and then touch him no more in three days after, and evermore when you dreſs him, forget not firſt to rub and ſcarrifie the places infected till they do begin to bleed; but if all this will not avail, then burn the rankeſt places of the Mainge with an iron, having a button on the end thereof, but then take heed you enter not the *fleſh*, but bear your hand light upon the *skin* only, and let each hole be wellnigh a ſpan from the other. *⁂* This I have often uſed. Another,

Take of Chamberly four quarts, Bay-ſalt four handfuls, boyl them well together, and waſh the *Horſe* therewith, ſo hot as he can well ſuffer it, and when he is well waſhed, take Neat-foot oyl and put it into water, and beat them well together, and there with anoint the raw places, and in four or five times thus doing, he will be well. This ſeems to be a good cure, but I do not remember that I ever did uſe it. Another,

Take Mother of Salt-Peter, the beſt and ſtrongeſt, and waſh the ſores therewith ſo hot as the *Horſe* is able to ſuffer it, and in three or four times dreſſing it, it will cure him. This I never tryed, but the party that taught it me, averred that it would

would not only kill any *Mainge*, but all Scratches, Pains, Rats-tails, &c. Another,

Take Sopers-lees, and firſt make the *Mainge* places raw, and after waſh them with the ſaid Sopers-lees, and in once or twice dreſſing, he will be well. *** This was taught me by the moſt able *Farriers* I do now know living in *England*, and I have often uſed it, and I have done with it very many great Cures. It cureth the *Mainge* both in *Horſes* and *Dogs*, provided they get not to it with their mouth and teeth. Another,

Take of Hogs-greaſe half a pound, Oyl-de-Bay one ounce and half, Crude Mercury, and white Elbore of each one ounce, incorporate theſe well together and firſt make the places raw, and then anoint them with the ſaid Oyntment. *** This is very good for I have often tryed it. Another,

Take of Hemp-ſeed, and Mutton-ſuet, of each one pound, bray the Hemp-ſeed marvellous well in a Morter, then take of old Bores-greaſe one pound, Verdegreaſe, Quick-ſilver, Elebore, Gunpowder, Tartar of each four drams, and of Brimſtone three ounces, make all into very fine Powder, that is to be powdred, and mix them well, and make them into one *body*, and then diſſolve them upon a gentle fire, keeping them always ſtirring till it be enough, and ſufficiently diſſolved, and when it is cold, put it into a clean Pot, and keep it for your uſe, and when you have occaſion to make uſe thereof, firſt ſcarrifie the places, and then anoint them, holding a hot Bar of iron neer, and in three or four times thus dreſſing he will be well. *** This is a moſt ſoveraign receipt for this malady, for I have had great proof thereof. Another whereby to cure the *Mainge* in the *Main* or *Tail*.

Take aſhes of the herb called *Abſcinthus*, ſo much as will ſuffice, Quick-lime and Soot, of each ſo much as will ſuffice: Mingle all theſe together, and with warm water make a Lye thereof, with which you ſhall waſh the *Mainge* and *Tail* in the places infected, and this Lye will not only cure this malady, but alſo cauſe the *hair* to grow again very faſt. This was taught me by a very good *Mariſhal* of *France*, but I could never make uſe thereof, by reaſon the herb *Abſcinthus* was hard to get here. Another,

Take

Take a little Brimſtone, Maſculine Frankinſence, Niter of Tartar, of the Bark of Aſhen-trees, Vitreol, Verdegreaſe, Black-Helebore, Ariſtolochia Rotunda, of each as much as will ſuffice, powder all your ſimples, and mix them well together with the yolks of Eggs and Sallet-Oyl, of each as much as will ſuffice, and ſo boyl it, and anoint the place well therewith warm. This ſeems to be good, but I never tryed it.

Another for the *Tail*: Take Mulberries which be not ripe, with the bark of the roots of the Mulberry Tree, and Barly, of each as much as will ſuffice, boyl all theſe in fair water, and waſh the places grieved therewith, and if the ſorrance do open of it ſelf, then take Sanguis Draconis, the juyce of Leeks, Salt, Pitch, Sallet-Oyl, and old Bores-greaſe, of each as much as will ſuffice, and make thereof a Salve, and apply it Plaiſter-wiſe, but this I never tryed. Another,

Take of Orpin one pound, Brimſtone and Euforbium, of each one ounce, Cantharides twenty five, make all theſe into fine powder, and with Hogs-greaſe make it into an Unguent, and apply it to the ſorrance, rubbing it in all along the places viſited, and four or five days after, to the end the corruption may the more eaſily paſs away, anoint him again with Hogs-greaſe only, and when the ſcurf is fal'n off, waſh the *neck* of the *horſe* with Buck-lye made blood-warm, and he will do well. *** This is a very good receipt. Another,

You muſt firſt ſcrape the *leprous* places till they do bleed; then take of Vinegar one pint, white Elebor, Cantharides, Euforbium, of each one ounce, make all theſe into fine Powder, and boyl them all well together, and apply it very hot to the place grieved, then when the ſcurf or cruſt is fallen away, waſh the ſorrance with Buck-lye mixed with Black Sope, and it will be well. *** This is a ſpecial good receipt. Another,

Take of the Oyl of Hemp-ſeed half a pint, Brimſtone in fine Powder, one ounce, Gunpowder finely pulverized, and Quick-ſilver; of each half an ounce, and a little Vinegar, then beat them all together along time, and ſo apply it cold to the place, and as you do anoint him, let one ſtand by with a hot bar of iron, whereby to cauſe it the better to

ſink

ſink in, and this will cure him in few times dreſſing, but ſuffer the cruſt to fall away of its own accord. *** This is a moſt precious receipt. *Another*,

Take of Vinegar one pint and a half, Euforbium half an ounce, made into fine Powder, boyl them well together, and boyling hot, waſh the ſorrance therewith, and it will heal it; neither need you to clip away the *hair*, unleſs you pleaſe. *** This I have often uſed. *Another*,

Take of black or blew Salt, and make it into fine Powder, and mingle it with freſh Butter, of each like much, mix them well together to a perfect Unguent, and anoint the place therewith, and it will cure him, but this I never tryed. *Another*,

Take of the herb called in *French*, *Ouriage*, one handful, boyl it in Vinegar, two quarts, then take of green Copperas half a pound, and of Salt two handfuls, rub the place therewith ſo hot as he may well ſuffer it, and in few times dreſſing him thus, it will cure him. This I had of a *French Mariſhal*, but becauſe I could never find the herb *Ouraige*, I did never make tryal thereof. *Another*,

Take of white Wine Vinegar half a pint, Cantharides in fine Powder, one ounce, boyl them together, and boyling hot apply it to the ſorrance, and your *Horſe* will ſoon be cured. *** This I have often tryed, and it is very good.

Thus I have delivered you many receipts for this one malady, which we call the *Mainge*, moſt of them I have tryed, and can promiſe them to be ſpecial good, whereof many will not only cure the *Mainge* in the *Body* it ſelf, but in the *Main* and *Tail* alſo if you pleaſe to make uſe of them.

Another moſt excellent receipt for the *Mainge*,

Take Lithergy of Gold two pound, beat it to very fine Powder, and ſearce it through a fine ſearcer, and put it into a Glaſs which will hold a pottle; then put thereto of the ſtrongeſt and beſt white Wine Vinegar that can be gotten, three pints or better, and for four and twenty hours after, ſhake it together ever and anon, but the firſt time it muſt be beaten or ſhaken a good time together, to wit, a quarter of an hour at the leaſt without intermiſſion, and then let it ſettle, and ſo keep it in the ſame Glaſs cloſe ſtopped for your

uſe. Now when you would uſe the medicine, you muſt make it into a Salve after this manner: Take of the Oyl of Roſes two ounces, and of the cleereſt of the ſaid Vinegar in the Glaſs (which muſt not have any of the Lithergy in it) two ounces alſo; beat theſe together, with a wooden Splatter, until you have brought it into a thick Salve: Take then of Quick-ſilver the weight of a ſhilling, and firſt mortifie it very well in a little of the ſirrup of Damask Roſes, the quantity of ſix or eight drops, and about three or four drops of the ſpirit or Oyl of Turpentine; with the ſirrup and Oyl, mingle and work theſe things well until the Quick-ſilver be very well mortified, then mix it well with the former Salve, and then put it up into a clean Gally-pot, and ſo keep it; and firſt making the places raw, anoint them with theſe Unguents, and it will kill any *Mainge* in the *Body*, *Main* or *Tail*, *** This is very good. *Another* very good: Take of Tar a Gallon, of tryed Hogs-greaſe, and Bolearmoniack of each two pound, of Pepper one pound, beat the Pepper and Bolearmoniack to very fine Powder, and then mix all the ingredients together, making them into one body, then firſt ſcrape the ſorrance, ſo as you do raiſe the ſcurfe and dry cruſty ſtuff, but not to make it raw, or to bleed much, and then anoint all the places infected, rubbing and chafing it in very well, as if it be in winter, let one hold a bar of hot Iron neer to the place as you anoint and chafe it in; but if in Summer, the ſun will do it much better as he runneth at Graſs, and thus dreſs him every three days ſo long as the Unguent laſteth, and he will be cured. *** This is an approved cure.

Another to perfume this cure, the beſt way is, to give the fire to the place after this manner: The iron being hot, firſt draw it along either ſide of the chink, then draw it upon the top of the chink, then draw three ſtrakes (if need ſo require) overthwart, and in ſhort time the hoof will grow again, ſo as the chink will be cloſed, and remain ſound and whole. And over and above, you may exerciſe him that very next day after you have thus given him the fire, provided his exerciſe be not upon hard, but upon ſoft or ſandy ground. *** This is a very able cure taught me by a ſingular *Mariſhal*.

of

of *Bruxels*, and I have practiſed the ſame upon ſundry good *horſes* here in *England*.

SECT. 3. *M.*

Hippoph. *What is good to cure a ſore* Mouth?

Hippoſ. This is a diſeaſe that ſometimes comes by much corrupt *blood*, and ſometime by cold: For this malady moſt commonly beginneth in the *palate* of the *mouth*, which will cauſe it to look red and be inflamed; and from the *palate* it will fall into his *chaps*, whereby he will not be able to ſhut them, as if he had there *a Convulſion*. The cure is if it be but yet in the *palate*, then let him *blood* there, and let him bleed well, then, Take of Life-Honey four ounces, Chibbals or young Onions half a handful, toſted Cheeſe as much as will ſuffice; boyl theſe in fair water very well, and blood-warm waſh the *palate*, *tongue*, and all other places in and about the *mouth* well with this liquor four or five times, and he will do well. *** This is very good. *Another*, *Mouth ſore.*

After you have let forth the corrupt *blood*, then take Verjuyce of the Crab, and Bay-ſalt, as much as will ſuffice, and warm it upon the fire, and blood-warm with a Rag waſh well every part of the *mouth* and *tongue* twice or thrice a day till it be well. *** This is alſo very good; but if it be come into his *chaps*, which you may eaſily know by obſerving his wide yawning and gaping, whereby his *chaps* will be ſo fallen, as that he will not be able to bring them together to ſhut cloſe again, wherefore ſo ſoon as you do perceive him in that poſture, Take Verjuyce of the Crab only, and make it warm, and then faſt'ning a Rag upon a ſtick, waſh his *mouth* very well therewith, the Verjuyce being blood-warm; and then with your hand help him to cloſe up his mouth, and doing thus two or three, times he will be perfectly cured. *** Theſe be ſpecial good Receipts.

SECT. 4. *M.*

Hippoph. *What is good to cure the* Mellet *in the* Heels?

Hippoſ. I have ſhewed you that cure be-

fore, *lib.* 2. *chap.* 4. *ſect.* 9. *lit. A.* But yet I will give you one Receipt more.

Mellet. Take of Honey one pint, and of Sope three ounces, and of white Wine Vinegar five or ſix ſpoonfuls, and as much Allum as an Egg, and of Bean-flower two ſpoonfuls, mix all theſe together, and apply it to the ſorrance ſo far as the *mellet* goeth, and let it lye on five days, and then take it away: That done waſh the *Leg*, *Foot*, and ſorrance with warm Beef-broth, and ſo keep his *Legs* roped up, well moiſtned in the Beef-broth two or three days after, and he will be well. **** This I have often uſed, and it is a moſt rare cure.

SECT. 5. *M.*

Hippoph. *WHat is beſt to mollifie* humours?

Mollifie humours.

Hippoſ. This I have alſo formerly handled, yet take with you this one Receipt more.

Take of Roſin three ounces, or freſh Butter five ounces, of new Wax one ounce, melt all theſe upon the fire, and ſo bring them to an Unguent, and herewith anoint the humours four or five days together and this will mollifie them very well. **** This is moſt precious for this cauſe.

SECT. 6. *M.*

Morſounded. Hippoph. *WHat ſhall a man do to a Horſe that is* Morſounded?

Hippoſ. Morſounded is but the *French* word: Signifying melting of Greaſe or *Foundring* in the *Body*, whereof I have before ſufficiently intreated; nevertheleſs I will give you for this malady two ſingular receipts, the one I had of an *Italian rider* in *Bruſſels*, and the other of a *French Mariſhal* in *Avinion*, a man eſteemed moſt famous, and of both thoſe receipts I have made often uſe, and I have perfected them for moſt rare cures. That which the *Italian* taught me is this; firſt open the *Neck-vein*, and draw away the inflamed and corrupt blood, then take of white Wine one pint, Sallet-Oyl half a pint, of Rhubarb and of Aloes, of each two drams, of Sene half an ounce, of Agarick three drams, Bay-berries half an ounce,

ounce, Saffron two drams, Duck or Duke powder, and of cordial powder, of each two drams, make what is to be powdred into very fine powder, and mix them well together, adding thereunto of Life-Honey four ounces, all which being made warm upon the fire, and well brewed together, give it your *horſe* blood-warm, but you muſt withal underſtand that the ſame day you ſhall adminiſter this drink unto him, he do ſtand faſting upon the Trench three or four hours before, and as many after; neither muſt you the ſame day give him any Oats, and let his drink be either a ſweet Maſh, or white water, and keep him warm, and with white water five or ſix days after, and then give him Oats, but in the interim inſtead of Oats, let him have either bread made for him of purpoſe, or elſe Bran prepared, and when you do give him Oats, put in amongſt them Fænugreek bruiſed. **** This is, I do aſſure you a moſt excellent receipt, with which I ſaved the life, and brought to perfect ſanity a *horſe* of price, which was viſited with this infirmity; the ſecond receipt which I had of the *Mariſhal* of *Avinion* is this: (*viz.*) ſo ſoon as you do perceive or ſuſpect him to be *Morfounded*.

Take of Salt one handful, and put to it of fair water one pint, and give it him to drink, and ride him moderately upon it till he *ſweat*, and this will cure him if it be adminiſtred ſo ſoon as you may ſuſpect the malady, but if you ſtay three or four days, or longer, before you do give him this water and ſalt, then take of the powder of Hellebore one ſpoonful, and of Saffron one penny-worth, of Aſſafætida, and of Sope of Venice, of each two drams, of Bacca *alias* the ſeeds of Bays, a farthing-worth made alſo into fine powder, mix and pound all theſe together well, putting to them of Vinegar one pint, and give it him blood-warm, then cover him with a wet cloth, and cloth him warm, and ſet him upon the Trench, that he may neither lye down, nor vomit, but let him ſweat an hour after, and then cool and dry him by degrees, and let him be well rubbed, and he will do well again. **** This is alſo a very good receipt.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

SECT. 1. *N.*

Hippopherus.

Noſe running.

WEll *now* Hippoſerus, *let us go on, what will cure the running at the* Noſe?

Hippoſ. I have ſhewed you that before, but yet I will give you two or three receipts more,

Take Orpin and Brimſtone, as much as will ſuffice, and caſt them upon burning coles, and ſo perfume his *head* and *noſe* therewith, that will diſſolve the *humours* congealed in the *head* and *brain*. *** This is very good. Another:

Take Auripigmentum, and Tuſſilago, of each two drams, make them into fine powder, and with good Venice Turpentine waſhed, make it into a ſtiff paſte, and thereof make ſmall cakes the breadth of your Thumb-nail, and dry them a little, and therewith perfume your *horſe* over a Chafing-diſh and coles every day; but before you do perfume him, give him the drink preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *chap. ſect.* which beginneth thus (firſt let him bleed in the Neck-vein well, then take Aſſafætida as much as a Haſle-nut, &c.) *** And this is very good.

SECT. 2. *N.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to cure a* Navel gald?

Hippoſ. This is a naughty ſorrance coming by means of a Saddle behind, which being let run a while, will be long in curing. It is called a *Navel-gald*, by reaſon that the hurt is upon the top of the *back*, right over againſt the *Navel*, the ſigns are ſo demonſtrative, as that they need no deſcription the cure thereof is:

Take Oyl-de-Bay, Coſtus, Fox-greaſe, Oyl of Savin, of each one ounce, then take great Garden Worms a hundred and ſcowr them with white Wine and Salt, then put all the ingredients together into an earthen pot very well ſtopped, and boyl

boyl it well, then add thereto of Sallet-Oyl one ounce and a half, and boyl it over again till it come to a perfect Oyntment, then ſtrain into a Galley-pot or Glaſs, and ſo keep it cloſe ſtopped for your uſe, and when you are to uſe it, only warm it; and ſo dreſs the ſorrance therewith, with Lint or Hurds, and it will ſoon be whole. *** This by proof I do know to be very good.

SECT. 3. *N*

Hippoph. *WHat help have you for a Horſe that is troubled with a diſeaſe commonly called the* Night-mare *?*

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe is ſo called indeed, but yet all able and skilful *Farriers* do laugh at thoſe that give it the ſame *Epiphraſe*, for it is none other thing but a *Melancholy blood* wherewith the creature is oppreſſed, for it doth perplex the *heart* more then any other member or part of the body, cauſing him in the night to ſweat more then in the day, bereaving him of his ſleep and natural reſt, and the beſt ſigns to know this diſeaſe is, by obſerving well the *horſe*, when you come unto him in the morning, you ſhall perceive him to have ſweat as well in the *Flanks* as *Neck* and *Short-ribs* next to the place where the heart lieth. *Night-mare.*

The Cure for the malady is:

Take of Salt one handful, Sallet-oyl half a pint, and of brown Sugar Candy made into fine powder, four ounces; mix all theſe very well, then warm them upon the fire, and ſo give it him with a horn blood-warm, give him this two mornings together, and it will cure him: But the day before you drench him, firſt open the two *Spur-veins*, and let him bleed there very well. ***

I have known many who have taken a good great ſtone which hath had an hole in it, and they have taken a withe and put it through the hole of the ſaid ſtone, and ſo hung it upon the top of the Rack, juſt over the *horſe*, whereby he hath been perfectly cured.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

SECT. 1. *O.*

Hyppophilus.

WHat *good Receipt have you wherewith to cure old* Sores?

Hippof. Sir, I have many, and the moſt of them be very good, whereof I will give you only one, and leave the reſidue to their proper places :

Old Sores. Take of Roch-Allum a good quantity, and burn it in a hot fire-pan, then take ſo much Bay-Salt, and burn that alſo ; beat theſe together to very fine Powder, then take of common-Honey and of ſweet Butter, of each like much, ſo much as will ſuffice, and ſo incorporate all theſe Ingredients together ; neither muſt it be warmed upon the fire, but only thus brought to a Salve, and ſo keep it for your uſe : which muſt be applyed either Plaiſter-wiſe, or Taint-wiſe, or both, according as you ſhall ſee cauſe, and this will heal any ſores very ſoundly ; neither will it permit any dead or proud *fleſh* to remain in the place. *** This I have often times tryed.

SECT. 2. *O.*

Hippoph. WHat *is beſt to be applyed to an over-reach upon the* Heel ?

Hippof. I have handled this malady before in *l.2.c.4. ſect.10. lit. A.* notwithſtanding I will give you one or two Receipts more. Firſt, cut out the over-reach with your inciſion knife, making it plain as may be, then waſh it with Beer and Salt, and apply this plaiſter unto it,

Take Oat-meal and Butter ſo much as will ſuffice, to bring it to a Salve, pound them together in a Morter, working them into one body, and apply this Plaiſter-wiſe to the Sorrance, renewing it every day once till it be whole. *** This is very good. Another,

Mollifie the heels of the *horſe* with ſupplying things, where-

of

of I have given you ſtore, then open the ſole of the *foot* round about, and preſs the *heel* to enlarge it, then when you have made the *ſole* firm again, keep his *feet* moiſt with *Unguentum Roſatum*, or ſome ſuch like ſuppling thing, and he will be whole and ſound again. This I never tryed. Another,

If the malady doth proceed from a diſeaſe which the *French* do call *Encaſtelure*, then take out the *ſole* of the *foot* where the Sorrance is, open it cloſe to the *hair*, then take up the *vein* in the ball of the *foot*, and give him the fire all along the *hair*, upon the ſaid ſorrance, and lay unto it black Sope upon the Hurds, and when the ſcurf falleth off, dreſs it with black Ægyptiacum, until ſuch time as it hath produced a circle of a new horn, and keep the *hoof* always ſupple with *Unguentum roſatum*, and the grief will heal up, and wear away in ſhort time. This is very good.

SECT. 3. *O*

Hippoph. *How do you make* Oyl of Oats, *and what is its vertue?*

Hippoſ. To deal ingeniouſly with you, neither my *Maſter* nor my ſelf did ever know the nature of this Oyl, or how to make it, until ſuch time as we met with Maſter *Markhams Maſter-piece*, from whence ſince we have made very good uſe thereof, and do find it to be a moſt ſingular Receipt: I will give it you juſt as we have it from him.

Take of Milk eight quarts, and warming it upon the fire, put thereto of burnt-Allum four ounces, which will cauſe it to run into a Curd like to a Poſſet; take off the Curd and caſt it away, and ſtrain the Whey through a courſe cloth into a clean veſſel: then take of *Oats* a quarter of a Peck, dry and clean husked, that were never dried, and put them into the Whey, and ſo ſet the Whey upon the fire, and let them boyl untill the *Oats* do burſt, and be ſoft; then take them off, and put them into a Cullender, ſo that the Whey may go gently from them without any preſſing: (for you muſt keep the *Oats* as moiſt as may be) this done, put the *Oats* into a Frying-pan, and ſet them over the fire, ſtirring them continually, till you ſee the vapour or ſmoak of them, not to aſcend upwards

wards: But as it were to run about the Pan; then ſuddenly take them off: and putting them into a Preſs, preſs them moſt exceedingly, and look what comes from them is only their Oyl, which you muſt reſerve in a cloſe glaſs and ſo ſtop it well.

Now there are other more artificial and curious ways whereby to diſtil and extract this Oyl, yet this above them all, is both the eaſieſt, ſureſt and leaſt troubleſome way, and the very beſt for every mean capacity. *** This Oyl of Oats is of all medicines whatſoever the moſt excellent, and ſoveraign for the *Body* of the *Horſe*, as being abſtracted from the moſt natural, wholeſome, and beſt nouriſhing food which doth belong to the ſuſtentation and lively-hood of the *horſe*, this Oyl being given by four or five ſpoonfuls in ſweet Wine, one pint, or ſtrong-Ale one quart, and ſome of the Whey poured in his noſtrils, doth cure the Glanders before all other medicines. It is alſo (given in the ſame manner) the beſt of all *Purgations*, for it purgeth away all thoſe venemous and *Peccant humours* that feedeth the moſt incurable *Farcin* whatſoever; & for my own part at what time I can conveniently come by this Oyl of Oats, I will never uſe any other Oyl or unctious matter in any medicine whatſoever, to be adminiſtred inwardly but this only: I having found by good experience, that it is the moſt Soveraign of all ſimples of that kind, and thus I have ſhewed you what Mr. *Markhams* opinion (which is the ſame both with my *Maſter* and my *Self*) is, both of this Oyl and its vertues, and ſo I remit you to the uſe and practice thereof. ***

CHAP. XVII.

SECT 1. *P.*

Hippophylus.

WHat *is the Receipt which I have often times heard ſo highly commended among* Farriers, *called* Paſtons, *and to what uſe doth it ſerve?*

Hippoſ.

Hippoſ. This thing which is called *Paſtons* is none other than a plain *Plaiſter*; only ſome of our *verbal Farriers* have gotten hold of the *French* word *Paſton*, which doth ſignifie a *Plaiſter*, and that they deliver and vent among ignorant people, whereby to cry themſelves up for learned, and skilful *Doctors* in *Horſe-leech-craft*; now foraſmuch as maladies and diſeaſes, are of ſundry ſorts and different natures: ſo ought the *Paſtons*, *Plaiſters* and *Medicines* be diſcrepant each from other, but ſince you were pleaſed to underſtand the true nature of this word *Paſton*, I have in a word delivered the ſame unto you, and now I will give you the receipt of one of the *Paſtons* which will be well worth your acceptance, it being the moſt ſoveraign remedy of any that ever I could come to know, which is as good to diſſolve and take away evil *humours*, which ſhall at any time fall down into the *Legs* of your *horſe*, as any other Medicine you can uſe. And this it is.

Take of common-Honey one pound, of Turpentine half a pound, of Maſtick in fine powder, two ounces, of Frankincenſe and Bole-armoniack both made into fine powder, of each four ounces, of Sanguis Draconis, three ounces, of new laid Eggs ſix, of the ſtrongeſt white Wine-Vinegar one pint, of the flower of Rice ſeven ounces, mix all theſe together, and hereof make a plaiſter, and lap the *legs* of the *horſe* from the *feet* to the upper joynts, and do this but four or five times, and you ſhall ſee it will perform a ſtrange and rare cure. ***

SECT. 2. *P.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to help a ſtrain in the* Paſtern-joynt?

Hippoſ. If it be only a ſtrain in or upon the *paſtern-joynt*, and not upon the *back ſinews*:

Take then of Chamberly one quart, and boyl it untill the ſcum doth ariſe, then ſtrain it, and put unto it of Tanſey and of Mallows, of each one handful, and of ordinary Honey two ſpoonfuls, and of Sheeps tallow four ounces, chop the herbs ſmall, and then mingle all theſe Ingredients together, and ſo apply the Medicine to the place with a linnen cloth bound up, and ſtitched cloſe with a needle and thread, that it may not *Paſtern-joynt ſtrained.*

remove, renewing this plaiſter every day once, for three or four days, and he will be ſound and go upright again. **This is ſpecial good. Another,

Take of Brine one quart, and boyl it till it ariſeth, and then ſtrain it, and put to it of Tanſey, and Mallows, of each one handful, of Honey two ſpoonfuls, and of Sheeps tallow four ounces; chop all theſe together, and then pound them well: and ſet them upon the fire, and ſo boyl them, as much as will ſuffice, apply this warm to the place with a cloth *Plaiſter-wiſe* ſowing it faſt on, and ſo let it remain five days, and if this doth not cure him, then waſh the place with warm water, and ſhave away the hair, and ſcarrifie the joynt, then apply the medicine of Cantharides and Euforbium, *&c.* as you are ſhewed in the cure for an upper attaint in *l.* 2. *c,* 4. *ſect.* 9. *lit. A.* and ſo he will be cured this, is very good.

SECT. 3. *P.*

Hippoph. I *Would gladly,* Hippoſerus, *learn a good* Pill *for the* Glanders.

Hippoſ. I have delivered you many already, hut ſince you are pleaſed to renew this cure again, I will give you two *pills,* which ſhall be of moſt vertue, which ſhall cure any violent Cold or Glanders; prevent *heart ſickneſs,* purge away all *molten greaſe,* recover a *loſt ſtomach,* keep the *heart* from fainting in and after hard travel, and violent riding and exerciſe, and theſe pills will raiſe a lean horſe, and make him fat ſuddenly.

Take Anniſeeds, Cumin, dryed Elecampane, Canthamus of each two ounces, make all theſe into very fine powder, and ſearce them; and add unto them of the powder of Brimſtone, and of the juyce of Licoriſh, of each one ounce, which ſaid juyce of Licoriſh muſt be diſſolved in white Wine one pint, then take of the oyl of Anniſeeds, and of the Syrrup of Colts-foot, of each one ounce, of Sallet-oyl and life-Honey of each half a pint; mix all theſe with the former Ingredients, and with as much fine wheat-flower as will knead it into a ſtiff paſte, and ſo make it up into *pills,* ſomewhat bigger

ger then a *French Walnut*, and ſo keep them cloſe ſtopped in a glaſs or gally pot, for they will laſt good the whole year, and when you ſhall have occaſion to uſe them, take forth one, and anoint it all over with ſweet Butter, and ſo give it your *horſe*, and continue thus to do every morning one, for ſome time, and ride him a little after the taking thereof gently, if the weather be temperate, and let him ſtand upon the Snaffle or trench three hours after, then feed him, and at night you may either give him a Maſh, or white water. *** And thus do (if it be to prevent ſickneſs) three or four mornings together, but if it be to take away any infirmity, as Cold, Glanders, or the like, then adminiſter it eight or ten days together at the leaſt, but if it be to cleanſe his *body* from *molten-greaſe*, or to take away foulneſs, then give it him either in his heat, or preſently after; but if it be to make him fat being meager, poor, and lean, then uſe it fifteen days at the leaſt. If you ſhall find any difficulty in the giving of this pill, you may then at your pleaſure diſſolve it either into ſweet Wine, or elſe into good Ale or Beer, and ſo give it him with a horn drench-wiſe. *** The other *pill* is,

Take of Wheat-flower one pound, or ſo much as ſhall ſuffice to make a ſtiff paſte, then take of Anniſeeds, Fenugreek, Brimſtone, of each two ounces, Sallet-oyl one pint, common honey one pound and a half, white-Wine two quarts; make the hard ſimples into fine Powder, and ſearce them, then with the reſidue make a ſtiff paſte, and of this paſt make a *pill* the bigneſs of a mans fiſt, and diſſolve it into two or three gallons of fair water, by waſhing and laving the ſame paſte therein with your hands, and ſo let your *horſe* drink the ſame at his ordinary watering times, or at any other time, when he is willing to drink, for he cannot take too much of this water, then ride him to warm it in his *belly*, but not otherwiſe, and when the water is ſpent, do not caſt away the bottom, but filling again the veſſel wherein he drinketh, with freſh water, the next time he drinketh diſſolve another ball therein, and thus do for fifteen days together, at leaſt, and you ſhall ſee ſome wonderful effects thereof. This water ſcowreth, cleanſeth, and feedeth after an admirable manner, and the former leſſer *pills* do purge the *ſtomach* and entrals from all foulneſs,

foulneſs, it avoideth and carrieth away in his ordure molten and diſſolved greaſe, and fortifieth nature ſo powerfully, as that it leaveth no evil *humours* in the *body*. *** This was taught me by a Scotch-man who was Groom in *Prince Henry* his Stable under Monſieur Saint *Anthony*, and a ſingular good Groom he was. I have oftentimes made proof and uſe thereof, and have found it to be right good, and for that reaſon I do rather commend it unto you.

SECT. 4. *P.*

Hippoph. *WHat good* Antidote *or* preſervative *have you for the* Peſtilence?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe which we call the *Peſtilence* or *Plague*, hath alſo ſundry other names, for ſome do call it the *Murrain*, others the *Garget*, others the *Gargil*, and the *French* do call it *mal de mountain*, the Mountain evil: It is a moſt contagious and infectious diſeaſe, it is ſometime engendred of a Surfeit by riding, when the *horſe* afterwards taketh cold, and ſometimes it cometh of the contagiouſneſs of the Air, when as a *horſe* cometh upon a ſudden into *fenny* or *marſhy* places, where he never was before, having been ever bred and kept in pure, ſweet, and wholſome Air; as once happened to a young Gelding of mine own, when I coming into the hundreds in *Eſſex*, and travelling late, I came to my Inn, where my *horſe* the very next day fell into a *peſtilent Feaver*, whereof he had doubtleſs died, had not I adminiſtred help inſtantly: Wherefore whenſoever you do ſuſpect your *horſe* to be never ſo little touched with this malady, remove him preſently, leſt he ſhould infect ſo many *horſes* as be in the Stable with him. This comes alſo to a horſe many times by means of corrupt bood and bad *humours* which do lie lurking in his *body*, which waſhing, drinking being hot, and Surfeits do often cauſe; but let it come as it may, it brings with it a *peſtilent Feaver*, which is ſeconded by enſuing death, if ſpeedy prevention be not at hand.

The ſigns be theſe: After that he hath drooped and languiſhed two, three, or four days at moſt, he will begin to ſwell under the roots of his Ears, as if he had the Veins, and under

under the *Chaul*, and ſo this ſwelling will run up his *Cheeks* through the malignancy of the diſeaſe, and become very hard; he will hang down his *Head* and *Face*, and ſeem always to *ſleep* and forſake his meat, and his Eyes will be yellowiſh; he will draw his breath ſhort, which will be alſo very hot and offenſive, and ſometimes he will put forth Carbuncles, and ſwellings in his Groin, bigger then a mans fiſt, and his Stones will hang, but this not always, and this I have known in *horſes* more then in one or two. The cure is,

Peſtilence.

Take of white Wine one quart, and the herb called in French *Mairelle*, which we in Engliſh do term *Night-ſhade*: Stamp it, and take the juyce thereof, and boyl it in the Wine, and when it is boyled as much as will ſuffice, take then Linſeed meal, and Barley-meal, and ſift out the Bran, taking only the Flower of them both, as much as will ſuffice, and put it into the liquor, and ſo boyl them again to a Poultiſs, and make Plaiſters thereof, and apply it to the ſwellings, but before you lay on the Plaiſter, ſtrew upon them the Powder of burnt Egg-ſhells, and thus renewing the Plaiſters every day once, you ſhall either ripen or break them, or they will drive the ſwellings back again without further trouble; but if the ſwellings do break, then heal them with your green Oyntment ſo often ſhewed you; but then to drive away the malignancy of the infection from the Heart, and to ſend it forth, firſt let him blood in the *Neck*, and *Weeping* veins, and then give him of Diapent two ſpoonfuls, with white Wine one pint, and of London Treacle one ounce, and this will recover him. And for your other *horſes* which you may have juſt cauſe to ſuſpect to be infected, to prevent their danger, give him this preparative:

Take two Walnuts, the kernels only, and the older the Nuts be, the better: Take alſo two Figs, and twenty leaves of Rue, ſtamp them all well together, and let every horſe have his proportion three or four mornings together faſting, being made up and given in *Pills*, and let them faſt three hours after, and this will both preſerve and free them. Theſe things I have often uſed, and found them to be ſpecial good.

SECT.

SECT. 5. *P.*

Hippoph. *WHat good purging Pills have you?*

Hippof. I have already ſhewed you many in *l. 2. c. ſect.* But I will give one or two more,

Take freſh Butter one pound, Aloes and Fænugreek, of each one ounce, Life-Honey, and white refined Sugar powdred, of each four ounces, Agarick half an ounce, make all theſe into fine powder, and being well incorporated with the Butter and Hony, make *Pills* thereof and give them to your *horſe*, and if he be a ſmall or weak *horſe*, then you muſt give him but two parts of three, but if your *horſe* have a ſtrong cold, and cough withal, then

Take of freſh Butter, and of Mel-Roſarum, of each four ounces, of Aloes and Senne, of each one ounce, Rubard and Bay-berries, of each three ounces, Colloquintida and Saffron, of each two drams, Cordial powder one ounce, Duck or Dutch Powder four ounces, make all theſe into fine powder, and mix them well with Mithridate two ounces, and with your Butter and Mel-Roſarum, beat and pound them well together, and ſo make them into *Pills*, and give them your *horſe*, this receipt will purge him very well, albeit it may heat him for ſome time; and as touching the ordering him in his diet, or otherwiſe let all things be done as in other *Phyſical cures* of the like nature: If it be a ſmall *Horſe*, then give him two parts in three, and proportion the *Pills* according to the ſtrength, greatneſs, and corpulency of your *horſe*.

*** This is very good.

SECT. 6. *P.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to cure the pains in the* Heels *of a* Horſe?

Hippof. This is a noiſome Sorrance, coming to a *horſe* either by ill *humours* and corrupt *blood* by means of Surfeits proceeding from great heats, by intemperate ridings, as I have ſufficiently declared before, or elſe through the negligence of his *Groom* or *Keeper*, for want of good rubbing, cleanſing, and

and picking, this doth grow between the *Fetlock-joynt*, and the *Heel*, in the very *Paſtern*, which will cauſe the place to ſwell and to have chops, from whence will iſſue a thin and ſtinking water, and thoſe *horſes* which have ſhaggy and long *hair* upon their *Fetlocks*, are moſt ſubject to this Malady; the ſigns be eaſily known, by reaſon that the chops may be ſoon felt, for they will cauſe the *Legs* of the *Horſe* to ſwell, and much filthy matter will come from the place grieved, being of that hot nature, as that it will ſcald the very *hair* from about the Sorrance, and this will cauſe the *Horſe* to go very ſtiff and lame, at firſt ſetting forth: The Cure is,

Take of Lees of red Wine one pint, of Wheat-bran one handful, of Houſe-leek one head, of common Honey, two ſpoonfuls, of the duſt of *Tanners* bark, Allom, and tryed Hogs-greaſe, of each one pound, and of Vervain half a handful, bray all theſe well in a Morter, and add unto them of the lean of Martlemas or dryed Beef, burned, and made unto fine powder, half a pound, and ſo work them to a kind of Salve, and apply it unto the Sorrance, ſo hot as the *horſe* can ſuffer it; but before you do apply this medicine, you muſt draw the *skin* with a hot iron, a little above the *Hoofs* or *Knees*, or elſe take up the *Veins* (which I altogether uſe to do) then take of Tar, and of ſweet Butter, and of Hony, of each two ſpoonfuls, and warm them upon the fire, and either anoint the places ſeared, or elſe the *Vein*, ſo taken up with this Unguent, once every day, till his Oyntment be all ſpent, and by that time, your *horſe* will be perfectly cured, eſpecially if you continue this former Emplaiſter daily to the Sorrance, having firſt clipped and ſhaven away the *hair*; from about the place grieved. *** With this I have cured many *horſes*. Another,

Take of Turpentine, Hogs-greaſe, and Hony, of each like much, ſo much as will ſuffice, a little Bolearmoniack in fine powder, and yolks of two Eggs: With ſo much Wheat-flower, as will thicken all the other ingredients: Incorporate all theſe well together, and ſo bring it to a Salve, and Plaiſter-wiſe apply it to the Sorrance, and ſo bind it up, renewing it every day, and let him not come out of the Stable, or

come into any wet, and he will ſoon be cured. *** This is alſo very good. *Another*,

Take of tryed Hogs-greaſe one pound, Verdegreaſe one penny-worth, of ſtrong Muſtard two ounces, Nervel four ounces, of Oyl de Bay, of Hony and Wax, of each half a pound, Arſnick one ounce, Red-Lead two ounces, and of white Wine Vinegar half a pint, powder your Verdegreaſe, and then boyl all together, (and the *hair* firſt clipt away, which muſt always be done in any of theſe Cures) apply this Medicine hot to the place, and renew it daily, and it will not only cure the pains, but all manner of ſcratches, ſcabbed, and kibed *Heels*; to waſh alſo the Sorrance, with Vinegar and Gunpowder is very good to help the pains, and ſcratches. *** This I have often uſed.

SECT. 7. *P.*

Hippoph. *DOe you not uſe to purge a* Horſe *that is* Purſive *and* Short winded *?*

Purſiveneſs. a Pill.

Hippoſ. Yea Sir, and I do it after this manner;

Take of the fat of a Boar three pound, mince it very ſmall, and lay it in fair Water four and twenty hours, to the end the Salt (if any be in it) may ſoak out of it, then, Take of Agarick Pulverized two ounces, of Colliquintida in powder half an ounce, *melroſarum* ſix ounces, incorporate all theſe well together, and work it to a paſte; which you muſt make into Pills, the bigneſs of an ordinary Tennis Ball, one of which you muſt give him at a time rowled up within the powder of Licoriſh, but the night before you do adminiſter it, you muſt give him no Oats at all, but a little Hay and Wheat-bran prepared only, then the next morning about ſix or ſeven of the clock, give him one of theſe Pills, and then cover him up warm; and ride or walk him two hours ſpace; then bring him in, and let him ſtand upon the Tench two hours more, then unbridle him, and give him a little Hay ſprinkled with water, and eight or nine hours after the taking of his *Pill*, (which will be three of the clock, give him white Water to drink, and let him eat of the Bran, then at night when you are to go to bed, put a muzzle upon his mouth,

mouth, and let him remain ſo all night faſting, and let him be warm covered, and the next morning unmuzle him, and give him Hay ſprinkled with water to eat, and continue to let his drink be white Water, only, the third day, give him another of theſe Pills, after which you may begin to give him Oats, but a little at once; but then the days he does not take his Pills, you muſt remember ever more an hour after you give him his white Water, to give him of Agarick; and of Rubarb in powder, of each one ounce, which he muſt take in freſh or ſweet Butter made up like to a Pill. This *purgation* may be given to any Horſe, but eſpecially to that *Horſe* you ſhall fear is in danger, to become either purſive or Glandery, and if perhaps the Malady have been longer upon him, give him then of Antimony thirty drams more or leſs, according to the ſtrength and age of the *Horſe*, and alſo according to the nature and quality of the diſeaſe; and if after the application of this medicine your *Horſe* will not feed (as it may be very probably) you may cheriſh him with milk mingled with the yolks of Eggs and Sugar, well beaten and brewed together. *** This I applyed to a *Horſe* of more then twelve years old, who in ſeven days eat not one bit of any thing but only the ſaid Milk, Eggs, and Sugar, and yet in fourteen days after, I cured him, and made him perfectly healthy and ſound.

SECT. 8. *P.*

Hippoph. *What remedy have you for a Horſe that* Piſſeth blood?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe comes ſometimes being troubled with the *ſtone*, like as we have often times among men; ſometimes it comes to a *Horſe*, that being very fat, is put to more then his ſtrength is well able to perform; like as I once ſaw a very proper Gelding (a young Gentleman being upon his back in hunting) who coming to a great leap, and the *Horſe* being ridden off from his wind, his Rider inconſiderately forcing him to take that leap, which the Gelding with much difficulty took, but withal fell, and was not able to ariſe but with the help of men, and coming home the ſame

night he piſſed blood, whereof he died four days after, maugre the endeavours of three able *Farriers*, and being opened they found two veins broken neer to the kidneys, and much black blood found in the place. This malady may alſo come by bearing too great a weight, as alſo when a horſe is too hard ridden, he will piſs water like to *blood:* your eye ſheweth you the diſeaſe, and therefore it needs no further Demonſtrance. The Cure is,

Piſſing of blood. Take of *Ambroſia Sanguinaria, alias Bloudwort*, and Burſa Paſtoris, of each three ounces, ſtamp them well; and boyl them in fair water very well, and ſo give the liquor thereof being ſtrained, to the horſe blood-warm. *** Give him this five mornings together, and it will help him. Another:

Take Barly, and boyl it in the juyce of Gumfolly, and give him the Barly to eat, and the Liquor to drink, and this will cure him. *** This is alſo very good. Another,

Firſt cleanſe his *yard* from all filth, and his ſheath alſo with broken Beer and Butter, then let him *blood* in the *neck and mouth*, then take the juyce of Leeks, or green onyons, to wit, the water wherein they have been ſteeped twelve or ſixteen hours at the leaſt, the veſſel wherein they be ſteeped being kept cloſe ſtopped.

Take of this liquor, and of white-Wine, of each one pint, and ſtir and jumble them together till they become ſlimy, then give it him to drink, and do this ſix or ſeven mornings together, and it will ſtay his flux of *blood*, and bring his *urine* to its natural and ordinary colour. *** This is a very good medicine, and I have often tryed it.

Another no whit inferiour to the former.

Take Bean-flower finely ſifted, and add unto it the Suet of a Stag, as much as will ſuffice, and give it him three mornings together warm, with a horn, with a ſufficient quantity of red Wine, and during that time, let this drink be either ſweet Maſhes, or white water, made with Bean-meal. *** This is an approved good receipt.

SECT.

SECT. 9. P.

Hippoph. *WHat good receipt have you for a* horſe *that hath taken a ſurfet by* Provender?

Hippoſ. This comes commonly to ſuch *horſes* as are inſatiable feeders, and therefore it is requiſite that they be dieted, eſpecially if they have too much reſt, and too little exerciſe; for ſuch *horſes* if they can either break, or ſteal to a Bing of Provender, and drink preſently after, will undoubtedly ſurfet upon them, for drinking after Oats, Peaſe, or Beans, doth cauſe the Provender to ſwell in their belly and *ſtomack*, and ſo clogg the *ſtomack*, as that crudities will ariſe, and ſo cauſe him to be very ſick, yea and perhaps to no little danger, that you ſhall ſee him to ſtand with his four Legs aſunder, the one far from the other, and he will ſcowr and caſt forth his fundament, corn which will go forth as whole and entire, as he did greedily ſwallow them without chewing, or grinding them. The cure is, firſt open a vein in the *neck*, to keep the *blood* from inflaming, then draw his *yard*, and waſh it with broken Beer and Butter, then anoint it with ſoft greaſe, and put into the *pipe* of his *yard* a ſmall piece of a clove of Garlick, whereby to provoke him to *ſtale*, then rake him, and give him the *Cliſter* preſcribed in *l.* 2. *c.* 6. *Sect.* 8. *Cliſter.* 8. *C.* and it is called a *Cliſter lenitive*, then keep him warm and to a ſpare diet, for four or five days after, and let his drink be white water, during that time. *** With this receipt I have cured many a *horſe*, but one *horſe* amongſt the reſt of very great *price*, who otherwiſe had infallibly dyed.

SECT. 10. P.

Hippoph. *HOw do you cure the* Poll-evil?

Hippoſ. This malady we do tearm the *Poll-evil*: becauſe it breedeth in the top of the *Poll* behind the *ears* of the *horſe*, but let it aſſume what name it ſhall, yet it is none other thing then a *Fiſtula in grain*, that is a formal *Fiſtula*, which doth begin like all other *Fiſtulaes*, with a great inflammation and impoſtume in the *nape* of the *neck*: ſometimes it comes

comes by means of his unruly ſtriving, the halter being new, and therefore hard, which doth ſo pinch and gall him, that the harm thereof by reaſon the *fleſh* is bruiſed, doth feſter and inflame, and from thence is ingendred this moſt loathſome ſorrance, and ſometimes it comes again of billious and evil *humours*, which do approach to that place: ſometimes it comes again by the means of a ſtroke or blow given by ſome cudgel by his *Keeper or Rider*, betwixt his ears, whereby it feſtreth inwardly, and inflaming, breedeth an impoſtumation, ſo as if it be not in time taken, it will grow to a very foul *Fiſtula*, not eaſie to be cured; for the *poll* of the *horſe* is ſo tender a member, as to be ſoon offended, and therefore eaſily damnified; I need not to deliver you the ſigns, for the ſwelling will be ſo apparent, as that it cannot be miſtaken, albeit it will putrifie much more inwardly then outwardly; and therefore you ought to apply your diligence to open it, before it do break of it ſelf. The cure is,

Poll-evil. Firſt to lay unto the place ſwollen, ſuch things as will ripen it, and to prepare it ready to be opened: and as touching the ripening thereof:

Take the Loam of a mud-wall which had never any Lime in it, but much ſtraw or Litter; and the elder this Loame or mud-wall is, the better; boyl ſo much as you ſhall pleaſe thereof in the ſtrongeſt white Wine-Vinegar, and let it boyl till it come to be a very Poulteſs, then being very hot, lay it to the ſwelling, renewing it morning and evening till it be ripe enough to be opened, then open it with a red hot iron made ſharpe at the end, and let the iron be the bigneſs of a nail rod, but you muſt begin below, thruſting your inſtruments upwards, clean through, that it may come forth in the ſofteſt place, and when it is thus opened, ſo as the corruption may iſſue forth at eaſe; anoint the Orifices with tryed Hogsgreaſe two or three days together, to get out the fire, but howſoever fail not to dreſs it twice every day with the ſaid Poulteſs, taints being dipped in the Poulteſs, and put down to the bottom, as well to carnifie and heal the *Fiſtula* at the bottom, as to keep open the Orifices, and this Poulteſs will cure him. *** But withal you muſt remember to make him a hood or night-cap to warm the *nape* of his *neck*, and to keep in

in the taints alſo: this alſo cureth the Botch in the groin, hurts in the withers, navel-galles, galled-back, or Sit-faſts, &c. Another:

Firſt ripen it as before, or elſe with tryed Hogs-greaſe ſcalding hot, making him a Biggin wherewith to keep his *poll* very warm, and renew this Emplaiſter every day, and it will ripen it the ſooner; then when you find it to be the ſofteſt, and moſt likely to break, open it with a hot iron two inches beneath the ſoft place, carrying your hand upward into the ſoft and moſt matterative place, to draw forth the corruption downwards, then taint it with Flax or Hurds dipped into molten Hogs-geaſe, and lay alſo a plaſter of Hogs-greaſe upon it, renewing it for four or five days once every day, to get forth the fire: after this, take of Turpentine of *Venice*, half a pound thrice waſhed, and dryed from the water, the yolks of two Eggs, and of Saffron one penny-worth in powder; incorporate all theſe together very well, then with a probat, ſearch the depth of the Sorrance, and taint it with a Spunge full as big as the hole of the wound, and as long; and convey the taint down to the very bottom, well anointed with the ſaid medicine: but this muſt be done with the help of your inſtrument, and then cover it with a plaiſter of Hogs-greaſe, renewing it twice a day, but when the ſwelling is allaid, then uſe no plaiſter, and in ſhort time it will be perfectly whole and ſound. *** This is a very good cure. Another:

Firſt ripen and open it as before is taught you, and apply Hogs-greaſe to fetch forth the fire, then heal it thus:

Take Roman Vitreol, Allum and Roſe water of each two ounces, boyl all theſe together on a quick fire till they do come to be as hard as a ſtone, and then beat it into a very fine powder, and when you are to dreſs the ſore, firſt dip a taint into Unguentum Ægyptiacum, and ſo rowl it in the ſaid powder, and convey the taint with the help of your inſtrument, to the very bottom, and it will in ſhort time make it perfectly whole and ſound. *** This powder being ſtrewed upon an old ſore or ulcer, will both heal and dry it up. Another;

Take of Quick-ſilver one ounce, let it be well mortified with faſting-ſpittle, and mix with it tryed Hogs-greaſe the quanti-

ty

ty of a Hens Egg, and Brimſtone pulverized; incorporate theſe very well together, and anoint the ſwelling very well with this Unguent; having thus done, take preſently of red Tar one penny-worth, of the reddeſt and beſt, of Hogs-greaſe half a pound, and green Copperas and Bay-Salt of each one handful, both made into fine powder; boyl all theſe on the fire exceeding well, and then boyling hot (even as it comes from the fire) with a clout faſt'ned upon the end of a ſtick; apply this medicine upon the place (being ſo lately anointed with the Quick-ſilver, Hogs-greaſe, and Brimſtone) and thus by ſcalding it three or four mornings together, you ſhall after thoſe mornings but only warm the Tar medicine upon the fire, ſo that it be but molten, and apply it, and it will be cured; for this ſcalding of the place doth ſo kill the malice of the *Fiſtula*, that it can never break to annoy the *Horſe* any further. *** And thus with this medicine I have not only cured many *poll-evils*, but ſundry other *Fiſtula's*; it cureth all Impoſtumations and foul Ulcers, being thus applyed.

SECT. 11. *P.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good in caſe of* Purſiveneſs *or ſhortneſs of Breath?*

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe cometh by two means: the firſt *natural*, the ſecond *accidental*; *natural*, as when a *horſe* is (as we do uſually ſay) *cock-thropled* for that his *throppell* or *windpipe* being too long, and ſo becomes crooked as his wind is thereby ſo ſtraightned or ſtopped, as that he is not able to draw it in, and put it forth with that eaſe and pleaſure that other *horſes* that do are looſe *thropled*, for that the *wind-pipe* is (I ſay) ſtraightened, which doth convey his breath into his *lungs*, and vent it forth again in like manner, a *horſe* becometh *purſive* and *ſhort-winded*, when the *pipe* is too much filled, with fat or other *phlegmatick* ſtuff, whereby he is very much ſuffocated, which cauſeth his *lungs* to labour the more, and therefore if you ſhall be pleaſed to follow my counſel, never breed with that *horſe* that is *cock-thropled*.

This diſeaſe cometh ſecondly by *accident*, when a *horſe* ſhall be

be too hard ſtrained upon his water, like as many of your ignorant *Ioctries* uſe to do, when morning and evening they do make them *watring courſes* (as they are frequently ſo termed) ſo alſo this infirmity cometh by riding, gallopping, or ſtraining a *horſe* upon a full *ſtomach*, before he hath either digeſted his meat, or emptied himſelf; for by this means *phlegmatick humours* do diſtil out of the *head* into the *wind-pipe*, and ſo fall upon the *lungs*, where they do reſt, and there congeal, hindring the drawing of his *breath*: it comes alſo by colds, Glanders, and the like; the ſigns are ſo apparent, as that they need no deſcription, only this inconvenience (beſides many more) it bringeth with it; as to be heavy, ſad, and dull in travel, be marvellous ſubject to ſweats, and be ready to fall down if he be but a little ſtrained. A right skilfull *Farrier* not long ſince told me of a ſtrange cure in this kind, which a gentleman's *Groom* related to him of a gelding which the *Groom* had in his ſaid keeping, who was ſo *purſive* (or as we plainly ſay) *broken-winded*, as that he became almoſt unuſeful, and his cure was after this manner; he ſuffered his Gelding to eat what he would, as well his fill (*viz.*) of good Hay, as of Provender, but debarred him of all drink for the ſpace of two or three days together, then leaping his back, he rode him upon a foot pace to the water, at which time he ſuffered him to drink his fill, then coming forth of the water, he clapt ſpurs ſuddenly to him, and ran him with a looſe hand upon the top of his ſpeed ſo long, until for want of *breath* he fell with him, and for ſome time lay as if he were dead, but recovering *breath*, he aroſe, and being well recovered of his *wind*, he rode him into the water the ſecond time, where he alſo drank, and being come out of the water, he did as before, and ſo being again ridden from off his wind, he fell like as at firſt, having thus the ſecond time recovered breath, he gave him water the third time, and then rode him as formerly, but now this third time being fallen, when he began to get *breath* again he coughed moſt vehemently, at what time through the violence of his coughing, the Gelding caſt forth of his *mouth*, & that out of his *wind-pipe* a hard lump of congealed *Flegmatick ſtuff* of a good bigneſs, which by this means brought up, the Gelding was ever after freed from the malady, and made

ſound, and from that hour, had the uſe of his *wind*, as able and as well as ever before, and this was the ſtory which one of the ableſt *Farriers* I do know in *England* delivered unto me (as he affirmed, and I do believe him, for that I do know him to be a right honeſt man) from the *mouth* of the *Groom*, who with many vehement aſſeverations affirmed the thing to be moſt true, nevertheleſs albeit I do Mathematically believe that the *Groom* delivered this hiſtory to the *Farrier*, I muſt ſay with the *French-man*, *Ie croy en Dieu*: But leaving this famous *Groom* to his rare *cure*, let us proceed to cures that are more probable, and now of ſuch cures as I have met with for this diſeaſe, You ſhall participate:

Take of new Milk one pint, and of Sallet-oyl half a pint, give him this blood-warm, which done, put down his throat two new laid Eggs, do thus three or four mornings together, and then you ſhall perceive amendment, but for this Hay, let it be ſprinkled with water, and his Oats well wet in good Ale or Beer, and let his drink be altogether white water. *** This is very good. Another:

Keep your *horſe* three or four days to a ſpare Dyet, before you do adminiſter to him; then give him this drink: Take Fenugreek three ounces, of Bay-berries one ounce and a half, of the inner rind of Elder half a pound, the whites of ſix new laid Eggs, of brown-Sugar-Candy, water-Creſſes, Prim-roſe-leaves, if they may be had, red-Mints, red-Fennel, white or Haw-thorn-leaves, of each one pound, bray all theſe together in a Morter, (the ſpices before beaten by themſelves) and when they be well powdred, put to the ingredients of Ale one quart, and ſo boyl it, and after ſtrain it, and ſo give the liquor thereof to your *horſe* to drink blood-warm, and ſet him upon the Trench, and let him faſt ſix hours after, then give him meat, and an hour after that, give him a warm Maſh, or white Water, and let him be kept to a ſtrict Diet, and let his drink be Maſhes or white water 9 days together after, and his Hay ſprinkled with water, and his Provender wet in Ale or Beer; and thus you may cure him. *** With this medicine I have done very great cures. Another:

Take the guts of a Hedg-hog, and hang them in an Oven till they be dry, then make them into Powder, then take three

or

or four ſpoonfuls of the Powder, and put it into ſweet Wine, Ale or Beer, and ſo give it him to drink, and the reſidue of the Powder mix with the powder of Anniſeeds and Licoriſh, and with ſweet Butter make it into Pills, and give him two or three of the Pills preſently after his drench, and keep him faſting three or four hours after, then you may give him Hay firſt ſprinkled with water, and after Provender or Bread wet or moiſtened in good Ale or Beer, putting alſo thereunto of this Powder; and if you have not enough of this Powder to ſerve, then take of Cumin, Licoriſh, Centaury, and Anniſeeds, of each like much, make theſe into fine Powder, and give him thereof two ſpoonfuls with his Provender, and put alſo into his Maſhes and Bread of the Powder of Fennel-ſeed, mixed with the powder of Brimſtone; this is very good for this Malady, for I have ſeen a *horſe* for a month together to eat no other Provender, but what hath been mixed with this Powder, and alſo his Maſhes and white Water, ſo made and compounded, and I have alſo brought him to drink new Milk mingled with the powder of Brimſtone, by means whereof he hath been the ſooner recovered, and made perfectly ſound.*** And this is very good. Another,

Firſt let him *blood*, then take of ſweet Wine one pint, and of the juyce of Hore-hound half a pound, of the Oyl of Frankincenſe half an ounce, of the Powder of Anniſeed, Licoriſh, and brown Sugar-Candy, of each half an ounce, let all theſe be made into fine Powder, incorporated well together, and give it him once or twice in a week for a while, and ride him not at all that day you drench him, but keep him warm cloathed, and well littered, and let him ſtand upon the Trench four hours after faſting, then give him meat, and three hours after a ſweet Maſh, putting thereinto of the Powder of Licoriſh, and Anniſeeds. Of this I never made tryal, but it hath been highly commended unto me for right good. Another,

Take of Barley two Gallons, ſteep it in water two days, and ſhift the water every day, then take it clean from the water wherein it was laſt ſteeped, and boyl it in three Gallons of fair clear water till it burſt, putting thereto of Anniſeeds and Licoriſh, and of Raiſins of the Sun ſtoned, of each

one pound; and ſo let it boyl one hour, then take it from the fire, and ſtrain it very dry, and put unto the liquor, of Hony one pint, and of Sugar-Candy in powder ſix ounces; then put the liquor into a clean earthen Pot, or Bottle, keeping it cloſe ſtopped and thereof give your Horſe blood-warm four mornings together, the quantity of an Ale pint at a time, and let him eat the Barley if he will, howſoever put it not away, but heat ſome of it every day, and being hot, put it into a bag, and therewith perfume his head. *** This is very good for I have often uſed it. Another,

Firſt you muſt keep him to very ſpare diet, and inure him five or ſix days to eat his Oats ſteeped in Chamber-lye, and after that,

Take of Bay-berries, Fennel, Cumin, Smallage, Fænugreek, Fearn-roots dried, and Licoriſh four ounces in the whole, or, of each half an ounce, according to the bigneſs, age, ſtrength, or Corpulency of the *Horſe*; make all theſe into powder, then take one part of the Powder, and put unto it of freſh or ſweet Butter half a pound, and of new milk half a pint, and ſo give it your *Horſe* blood-warm: The next day do the like with the oher half of the Powder, and the third day let him not forth of the Stable, and give it him ſo long as he ſhall be in *Phyſick*; for his drink let it be white Water made of Barley-meal, but not with Wheat-bran, and let him ſtand upon the Trench, at leaſt two hours before his drench, and two hours after, then after that give him that which followeth,

Take of freſh Butter half a pound, of good Agarick, Night-ſhade, and Caſſia, of each one ounce, make all theſe into Pills (being firſt powdred, ſearced, and well mixed) and adminiſter them unto your *Horſe*, then give him of white Wine half a pint, whereby the better to ſwallow Pills, the fifth day let him reſt, and keep him always warm covered, and well littered, and if you do perceive him to be looſe in his *Body*, and that he hath purged well, let him reſt three or four days quiet, without doing any thing unto him, but if he hath not purged after one days reſt only, then give him this drink;

Take Mithridate, Diacarthamus, Senne, of each two ounces, and

and of good white Wine one pint, mix and brew all theſe together, and ſo give it him to drink, and let him reſt three days, giving him every one of theſe three days about noon, of freſh Butter only, half a pound, made into the manner of *Pills*; theſe three days being ended, you muſt adminiſter unto him as followeth, and continue it weekly till he be perfectly cured.

Take of Agarick, Aloes, and of Diacarthamus of each one ounce, of Saffron, Mirrh, half an ounce, make all theſe into fine Powder, and ſo make them into *Pills*, and with freſh Butter four ounces, and give it your Horſe, and then preſently after give him of White Wine one pint, to waſh down the Pills. *** This is a moſt excellent cure, and by me often practiſed. Another,

Take of white Wine one pint, of Sallet-Oyl three quarts, of Aloes and Licoriſh, of each one ounce, of Colloquintida, of Agarick, and Mirrh, of each half an ounce, of Ariſtolochia-rotunda three drams, of Night-ſhade one ounce, of Bay-berries three drams; make all theſe into fine Powder, then take of Venice Turpentine two drams, of *Mel roſarum* three ounces, mix all theſe together and make it blood-warm, and ſo give it your Horſe to drink with a horn, but give him no Oats in fifteen days, and let his drink be white water, it will not be good to give him much Hay, but Wheat-flower, which ſhould not be much beaten or threſhed, and inſtead of his Oats give him Wheat-bran, or Barley-meal, and keep him warm, ſix days after let him blood in the Neck. *** Let him have this drink twice, to wit, after the firſt drink let him reſt one day, and then drench him again, as you did before, Another. Firſt give him this purgation,

Take of freſh Butter half a pound, of Senne, and of Agarick, of each half an ounce made into fine powder, of Aloes, and of loaf Sugar, both powdred, of each one ounce, of Cordial Powder half an ounce, make all theſe into fine Powder; then,

Take common Hony four ounces, mix and beat all theſe together, and ſo make them into Pills, and give them to your Horſe; but before you do adminiſter theſe Pills he muſt ſtand upon the Trench two hours, and ſo likewiſe two hours after;

that

that day give him no Oats, and let his drink be white water, and for your other directions you may give him his allowance of Oats all the other days, but you muſt then wet them either in ſtrong Ale or good Beer, and you may travel or give him exerciſe, but with moderation all thoſe other days, and three times every day you ſhall give him three or four handfuls of Wheat-bran prepared, as before is ſhewed you in *l.* 2. *c.* 9. *ſect.* 4. *F.* and thus continue him to this diet at your pleaſure. *** I have made tryal of this Cure, and I do know it to be right good, for in a month or ſix weeks I have brought a gaunt and Purſive Horſe to have a belly as round, freſh, and as clear, as that of a ſucking Colt, nor is this Cure very chargeable or coſtly; you muſt give him Wheat-ſtraw inſtead of Hay, only in the night you may give him Hay, provided it be ſprinkled with water.

SECT. 12. *P.*

Hippoph. *What cure have you for a* Horſe *that is* Prickt *?*

Hippoſ. This Sorrance hath many names: It is called *Accloyed*, *Cloyd*, *Retraite*, *Prick't*, *&c.* All which names, we for the moſt part do fetch from the *French*, and all is but only plain *Prick't*, which occurreth to the *Horſe* either through the unskilfulneſs or negligence of the *Farrier*, in the driving of his *Nails*, or in the weakneſs of the *Nails* of their evil pointing, or if a *Nail* ſhould fortune to break in the quick, and not be immediately drawn forth, it will in ſhort time feſter in the fleſh, and ſoon after impoſtumate, and ſo in time beget a fowl Sore, which may ask much Art to cure. The ſigns be, that he will complain when he treadeth upon ſtony or hard ground eſpecially, which ſo ſoon as you perceive, you have then juſt cauſe to ſuſpect him to be *Prickt* if he were lately ſhod; wherefore the better to make tryal, your way muſt be to ſearch the *foot* whereof he complaineth, and you ſhall no ſooner put your Pinſors to the place, but that he will preſently ſhrink in his *foot* by reaſon the nipping of the Pinſors doth pain him to the quick; or if you do but caſt water upon the foot whereon he halteth, in ſhort time you ſhall perceive the *hoof* to be ſooner dry againſt

againſt the nail or place which grieveth him, before any other part of the *hoof*. Again, if you ſhall with your Hammer knock upon the top of the clenches, when you do come to that nail which grieveth him, he will lift up his foot; ſo likewiſe there may be many other ſuch like ſigns, whereby to diſcover the place prickt, which be familiar to every common Smith, and therefore I ſhall not need to ſpeak any more thereof. But let us now paſs to the Cure:

Firſt therefore after you have made tryal with your *Pinſors*, or otherwiſe, as before is inculcated; pluck off the ſhooe, and either with your drawing iron, or your Buttris, ſearch the place to the very bottome, and if you can ſee or feel any ſtub of any nail therein, leave not till you have got it away; and if the place be feſtred, or mattrative, wipe or waſh the wound very well, ſo as you may leave no part thereof behind; then take of the tender tops of red Nettles, a little handful, and ſtamp them in a Morter, of *Badgers-greaſe*, two ounces, of red Wine Vinegar, and Black-Sope, of each two ſpoonfuls, or for want of *Badgers-greaſe* take the like quantity of the fat of Bacon, which is ſalt. Beat all theſe together in a Morter to an Unguent, and ſtop the wound well therewith, and after cover it with Hurds, and ſo tack on the ſhooe again, and do not remove it in two days, and when you dreſs it the ſecond time with the ſaid Unguent, you may ſhooe him up, but drive no nail at that place, and ſo you may travel him, for he will be whole and ſound. *** This is an excellent cure, and I have often uſed the ſame. Another, *Prickt.*

Open the ſorrance well as before is ſhewed you, and waſh it clean with Vinegar and Salt, and then lay unto it the tender tops of Elder-buds beaten to a very Unguent, if it be in Summer that thoſe buds or leaves may be had, if not, then in Winter take the inward rind of Elder ſo pounded and brayed, and upon that melt into the wound hard Tallow, with a hot iron, and then lay upon it to keep it cloſe ſtopped, ſome Hurds, and ſo tack on the ſhooe, and in few times dreſſing he will be whole. *** With theſe two Receipts I have done many (whereof ſome have been very great) Cures. Another,

Firſt open the place, cleanſe the ſore well as before, then take

take red Nettles, and Bay-ſalt, of each like much; beat them unto a Salve, then fill up the hole of the wound therewith; that done, lay upon it Bolſter-wiſe Hurds, and melt upon the Hurds hard Tallow to keep wet, durt, and gravel from it, which would annoy the ſorrance; then tack on the ſhooe, cauſing the foot to be well pared, and drive no nail near the place, and after twice or thrice dreſſing, you may ride him, for then the more exerciſe he hath, the ſooner will he be whole. *** This is ſpecial good. Another,

Take off the ſhooe, and cauſe him to be well pared and ſearched as before, then take of Turpentine, brown Sugar-candy powdred, and white Ginger in powder alſo, of each the quantity of a Garden-bean, then melt them all together in an iron ſpoon, and ſo pour it into the wound hot, and lay Hurds upon it, and after do as you are directed in the former Cures. *** This is alſo very good. Another,

Search the place, as before is ſhewed, then take Roch-Allum and burn it, and make it into fine Powder, and ſo fill the hole therewith, and lay a Bolſter of Hurds upon it, and after do as before you are taught. *** And this is very good. Another,

Search the place as before is ſhewed, then take Goats-greaſe, or for want thereof Deers-ſuet, or Sheeps-ſuet, of Turpentine, Sallet-oyl, and new Wax, of each two ounces; melt them all together, and whilſt it is upon the fire, add thereunto of ordinary Honey, three ounces, and of Sanguis Draconis one dram made into fine powder, incorporate all theſe together upon a gentle fire, and bring it to an Oyntment, and of this you muſt pour a ſufficient quantity into the wound warm; then put on Hurds, and do as before is preſcribed you, and let the foot be very well ſtopped, and let him come in no wet if you can prevent the ſame, neither let any nail be driven near the grieved place. *** This is one of the beſt Receipts of this kind. Another:

Search the place as before, and cleanſe it with Salt and Vinegar. Then take Salt and make it into fine powder, then take four times ſo much Turpentine, and boyl them together, and ſo pour it hot into the wound, and then put upon it the powder of Brimſtone diſſolved in white Wine, and lay upon it

it Hurds, and then do as before is declared. *** This is very good. Another moſt ſingular Receit which the *French* do call *Retoire*. Firſt, ſearch and waſh as before Then

Take of Oyl-de-Bay four ounces, of Orpin, of Cantharides, and of Euforbium, of each two ounces, make them all into fine powder, and ſet it upon a gentle fire, ſtirring it till you have brought it to an unguent, with which dreſs him, as before is taught you.

SECT. 13. *P.*

Hippoph. *WHat hold you good wherewith to perfume a* Horſe?

Hippoſ. Perfumes are very neceſſary to be applyed to *horſes* in ſome caſes, *viz.* in Colds, Glanders, Rhumes, Murs, Pozes, Catars, &c. for the better expiation of which maladies, Perfumes are admirable helps, for ſometimes they break a cold, ſometimes they diſſipate congealed *humours* which do annoy the *head*, *brain* and *ſtomach* of the horſe, ſometimes they expel and cauſe the *horſe* to vent and ſend away at his *noſe* and *mouth* much filth and corruption, which doth ſtop, clog, and peſter his *head* and *body*, and ſometimes they do ſiccicate and dry up many bad humours which are ingendred in the *head* and *brain*, and ſo likewiſe many vertues *Perfumes* have, whereof very many of our *Farriers* here in *England* are moſt ignorant: for did they truly know the nature of *Perfumes*, and how rightly to apply them in their proper places, they might eaſily do cures, for which they ſhould be not a little admired. The Ingredients and ſimples wherewith we uſually perfume *ſick horſes* are many, as Frankincenſe, Storax, Benjamin, Brimſtone, Olibanum, &c. ſometimes Herbs, Roots, Grain, or Corn, and ſuch like things, which are very much behooveful, for the cures of ſuch diſeaſes, for which they are frequently adminiſtred, as you ſhall find in many of my cures ſet you down at large: yet I will for example ſake ſet you down two or three for your better ſatisfaction:

1 *Perfume.* Take the beſt Olibanum, Storax, Benjamin, and Frankinſence of each one ounce, bruiſe all theſe, and mix them well together, but not too ſmall, and when you are to perfume

your horſe, take all theſe ſo well mixed, & putting thereof upon a Chafing-diſh and coles, cover the coles with a Tunnel, and ſo apply the ſmall end to one *noſtrel* at once, and after to the other, to the end he may receive the ſmoke or fume up into his head, and let him be thus perfumed a quarter of an hour together. *** Another,

2 *Perfume.* Take Brimſtone made into fine powder, and mix with it freſh Butter and Sallet-oyl, as much as will ſuffice; let him not take this with fire, like as he did the former, but let it be conveyed into his noſe with a linnen clout rowled up in the faſhion of a great Taint, and this will bring forth much bad matter. *** Another,

3 *Perfume.* Take Penny-royal, Sage, and Wheat, of each as much as will ſuffice, and boyl them in fair water till the Wheat do burſt, put the Weat and Herbs being firſt drained from the water ſo hot as it cometh from the fire, and ſo faſten the bag unto the head of the Horſe, whereby he may receive the fume up into his head. And thus you may perfume him at pleaſure and as you ſhall ſee cauſe. *** The reſidue of perfumes and the manner how to apply them, you ſhall find among my Cures, and therefore it will be ſuperfluous for me to treat any further of them.

SECT. 14. *P.*

Hippoph. *What is the beſt manner of adminiſtring* Purgations *to a* Horſe?

Hippoſ. As touching *Purgations*, I have ſpoken before very largely, as well for inward *purging*, as for outward, and therefore what I ſhall ſay more, is in effect but one and the ſame thing: nevertheleſs for your further ſatisfaction, I will briefly deliver unto you, what can be ſaid of *Purgations*. Five ways we have whereby to purge a *horſe*, *viz.* by *Pills*, *Potions*, *Cliſters*, *Suppoſitories*, and *Graſs*. *Pills* for the moſt part do purge and cleanſe the *head* and *brain*, by drawing the *peccant humours* down into the *body*, and ſo ſending them forth with the *excrements*. *Potions* do free the *ſtomach*, *belly*, and *guts*, from ſuch naughty *humours* which Glanders, Colds, and Surfeits have engendred in the *body*, *Cliſters* are of ſundry, and thoſe-

of

of different natures, some to ease and appease griefs, some to allay the biliousness and sharpness of evil humours, some to bind, and some to loosen, and some to heal as in case of *ulcers* and old Sores within the *body* principally, and these do also cleanse the *guts*, refresh the inward parts and *spirits* [illegible], and prepare the *body* before hand for the receiving of [illegible] *pills* or *portions*. Suppositories help the disease by the gentleness of nature and condition more gentle than *Clysters* are, and may be applyed when *Clisters* cannot. It therefore remaineth that the skill of the *Farriers* be such, as to be able judicially to understand the several natures of every of these things, to know how to make choice of his ingredients and simples aptly, to understand how to compound them punctually and artificially, to discern rightly before he do administer what be the *humours* and maladies wherewith the *creature* is annoyed and visited, as whether (*V. G.*) it be *Choler*, *Melancholly*, *Flegme* or *Rhume* as also in what part of the body the *humours* offensive is most predominant, and what simples will purge or move those evil *humours*, for it is requisite he be able to know right well, and *ad unguem*, the nature and property of every one of them in particular, by reason that some are much more asperours and violent than others be: yea many simples are *strong poyson* if they be not well prepared and corrected, and yet their qualities well weighed and compounded by true Art, and great good judgment, will work wonderful effects. Those simples which be strong, are *Colloquintida*, Scamony, Elebory, &c. the more gentle, are Manna, Cassia, Whey, Prunes, &c. But those that be of the mean, or indifferent working, are Rubarb, Agarick, Aloes, Sene, &c. and this I am bold to intimate unto you, to the end you may better understand their natures, vertues and qualities, and come to know the more securely how to know when occasion shall be offered. The fifth and last way of *Purging* is by *grass*, especially if the *horse* be surfeited, and hath been overtoyled the winter before, for this must be done in the *Summer* time, when grass is in its best heart; but that grass which will scoure and purge most, is a new mown-meadow, for that will rake his *guts* very well, nor will he in such a place gather flesh; I do therefore counsel you not to suffer him to remain in such grounds above fourteen or

fifteen days, and then take him forth, & put him into some other pasture where the Grass hath not been touched with the Sythe, for then he will Belly well, and in short time recover much Flesh, and become Fat and Lusty, This manner of Scowring will cause him to empty himself well, to purge, and send away all his bad Humours and Surfeits, ease his *limbs* marvellous well, do his *legs* and *feet* very much good, refine his corrupt *blood*, and make him agile and full of *spirit*. To mowe green Rye before it be eared, is also most wholesome, for it scowreth, cleanseth, and cooleth the *body* very much; so doth the leaves of Sallows, and of the Elme; but as touching the administring of Scowring and *Purgations* in the Stable, you must understand that some skilful *Farriers* who have been far travelled in this *Mystery*, have very diligently and studiously set you down many good rudiments and instructions, wherewith to work with all security, whose observations I do advise you punctually to observe: as first the seasons of the year are to be pondred: (*V. G.*) in winter, if his *body* be to be purged, it must be first prepared by *Phlebotomy* or *blood-letting*, together with artificial dyet, therefore you shall administer either *Suppository*, *Clyster*, *Potion*, or *Pill*, *&c.* You must keep him a day or two from hay, straw, or such like hard-meats of digestion, for that those things will be a great impediment to the working of *physick*, or medicine, and he must also be kept for a time from meat; because *emptiness* is a great help to *Physical operation*, otherwise it may happen (as it doth often times) that more danger then good may accrew to the *Horse*. Wherefore two or three days before you do intend to *purge* him, let his meat be either Wheat or Rye bran prepared, like as before is taught you, and give him also either good bread made of purpose with Beans, Pease, and some Rye in it, or else Oats well sifted which must be dry and sweet, and let his drink be white water only, and that morning you intend to give him a *purge*, let him be fasting from either meat or drink, but about six or seven a clock in the morning, give him this or some other *purge*, which I have already taught you, or shall hereafter, which must be correspondent unto the malady, for which you are to *purge* him, for one *Purgation* will not sort to ever infirmity, but this *purge* is most profitable

for

for the cauſes which I ſhall preſently deliver unto you: And this it is, *viz.*

Take of white Wine one pint, or of ſtrong new Ale one quart, ſo much of the powder of Mechoacan of the beſt, and choiceſt as you may take upon a ſhilling at four times, give him this drink warm with a horn, then Trot him out a matter of a Mile gently upon good ground, and ſo ſet him up warm, and let him ſtand upon the Trench till one of the clock, then give him a warm Maſh. This will purge and fetch away his filth and ſlime, and carry away his *peccant humours*, which Surfeits have engendred; half an hour after he hath had his Maſh, give him Bread or elſe a few Oats mingled with Wheat-bran, and that little and oft for fear of cloying his *ſtomach*, and at night give him white water, and ſo give him Bread and Hay ſprinkled with water for all night. *⁂* This is an excellent *Purge*. *Another*, 1 *Purgation.*

If it be in the Spring prepare him as before, then for, three or four days together give him green Rye ſo much as he will eat, and after feed him with Bread or elſe Oats and Bran, like as you are told before, but inſtead of Hay, continue him thoſe nights with green Rye, by reaſon his Teeth will be on edge. *⁂* This cooleth his *Body*, and cleareth it from all *Flegmatick* and *Rheumatick humours*: As for his *bloodletting*, let that be according as your judgment ſhall dictate unto you, and you may uſe this ſo long as you may ſee cauſe. *⁂* if you do perceive your *Horſe* to be ſick, Surfeitted, full of Colds, or otherwiſe ill diſpoſed, whether in *Summer* or in *Winter*, after you have opened a *Vein*, give him this *Purge:* 2 *Purgation.*

Take of Aloes, Siccotrina, made into fine powder two ounces, and make it up into *Pills*, with freſh or ſweet Butter, and give it your horſe over night, he having been kept faſting the whole day before, and prepared alſo with the Dyet before preſcribed; and after he hath taken thoſe Pills, give him either a ſweet Maſh, or white water the next morning early, for that will cauſe his Pills to work the more kindly that day, and ſo let him faſt till night; during which time he will purge freely: Then at night (he having ſtood upon the Trench all day) give him white water, and after Oats and Bran, and then give him Hay ſprinkled with water 3 *Purgation.*

for

for all night, nevertheleſs he may not the firſt day purge, by reaſon that ſome horſes are of a ſtrong *Conſtitution*, as that *Phyſick* will not eaſily or ſuddenly work, but then be you confident it will the next day: You muſt therefore be careful how you do order him. After this purging keep him ſtill warm clothed and well littered, take him from the Trench, and put on his Coller-halter, give him ſweet Maſh or white water, and after feed him well, but by diſcretion, both with Hay, Oats, and Bran, and keep him to white water two or three days after, or longer, if you ſhall ſo pleaſe, and when you give him cold water, let it be without exceſs. *** This I have often tryed. Another,

If your *Horſe* be newly taken from Graſs, and that you hold it needful his *body* be cleanſed, and to free him of his many bad *humours*, which either his Graſs or former Surfeits might bring: Then firſt Rake him, and adminiſter unto him the *Cliſter* preſcribed you in *lib.* 2. *cap.* 6. *ſect.* 8. *letter C. Cliſter* 4. and the next day after give him this drink;

4 *Purgation.* Take of the ſtrongeſt Ale-wort one quart, of ordinary Honey a quarter of a pint, of London Treacle two ounces, mix and brew all together well, and ſo give it him blood-warm: This done, keep him upon the Trench warm clothed, and well littered ſix hours after, and let his drink be a ſweet Maſh or white water, and let his Rack meat be ſweet Wheat-ſtraw, Oats, and Bran. *** This both purgeth and comforteth. Another which muſt be given the next day.

5 *Purgation.* Take of White-wine one pint, and put thereto of Sene one ounce, which muſt be infuſed all night in the Wine; the next morning betimes ſtrain it, and put into it of the beſt and choiſeſt Aloes one ounce, made into fine powder, and Agarick half an ounce, of Licoriſh powdred one ſpoonful, warm this a little upon the fire, and mix and brew it well together, and ſo give it your *Horſe* blood-warm; then walk or ride him gently a quarter of an hour, and ſo ſet him up warm clothed and littered, nor let any cold Air come unto him, neither let him eat or drink in ſix hours after, and at night give him a ſweet Maſh, or white water, and let his Rack-meat be ſweet Wheat-ſtraw, and Oats with Bran. *** The next day (if the ſign be good) open a *vein* in the *neck*, and prick

prick him in the *mouth*, and if the blood be bad, take from him two quarts, but if good, then not fully one quart; keep him warm, and let his drink be either ſweet Maſhes, or white water, and put into his drink, either the powder of Brimſtone, or of Fenugreek, or Turmerick, or of Elecampane, one or more together, according as he will be brought to like and take them, which being well mixed, put thereof into his drink one ſpoonful at once. *** Theſe are very Soveraign purgative receipts, whereby to cool the *body*, purge *Choler*, and other *peccant humours*, and to purifie and refine the *blood*: But beſides, this is not only good for *Horſes* newly taken from Graſs, but for other ſick, ſurfeited and diſeaſed *Horſes*. Another,

Take of Gentian two ounces, ſlice it into very ſmall ſlices, *6 Purging Drinks.*
then boyl it in Beer one quart, till it come to one pint, and give it him blood-warm, but it will make him very ſick for a ſhort time, but have no fear, for the *Potion* will do him much good: Let him faſt upon it four or five hours at leaſt, then give him a warm Maſh, or white water, and the next day give him this Receipt;

Take of Life-Honey, or for default thereof, ordinary Honey, and mingle it with his Oats that he is to eat, which muſt be mixed by rubbing the Oats and Honey betwixt your hands, ſo that the Honey may be very well mixed, let him eat his Oats thus mingled, until you do find him to be quite cured, which will be when he hath quite done running at the *noſe*. *** This is one of the beſt, and moſt certain cordials that I know, neither have I made uſe of any ſo much as of this, for the time I have known the ſame, for this diſperſeth all flegm and choler; it alſo purgeth the *head* and *brain*; it purifieth the *blood*, it venteth the evil *humours*; it cauſeth good digeſtion, and freeth a *Horſe* from Glanders, Colds, Catarhs, Rhumes, Running at the *noſe*, and the like.

CHAP

CHAP. XVIII.

SECT. 1. Q.

Hippopherus.

What cure have you for the quick *or* running Scab ?

Hippoſ. This is a noyſome diſeaſe, and infectious, a very formal *Mainge*, and neer neighbour to the *Leproſie* or *Elephantique diſeaſe*. It cometh by Surfeit taken by over-riding, when the *blood* is over-hot; it doth putrifie and corrupt the *blood*, and conſequently the *fleſh*, and at laſt breaketh forth into this malady, which we call the *quick-ſcab*. And the reaſon why we do give it this name is, for that it runneth from one member of the *horſe* to the other; ſometime it will be in the *neck*, and at other times in the *breaſt* of the *horſe*, now in the *Main*, and then in the *Tail*, &c. The cure is,

Quick-Scab. Firſt ſhave or clip away the *hair* from that place viſited, ſo cloſe as may be, and take off the *ſcurf* and *ſcabs* with ſome old Curry comb, Oyſter-ſhell, or ſome ſuch thing. Then

Take fair cold water with a linnen cloth, waſh and bathe the places very well, and lay the linnen cloth wet upon the place, and ſo touch it no more in ten days, and if in that time the *quick-ſcab* do not heal, then dreſs it as before, and ſo a third time, or a fourth, or ſo oft as neceſſity requireth, till it be throughly healed. But remember that the day before you thus dreſs the Sorrance after this manner, you take (to a reaſonable quantity) of blood from the *Neck-vein*. *** This is an approved cure. Another as good as the former.

Firſt let him *blood*, and then ſhave or clip away the hair cloſe, as in the former cure. Then take Mallows and Marſh Mallowes, of each like much, and boyl them in fair water as much as will ſuffice, till the herbs be ſoft, and with the herbs and decoction, bathe and waſh the ſorrance two or three days together warm; then take of common Hony one pint,

pint, Copperas, Allum of Glaſs, and Verdegreaſe, all made into fine Powder of each four ounces, Turpentine and Quick-ſilver mortified, of each two ounces; boyl all theſe together with the Honey unto an Unguent, and herewith dreſs him every day till he be whole. *** This I ſay is very good.

SECT. 2. *Q.*

Hippoph. *How do you cure a Quitter bone?*

Hippoſ. This cometh to a *horſe* by ſome hurt he hath taken in the *foot*, either by a prick with a nail in ſhooing, or by gravelling, or by a ſtub, or the like, when it was not ſo well healed that it impoſtumated, and ſo brake out above the *cronet*, which bred the malady; or elſe being neglected it brake out above the *hoof* before it was perceived. It is bred alſo ſometimes by a hurt upon the *hoof* by a blow, or by ſtriking one *foot* upon the other; and ſometimes it cometh by evil *humours* which fall down into that place, and it groweth moſt uſually upon the inſide of the *foot*, where when it beginneth it cauſeth a hard round ſwelling upon the *cronet* of the *hoof*, betwixt the *heel* and the *quarter* of the *long talent*, it begetteth an Ulcer at what time it doth begin to impoſtumate, and it breaketh out above the *cronet*, like as I ſaid before. The ſigns I have already given you, for the place will be ſwelled the bigneſs of a Haſle-nut, and the Horſe will halt right down. The cure is, ſo ſoon as it is eſpied to open it above, if it do begin to be ſoft, then take Auripigmentum made into fine powder, and infuſe it in the ſtrongeſt white wine Vinegar can be gotten 28 hours, and then apply it to the ſore, and it will ſo eat about the *quitter bone*, that you may pluck it away with your *finger* or *pliers*, which ſo ſoon as the *bone* or *griſtle* is taken forth, you may heal up the wound with your Copperas water, and green Oyntment preſcribed in *l.* 2. *c.* 10. *ſect.* 4. G. till it be whole, but he muſt not come into any wet during the time of the cure. *** This is very good. *Another*, *Quitter one.*

Firſt cut the *hoof* to the quick, then

Take a Snake the greateſt you can get, and cut off his *Head* and *Tail*, and flea it, and ſo boyl it in water till the fleſh come

from the bone, and then you may bring the fleſh to be a very Oyntment; put of this into the ſorrance down to the bottome, and this will kill the *quitter bone* and dry up and heal it; but you muſt not ſuffer him to come into any wet dirt, or gravel, during the time you have him in cure. *** With this medicine I cured one *horſe* only, for that I had no cauſe to uſe it to any other ſince. *Another,*

Take of Arſnick the quantity of a ſmall Bean, make it into powder, and put it into the hole of the Sorrance, conveying it down to the bottome, with your inſtrument, and then ſtop the mouth of the wound with Hurds, and bind it on with a clout; and a rowler, that the *horſe* may not bite it away; and ſo let it remain four and twenty hours: Then open it, and if you ſhall perceive the wound to look black within, it is a token that the Arſnick did its Office, in well working, then to allay the fire; And to reſtore the *fleſh* that is thereby become mortified, *taint* the hole with Turpentine and Hogs-greaſe molten together. Then take Pitch, Roſin, and Wax, of each like much, and of Turpentine as much as of all the other three, and melt them, and ſo make a Plaiſter of Leather, with which you muſt cover the top of the Sorrance, but firſt be ſure to convey the aforeſaid *taint* to the bottome, and then lay on your Plaiſter, and thus dreſs him daily till you have gotten forth the Core or ſharp *Griſtle*, if the Arſnick have not eaten it out before, for if the *Griſtle* be in the bottom of the wound and uncovered, you may raiſe it with your fingers or Inſtrument, and ſo pluck it quite away, for till that it be out, the Sorrance will not heal; that done, heal it up with your green Oyntment, or elſe with this Unguent:

Take of common Honey, and of Verdegreaſe in fine Powder, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, boyl this till it be red, and therewith *taint* the wound till it be whole, keeping evermore the *mouth* of the wound open, leſt it heal up above, before it be well healed at the bottome; neither let your *horſe* come into any wet, or go forth of the Stable until he be throughly cured. *** Thus I have cured many *quitter-bones*. *Another,*

Cut the place to the quick, then take Virgin Wax, Pitch of

of Greece, Galbanum, Maſtick, Sagapenum, Olibanum, and Sallet-Oyl, of each one ounce, and of Deer or Sheeps-ſuet half a pound, melt theſe upon a ſoft fire and incorporate them well together, and therewith *taint* and dreſs the ſame till it be whole. *** This is alſo very good.

CHAP. XIX.

SECT. 1. *R.*

Hyppophilus.

WHat *is good to cure the* Red-water?

Hippoſ. This *Red water* is that which iſſueth out of old incurable *Ulcers*, and Sores, which when you ſhall ſee it to come forth of any wound, then be you aſſured that it is very hardly or ſeldom cured, till that water be gotten away; for it is a ſign that the wound is poyſoned with the ſaid *Red-water*; nor could I ever find any cure for the *Red-water*, but only one which a *Mariſhal* of *France* taught me, which is this, *viz.*

Take of the root of the herb called *Emanuel*, alias *Bonus-Henricus*, or good *King Henry*, or *All-good*; boyl the roots thereof in water, and give it him Drench-wiſe with a horn blood-warm, and this will take away the *Red-water*, and you may then cure the wound with your other Salves or Unguents.

This I had never cauſe to make tryal of in *England*; but I have been an *Eye-witneſs* to two or three cures in this kind, which the *Mariſhal* of whom I had the Receipt did very ſufficiently prefect. The *French* calleth this malady *La Eu Rouſe.*

SECT. 2. *R.*

Hippoph. HOw *do you make a* Reſtringent charge?

Hippoſ. This *Reſtringent charge* is to be applyed to broken bones, or to bones diſlocated or out of joynt, being firſt ſet, as alſo to take moiſt *humours* from weeping

wounds, and ſo dry up bad *humours* which do preoccupate the *body*. I will commend unto you one only receipt which ſhall be ſpecial good:

Reſtringent charge. Take of Oyl-de-Bay, four ounces, Orpin, Cantharides, and Euphorbium, of each two ounces, make all theſe into fine powder, and mix them with your Oyl-de-Bay very well, and therewith *charge* the place grieved. *** This is alſo very good to *charge* the ſwelling of a *Back ſinew ſprain*.

SECT. 3. *R.*

Hippoph. *WHat cure have you for a* Ring-bone?

Hippoſ. A *Ring-bone* cometh two ways, to wit, either by *Nature*, or by *Accident*; by *Nature*, when as either the *ſtallion* or *mare* have it, from whom the Colt is ingendred, whereby he taketh it as Hereditary from them, and therefore (as I have formerly admoniſhed) I will diſſwade you from breeding upon any ſuch *Horſe* or *Mare* that either had or have this malady. It cometh alſo accidentally by ſome knock or blow given either by ſome other *horſe* or by his *Keeper* or other perſon, and ſometimes by ſome evil *humour*, which through over-heats do fall down into the *Legs*, and maketh its reſidence upon the top of the *cronet*. It beginneth firſt with a ſlimy *humour*, which in time groweth to a hard Griſtle; you ſhall know it, for that there will be a ſwelling round about the *cronet* of the *hoof*, adjoyning unto the lower part of the *paſtern*, and the *hair* will ſtare, and be briſtly, and it will cauſe the *horſe* to halt. The cure is, firſt waſh the place, and ſhave away the *hair*, then

Ring-bone. Take quick or *unſlacked lime*, newly taken from the Kill, which muſt be well burned, the beſt burned you may know by its lightneſs, make your *lime* into fine powder, and lay it upon the place ſwelled all along of a good thickneſs, and bind upon it a linnen cloth made faſt about the *foot*; and ſo put the *horſe* into the water, and let him ſtand in the water a pretty while, then take him forth, and unbind the *foot*, and he is infallibly cured, for the burning of the *Lime* doth kill the *Ring-bone*, even unto the very root thereof. *** With this Receipt I have cured not ſo few as an hundred *horſes* at the

the leaſt, but when you are thus to dreſs your *horſe*, let him be brought cloſe to the water whereinto he is to be ridden, that ſo ſoon as you have applyed your *Lime* unto the Sorrance, you may preſently put him into the water. Another, Firſt, ſhave away the hair as before is adviſed, then ſcarrifice the place.

Take then Cantharides half an ounce, Euphorbium, and Oyl-de-bay of each one ounce, your Cantharides and Euphorbium muſt be made into fine powder, and then boyled with your Oyl-de-Bay, ſtirring it continually, that it run not over, then with two or three *feathers* lay it boyling hot upon the Sorrance good and thick, let him be dreſſed in the ſame place where uſually he ſtandeth in the Stable, and let him have no litter near him but tye up his head ſo as he may not reach the medicine with his mouth; but when the *hair* do begin to grow again, give the fire to the Sorrance, to wit, three or four ſtraight lines right downwards, drawing the ſwelling quite croſs, and let the edge of the iron be no thicker then the back of an ordinary knife, neither muſt you burn him any deeper then that the *skin* may look yellow, that done, apply to the place this charge:

Take of Pitch and Roſin, of each like much, let them be molten together, and whilſt it is hot, apply it to the place all along, from the one end of the ſwelling to the other, and before it be cold, clap flocks upon it, and about three days after, lay on more of the ſaid charge, and new flocks again upon that charge, and ſo let it remain until the flocks and charge fall off of its own accord. *** This is alſo very good. Another, Firſt waſh and ſhave, and ſcarrifie, as before, then,

Take gray Sope, and Arſnick pulveriſed, of each the quantity of a Wall-nut, which being very well mixed, ſpread it upon the ſorrance ſo far as the *Ring-bone* goeth, and having thus ſpread it, apply upon it a few Hurds, and bind a clean linnen cloth upon it to keep it on, neither let it be removed in four and twenty hours, then take it away, and ſtir not the *asker* or *ſcab*, but only anoint it with freſh Butter, till it do fall away of it ſelf, and ſo heal it up with ſome healing Salve, whereof I have given you plenty. *** This I have tryed, and have

have found to be very good. This medicine will cure a *Bone-Spaven*, *Splint*, *Curb*, or any other bony *excretion*.

SECT. 4. *R.*

Hippoph. *HAve you any way to recover and make ſound a* Horſe *that is* rotten?

Hippoſ. Truly Sir, for any man to promiſe that, were great precipitation, only thus far he may wade therein, as to give eaſe and help to a *horſe* that hath the *Rot*, for it is one thing for a *horſe* to be *rotten*, and another thing for him to have the *Rot*. For a *horſe* to be *rotten*, is to have his inward parts waſted and conſumed, or at leaſt ſo *rotten* as never poſſibly to be recovered, to wit, his *Liver*, *Lights*, &c. But for a *horſe* to have a diſeaſe called the *Rot*, I do find the ſame to be either a formal *dropſie*, or elſe a diſeaſe ſo allied neerly thereunto, as not to be diſtinguiſhed eaſily: As we ſay, a Sheep is *rotten*, when his *Liver* is become foul and tainted; nevertheleſs men do eat the *carcaſs*, and do aver it to be good meat, wherefore the Sheep is not rotten, but hath the diſeaſe called the *Rot*. This malady cometh ofttimes to *horſes* unhandled, to wit, in their youth, whilſt they be yet Colts, which be bred, and do feed in *Fenny*, *Marſh* and *wet grounds*, and ſometimes it cometh to them after they have been backed and ridden, when they have too hard and violent riding, being yet but young, whereby the *blood* is firſt inflamed, and after putrified and corrupted, begetting obſtructions in the *Liver*, and thoſe do cauſe putrifaction, and knots and ſo puſtils do engender in the *Liver*, which breedeth either a *Dropſie*, a *Feltrick*, or a *Rot*. The ſigns how to know this infirmity are theſe: After his journeys, his *Hair* will *ſtare*, his *Legs* ſwell and burn, and when you ſhall preſs the places ſwoln with your finger, upon taking your finger away, there will remain a pit or dint, he will forbear his meat very much, and when he doth eat, it will be without any ſtomach or appetite, he will pant much, lift and beat in the Flanks many times, he will ſwell under the Belly, neither will he caſt his *Coat* in ſeaſonable time, when other Horſes that be ſound do, and he will be ſo faint of *body*, as that he will become *Lunt*, and utterly

terly to have loſt his mettle. Theſe and ſuch like be the Symptoms of this malady. Now come I to the cure:

Let him firſt *bleed* well under the *Tail*, then

Take of Mares-milk two quarts, if the ſame may be had, if not, the like quantity of the milk of a *red Cow*, then take a lump of Arement, then take a young *horſe* of or about the age of four years, and of colour black, if it may be, if not, then of ſome other colour, run and chaſe him about that he may ſweat much, then with a ſpoon, or with ſome other ſuch like Inſtrument, rake the ſweat from his *Head*, *Neck*, *Breaſt*, *Back*, *Sides*, *Ribs*, *Buttocks*, *Legs*, and in a word, from each part or *Member* of the ſaid *horſe*, and get of the ſweat ſo much as you can poſſibly, and ſo put your Arement and your ſweat into the milk, which all being well mixed, give him this by equal portions three mornings together, till he hath taken it all, and let him drink none other drink after it in ſix or ſeven hours, but immediately after his drink, let him be led forth into ſome *Paſture* where other *horſes* be, the better to cauſe him to *ſneeſe*, *ſtale*, *dung*, and *empty* himſelf; for it is very *wholſome* for him ſo to do, before he either eat or drink. Having thus done, ſet him up warm and well littered, and if the ſeaſon ſerve, give him of the green blades of Rye, if not, give him Barley ſteeped in Milk three days, but renewed every day once. Then after every of theſe drinks if you feel him cold in the *Paſtern-joynts*, or that he *trippeth* or *ſtumbleth* as you lead him in your *hand*, meddle no further with him, for he is paſt cure; otherwiſe for nine days together after morning and evening give him white Water only, unleſs now and then a ſweet Maſh, and ſometimes give him milk with his white water, if the *horſe* be not above nine years old, and ſo you may cure him, but if he be elder, this may prolong his life, whereby he may do the more ſervice. This I never did experience, but a *Noble Knight*, and a very good friend, told me that he hath thus recovered ſundry *horſes* which hath been viſited with this diſeaſe. *Rot.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

SECT. 1. S.

Hyppophilus.

WHat good Salves have you wherewith to heal up ſores and wounds?

Hippoſ. I have many, according as I have before ſhewed you, but yet I will give many more, the greateſt number of which I have tryed, and am able to commend them unto you for very good, and thoſe not Salves only, but Unguents, Powders, Waters which be moſt Soveraign.

Take of Peroſen, and of hard Roſin, of each one pound, of Frankincenſe, Virgin-wax, or for want thereof new Wax, and Sheeps-ſuet, of each half a pound, of old tryed Hogs-greaſe one pound and a quarter, boyl the Gums and Wax in white-Wine half a pint, and then put into it your Sheeps-tallow and Hogs-greaſe, and when all is well molten and incorporated, ſtrain it, and whilſt it is yet hot put in of Venice Turpentine one ounce, and ſo work all well together, and when it is cold, pour in the liquor from the Salve, which put up into a clean Galley-pot, or other clean veſſelfor your uſe. *** This is a moſt ſovraign *Treat* or Salve wherewith to heal any wound (that is not come to an *Ulcer*) and ſo dry it up. Another moſt excellent Powder.

Take unſlaked Lime, the dry duſt of Tanners Oken Bark, and old ſhooe-ſole burned to a cole, of each like much, make theſe into fine Powder, and mix them well, and keep it in a clean box or glaſs for your uſe. *** This Powder healeth the *buds* or *knots* of the *Farcin*, after they be broken, and it skinneth them, and if they be firſt waſhed with the juyce of Vervine and ſtrong Vinegar mingled together, and then this Powder being caſt upon them, will (I ſay) heal and skin them. It alſo healeth and skinneth all other ſores. Another.

Take tryed Hogs-greaſe half a pound, Verdigreaſe in fine Powder one penny-worth, boyl theſe upon the fire two or three

three walms, then take it off, and put unto it Venice Turpentine half an ounce, and ſtir it well together till it be cold.*** This unguent will heal any wound or ſore in a horſe. Another;

Take of Roch Allum a good quantity, and burn it, and as much Bay-ſalt, and burn that alſo; make theſe both together into fine Powder, then take of common-Honey, and of ſweet Butter, of each like much as will ſuffice, incorporate the Allum and Salt with the Honey and Butter by melting them over a gentle fire, and with a taint or plaiſter apply it. **** And this cureth any foul ſore. This I have often tryed. Another;

Take of fair water one pint, and put into it of green Copperas, and of Bay-ſalt, of each the quantity of a good haſle nut, both made into very fine Powder; let theſe boyl a little upon the fire, With this waſh any ſore before you do apply your Salves, Unguents, or Powders. **** This is a right good Water. Another,

Take of Common-Honey two ounces, Roch-Allum, Verdigreaſe, and Vinegar of each one ounce, make your Allum and Verdigreaſe into very fine Powder, then take of Sublimate finely powdred, two ounces, boyl all theſe a walm or two on the fire; this laid on a Spatula Plaiſter-wiſe once a day, or if the wounds be deep, with a *taint*, cureth both ſpeedily and ſoundly: but before you dreſs him with this ſalve, let the ſore be well waſhed and injected with the water laſt above mentioned, made of fair water, Copperas, and Bay-ſalt. **** This is a moſt approved cure, and good beyond all peradventure, for it cureth not only ſores and wounds in many parts of the *body* of the horſe, but in the *foot* which way ſoever it may happen, and it cleanſeth any wound from dead or proud *fleſh*. Another:

Take the buds or tendreſt tops of the leaves of Elder, one handful, and firſt ſhred, and after pound them very well, till you bring them to a perfect ſalve, and apply this to the ſore, binding a cloth upon it to keep it from falling off.**** This will cure any old or new ſore whatſoever, in any part of the *body*, *galled-backs*, *Spur-galls*, *gravelling*, *prickt*, or *accloyed*, the wound being dreſſed herewith every day once, it *Salve.*

will cure any *Fiſtula* if the juyce thereof be injected to the bottom. With this one thing alone I have done cures which very good *Farriers* could not cure. Another :

Egyptiacum. Take common Honey and Verdegreaſe finely pulverized, of each as much as will ſuffice, boyl them together till the medicine Wax red, and this will heal up any old or green ſore in ſhort ſpace. *⁂* This is alſo very good. Another,

Ointment. Take the white of a new laid Egg, and Sallet-oyl as much as will ſuffice, and beat them well together, and before you do apply it unto the wound, pour into the wound burnt butter, and then lay on your medicine with Hurds plaiſter-wiſe, and this will cure any green wound. *⁂* This is very good, and thus much for ſores.

SECT. 2. *P.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good for a* Horſe *that hath gotten a wrench in his* ſhoulder *?*

Hippoſ. If you do find that the grief be in the *ſhoulder*, and that you do know it to be a wrench, make this charge, and charge the grieved *ſhoulder* therewith.

Shoulder-wrench. Take Wheat-meal two pound, and allay it with red Wine in a Pipkin or Poſtnet, as if you would make thereof a paſte, then take of Bole-Armoniack made into fine powder half a pound, and ſo keep it continually ſtirring untill your Pitch be throughly molten, but before you take it from the fire, put into it of ordinary Turpentine half a pound, of Comin, oyl de-Bay, Dialthea, Sanguis Draconis, Bay-berries, Fenugreek, Linſeed-flower, of each two ounces, make all theſe into fine powder, then take of the oyl of Aſpick one ounce, boyl and mix all theſe very well together, that done, charge the grieved ſhoulder all over very well, even down the knees. *⁂* The charge is moſt ſeveraign for any wrench or ſtrain in the *ſhoulder*, *knees*, or *hips*; it alſo cureth Kibes, Scratches, and all ſuch like ſorrances, it is alſo moſt excellent to comfort the *ſinews* offended or hurt; it is very good for a *black-ſinew-ſprain*, it draweth away all bad *humours* and abateth ſwellings. *⁂* I have often made uſe of this Receipt, but if it be a *ſhoulder*-pight, or *joynt*-diſlocated, then thus he is to be cured, *viz.*

Charge.

Firſt

First cast him and lay him upon that side which is not hurt, then fasten with a cord the foot of the same *legg* along a board, and so fasten the *foot* to some tree or post which must be some two or three paces distant from the horse, and neer to the ground, and let one stand at the middle board with a stick to turn it easily and by degrees in the middle thereof; and whilst that is in doing, let another with a pail of cold water, rub, wash, and bathe the grieved place with his hand or foot, and that very hard, and in so doing, he must take up the member grieved, which he must chafe from the very top to the farther end of the leg, and by thus doing you shall put in the *bone* which was out, into its right place, and after this is done, you must raise him as gently as may be, and when he is up let him blood in the *breast-vein* on that side the grief lyeth, putting a *patten-shoae* upon the contrary foot, and let his fore-foot be trammelled fifteen days after at the least, to hinder him from lying down, and charge the grieved shoulder dayly with a *restringent charge*, and look upon the grieved member every two or three day, by the space of fifteen days; after that you have thus set the same, neither let him be removed out of his place during that time, and after swim him, and apply baths unto the *shoulder* made of good hearbs, such as I have prescribed you in the Section of *baths*, and lastly anoint him with this Unguent. *Shoulder dislocated.*

Take Oyl de-Bay, the oyl de-Petra, oyl de-Spike, and Nerval, of each like much: and thus ordering him, he will be sound and well again. ***I have proved this upon six *horses*, and cured them all. Another,

If the *shoulder* be either strained or dislocated, it were very good to *swim* him, then take *blood* from the *breast-vein* on that side the grief lieth, then tramel his *forefeet* that he do not lie down, and so let him remain three weeks, then anoint the *member* grieved with Sallet-oyl only, and the first time you shall take but of Sallet-oyl half a pound, which you must rub in against the hair very hard, both upon the *shoulder* and *breast*, by the space of half an hour, the next day after you shall likewise rub and chafe the *shoulder* and *breast*, by the space of half an hour more, without applying any thing unto them, and so continue rubbing and chafing him for the space of eight

or ten days together; as for the Sallet-Oyl, you muſt take four ounces thereof every third day, wherewith to chafe, rub, and anoint the *ſhoulder*, and the other two days betwixt, you muſt not rub and chafe it with any Oyl at all, and at the end of eight or ten days, his *ſhoulder* will be ſwelled down to the very *knee*, then take of the Oyl, and apply a reſtringent charge to the place grieved and ſwelled, and add to it of ordinary Turpentine half a pound, to cauſe the *charge* to remain on the better, and the next day, and all other days after inſtead of this *reſtringent charge*;

Take Vinegar and bathe the *ſhoulder* therewith upon the ſaid *charge*, and by degrees the *hair* will fall away, and when the ſwelling is aſſwaged, ſend your *horſe* in the beginning to the water, upon a *foot* pace, and he will be cured; this receipt certainly is very good, and not coſtly; but I did never make tryal thereof, albeit it was *highly* recommended unto me by a famous *French Mariſhal*, who averred that he had recovered very many *horſes* therewith, but for a *horſe* that hath gotten a wrench or ſlip, the only remedy is to put in a *French Rowel*, and then to *blow* him, and put on a *Patten-ſhooe*, and let his *Keeper* turn the *Rowel* every day once, as well to cauſe the putrefaction better to iſſue forth from growing to the fleſh, and after twenty days you may take it forth at your pleaſure. *** This is good for a new *ſtrain*.

SECT. 3. *S.*

Hippoph. *WEre it not much better* Hippoſerus, *that after you have thus* roweled *and* blown *him, and ſet a* Patten-ſhooe *upon the contrary* foot, *that he were turned forth to Graſs, for that the* horſe *keeping himſelf in continual agitation and motion, as he feedeth in the paſture, the humour may the better deſcend, and ſo iſſue forth, whereby he may ſooner be cured?*

Hippoſ. Sir, I anſwer negatively to your aſſertion, for by his being abroad, the *wind* will take the wound and cauſe him to ſwell, and thereby do the *horſe* more harm then you are aware of: Secondly I ſay, if when he is abroad there might happen to fall *rain*, that the place *rowelled* might take wet and cold, it might thereby indanger a *Gangrene*, and therewith

Shoulder rowled.

therewith endanger the life of your *horſe*, for the like I my ſelf have done; but having roweled your *horſe*, and that you be to blow him, if you uſe to take *Tobacco*, then forbear to blow him your ſelf, but let ſome other who taketh not any, to blow him, for the very ſent and ſteam of *Tobacco* will cauſe your *Horſe* to ſwell both in the *ſhoulder* and all along under his *Belly*, even to the *ſheath* and *ſtones* moſt violently, and the effect thereof I have very often ſeen. *** With roweling I have cured very many *horſes*, if the *ſtrain* be newly taken, but if the *horſe* have gotten hurt on his *ſhoulder*, that the *skin* be broken, then firſt cut away all the dead and bad fleſh if there be any, then

Shoulder skin broken.

Take the white of an Egg, and beat it, and lay it upon a few Hurds *Plaiſter-wiſe*, but firſt waſh the wound with a little white Wine made blood-warm, and then apply your Plaiſter to the ſorrance, and then anoint the *ſhoulder* round about the ſorrance with ſweet Butter; do this every day once, and it will be whole. *** This I have often tryed. Another,

Take your *lancet* or *fleam*, and make a little hole in the *skin* upon the pitch of the *ſhoulder*, and blow the place with a quill, that the *skin* may ariſe from the *fleſh*, then

Take of ſtale Urin two quarts, and boyl it to a Moiety, then ſtrain it, and put thereto of ſweet Butter, and of tryed Hogs-greaſe, of each half a pound, then take of Mallows Tanſey, Vervine, red Nettles, Sothern-wood, and of the tender tops of Broom, of each half a handful, chop all theſe together, and boyl them in the Urin till they be ſoft, and then firſt bathe the *ſhoulder* with the decoction of Urin and after anoint the *ſhoulder* with the herbs, being firſt made into an Unguent, uſing thus to do every day once or twice till it be well; but during this cure, the *horſe* muſt be kept within doors, and in a few days he will go ſound again. *** This is very good, for I have often tryed it. *Another*,

If your *horſe* have any grief in his *ſhoulder*, firſt put into it a *French rowel*, and *blow* it, and put a *Patten-ſhooe* upon the contrary *foot*, then apply this *charge* unto the place: Take of Pitch and Roſin of each one pound, and of Tar half a pint, melt them upon the fire, and before it be cold, *charge* the *ſhoulder* therewith, and clap Flax upon it, and let the

charge

charge lye on till it fall away of it ſelf, and once a day turn the rowel for fifteen days together at leaſt, then take out the rowel, and heal up the wound, then if the ſeaſon be fit for it) turn him to Graſs with his *Patten-ſhooe* on, and let him run three or four months, and he will go upright again. *** This is very good. *Another*,

Firſt ſwim him, (as you may do well to do for any grief in the ſhoulder or hips) and before you do rowel him, apply unto the grieved *Member* this *Bathe* and Unguent.

Take Pimpernel an arm full, Bay-berries, Primroſe-leaves, Camomile, Crows-foot, Mallowes, Fennel, Roſemary, and fine upland Hay (which was cut about Midſummer) of each like much, and of each a good quantity, put all theſe into a Lead or Cauldron, and there let him ſteep in fair water two days and two nights, then boyl it until the herbs be ſoft, and bathe your *Horſe* therewith every day once good and warm, and bind of theſe herbs with the Hay to the *ſhoulder* or place grieved, in what place or joynt ſoever it be, uſe this bath four days, and at the expiration of four days, let him blood in the *breaſt*, on that ſide the grief lyeth if the grief be in the ſhoulder, but if the *knee* or *Fetlock-joynt*, then let him blood in the Paſtern-vein, and ſo likewiſe if the pain be behind, and let him *bleed* well, but if you have not skill or knowledge enough to open any of theſe *Veins*, then pare the foot very cloſe, and open the *Toe-vein*, and there let him bleed well; after this his four days bathing, when he is dry again, anoint the grieved *Member* with this Unguent:

Take Petroleum, Narvel, Patch or Piece-greaſe, and Oyl of Worms of each like much, and anoint herewith by the ſpace of half an hour, and then for half an hour after, trot him in your hand in a fair ſoft ground, then bring him into a Stable, and obſerve if any of the ſaid Oyntment be come forth, or doth ſtick to his *hair*, which if it do, let it be rubbed and chafed in again; alſo bathe him morning and evening, and at noon anoint him, as before is adviſed, but at night only bind or rope on the herbs, and this is the cure, uſe this but four days only for fear of making his *Joynts* too ſupple and weak, (and if this help not, as I do believe it will) then rowel him, this I never tryed, but my opinion is that it is a very good Receipt. *Another*, If

If your *horſe* be *Shoulder-ſplat* then put upon him a pair of *ſhort Paſterns* upon his *Fore-feet*, then take of Dialthea one ounce, of Sallet-Oyl one pint, of Oyl-de-Bay half a pint, of freſh Butter half a pound, melt all theſe together in a Pipkin, and anoint the grieved place round about (*viz.*) as well all over the *ſhoulder*, as the *breaſt*, and betwixt the *Fore-legs*, upon and about the *briſket*, and in two or three hours after all the *ſhoulder* will be ſwelled, then with your *fleam* ſtrike the ſwelling in very many places, that the corruption may iſſue forth, and continue to anoint him with the ſaid Oyntment, and if it gather to a head (as it is likely it will) when it is ripe enough, open it where you do find it to be ſofteſt, and then heal it up with your green Oyntment ſo often commended unto you, and thus your *horſe* will go ſound again. *** This I have often tryed, and let this ſuffice for this malady.

SECT. 4. *S.*

Hippoph. *YOu have delivered your ſelf very well, but yet* Hippoſerus (*but yet*) *I am to ſeek to know and underſtand when I ſee a* horſe *doth halt or complain, where the grief lieth, being a thing moſt needful for a Gentleman to be very perfect in, but more eſpecially for him that is a* Farrier, *who is to cure and ſet upright the* Horſe *that is lame.*

Hippoſ. You ſpeak pure truth Sir, and therefore I will give you ſuch aſſured rudiments whereby you ſhall not at any time fail in the diſcovery of the leaſt lameneſs that ſhall proffer it ſelf to your Eye, if you will be pleaſed diligently to obſerve my documents. You muſt therefore firſt underſtand, that if he do halt before, his grief muſt of neceſſity be either in the ſhoulder or knee, or in the ſhank, or in the paſtern, or in the foot; if it be in the *ſhoulder*, it muſt be either towards the *withers* or in the pitch of the *ſhoulder*, or in the *elbow*; if in any of theſe places of the *ſhoulder*, you may know it, in that he will a little draw his *legg* after him, and not handle it ſo nimbly and dexterouſly, as he doth the other; if he caſt his *legg* more outward then he doth the other, it is a manifeſt ſign that he is lame, and that the grief lieth in his *ſhoulder*;

Rules how to know where a horſe halt either before or behind.

ſhoulder; and for the better tryal thereof, let your man but turn him ſhort on either hand, and in that *ſhoulder* where the *lameneſs* is, you ſhall perceive him to complain and to yield, for he will either favour that legg, or trip in the turning: You may alſo find his lameneſs by his ſtanding in the Stable, for there he will hold forwards his lame legg more then the other, but yet you come not to underſtand in what part of the *ſhoulder* the grief lieth; wherefore take for an infallible rule, that if he do complain more when a man is upon his *back*, then otherwiſe, when he is from his back, then be confident that the grief lieth in the *withers*, and gripe him hard, and you ſhall perceive him to ſhrink, and perhaps offer to bite; if the *horſe* do tread thick and ſhort before, then is the grief upon the pitch of the *ſhoulder* cloſe to the *breaſt*, which you may eaſily find by ſetting your thumb hard to the place, and by thruſting him with it, as if you would have him to go back, whereat he will ſhrink, and put back his *legg*, *foot*, and *body*; if the grief be in the elbow, you ſhall diſcover it by pinching him with your Fore-finger and thumb good and hard upon that place, at the doing whereof you ſhall perceive him to ſhrink and hold up his legg, and to offer to bite; and theſe be all the griefs which do lie in the *ſhoulders* of the *Horſe*, which not being viſible, you ſhall thus diſcover them, as touching thoſe griefs which lie lower, they

When in the knee. muſt be either, in the *knee* in the *ſhin*, in the *paſtern*, or in the *foot*. If it be in the *knee*, you ſhall find it by his ſtiff going, for he will not bend it ſo actively as he doth the other, if it

When in the Shank. be in the *ſhank* or *Shin-bone*, you may both ſee and feel the ſame, it being then a *back ſinew ſprain*, ſplent, or ſome ſuch

When in the Paſtern. like ſorrance or annoyance; ſo likewiſe if it be in the bending of the *knee*, then it is a malender, which is alſo moſt eaſily deſcribed; if it be in the *paſtern* or *joynt*, then may you know it by his not bending it ſo well as the other; beſides if you put your hand upon the place, you ſhall find it to be very hot, and to burn much: Firſt if it be in the *foot*, it muſt then be either in the *cronet* or in the *ſole*; if in the *cronet*, it is then probable it came by ſome ſtrain or wrench, if in the *heel*, then it came by ſome over-reach, or elſe by ſome diſeaſe in or about the *Fyniſh*; if in the *ſole*, then it came by ſome prick, accloy, retoir,

retoire, cannel, nail, ſtub, ſtone or gravel. And thus have I diſcovered unto you all the ſeveral ſorts which cauſeth a *Horſe* to halt before, and how to know and diſtinguiſh the places grieved, together with the occaſion of every particular grief. It followeth that we diſcuſs yet further the means how to diſtinguiſh an old grief, from a new taken ſtrain or hurt, which without an exact ſcrutiny, cannot eaſily be diſcovered, for oft times a *horſe* hath gotten a ſtrain, for which he is preſently turned to Graſs, where peradventure he runs the whole Summer, and ſo by that means ſeemeth to go upright, till he be heated and ſtrained a new, and then will it appear again, howbeit upon his firſt riding it may not appear: You have therefore three ways whereby to find out his lameneſs, in what *joynt*, *limb*, or *member* of the *body* ſoever it lieth. 1. The firſt way is to take him out of the Stable, and to cauſe him to be turned at the halters end on either hand ſuddenly and ſwiftly upon as hard a way as you can pick out, and if he have any ach, wrench, or grief in his *Fore-parts*, it will appear, for that when he ſhall turn upon that hand in which the grief is, you ſhall perceive him to favour that *legg*, and ſo likewiſe run both towards you and from you, eſpecially down a little yielding hill, and if he have any imperfection, he will ſoon ſhew it, for that he will favour that *legg* wherein the grief reſideth; but if you be not able to find out his *lameneſs* this way. 2. Then your ſecond way muſt be for you to take his *back*, and to ride him out a good round trot or pace a full hour, or ſo long until ſuch time as you have throughly heat him, then ſet him up, and let him ſtand quiet two or three hours, and then either take his back again, or elſe turn him at the halters end as before, and by thus doing, you may diſcover the leaſt grief that may be in him, eſpecially when you thus ſtir him, if it be done upon any ſtony or hard ground, for then he can neither will nor chooſe, but either to favour the member grieved, or elſe to halt right down. 3. A third way we have, and that is, to know whether the grief doth proceed from a hot or cold cauſe, for if it proceed from a hot cauſe, then will the *Horſe* halt moſt when he is hot, and in the midſt of his travel; but if it be of a cold cauſe, then will he halt leaſt

whilſt he is hot and moſt ridden and travelled, and moſt at his firſt ſetting forth, whilſt he is cold; and thus much for lameneſs and halting before.

Now you perceiving your *horſe* to halt, and that you be aſſured that his lameneſs is not before, then may you be confident it muſt be behind, which being ſo, the grief muſt of neceſſity be either in the foot, or in the nether joynt, in the paſtern, or in the legg, in the hamm, or in the hough, in the ſtifling place, or joynt, or in the hip. If the grief be either in the leg, paſtern or foot, if you do obſerve him well, you ſhall underſtand it by the very ſame ſigns which I have inculcated already in the legs, paſtern, or feet, for that the ſigns be the very ſame; if it be in the bending of the hamm, you may then eaſily know it to be a plain Selander. If it be in the hough, then it is either a bone or blood-Spaven, which is eaſily enough to be diſcerned, or elſe it muſt come of ſome blow, wrench, or ſtrain, neither then will the ſwelling eaſily appear, but you ſhall perceive it either by the ſtifneſs of the joynt, or elſe you ſhall find the place to be hot and burning; if the pain ſhall lye in the ſtifling place, it is manifeſtly diſcovered by his gate, for then you may perceive him in his going, to caſt the ſtifle joynt outward, and you may plainly ſee the bone on the inſide to be bigger then the other, beſides, his toe will hardly touch the ground. If it be in the hip, which is upon the ſide of the buttock, and if the hurt or wrench be newly taken, you ſhall eaſily know it, in that the Horſe will go ſidelong like a Crab, not being able ſo well to follow with the grieved leg as he can do with the other. Notwithſtanding if it be a hurt taken long before, you ſhall perceive the Hip to be faln lower then the other, and the fleſh to ſhrink, you may alſo perceive it the better, as by going up a hill, or upon yielding ground, by reaſon he cannot go with ſo great eaſe, as when he goeth upon even or plain ground. But the better to diſcover in what part behind the grief lyeth, let his Keeper take him out of the Stable in a long rein or coller-halter, and let him run him in his hand the full length of the rein, for that in which leg ſoever the grief is, you ſhall perceive him to favour it, but if you find him to go upright, without favouring any leg, then let your man take his back, and ride him out

a

a good trot or hand gallop, till he be warmed, then ſet him up and let him ſtand an hour or two till he be cold, then take him forth again, and let your man trot him in his hand at the end of the Rein as he did before, and thus you ſhall perceive him to halt and complain, and well obſerving him and his gate or going, you may eaſily find the place grieved. And if any lameneſs whether before or behind, do proceed from any hot cauſe, then you ſhall beſt know it, for that the more you travel or exerciſe him, and the warmer he is, the more he will halt. But if his grief ſhall proceed from any cold cauſe, then will he halt moſt, being cold after he hath been travelled and ſet up warm.

SECT. 9. P.

Hippoph. *You have ſpoken well of lameneſs in general terms, but yet would I gladly underſtand from you ſomewhat more in particular, as* (V. G.) *I would know how to diſtinguiſh between a pinch in the* ſhoulder, *and a wrench in the* ſhoulder; *as alſo betwixt a* ſhoulder-ſplat, *and of the* ſhoulder-pight, *and ſo of the other* members?

Hippoſ. In anſwer to this demand, I ſay that if you can be cautelous in obſerving duly and juſtly the *poſtures* and *geſtures* of your *horſe*, you may eaſily come to know in what *member*, *joynt*, or *limb* the grief lyeth, and from whence it proceeds; for you muſt underſtand that when a *horſe* is pinched in the *ſhoulder*, it muſt come either by carrying too heavy burdens, or by being put to draw, and be over laboured too young, his *joynts* and *limbs* not being knit, and this you may eaſily find, in that the *horſe* will appear to your *eye* to be very narrow breſted, and to conſume and waſt in his fleſh from thoſe parts where grief remaineth; and you may alſo perceive it, in that ſame *ſhoulder bone* will ſtick out further then the other, and thus you may find it; but if he hath gotten a wrench in the *ſhoulder*, it comes commonly by means of ſome *ſlip*, or by cauſing him to make too ſudden a ſtop upon falſe ground, or by ſome fall upon yielding or ſlippery ground, or by too ſhort or ſudden turning him upon falſe grounds, or upon the *planks* in a Stable, or by ſome raſh going out of a door, or other narrow place, or by ſome

ſtroke given by another *horſe*, you ſhall know it (like as before I told you) by his not well lifting and handling his *leg* with that dexterity he doth the other; as alſo by taking him upon the pitch of the *ſhoulder-bone*, and as touching a *ſhoulder-ſplat*, which alſo cometh by a ſlide or ſlip, eſpecially upon ſome ſide or yielding ground, where one *leg* doth ſlide from the other, whereby he teareth the *fleſh* which is in the inſide near the *bricket*, which cauſeth a bruk to be underneath the body, which will after be ſwelled, and the *horſe* will thereupon halt right down, and he will draw his *leg* after him; but if he be *ſhoulder-pight*, this cometh by ſome bruſh, ſtrain, or fall, which the *horſe* received by ſome *leap*, *skip*, *ſtroke*, or *bruiſe* againſt ſome door, tree, or the like: inſomuch that oftentimes the joynt is diſlocated, and this will alſo cauſe him to halt down-right, wherefore your Cures for each of theſe miſchiefs and miſhaps muſt be handled accordingly; and if the pain do lie in any of the nether joynts, it cometh moſt commonly by means of ſome wrench, as by putting his foot into ſome cart-root or rough uneven ground or by going upon looſe ſtones, and many times by turning him too ſhort in places that may be dangerous for his limbs, for by ſuch like cauſes do occur lameneſs to a horſe, which when it ſhall happen, you ſhall thus know them, and know alſo in what joynt or member the grief hath its abode, and the manner of curing each of theſe ſeveral griefs, I have already ſufficiently ſhewed you, and therefore now let us paſs to other matters.

Shoulder-ſplat.

Shoulder-pight.

SECT. 6. S.

Hippoph. WEll then tell me what is good to cure the Scratches?

Hippoſ. Of this malady we have ſundry ſorts and degrees, unto which albeit we do give ſeveral names, nevertheleſs they be all in effect but one and the ſame diſeaſe, as Mules, Kibes, Rats-tailes, Crepanches, Pains, &c. every of which are none other thing but the very *Scratches*, being certain ſcabs which ingender betwixt the heel and the *paſtern-joynt*, and ſo goeth many times above the *paſtern*, even up to the *hough*, and albeit you may have this ſorrance ſometimes upon all four *legs*, yet

not

not ordinary, for that it breedeth moſt commonly in the *hinder legs*, this is a noyſome ſorrance, & comes ſometimes through the negligence of the *Groom*, in that he doth not daily anoint the *horſe heels* with ſtore of *doon-greaſe*, (as we term it) eſpecially after journeys and hard travel; or when he bringeth his *horſe* in from water, and then doth not rub his *legs* and heels dry, for that the ſand and dirt doth burn and fret his *heels*, which do occaſion ſwellings, and ſuch like ſwellings do occaſion the *Scratches*. It is therefore requiſite that the *Groom* do clip away the long *ſtarg-hair* from about the *paſterns* (if he have any) and *fetlocks*: as alſo from the hide of his *legs*, unto the bending of the *knee*, by means whereof he may the better keep the *legs* of his *horſe* from this diſeaſe, ſometimes it alſo comes from the corruption of the *blood* after great heats and ſurfeits taken; ſometimes again for that the *horſe* hath been bred in *mariſh*, *fenny*, and *watery grounds*, ſometimes it is ingendred from *melancholly humours* which do fall down to the *legs* and ſometimes by ſtanding continually upon his own *dung*, which will through the heat and ſteam thereof breed the *Scratches* without other help, and ſometimes again, the *Scratches* will fall down into the heels of the *horſe* and there make its way forth after a deſperate ſickneſs taken by ſurfeit; and laſtly it comes by reaſon the *greaſe of the horſe* had been molten by over-riding or labour, whereby the *greaſe* falleth down and reſteth in the *paſtern* and *fetlocks*, and ſo cauſeth the *Scratches* to be engendred. It beginneth firſt with a dry *ſcab*, and after it ſendeth forth fretting, watriſh, and matterative ſtuff, which will ſtink and be moſt noyſome, and his *paſterns*, and *fetlock-joynts* will be full of *chaps* and *chinkes*, ſometimes all along, ſometimes right down; and ſometimes over-thwart, and the places will ſwell, and the cracks or chinks will cauſe the *legs* to be very *gourdy*, and to run with much noyſome and offenſive matter, and the *Horſe* will be many times ſo lame, as not to be well able at firſt ſetting forth to go, but with much trouble, and no leſs pain, and by theſe very ſigns you ſhall know this malady: neither ſhall you want ſtore of receits wherewith to cure it; the *French* do call this diſeaſe *grappes*, or grapes, and Invars, and *Varifles*, as alſo ſuch other like terms and epithetons, all which (as before is touched) makes

but

but only one and the ſame diſeaſe: the firſt thing which is to be done towards the cure, is to bathe and waſh the places all about, and then either to ſhave or clip away the hair very cloſe, otherwiſe you can hardly make a perfect cure thereof; then

Scratches. Take the ſpawn of Toads, which in the beginning of *March* you ſhall find in pools, ponds, ditches, and ſtanding water; and firſt drain the water from the ſaid ſpawn, and then diſtill it and keep the water in a glaſs cloſe ſtopped, to ſerve you for the whole year, and herewith waſh and bathe the places every day warm, and in ſhort ſpace it will cure them: this I have often uſed. Another,

Take Honey, and Pepper made into very fine powder, of each as much as will ſuffice, and boyl them together, and anoint the ſorrance therewith, and they will ſoon heal and dry up; that I did never try, but a famous *Farrier* of *France* taught it me. Another,

Take of Lime and Salt, and make them both into fine powder, which being well mixed, apply it to the places grieved good and thick, then take Hurds, and cut them very ſmall, and clap them upon it, and ſo bind up the place with a linnen cloth, that it doth not remove, and ſo let it remain two whole days and nights, and this will cauſe the Sorrance to purge, and after heal it up very kindly: This I did never try. Another;

Take Verdigreaſe and the fat of Bacon, and pound them to a formal Salve, and ſo *plaiſter-wiſe* apply it to the ſore, and it will heal up the *ſcratches* in ſhort time. This is very good. Another;

Take old Bores-greaſe and common Honey, of each as much as will ſuffice, and work it to an Unguent, anoint the ſorrance four or five days, and no longer, and it will cure the Scratches. *** This is very good. Another,

Take Verdigreaſe in fine powder, Galls, Brimſtone, and Bole-Armoniack, of each one ounce, make all into fine powder, and mix them with Bores-greaſe, as much as will ſuffice, and ſo bring it to an Unguent, and anoint the ſorrance therewith, and this will both heal and dry them up. *** This I have often tryed. Another,

Firſt cauterize five ſtrokes on either ſide, and your iron muſt

muſt be ſomewhat broad, and you muſt go but only one croſs-wiſe, and after heal it up as it is uſual in your Cures of Cauterize. This I never did practiſe. Another,

Take Pepper, Garlick, Cole-wort-leaves and old Boares-greaſe, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, pound them together to an Unguent, and herewith anoint the Sorrance, and in few days it will ripen the *Scratches*, and kill the malice of the diſeaſe, and heal it up. *** Of this receit I have made often uſe, and it is good; you muſt not fail always before you dreſs any horſe that hath the *Scratches*, firſt to waſh and bathe the place well with warm water, and then to ſhave or clip away the hair very cloſe, alſo every time you are to dreſs any horſe of this malady, waſh the place with Chamberly and green Copporas boyled together, and after dreſs him up with your other Salves, Unguent, *&c.* Another;

Take Hogs-greaſe and ſtrong-Muſtard, & anoint the ſorrance therewith, and in ſhort time he will be whole. *** This is very good. Another;

Take of white-Wine- Vinegar, one pint, and put unto it of the ſtrongeſt Tobacco in the Rowl you can get, one ounce, open the leaves, and ſhred the Tobacco ſmall, and boyl it until the Vinegar do begin to conſume, then take it from the fire, and ſtrain it, wring it hard, then take white-Wine one pint, of Roch-Allum the quantity of a Walnut, of Bay-ſalt, and of common Honey, of each one ſpoonful, red-Sage, Rue, Honey-ſuckle-leaves, of each like much, half a handful in the whole, boyl all theſe in the Wine till one quart be conſumed, then ſtrain this water alſo, and mix them both together, and ſet it upon the fire till it begin to boyl, then take it off, and when it is through cold, put it up into a glaſs, and ſo keep it cloſe ſtopped, that no *ayr* come unto it, and when you would uſe it for the *Scratches*, waſh the Sorrance, and then put upon it the powder of burnt Allum; and this will cure the *Scratches*. *** This I have often tryed, and it is ſingular good. Another,

Take Verdigreaſe and make it into fine powder, and then take common Honey, and work them together to an Unguent, and therewith anoint the Sorrance, and in ſhort time it will infallibly cure him. *** With this Receit I have cured very many *Horſes*. Another,

Take

Take tryed Hogs-greaſe, and Gunpowder, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, firſt beat your Gun-powder to very fine powder, and incorporate them very well together, and anoint the places grieved once a day therewith, and it will ſoon cure *Scratches*. *⁂* This is a ſpecial good Receit. Another,

Take Train-oyl, white lead, made into very fine powder, and the Jelle which you ſhall find upon the ground, which many do report to be the falling of a Star in the night where it ſhooteth, of each like much, incorporate theſe well together, and anoint the ſore twice every day therewith, but if you cannot get of this jelly, then add to the former ingredients a little Arſenick pulveriſed, and in ten or twelve days this will heal him. *⁂* This alſo is very good. Another,

Take the tender tops of Elder-buds, and the berries of the Brambles while they be red, and before they be ripe, of each one handful, boyl them in Wort two quarts, and put unto it of Allum the quantity of an Egg, and therewith waſh and bath the Sorrance good and hot twice every day, and this water will cure him. *⁂* This is alſo very good. Another,

Take of Hemlock a good quantity, ſhred it very ſmall, then take of Cream one quart, and boyl it with the Hemlock, till the Cream do turn into an Oyl, which done take it from the fire, and ſtrain it into a clean gally-pot, and keep it for your uſe: with this anoint the Sorrance, and it will ſoon heal it. Of this I never had tryal, Another,

Take Brimſtone, and make it into fine powder, and mix with it of ſweet Butter, ſo much as will ſuffice, to bring it to an Unguent, which will be of the colour of gold, herewith anoint the ſores, and it will cure them. This I never tryed. Another,

Take unſlaked Lime, Salt, and Soot, of each like much, all made into very fine powder; boyl this in the ſtrongeſt white-Wine-Vinegar you can get, ſo much as will ſuffice, till it become as thick as a Pultis; then ſoften it with tryed Hogs-greaſe, and ſo work it to an Unguent, and herewith anoint the places grieved till they be perfectly cured. *⁂* This

is

is very good ; but to prevent all ſorts of Scratches, Kibes, Rat-tails, &c. take up the *Thigh-veins*, and your *horſe* ſhall never have any of theſe maladies, or if he have them, yet by ſo doing they will themſelves be cured. *** This I have oft experienced.

SECT. 7. *S.*

Hoppoph. *How do you cure a* Sit-faſt ?

Hippoſ. This malady the *French* do call *Mal de la Cron* ; it is a hard knob which hath been formerly a *Saddle-gald*, but by reaſon that the owner of the *horſe* was unwilling to ſpare his work till it was fully cur'd ; it was converted into a *ſit-faſt*, wich is oft-times troubleſome to the horſe, by reaſon it is grown to a dry knob ſo hard as a horn. The Cure is,

Take the green outward leaves of a Cabbage, and ſtamp them with old Boars-greaſe, or tryed Hogs-greaſe, and work them to an ointment ; and then mount his back, and ſet the Saddle, to the end that the oyntment may the better enter, or ſink into his back, and in a few days it will cure him. *** This is a very good Cure.

SECT. 8. *S.*

Hippoph. *There be yet certain* Scabs *which do grow upon horſe heels, which* Farriers *do deny to be the* Scratches, *but they will have it to be a diſeaſe wholly different. How do you cure them ?*

Hippoſ. Sir, men may ſay what they ſhall pleaſe, but I do aſſure you theſe are all plain Scratches. But yet I will give you a few receits for them.

Take of Sallet-oyl three ounces, Red-wax gummed one ounce, common Honey two ounces, mix and melt all theſe together, and make them into an Unguent, with which you muſt oft anoint the ſores, and this will cure them *** I have often uſed it. Another,

Take ordinary Turpentine two ounces, new Wax, oyl de-Bay, quick Brimſtone, of each three ounces, common Ho-

ney one ounce, Allum and Zacacon, of each half an ounce; mix, melt, and incorporate all these well together, and every evening anoint the places grieved therewith, having first cleansed the Sorrances, as before is taught you. This I did never try, but I hold it to be very good. Another,

Take the strongest white-Wine-Vinegar, Mustard, and Soot, of each so much as will suffice, and mix them well, then add to them the yolks of two Eggs, and of Hogs-grease one ounce, Rape-oyl, and new Wax, of each two ounces; quick-Brimstone in fine powder half an ounce; melt all these, and make them into an Unguent, and therewith anoint the grieved Sorrances. *** This I have often tryed, and I know it to be very good.

SECT. 9. S.

Hippoph. WHat *is good for a* horse *that can neither* stale *nor* dung?

Hippos. This accident oft-times hapneth to a horse that is suddenly travelled, being newly taken from Grass, or hath been long time kept and pampered in the Stable without any exercise at all, for as those who be too hard riders do soon surfeit their horses, so likewise do these much wrong their horses, who be too indulgent and tender of them; and therefore the *golden* mean is evermore the best. The sign to know this malady is plain, for that his pain will be so great, as that it will cause him oft to lie down and tumble, as if he had the Bots. I will give you one only Receipt which a famous *French Marishal* gave me, with which I cured one *horse*, for that I had never occasion to practise it upon any since, but I do hold it to be the most soveraign in a case of this nature.

Take the root of Male-brake or Fearn, and put a piece thereof upon his tongue, and it will cause him both to *stale* and *dung*, and so he will be cured. The male Fern is to be known by the root, from the female, for if you take a Fearn-root, and cut it in two pieces, you shall see the perfect figure of an Eagle, and thereby you may know it to be the *male*, which is for your turn. And the *female* root will bear another effigies different from the *male*, which wanteth its ver-

tue

tue to perfect this cure. *** This (I say) I have once tryed.

SECT. 10. *S.*

Hippoph. *What is to be done to a* Horse *that falleth sick in his journey or travel?*

Hippof. This also happeneth as the former doth, but yet oftner and sooner, especially if he be very fat and pursive, and wanting *breath*, as also if he be travelled being fat & heavy, the Sun shining and scorching much, for such a *horse* is in danger either to tire, or to fall desperately sick, which may also endanger his life, as I have frequently known. The cure must be,

Take Muskadine or sweet Sack one pint, Aqua-vitæ a quarter of a pint, of *London*-Treacle two ounces, and of the best Sallet-oyl, a quarter of a pint: warm all these upon the fire, and brew it well, and give him one hornful thereof; then take his tongue in your hand: and put down his throat a new laid Egg, breaking it with your fingers as you put it forth of your hand: then give him a second hornful, and then another Egg, and after all the residue of the drink, and so after that a third Egg; then let him *blood* in the *Palat*, and rub it well with white Salt, then set him upon a Trench, cloth, stop, and litter him again warm, and let him fast an hour or two after it, and then feed him by degrees both with Hay and Oats, giving him either a sweet Mash or white Water, and he will do well again. This drink refresheth all the spirits, being over laid through heat and labour, and causeth a good appetite to meat. *** With this drink I have cured many sick horses, as well of mine own, as of my Friends, which have fallen very desperately sick upon the way in travel; but if I do find that his blood is inflamed, as many times it will be, I then use to open a *vein* in the neck. *Sick in travel.*

SECT. 11. *S.*

Hippoph. *But what is given to a* Horſe *that falleth ſuddenly ſick?*

Hippoſ. Firſt let him blood in both breaſt-veins, or if you have no skill ſufficient to open theſe veins, then let him blood in both ſides the neck, and let him *bleed* well nigh two quarts, then give him this comfortable drink.

Take of ſweet Sack one quart, and burn it with Grains, Cloves, and Cinamon, of each like much, being all beaten groſs, put to it of Sugar three ounces, and when it is burnt, add unto it of Sallet-oyl half a pint, and of *London* Treacle two ounces; warm all theſe, and brew them well together, and ſo give it to your Horſe blood-warm, then ride him gently untill he do begin to ſweat, and ſo ſet him up warm clothed and littered, but be ſure to keep his head and heart warm, neither muſt you ſtuff and cloath him too hot, for this drink will cauſe him to ſweat ſufficiently of it ſelf, yet litter him well, keeping the Stable cloſe, & ſo let him faſt ſix hours after, againſt which time let him be rubbed very dry, and give him to eat ſweet Wheat-ſtraw, and after give him either a ſweet Maſh or white Water, and boyl therein of Mallows and Water-creſſes, of each one handful, of Fennel-ſeed, and Parſley-ſeed, of each one ounce, if he will drink the ſame, after that morning and evening (your *horſe* being faſting) ride him a mile or two, to the end he may take the ayr, which is very wholeſome for him, if the weather be temperate, and let his meat be ſweet ſtraw, old clean dry Oats, and ſome Wheat, and Peaſe mixed therewith: give him a little at once, and often, untill you do perceive his ſtomach to come well unto him, and let him be daily well rubbed, and warm clothed, to provoke him to ſweat, and let him be alſo well littered, and his drink either ſweet Maſhes or white Water; and by this manner of keeping and ordering of him, in ſhort time he will recover his priſtine ſanity. *** This I have often tryed, and it is very good

SECT.

SECT. 12. *S.*

Hippoph. *WHat Cure have you for a* Selender?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe is the very ſame with the *Malender*, but the ſole difference is, in that the *Malender* breedeth upon the bending of the *knee*, or the *leg* before, and the *Salender* engendreth of the bending of the *hough*, in the *leg* behind: but it cometh juſt as doth the *malender*, and the cure is the very ſame with it: but yet I will give you one good receit which will cure both: Firſt waſh and ſhave away the hair, and rub the ſorrance with a wiſp or hair-cloth till it be raw, then take the ſhreds of white Leather untanned, which *Glovers* do make, and boyl them in Vinegar till they be ſoft, and bind of this hot to the place; but if you do not find that by once or twice dreſſing, it taketh not away the ſcurf or ſcab, renew it daily untill it doth, for by this means the roots of the briſtly hair which groweth in and about the Sorrance, is the only thing that feedeth the *malander*, wherefore the roots of the hair being taken off (which this medicine will do) the Sorrance will ſoon be cured; and to heal up the rawneſs thereof. *Selender.*

Take freſh or ſweet Butter, bay-Salt, and Frankincenſe, both made into fine powder, of each as much as will ſuffice, and boyl them all together on the fire, and with a rag upon a ſtick apply this medicine to the place ſcalding hot two mornings together, and after heal it up, and cauſe the hair to come again, being daily anointed with Mallows, and ſweet Butter made into an Unguent. **** This is a very good cure.

SECT. 13. *P.*

Hippoph. *WHat is to be given to a horſe Sick, Surfeited, and his Greaſe* molten?

Hippoſ. The only way is firſt to take *blood* from him, if there be juſt cauſe, and after to ſcower his guts with this purge. *Sick or ſurfeited.*

Take Caſſia one ounce, Filonio-perſico, and Trifora magna, of each half an ounce, ſirrup of Violets two ounces, diſ-

ſolve

ſolve theſe in mel Roſarum four ounces, and give it him with a horn in a morning faſting, and after either ride him gently, or elſe walk him up and down an hour or better, and for an hour after at the leaſt let him ſtand upon the Trench; then give him a ſweet Maſh, which when he hath diſpatch'd, give him old dry Oats clean and well ſifted, and after ſweet Hay, neither let him have any cold water in eight days after, nor after that time, but with exerciſe. *** And this is a ſpecial good cure.

Sinew-ſprunge.

SECT. 14. *P.*

Hippoph. NOw *let us come to the ſinews, what ſay you to a* ſinew-ſprain?

Hippoſ. I have already handled this point ſufficiently in *l.* 2. *c.* 4. *ſect.* 9. *A.* for an Attaint upper, nevertheleſs I will give more receipts for a *Sinew-ſprain*, albeit it be the ſame malady; the firſt ſhall be for a *Sinew-ſprunge*, or when the *Sinew* is broken, and ſevered from the *fleſh*, as many times it falleth out, then

Take Tartar, and the Lees of Claret or red Wine, of each three ounces, Wheat-bran one handful, boyl theſe with the juyce of Smallage, two handfuls or better, and when you take it from the fire, put into it of Turpentine one ounce, bind this to the *Sinew* grieved, ſo hot as he may well ſuffer it, and uſing this medicine four or five days, he will be found again. *** This is very good. *Another.* If the *Sinew* or *Artery* be broken with Corraſive, or other accident, to cauſe it to ſoder or joyn again.

Take the leaves and roots of *Solomons-ſeal*, and of great Cumfry, of each like much, pound them ſmall and infuſe it in White Wine four and twenty hours, bathe the ſorrance herewith warm (you having firſt boyled it) and after you have bathed the place well, bind the herbs and roots to the place grieved, dreſſing him every day once, until he be perfectly conſolidate. And if the *fleſh* be ſtill broken, when you do find the *Sinew* to be knit, ſtrew thereon the powder of Lime and Honey, which will heal and skin it in ſhort time. *** This is good, for I have often tried it. *Another* for a *Sinew* grieved.

If

If the *Sinew* be ſo far grieved, whereby to cauſe the *horſe* to complain, and to halt, *Sinew grieved.*

Take then of Mallows a good quantity, boyl them in fair water until they ſhall become tender, then drain the water from the herbs, and ſo ſtamp them to maſh, and apply them to the *member* grieved, hot over night, and the next morning he will be upright again, but then he muſt have eight or ten days reſt at the leaſt after, but if it be Sinew-ſprain, then clip away the hair cloſe, or ſhave it, then

Take of the Oyl of Sulphur, and of the Oyl of Turpentine, of each one ounce, take firſt the one half thereof being well mixed, and chafe and rub it into the *Sinew* well, and ſo let him be tied up to the Rack, that he may not come unto it with his mouth, for that it will greatly perplex him for four or five hours after his dreſſing; and the next day anoint him, as you did the day before, and he will be cured, but the place will be raw, and therefore heal him up with ſweet Butter or Hogs-greaſe, and when the place healeth, the skin will peel, and yet the *hair* will come again, but he muſt either run at Graſs, or elſe be kept in the Stable without any exerciſe at all, by the ſpace of a month at leaſt. If the ſinew be cut, then

Take new Wax, and Gum-Arabick, of each two ounces, of the marrow of an Ox or Cow four ounces, of the Oyl of Roſes three ounces, melt and incorporate all theſe on the fire, and ſo keep it for your uſe, and when you are to uſe it, warm it, and ſo apply it either Unguent-wiſe, or Taint-wiſe, according as you ſhall ſee cauſe, and it will cure any ſorrance of this nature, **** I have often tryed. *Another,*

If your *horſe* have a *ſinew ſprained* by an over reach, ſtroke, or otherwiſe weakened, the better to ſtrengthen the ſame,

Take tryed Hogs-greaſe, Horſe-greaſe, May or freſh Butter, Sallet-Oyl, of each ſix ounces; take alſo of the Oyntment called Agrippa two drams, or new Wax two ounces and a half, and of Camphire a third part to all the reſt, melt them together upon the fire, and ſo work it to an Unguent, and good and warm anoint the ſwelled or grieved part therewith morning and evening, and what remaineth of this medicine, let it be reſerved in a Gally-pot for other times, for

it

it will keep a whole year. *** This is very good. Another; if it be a *ſinew ſprain* only, then

Take Goats, Kids, or Deer-ſuet, and Roſin, of each one pound, Fig-duſt half a pound, Verdigreaſe in fine powder, half a pound, melt and mix all theſe well, and therewith anoint the *ſinew grieved* every day, and chafe it into the *ſinew* by holding a hot bar of iron neer it. This will both comfort and ſtrengthen the *ſinew*, but I did never make tryal thereof.

SECT. 15. *S.*

Hippoph. BUt Hippoſerus *is it needful that by applying your Unguents, you do evermore work them in with a hot bar of iron?*

Hippoſ. Truly Sir, thoſe that are for Strains, Aches, Mainges, Farcins, and ſuch like maladies, and ſorrances, the further they do ſink into the *skin* and *fleſh*, the ſooner and better will the cure be performed, and therefore albeit I do not always put you in mind of the hot bar of iron in every of my *receipts*, yet it is needful to be uſed: But to proceed with another receipt for a *ſinew ſprain.*

Sinew ſprain. Take ordinary Sope, and Aqua-vitæ, of each as much as will ſuffice, boyl them, and in the boyling, keep it continual ſtirring, then take it off, and (ſo hot as he can well ſuffer it) bathe and chafe in the Oyntment, and he will be found again. This was commended unto me for moſt Soveraign, but I never made tryal thereof. Another for a *ſtrain* taken in travel:

Take ſo much of the beſt gray Sope as will ſerve to anoint the *ſinew* ſtrained, but before you do anoint him, having cauſed his legg to be cleanſed from dirt, ſand, or gravel, and made dry again, anoint him therewith, and then ſwathe the legg with a Thumb-band of Hay, and ſo let him ſtand all night and the next morning he will be found again, ſo that you may ſecurely travel him again, without fear. **** This I have often uſed, and it is very good. Another, if it be a ſtrain newly taken:

Take then of the ſtrongeſt white Wine Vinegar you can get,

get, one pint, and May or freſh Butter half an ounce, then put to it of Wheat-bran as much as will ſuffice, which by boyling will bring it to a Poulteſs, and apply it to hot as he can ſuffer it; do this morning and evening, until the ſwelling be aſſwaged. *** This is very good. Another, but if it be an old taken ſtrain, then *Strain newly taken.*

Take Mallows and Chick-weed, of each like much, boyl them either in the grounds of Ale or Beer, or elſe in old Chamberlye, and apply it to the place. *** This is a ſpecial good cure. Another, for an old *ſtrain* which is thought to be incurable, inſomuch as the *ſinew* being ſwelled, is become very hard and knotty.

Take Patch-greaſe, *alias* Peer or Peece-greaſe, as much as will ſuffice, melt it upon the fire, and anoint the ſtrain therewith very hot, and chafe and heat it very well, then rope the place as before is ſhewed you, but before you rope him, wrap a rowler of linnen upon the place, and do thus daily, and it will diſſolve the hardneſs, and make him ſound again. *** This is moſt excellent. Another, for a *ſprain* of the ſame nature. *Strain old.*

Take Nerval, Bolearmoniack, Bores-greaſe, black Sope, of each like much, melt them together, but firſt pulverize your Bolearmoniack, and anoint the ſorrance herewith, chafing and heating it in very well; continue thus to do twice a day till it be well. *** This is alſo very Soveraign.

SECT. 16. *S.*

Hippoph. WHat *is good for a* Horſe *that hath a* ſtinking Breath?

Hippoſ. This cometh by means of corrupted and infected *lungs*, the ſigns how to know it is by the ſmell only, the cure is, *Stinking breath.*

Take Cinamon, Cloves, Galingal, Comin, and Coriander-ſeeds, of each three ounces, Fænugreek eight ounces, make all theſe into fine Powder, and ſearce and mix them well with Wheat-flower two pound, and put thereto ſo much white Wine as will bring it to a ſtiff paſt, and make a cake thereof and bake it in an Oven till it be as dry and as hard as *biſket*, and when it is cold, beat it into fine powder, and give him e-

very morning an hour at leaſt before his water, of this Powder four ſpoonfuls in white Wine, or ſtrong Ale of each one pint. This will take away all the corrupt and evil ſavours of his Breath, for this powder healeth all his inward parts that putrefieth, from whence its bad Breath taketh its origen. *** This is very good and approved, and a better remedy you ſhall find none.

SECT. 17. *S.*

Hippoph. *WHat is the beſt way to cure or take off a* Splent ?

Hippoſ. This is to be done many ways, but becauſe we are come to treat of this cure, I hold it not amiſs to make you underſtand what a *ſplent* is, by what means it cometh, how to know it, and which way to cure the ſame, and to take it clean away. A *ſplent* is in the beginning, a very *Griſtle*, howbeit if it be long let alone, it will come to be a hard *bone* or *excretion*, and then it will not be eaſily cured. It cometh to a *Horſe* by means of too hard travel and ſore riding, whilſt he is very young, or by bearing in his youth too heavy burthens, by both which means the Greaſe being molten falleth down into his *leggs*, and ſo breedeth this ſorrance, you ſhall have it bigger or leſſer, according as the cauſe of its coming was, it taketh its reſidence for the moſt part upon the inſide of the *ſhank* about the middle thereof, but ſometimes again higher even adjoyning to the *knee*, which if it be there, then it is more difficile to cure. It will many times cauſe the *Horſe* to halt, but howſoever it will make him oft to *ſtumble* and to *trip*, and many times to *fall* in his travel. Sometimes it cometh to a *horſe* Hereditarily, like as doth the *ſpaven*, and other ſorrances and maladies, as if either the *Stallion* or *Mare* be viſited therewith, as I have formerly intimated. The ſigns how to know it are moſt facile, *viz.* Either by the *ſight* or *feeling*, for that you may both *ſee* and *feel* its ſwelling. Now to the cure, for which I ſhall give you very many receipts.

Firſt waſh the place with warm water, and ſhave away the *hair*, then with your *Inciſion-knife* ſlit a hole clean through the *skin*, more then the length of a Barly corn, and then convey into the ſaid hole ſo much *Arſnick* as the fourth part of a Haſle-

nut,

nut, which muſt be bound on with a bolſter and rowler of linnen, and made faſt with a needle and thread, and ſo let it remain untouched three whole days and nights, in which time the *Arſnick* will eat and corrode clean away the *ſpleen*, then to kill the fire, anoint the place (having firſt taken off the rowler and bolſter, and waſhed clean the ſorrance) with ſweet or freſh Butter molten eight or ten days after, and it will be whole. *** With this I have done very many cures of this kind. Another,

Firſt, anoint the place with ordinary ſoft waſhing Sope, then tye a red woollen cloth about the *legg* juſt upon the *ſplent*, that done heat a brick glowing hot, and lay it upon the cloth againſt the place where the *ſplent* is, and hold it ſo cloſe unto it a pretty ſpace, then ſo ſoon as you do take that away, have another as hot in readineſs, and clap that too alſo, doing as before, and ſo a third, or ſo many as ſhall be needful, till you do find that the *ſplent* is diſſolved and taken away, which commonly will be in applying two or three hot Bricks. *** With this I have taken off very many *ſplents*. *Another*,

Firſt waſh and ſhave the *hair*, then *knock*, *rub*, and *prick* it with your *blood ſtaff and fleam*: And after you have ſo done, rub and knock it again, then

Take Vervine and Salt of each one handful, pound them together to an Unguent, and apply it to the place, and bind it up with a rowler ſtitched on faſt with a Needle and Thread, and ſo let it remain, four and twenty hours, and then unbind it, and it is cured without any more to do. *** This is very good. *Another*,

Waſh and ſhave as before, and rub and knock as before alſo, then with your Inciſion-knife lay open the place a little, then knock and rub again with a little Salt, then apply unto it this Oyntment which the *French* do term a *Retoire*:

Take of Oyl-de-Bay four ounces, Cantharides, Euforbium, and Orpin, of each one ounce, all theſe being made into fine powder, let them be well incorporated into the ſaid Oyl, and wrought to an Unguent, lay of this to the ſplent, and bind it up with a Bolſter and Rowler, and ſew it up faſt, and let him ſtand ſo by the ſpace of three hours upon the

Trench, ſo tyed up that he bite not off the rowler and Medicine: At three hours end unrowl the place, and put unto it again the ſaid Retoire or Oyntment, being made warm, and let the *Horſe* ſtand tramelled four days, and at four days end ſend him to the water a *foot pace*, where every day he muſt be ridden up and down, to the *Belly*: If you do love the Horſe, and have a deſire to have him perfectly cured, let him not be ridden more than a *foot pace* to the water in a *month* after, for indangering the growing of it again, for nothing can be more Soveraign for him than reſt. *** This *Retoire* is a ſpecial good thing for this Malady, and I have often uſed it, and it did never fail me. I had this in *France* of a *famous Mariſhal* who cured many *Horſes* therewith in my preſence. *Another*,

After you have waſhed and ſhaven, knocked, rubbed, and laid it open, as before is taught you, take a head of Garlick, picked and pilled, three or four drops of the beſt white wine Vinegar, a penny weight of Green Copperas, all well beaten together, apply it to the *ſplent*, and then bind and ſtitch it up, and let it lye on four and twenty hours, then open it, and if the *ſplent* be not taken quite away, make more of the ſame medicine, and adminiſter it again, binding it up as before, and after other four and twenty hours take of the medicine, and then you ſhall need do nothing unto him, but only what you are preſcribed in the precedent cure. This I did never try. *Another*, Firſt, burn away the *hair* with a hot *Tyle*, then ſhave it cloſe with your Razor, that done have in a readineſs a piece of Leather, the breadth of the Sorrance, and bind it hard upon it, and let it ſo remain for the ſpace of an hour, then take him off, and lead him to the water, without doing any more unto him, and he is cured. This cure I never tryed. Another,

Take Muſtard-ſeed, and beat it, and let it ſteep a little in fair water, and after make a Plaiſter thereof, and lay it to the place, and three days after take it away, but have a care your *horſe* come not unto it with his Teeth, the *hair* alſo being ſhaven away before you do apply your Plaiſter, and this will cure him. This alſo I never proved. Another, Firſt waſh and ſhave away the *hair*, then take of the tender

tops

tops of Worm-wood, Smallage, Pellitory, and of Branca-urſina, of each like much, and beat them together with old Bores-greaſe, ſo much as will ſuffice, and apply it to the place: Neither did I try this. Another, Firſt waſh and ſhave as before, and knock, beat, and rub the *ſplent* three or four times, then take marſh Mallow-roots boyled with the *skin* on, and laid to the place, and it will take away the *ſplent*: This I never made uſe of, but a very good *Farrier* taught it me, who avowed it to be right good. Another,

Take Muſtard-ſeed, Mallow-roots, and Ox-dung, all ſtamped and boyled together, and Plaiſter-wiſe apply it to the place three or four times. This I never uſed. Another,

Take Auripigmentum made into fine powder, and lay it upon the *ſplent*, and it will take it off; but beware that this powder do touch neither vein nor ſinew, for it is a very corroding thing. *** *Another*,

Take two heads of Garlick and pill them, and cut them ſmall, but do neither ſtamp nor bruiſe them: Then take of Salt the like quantity, and mix them with your Garlick, and divide them into two equal parts, and put them into two fine linnen clouts, and bind them upon the ends of two ſticks, of a foot in length a piece of the faſhion of two ſhort wooden *Foyles*, but not ſo long, being not above twelve inches a piece. Take then your blood ſtick, and rub, knock, and beat, the *Splent* therewith very well to ſoften it, then prick it through the *skin* with your *blood ſtaffe* and *Fleam*; then take of the Oyl of Nuts one pint, and put it into a ſmall Pipkin; and ſet it upon the fire in a Chafing-diſh with coles, and make it boyling hot, and when it is ready to boyl, put into it your ſhort ſticks or Foyls, which hath the Garlick and Salt faſtned unto them, and firſt with the *Foyl*, and then with the other (I mean by turns) apply them hot to the *ſplent*; and between whiles rub and ſtroke the *Splent* down-wards, with your Thumb, whereby to bring forth the *blood*, till having with the *Foyls* very well mollified the ſaid *Splent*, you may the more eaſily cruſh forth the *blood* whereof the *ſplent* is ingendred, and formed; it being indeed compact of bad and corrupt *blood*: And thus is the *Splent* cured, only you muſt remember to anoint the place two or three times after with

ſweet

ſweet or freſh Butter. *⁂* This of all the cures I have is the beſt, for this Malady, how be it, it may ſeem intricate; I got it of a *French Rider* to a *Noble Knight in England*, and I have herewith taken off more then one hundred *ſplents*, I have uſed this more then thirty years ſince. *Another*,

Take up the contrary *Legg*, and beat the *Splent* with your *blood ſtaffe* till it do begin to be ſoft, then with your *Fleam* prick it in ſundry places, that the *blood* may iſſue forth. Take then the greateſt red Onion, and cut off the top, and pick out the core, and put into it ſo much of the powder of *Verdigreaſe* as the end of your *Thumb*, then put on the top again, and wrap it up in a wet brown paper, and ſo roſt it in the hot embers, as you do a *Warden*, till it be as ſoft as pap, then take it out of the *Embers*, and put away the paper, and all that is burnt from about it, and ſtamp it, and being yet very hot apply it unto the *Splent*, and lay a bolſter upon it, and then ſwathe it up with a linnen Rowler, ſtitching it faſt, and ſo let it remain five or ſix days, and then open it, and after anoint the place every day once, with ſweet Butter till it be whole. *⁂* This is a very good cure. Another,

Take a great Onion, and pick out the core, and put into it of the powder of *unſlaked Lime*, and of the powder of *Verdigreaſe*, of each as much as will ſuffice, but ſo much as will fill it up, then roſt it, as before is ſhewed you, and ſtamp it in a Morter well, then ſlit the *skin* a little, that the medicine may come unto it, to eat away the ſplent, and ſhave not away the hair, but lay on the medicine and bolſter, and bind it up faſt, and ſo let it remain three days without ſtirring it, then unbind it and waſh it clean, and anoint it every day with ſweet Butter till it be whole. *⁂* This is very good. Another,

Take an Elecampane root, and make it clean, and wrap it up in a brown paper, and roſt it in the embers as you did the Onions, and being ſoft like pap, apply it to the ſplent, you having firſt rubbed, knocked, and prickt it as before is taught you, the hair alſo being waſhed and ſhaven off, it muſt be laid on ſo hot as he is able to ſuffer it, and let it lie on two days and two nights, then take off that, and lay on a ſecond, and after a third, till the ſplent be quite conſumed, and then anoint

anoint the place with ſweet Butter only every day till it be whole. *** This is ſpecial good. Another,

Take of the Oyl of Exeter and taking every day once or twice a little thereof upon the brawn of your Thumb, rub and anoint the place therewith, and thus doing, it will take it quite away, but this will ask long time to do it. *** This I have tryed. Thus have I given you very many Receipts for this malady, moſt of which I know to be good from my own experience: The reſidue which I never tryed, where cryed up unto me by very skilful Farriers and Mariſhals, for very good. The *French* do call this malady *Surots* and *Epineles*, or *Eſpinuls*.

SECT. 18. *S.*

Hippoph. *WHat help have you for ſtumbling?*

Hippoſ. This inconvenience cometh many ways, ſometimes it cometh *naturally* and ſometimes *accidentally*, it cometh *naturally* by reaſon the *ſinews* of the *Fore-legs* are ſomewhat ſtraight, ſo that the *Horſe* is not able to handle his *Legs* with that dexterity and agility he ſhould, and the only remedy to cure him of this defect is to cut him of the Cords (as we term it) *viz.* by cutting a ſlit upon the very top of his Noſe, and with your *cronet* to take up the two great *Sinews* which you ſhall there find, and ſo cut them in ſunder, and after to heal it up again with ſome healing Salve, and this will do him no harm, but good, for by this doing it will give him uſe of his *leggs* ſo perfectly, as that he will ſeldom or never after *trip* any more, and this can every ordinary Smith do. *** And my counſel is, that when at any time you ſhall either breed or buy a young *horſe*, before, or preſently after you ſhall *back* him, let him be thus cut of the *Cords*, and you ſhall find great profit thereby. The ſecond cauſe that maketh a *horſe* to *ſtumble*, is *accidental* and this cometh either by means of the putting forth of a *ſplent* or a *ridge bone*, or about *Wind-galls*, or by ſome detriment taken in the *foot*, as by being hot, foundred; prick't ſtub'd, gravel'd, or the like, or by ſome *Sinew-ſprain*, or ſome hurt or wrench in the *ſhoulder*, or by ſome pinch in the *Withers*; *Stumbling.*

thers; and it cometh alſo by over-riding, and then negligently ſet up, which cauſeth him to go *ſtiff*, and then the cure muſt be done with *bathes* and *Unguents*, whereby to ſtretch, ſupple, molliſie, and to comfort the ſtiff *members*, for remedy and eaſe whereof, I have given you very many good *receipts* before preſcribed you, as well of *bathes* as *Unguents*. But yet I will give you one more which I have often made uſe of, and have done much good therewith for ſtiff leggs, *viz.*

Stiff Liggs. Take of Hogs-greaſe one pound, of freſh Butter, Altheæ, and of Oyl-de-Bay, of each half a pound, mix and incorporate all theſe together, and therewith anoint, rub, and chafe the *leggs* and *ſinews* of the *horſe* every third day three times a day, and let his ſhoes be made wide enough, eſpecially at the *heels*, and let him be pared thin; the *ſinews* being well ſupled, it is needful he be out of the Cords, which will prevent his *ſtumbling*; the better *Stumbling* cometh alſo by means of carrying heavy *burdens*, and when the rider is a man of extraordinary weight, eſpecially if the *horſe* be young. *** This is a very good cure.

SECT. 19. *S.*

Hippoph. WHat *is to be given to a* Horſe *that cannot* Stale *or* Piſs.

Hippoſ. This infirmity cometh either of the *Collick*, or by means of too much hard riding: The cure is,

Stale or Piſs. Take Grummel-ſeed, Saxafrage-ſeed, and the roots, of each half an ounce, make them into fine Powder, boyl them a walm or two in white Wine one quart, and give it him warm. *** This is very good. Another,

Take the tops of green Broom, and burn a good quantity of them, ſo as you may have ſo many of the *Aſhes* as will come to be a pretty handful, ſearce them and put them into white Wine a pint, and after it hath infuſed an hour, give him the Wine, but not the *Aſhes*. *** This is very good. Another,

Take Black-buds of the Aſhen-tree, and burn them, then take the Aſhes cleanſed, and as before is ſhewed you of the Broom *aſhes*, and miniſter it to the *horſe* juſt as you did the other. *** This a moſt approved cure. SECT.

SECT. 20. *S.*

Hippoph. *WHat good cure have you for the* Stavers? *Hippoſ.* This diſeaſe is *ſecundum vulgus*, called the *Staggers*, but the true name thereof is the *Stavers*, it is a dizzineſs in the *head*, neerly allied unto the *frenzy* when it ſeizeth the brain. It is ingendred ſometimes of corrupt *blood*, and heavy and bad *humours*, which do intoxicate and oppreſs the *brain*. It is a diſeaſe incident to almoſt every horſe, yea and that moſt dangerous if it be not ſoon eſpied. Sometimes it cometh by feeding and grazing, at what time the *Horſe* is hard ridden, that he be hot and ſweateth, for by his feeding and holding down his head ſo low as to graze upon the ground, the *peccant humours*, do fall down to the head, and there ſettle, and in ſhort time ſeizeth the brain, which bringeth this mortal diſeaſe. Sometimes it cometh by what was occaſioned by hard and over-violent riding, whereby the whole *body* became diſtempered, and the *blood* inflamed and putrified: And ſometimes it cometh by eating over much, for thereby is the *ſtomach* ſo over-charged with meat, as not to be able to digeſt and convert it all as it ought into good *blood* and nutriment, and therefore muſt neceſſarily breed evil *humours*, which attaching the *head* and *brain*, it is in concluſion the cauſe of this diſeaſe. The Symptoms whereby to diſcover it, is, in that his *ſight* will fail him, and he will hardly be able to *ſee a* white wall, he will ſlaver at the *mouth*, and his *eyes* will be ſwelled and run with much water and other filth, and his gate will be reeling and ſtaggering, he will oft lye down and beat his *head* againſt the planks, floor, and walls, and when he is laid, his *body* will quiver and ſhake, and he will forſake his meat; and theſe be moſt certain ſigns, which I have ever obſerved to be in *horſes* oppreſſed and exerciſed with this infirmity.

Of Melancholly.

Corrupt blood.

But now to come to the cure: I will give you firſt a cure which a *French Mariſhal* taught me, which by reaſon it ſounded to be ſo much improbable, I would never make trial thereof, but ſuch as it is you ſhall have it. Faſten unto the end of a ſtick a linnen Ragg, and anoint it well with Bar-

Stavers.

bary Sope, and put it up into his *Noſe* gently, and by degrees, and ſo draw it out again as treatably. *Another,*

If you do perceive your *horſe* in his travel to fall ſick ſuddenly of the *Stavers*, and that you be in ſuch a place, where for the preſent you can get no help, then thruſt up the greater end of your riding rod into either *noſtril* good and hard, cauſing him thereby to *bleed* well, and this will preſerve him for the time, till you come where you may meet with better remedy: Then take a piece of wheaten leaven, Bay-ſalt, Rue, Aqua vitæ, and ſtrong white wine Vinegar, of each as much as will ſuffice, bray all theſe in a ſtone morter very well, then put this medicine into two thin fine linnen cloths, or rags, by equal portions, and then moiſten it well in the liquor, and ſo convey thoſe clouts into either of his *Ears* one, and then ſtitch them up cloſe, that he get not the medicine forth, but that the ſubſtance thereof may be diffuſed into his head, and let the medicine remain ſo four and twenty hours, then take forth the rags, and this will make him a ſound and whole *horſe*. *** But before you apply this medicine to his *Ears*, run him through the *Griſtle* of the *Noſe* with an *iron Bodkin*, and the next day after let him *blood* in the *Neck* and *Mouth*, and then give him this drink, which will keep off the *Yellows* for coming too faſt upon him; then take Turmerick, Myrrh, Ivory, or Hearts-horn, of each one ounce, of Saffron one penny-worth, pound all theſe by themſelves to very fine powder, then take Selandine a good handful, ſtamp it and ſtrain it, and put the juyce thereof to the other Ingredients, then put unto it of Muskadine or ſweet Sack, one pint, or for want thereof, of ſtrong Ale one quart, adding unto it of *London* Treacle one ounce, ſet theſe upon the fire, and let it boyl one walm or two, and in the taking off, put unto it of ſweet Butter the quantity of an Egg, and ſo having well brewed the ſame, give it him blood-warm, and for three or four days, give him either ſweet Maſhes, or white water. *** This is very good. Another,

Firſt take *blood* from him in the *Neck* and *Mouth*, and let him chew and ſwallow down his *blood*, being moſt wholſome for him; and whilſt he is thus *bleeding* thruſt an iron Bodkin through the Griſtle of his Noſe, skin and all, then

Take

Take Aſſa-fetida, the quantity of a Haſle-nut, and diſſolve it into a Sawcer full of white wine Vinegar, then take Lint, or fine flax, and dip it into the liquor, and ſo ſtop both *Horſes Ears* therewith, and ſo ſtitch them up, and at the end of four and twenty hours unſtitch them, and he is cured. *** This is very good. Another,

Firſt let him *blood* in both the *weeping veins*, and in the *Mouth*, then

Take of Bitter Almonds one Ounce and a half, of the Gall of an Ox two Drams, of black Elebore made into fine powder, a half penny-worth, of Grains, Caſtoreum, Vinegar, and of Varniſh, of each five drams, boyl all theſe together, until the Vinegar be all conſumed, then ſtrain it, and put it into his *Ears*, and do as before. *** This is very good. Another,

Bloody him as before, then with your Inciſion-knife, make a ſlit down his Forehead an inch long and better, and with your *Cronet* looſen the *skin* round about, but moſt toward the *Foretop*, then put into the place the root of a red great Dock, cut thin; and let it remain there fourteen or fifteen days, and once in two days at fartheſt, cruſh out the mattrative ſtuff, and then take forth the Dock-roots, and heal up the place with your healing Salve, and give him during theſe fourteen days white water only, and he will do well. *** This I aſſure you is very good. Another,

Bloody &c. Then take Aqua vitæ, and Garlick, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, ſtamp them together, and convey it into his *Ears* doing *ut ſupra*. *** This is ſingular good. *Another*, Let him *bleed* well in the *Neck* and *Mouth* (for the abundance of bad *blood* is the cauſe of this diſeaſe) then with your *Inciſion-knife* ſlit the *Forehead* of the *Horſe*, and with your *Cronet* raiſe the *skin* eſpecially upwards, and put in three or four *Cloves* of *Garlick* pilled, and put upon it a little lint or fine Flax, to keep away the *Wind* (for that is dangerous) and then give the *Orifice* a ſtitch to keep in the Medicine the better. Then,

Take the ſeeds of Creſſes, of Poppy, of Smallage, of Parſly, of Dill (I ſay the ſeeds only of theſe herbs) and take alſo pepper, and Saffron, of each two drams, make them all into fine powder, and put unto them of Barly water two

quarts, as it cometh boyling from the fire, and let it infuſe therein three hours, and then ſtrain it, and give him one quart thereof, if it may be, in the morning faſting blood-warm, and walk him up and down an hour or better, and then ſet him up warm, and give him Hay ſprinkled with water, and the next day give him the other quart faſting, and then do as before, neither let him drink any cold water in four or five days after, but only whiter-Water, unleſs ſometimes a ſweet Maſh: And thus doing he will be cured. *** This is a moſt excellent Receipt, and I have often uſed it.

SECT. 21. *S.*

Hippoph. *What remedy have you for a* Horſe *that hath* Swelled-Legs *?*

Hippoſ. This Malady of *ſwelled* or *gourdy-legs* cometh eftſoones by long ſtanding in the Stable, when as the upper parts of the planks at the *fore-feet*, are much higher than thoſe at the hinder *feet*, as I have before obſerved in *l.* 1. *c.*4. for by that means the *horſe* not ſtanding even, and therefore not at his eaſe, the *blood* ſetleth in the *hinder-legs*, which cauſeth them to *ſwell.* Sometimes they do come by reaſon the *Horſe* being hard ridden, was brought into the Stable too hot, and careleſly ſet up, who taking cold, the *blood*, *greaſe* and *humours* do fall down into the *Legs*, and ſo cauſe them to *ſwell.* Sometimes it cometh by over-riding, whereby the *horſe* hath his *blood* ſtirred, and his *greaſe melted*, which falleth down, and reſteth in the *hinder legs*, cauſing them to *ſwell.* Sometimes by being ridden and gallopping upon hard ways in the Heats, and by that means the *blood* and *greaſe* falleth down into the *Legs*, congealeth there, whereby they do become *gouty* and *gourdy.* And ſometimes *gourdy legs* cometh by ſickneſs and ſurfeits taken, which after remedy had, yet the *faces* or *dregs* thereof ſtill remaining in the *body* of the *horſe*, falleth down, and cauſeth the *legs* to *ſwell* as I have frequently ſeen, and theſe be the prime cauſes and reaſons which we have obſerved for this malady, The ſigns your eye doth demonſtrate, and you may without teaching point, to

Swelled legs.

to it with your *finger*, and therefore we may ſay nothing thereof. Wherefore now we will to the cure. If the *ſwelling* come by ordinary means, then take up the *Thigh-veins*, and then you need do no more, for that alone will cure him, and after open the *heel-veins*, and lay a *Retoyre* to the *Legs*, or elſe give him the *fire* which will ſiccicate and dry up the bad *humours*, which muſt be given gently, and lightly, neither would I have you give him the *fire*, unleſs you might think or find it in your judgment to be very requiſite. But my meaning is not that this remedy of the fire be applyed, but only to an old grief, otherwiſe not at all. *** This is good. But if beſides his *ſwelled Legs*, they alſo be ſtiff, coming to him after much labour and travel; therefore

Take of Violet-leaves, Primroſe-leaves, and Straw-berry-leaves, of each a handful, boyl all theſe in new Milk till they become very ſoft, and then take it from the fire, and put to it of the oyl of *Nerval* of *Petroleum*, and of *Pam-Phillion*, of each one ounce, and ſo ſtir all together until it become blood-warm, and therewith chafe, rub and anoint the *Legs*, *Nerves*, *Sinews*, and *joynts*, holding a hot bar of Iron near to the place, to cauſe the Unguent to ſink the better in: Anoint him thus with this Unguent five or ſix days together, and it will help him. *** This I have often uſed. Another,

Take Train oyl, and warm it upon the *fire*, and therewith bathe his *legs* morning and evening, and in ſhort time he will be well. *** This is very good; alſo to ride your *Horſe* into the water morning and evening up to the *belly* doth take away the ſwelling of his *legs*. *** This is marvellous good.

SECT. 22. *S.*

Hippoph. *What is good to aſſwage the ſwelling of the* Cods *in a* Horſe?

Hippoſ. This malady cometh many ways, to wit, by violent riding and heats, when there was not ſufficient care had of him, but was neglected in the ſetting up; alſo it cometh

cometh by washing, walking and cold taken after immoderate labour, and sometimes by feeding intemperately upon Provender, and sometimes by feeding upon unwholesom meat. The signs to know it, are, his *stomach* may be peradventure good to his meat, but yet it will do him little good, for he will be always meagre and lean, his hair will stare, neither will he cast his coat at usual times like as other *horses* do, he will lose his mettle, and become very *lunt*, and his *eyes* will run with water and matter, and his *stones* will swell; in a word he will be out of *joynt*, that is out of good temper throughout every part and member of his *body*. Other causes there be of this malady, whereof I have intreated before in *l. 2. c. 6. sect. 2. let. C.* to which place I do refer you; nevertheless I will give you a Receipt or two which I ave often used, and do know them to be right good.

Swelled cods. Take Turmerick and long Pepper, of each a penny-worth, Annifeeds and Fenugreek, of each half a penny-worth, sweet Butter so much as will suffice, boyl all these (being first powdred) in ale three pints, till one pint be consumed, and then take it from the fire, and strain it and dissolve it in *London* Treacle one ounce, and so well brewed, give it your *horse* blood-warm; let him have this drink sundry times, and let otherwise his drink be white Water, and sometimes a sweet Mash till it be well. *** This is very good. Another.

Take the best Tar two spoonfuls, Life-Honey one spoonful, Black-Sope the quantity of a Nutmeg, Diapente one ounce, and of Bay-salt two spoonfuls, mix all these well together, and convey it into two or three Egg-shels, the tops being so opened as that you may but get forth the meat; then fill up the shells with this medicine, and so put them down his *throat* in a morning fasting, give him presently after two or three hornfuls of Ale or Beer, to send down the medicine the better, let it be spread upon the roof of his *mouth*, do thus every morning for eight days together, and when he hath taken his medicine, let him be ridden gently an hour or two: and then set him up warm cloathed and littered, and set him upon the Trench three hours, and let his drink

be

be white-Water, and ſometimes a ſweet Maſh, both then, and for ſome time after. *** This is very good.

SECT. 23. *S.*

Hippoph. *How do you take off a* Spongy-wart *?*

Hippoſ. A *Spongy-wart*, is that very thing which our *Farriers* call an *Anberry*, which is a kind of *Wen*, which ſwelleth ſometimes to a great bigneſs, ſometimes again it will be but ſmall, but then commonly they are many, and do grow into *cluſters*; this cometh by means of *peccant humours* cauſed of *blood*, and that *Horſe* that is inclined to *warts* will ſeldom be ever free of them, for take them off in one place, and he will put forth more in other parts of his *body*, but to breed of either *Horſe* or *Mare* inclined to them, I will diſſwade you; for moſt commonly he will put them forth about the *eyes*, yea, and oft-times ſo neer to the *eye* it ſelf as to endanger the *ſight* thereof; They be eaſily known by reaſon they be ſo apparently ſeen, and therefore need no further deſcription. The cure is. It were good firſt to purge him, and to take *blood* from the *Maſter-vein* which you do find doth moſt feed them, as well to divert as to ſtop the malice of that bad *humour* which doth occaſion the malady. If the *Wart* or *Anberry* be far enough extant from the *skin*, then tie two of his longeſt *hairs* taken from his *tail* hard about the Sorrance ſo faſt as you poſſibly can, and ſo as that it may not looſen, and in few days it will fret and eat it clean off, which done, ſtrew upon it the Powder of Verdigreaſe to kill it at the root, and after heal it up again with your green Salve. But if you cannot come to tie it either with hair or thred, then either with your Inciſion knife cut it away cloſe to the skin, or elſe burn it off with a hot Iron, and then firſt kill the fire with Turpentine and Hogs greaſe molten together, and after heal it up, as before is preſcribed you. *** This is very good.

Spongy Wart.

SECT.

SECT. 24. *S.*

Hippoph. WHat *is good to be applyed to a* Horſe *that is* Surbated *?*

Hippoſ. Two ways a *horſe* doth ſurbate ; the firſt is when a horſe is newly backt and weighed, upon his firſt ſhooing, and when the owner of the *horſe* will not have patience with him, but will preſently journey him upon hard and ſtoney ways, his hoofs and feet being yet but tender to what they will be afterward, and ſo the horſe muſt needs ſurbate. The ſecond way is, when a horſe hath of himſelf bad feet, and is alſo either ill ſhod, or elſe his *ſhooes* be very thin worn, or that they be too narrow or too ſhort, and that he be ridden upon bad, hard, ſtony , and rough ways ; in ſuch like caſes your horſe will ſurbate ; you ſhall find it by the handling of his feet, eſpecially the next day after a long journey, by reaſon he will not ſtand ſtill long upon his feet without hitching them up, and removing them, for they will be ſo ſore as that he will not know how or where to place them ; and you ſhall alſo perceive him to be *ſurbated*, by reaſon that after a journey he will lie much, ſtanding being painful unto him ; and in his lying you ſhall ſee him covet to lie & ſtretch himſelf all along upon one ſide and if you feel the *coffins* of his *hoofs* you ſhall find them to burn very hot, and his *hoofs* to be very dry. The cure is very facile.

Take two new laid Eggs, and after you have well picked his *fore-feet*, break them raw into the *ſoles*, and then ſtop them up with Oxe or Cow-dung, and he will be well by the next morning, This is an approved good cure.

SECT. 25. *S.*

Hippoph. HOw *do you cure a* Horſe *that is* ſtifled *?*

Hippoſ. This miſchief cometh *accidentally* ; to wit, either by a *ſtrain* in leaping, or by a ſlip in travel, or by the ſtroke of ſome other *horſe*, and thus the *bone* is either out of its place, or elſe the joynt is very much ſtrained

ned or hurt. The ſigns to know it is, if the bone be out, you may ſee it plainly, for beſides his halting, the bone diſlocated will ſo ſtick out, as that the *horſe* can do no more than touch the ground with his *toe*, till it be put in again; and the way to put it in is thus: Firſt tie down his head to the manger, then take a cord and faſten it to the *paſtern* of the *ſtifled leg*, and draw his *leg* forwards, and ſo the bone will come right by helping it with your hand, which being in, your care then muſt be to keep it in with your *hand*, and then tie the other end of the cord to the Rack, ſo as he may not put back his *leg*, to diſlocate the *bone* any more for an hour or two after, till it be ſetled and dreſſed. Wherefore let his *Keeper* ſtand by him all the time, leſt the *horſe* ſhould lie down, or be unruly. This done, take pitch which you muſt have molten in a pot, in a readineſs, and with a clout upon a ſtick anoint the ſtifling three or four inches broad at the leaſt, and ten inches long, and preſently before the Pitch can cool have a ſtrong piece of new Canvas cut fit for that purpoſe, which being made very warm by a fire, clap it upon the place ſo neatly, that the bone cannot go forth again. This Plaiſter muſt not lie towards the *flank* and *foot* longways, but croſs-ways upon the *joynt*, as it were about the *thigh*, otherwiſe it cannot hold in the *bone*. Having thus done, anoint the plaiſter on the outſide all over with the ſaid molten Pitch, and whilſt it is warm clap flocks of the *horſes* colour all over the outſide of the Canvas, and let the Plaiſter remain on until it fall away of it ſelf, and after that you may apply ſuch good Unguents as you may think to be moſt expedient for the malady. But if the bone be not out, then put in a *French Rowel* a little beneath the ſtifling place, and let the *Rowel* remain in fifteen days, turning it once every day, and at fifteen days end take it forth, and heal up the Orifice, like as before you have been taught. *** This is ſpecial good. *Stifled.*

SECT. 26. *S.*

Hippoph. *What remedy may be had for a* Horſe *that is troubled with the* Stone?

Hippoſ. This is a very troubleſome diſeaſe, and it cometh of groſs and bad *humours*, gotten principally by violent exerciſe, and intemperate riding, and it cometh from the *Liver* and *ſpleen*, which falling down into the kidneys and bladder, ſetleth there, whereby there groweth in the *mouth* of the *conduct* certain inflamed hard knots which ſtoppeth his *urine*, whereby he is not able to *piſs*, but with great difficulty, by reaſon the *ſinews* and the *pores* about the neck of the *bladder* are benummed, which taketh away the ſenſe and feeling of the *bladder*. And ſometimes this infirmity cometh by reaſon that in his travel, the *horſe* is kept ſo long in agitation, as not to ſuffer him to *ſtale* and *piſs*, for the water being made hot by exerciſe, doth conglutinate, and becometh viſcous and thick, ſo as it cannot paſs away from him as nature requireth it ſhould do, whereby there is made too great a retention of the *Urine*, by means of the obſtructions he hath in his *kidneys*, which engendreth gravel, ſometimes red, and ſometimes grey, which falling down into the *conducts*, ingendreth *phlegmatique* and *groſs humours*, which occaſioneth conglutination, and ſo becometh to be the *ſtone*, waxing ſo hard and thereby ſtopping the current of his *water*, ſo as he will not be able to *piſs* or *ſtale*. And you may come eaſily to know it, by reaſon that he can neither draw his *yard*, nor *piſs*, but with great pain and difficulty in his ſheath, and that many times drop by drop.

The cure is, take Saxifrage, Nettle-roots, Parſly-roots, Fennel-roots, Sperage-roots, and of Dodder, of each one handful, bruiſe all theſe things, and boil them on a gentle fire with white-Wine, until a third part be conſumed, then put to it of Salt one handful, of Sallet-oyl, and of the Lard of a Goat, of each three ounces, Honey half a pound; when all this is boyled, ſtrain it, and wring it very hard, and of this give your *Horſe* one pint every morning faſting, made blood-warm, and if in the boyling or by ſtanding, it happen to become thick, diſſolve it again with white-Wine, and after the firſt boyling it muſt be but only warmed. And give to him drink every morning ſo long as it will laſt. *** This is very good, for I have tried it. Another as good as the former.

Take

Take of ſtrong Ale one quart, and put it into a pottle-pot, then take ſo many of the reddeſt Radiſh-roots clean waſhed and ſliced into ſmall pieces, as will fill up the pot, then ſtop up the pot ſo cloſe, as that the *air* cannot get in, and let it remain four and twenty hours, then ſtrain the roots from the Ale very hard into ſome other clean pot, and ſo give it him in a morning faſting with a horn, then ride him a while upon it, and ſo ſet him up warm covered and well littered, and in a little while you ſhall ſee him piſs, give him this drink ſundry mornings together, and during this cure, let him have but only white water to drink. *** This is ſpecial good.

SECT. 27. S.

Hippoph. *What cure have you for a* String-halt?

Hippoſ. This is a malady which for the moſt part the beſt metled *horſes* be many times troubled with; it cometh meerly of cold, as by taking cold ſuddenly after hard riding, eſpecially when by being waſhed, for the blood and *ſinews* being by that means ſtupified and benummed, is the cauſe of the diſeaſe, by reaſon the ſenſe and feeling of the *member* is taken from him; you may eaſily know it by the manner of the unſightly lifting, and ſudden ſnatching up of his *leg* much higher than the other, and it commonly cometh into the *hinder leg*, rather than into the *fore-leg*. The cure is, firſt to take up the vein in the thigh, & after to anoint all the leg and the thigh from the body down to the very foot a long time together, one holding a red hot bar of Iron neer to the place, and let him be anointed with this ointment.

Take of the Oyl of Petroleum of the Oyl of Worms, of the Oyl of Nerval, of Patch or Piece-greaſe, of the Oyl of ſpike, of each one ounce, of *London*-Treacle two ounces, and of Hogs-greaſe one pound, melt all theſe upon the fire, and then take it off, and keep it with continual ſtirring till it be through cold, and with this anoint the viſited member every day once, and then wiſpe him up with a ſoft thumband of Hay from the paſtern to the top of the hoof, and

thus do for ten days together, rubbing and chafing in the ointment very well a long time together, holding (as before I have adviſed) a hot bar of iron neer to it, to cauſe this Unguent the better to ſink into the *ſinews*, *nerves* and *joynts*. But after you have done anointing him, you muſt keep him warm and well littered, and let the thumb band be daily made leſſer and leſſer, and ſhorter and ſhorter, till you perceive him to handle both legs alike, and your horſe to be recovered; but you muſt not ride him that he may ſweat much in a month after, and ſo ſoon as warm weather cometh, turn him to graſs in ſome dry paſture where is water, and take him up again about *Bartholomew* Tide, or before the cold cometh, and whilſt he doth remain in the Stable, keep him warm, and ſo he will be free of his *String-halt*, and be a ſound horſe again. To anoint him alſo with Acopum is very good. *** Thus I have recovered ſundry horſes of this malady.

SECT. 28. §.

Hippoph. *WHat is the nature of* Suppoſitories?

Hippoſ. The nature of *Suppoſitories* are to help a *horſe* that cannot well empty himſelf; for a *Suppoſitory* cauſeth him to diſcharge himſelf of many ſuperfluous and evil *humours* which do diſturb, annoy, and diſtemper his body with their *peccant qualities* and conditions, for they breed bad *nutriment*, which oft-times good diet cannot amend, and therefore muſt be ſent away by *purgation*, that is to ſay, by *Suppoſitory*: or *Cliſter*, or *Potion*; I have ſpoken already ſufficiently, and therefore I will now treat of *Suppoſitories* only, which of all other ways is the gentleſt, wherewith to *purge* and *cleanſe* the *guts*, for a *Suppoſitory* is but a preparative to a *Cliſter* or *Potion*, whereby to looſen the *guts*, which may be bound and clogged with dry, hot, and hard *excrements*, which a *Suppoſitory* rather than a *Clyſter* can looſen; and as I have already given you Receipts for *Cliſters*, ſo now will I give you for *Suppoſitories*, whereof you may make uſe according as occaſion and neceſſity ſhall require.

Take

Take a great Candle of four in the pound, and cut off three inches at the ſmaller end, and then anoint the bigger and longer part either with Sallet-oyl, or freſh or ſweet Butter, and ſo convey it into his *fundament*, then with your hand hold his *tail* to his *tuel* a good half hour, or elſe his *tail* with a *ſtrap* to his girt or Surſingle, by which time the *ſuppoſitory* will be diſſolved, then let looſe his *tail*, and then preſently leap his *back* and trot him up and down till he do begin to *empty* & *purge* himſelf, for by this means it will work the better and more kindly. **This is the moſt gentle of all *ſuppoſitories* can be given. ** This diſſolveth all hard, dry, and hot *excrements*, and ſendeth them forth, and beſides it ſuppleth the *guts*. Another, If you do find your *horſe* to be ſo exceeding weak, as that you dare not without peril of his *life*, adminiſter unto him any *Potion*, or *purging medicine*, then give him this *Suppoſitory*. 1 *Suppoſitory.*

Take of common Honey ſix ounces, of Salt Niter one ounce and a half, of Wheat-flower, and of Anniſeeds in fine powder, of each one ounce, boyl all theſe to a ſtiff thickneſs, and ſo make it into *ſuppoſitories*, then take one of them and anoint it all over with Sallet-oyl, and your hand alſo, and ſo put it up into his *fundament* the length of your hand, then tie his *tail* betwixt his *legs*, as before is ſhewed, and let it remain ſo half an hour, by which time the *ſuppoſitory* will be diſſolved, then ride and order him as before. ** This is alſo very good, eſpecially in caſe of *ſurfeits* or inward *ſickneſs*. Another, 2 *Suppoſitory.*

Take a piece of Caſtle-Sope, and paring it, bring it into the faſhion of a *ſuppoſitory*, and apply it, and order him as before is taught you. ** 3 *Suppoſitory.*

This is ſpecial good to purge *phlegm*, and it is very gentle. Another, 4 *Suppoſitory.*

Take Savin ſo much as will ſuffice, and ſtamp it to maſh, and ſtamp with it Staveſaker and Salt, of each two ounces, boyl theſe in common Honey ſo much as will ſuffice, till it be thick, and ſo make it up into *Suppoſitories*, and adminiſter one of them, like as you are before ſhewed, and order him ſo likewiſe. ** This purgeth *Choler*. Another, 5 *Suppoſitory.*

Take an angry red Onion and pill it, and jag it croſs ways

with

with your knife, and ſo adminiſter it, and order him as before. *** This purgeth *Melancholly*. Another,

6 Suppoſitory.

Take common Honey one pint, and boyl it till it be thick, and make it up into *Suppoſitories* as it cooleth, and adminiſter it, and order him as before is preſcribed you. *** This purgeth evil *humours*, it cooleth and comforteth the *body* very much, and cauſeth a good appetite to meat. All theſe I have often uſed, and I do know them to be very good. But you muſt take with you ſome inſtructions fit to be known, which are; Firſt, when at any time you do adminiſter either *ſuppoſitories*, *Clyſters*, *potions*, you muſt do it in a morning faſting, unleſs neceſſity urge the contrary: Secondly, you muſt not at thoſe times ſuffer him to drink any cold water, no not with exerciſe, but either ſweet Maſhes or white water. Thirdly, it is very needful that before you ſhall adminiſter either *Suppoſitory*, *Clyſter*, or *Potion*, that the *Horſe* be raked. And fourthly, that he be after kept warm.

SECT. 29. *S.*

Hippoph. *WHat benefit cometh to a* Horſe *by* ſweating?

Hippoſ. Truly Sir very much, for by moderate and judicious giving of *Sweats*, as well in his cloaths in the ſtable as abroad in his exerciſe, you may cure him of many Maladies, and prevent many infirmities which otherwiſe might accrew unto him. For *ſweating* doth open the *pores*, and ſendeth forth thoſe *peccant* and *malignant humours* which do annoy, oppreſs, and vex him. But as touching this manner of *ſweating* by you propoſed, it hath relation unto what I have already handled in *l.* 2. *cap.* 2. where I treating of what is to be done to a *Horſe* newly taken from graſs, I there took occaſion to adviſe *ſweating*, and there I referred you to this place, and therefore I will here illuſtrate it: Wherefore if you be in the way of *enſaying your horſe* having already *purged*, *blooded* and *cleanſed* him, and prepared his body fit for *ſweating* (if need ſhall require.) Then if the weather be fair and warm, ride him a mile upon his trot, and then home again, then preſently litter him very well, and cloath him up ſo warm as that he may *ſweat*, but not

Sweating.

not yet ſo violently as to ſtir the *humours* in the body too much, neither let him ſweat above an hour, then cool him again by degrees, and that with great care and moderation; and thus ride and *ſweat* him for three days together; then for ſix days together keep him warm, but not to ſweat any more, and during the time of his *ſweating* and ſix or eight days after, let him have no cold drink, but white-Water and ſometimes a ſweet Maſh. And thus briefly of *ſweating*. *** This manner of giving *ſweat* I have often uſed, with great commodity to the *horſe*. But let us paſs on to another chapter.

CHAP. XXI.

SECT. 1. *T.*

Hippophylus.

Hippoph. *WHat cure have you for a horſe whoſe* tongue *is hurt?*

Hippoſ. This malady cometh by *accident* as with a Bit, Halter, or the like.

Take therefore of Arman half an ounce, and roſt it in the embers till it be red hot, then take it up and beat it to very fine powder, then take of Life-Honey a Sawcerful, and of white-Wine one pint, mix and ſteep theſe with the Powder together, and ſo let it boyl over the fire, ſtirring it continually together; then take it off, and let it cool, and ſo waſh his *tongue* therewith morning and evening, or as you ſhall pleaſe till it be whole. *** This is very good. Another.

Take the juyce of Salendine, and waſh the *hurt-tongue* therewith nine days together and it will cure it, albeit it be half cut in ſunder, for the juyce of Salendine will conglutinate and ſodder the tongue together being cut or wounded. *** This alſo is very good.

SECT

SECT. 2. T.

Hippoph. *How do you help a* Horſe *that hath an* Itch *in his* Tail?

Hippoſ. This cometh of rankneſs of *blood*, and therefore it is requiſite that firſt he be let *blood* in the *Tail*, and that he *bleed* well. After,

Tail an itch. Take Buck-ly, and with a Rag or Hurds in the Lye waſh the place infected every day often, or as many times as it ſhall dry, and continue thus doing four or five days, and this will cure it. *** This is very good. Another, but if the *hair* do fall away with the *Maing* or *Itch*, then ſlit the skin from within two inches of the *Tuel* to the fourth *joynt*, and with your *Cronet* take out a certain *bone* or *griſtle*, which the *French* do call *Barivole*, then fill up the clift with Salt made into fine powder, and with a hot Iron burn the tail in ſundry places, & waſh it with Buck-lye, as before; but your Lye muſt be made very ſtrong. This cure I never practiſed, but I once ſaw a *Mariſhal* of *Paris* dreſs, and ſo cured a *horſe* in this manner of this malady, of whom I had the cure.

SECT. 3. T.

Hippoph. *How do you make your* Unguentum Theriacum? *Hippoſ.* This *Unguentum Theriacum* is moſt ſoveraign for any *ach* in the *joynts*; it is alſo ſpecial good for *horſes* that do fall *lame*, if the grief be in the *Hip*, *Stifling-place*, *legs*, *ſhoulders*, *paſtern*, or any other part of the *legs*, a *black-ſinew*, *ſprain* only excepted. And thus I do make it.

Take of Nervel, of Oyl of Pamphillion, and of black-Sope, of each two ounces, and of tried Hogs-greaſe half a pound, melt all theſe upon a gentle fire, and being molten, put into it of ordinary Treacle two penny worth, then take it from the fire, then with a Splatter or ſpoon, keep it by continual ſtirring till it be through cold, then will it be of a dun colour; keep this in a gally pot for your uſe; and when you ſhall have occaſion to uſe the ſame, anoint the place grieved therewith, rubbing and chafing it in very well, and let one hold a bar of

hot

hot iron neer, as you do anoint the grief. And thus it is made. *** This is moſt excellent to raiſe the *vein* from the *ſinew* at what time you are to take up the *vein*. I have tried it *ſæpe & ſæpius*.

SECT. 4. *T.*

Hippoph. *How do you deſtroy a* Tetter ?

Hippoſ. This malady or Sorrance the *French* do call *Fer-volant*, the *Flying-worm*, which is a *Tetter* or *Ring-worm*, and the cure is this.

Take the roots of Elecampane, and the roots of red-Dock, of each like much, ſlice them thin, and put them into Urine three quarts with Bay-ſalt, two handfuls, let it boyl until one quart be conſumed, then take it off, and with a clout faſtened to a ſtick waſh the Sorrance very hot. Uſe this four or five mornings together, and it will kill it. *** This is very good. *Tetter or ring-worm.*

SECT. 5. *T.*

Hippoph. *What is to be done to a* horſe *that tyreth in* travel, *and falleth ſick* ?

Hippoſ. For a *horſe* to tire upon the way, the cauſes are many: Firſt for that he is travelled when he ſhall be too young; Secondly in that he is lately taken from graſs whilſt he is yet foul and foggy, before he be well *enſaimed* ; thirdly in that he hath been long kept & pampered in the Stable, without giving him breath or moderate exerciſe ; Fourthly, by being travelled beyond his ſtrength in longer journeys, and deeper ways then he is well able to perform; Fifthly it might be through the covetouſneſs or careleſneſs of his *rider*, in not feeding or ſeeing him fed ſo well as was fitting ; Sixthly and laſtly, by reaſon the *Horſe* might have ſome ſecret infirmity whereof his *maſter* might be ignorant. Wherefore if your *horſe* may happen in his travel to *tire or faint*, have patience with him, and do not force him beyond what he may be able to perform, either by ſpurring or beating him, like as many *cholerick* and *paſſionate people* do uſually, but get to ſome houſe or Inn ſo ſoon

as conveniently you may, when firſt you ſee him begin to ſink or to faint under you, ſet him preſently up warm clothed, and well littered, that he take no cold, and let his *Keeper* or the *Oſtler* of the *Inn* rub and chaſe him all over with freſh dry ſtraw, but eſpecially let him rub him againſt the *hair*, and let him have no meat till two hours or more after you have given him this drink.

Tyring in travel. Take of the beſt ſweet ſack one pint, but if that cannot be had, then take the ſame quantity of White or Claret-wine, and put thereto of Cinamon, Ginger, Nutmegs, Grains, Cloves, Anniſeeds, and Fennelſeeds of each one ounce, all made into fine powder: then take red-Sage, Roſemary-tops, Mints, Camomile, and wild Thyme, of each like much, ſo that in all they amount to half a handful, chop the hearbs very ſmall, and then put all theſe hearbs and ſpices into the Wine, and then boyl them a pretty while, then take it from the fire and ſtrain it hard, and unbit your *horſe*, and give him this drink blood-warm; this done, bit him up again, and with a ſwitch ſtir him up and down as he ſtandeth in his place tied to the rack, then cool him, and two hours after his drink, give him firſt ſome Hay, and half an hour after that, give him either a ſweet Maſh, or white water, and after feed him at your pleaſure; but be you conſiderate in giving him his Provender, by little at once and often, and howſoever feed him well, and thus ordering him, by morning he will be well recovered, and able to travel again. *** This is an excellent drink, and of great vertue for any *horſe* that *tyreth* or falleth ſick upon the way. It is alſo very requiſite that with a Syringe you do inject of this drink into his *noſtrils*, Another,

If you do fear that your *horſe* may tire in his journey, for prevention, carry with you a box of powder of dryed Elecampane-roots, & let the powder be ſearſed, and when you do come unto your Inn, let him not be walked, but ſet up warm in the Stable clothed & littered, an let his *legs*, *body*, *head*, and *neck*, be by the *Groom* or *Oſtler* well rubbed, but chiefly his *Poll* betwixt his *ears*. Then take of ſtrong Ale one quart, or of ſweet Sack one pint, which is much better, and put into it of your Elecampane half an ounce, brew them well together,

together, and give it him with a horn, then bridle him, and tie him to the Rack, but not too high, ſo as he may put down his *noſe*, and let him ſtand ſo an hour, then unbridle him, and give him Hay, and an hour or better after that, give him either a ſweet Maſh or white water, and then Provender ſufficent, but with diſcretion and by degrees, and ſo alſo in the morning, give him both Oats and bread, whether he will eat beſt, feeding him little by little ſo long as he will eat, and in the morning when you are ready to take his *back*, give him the ſame drink again, and you ſhall find him to travel with ſpirit and mettle, and if you tie a branch of Penny-royal upon his Bit, it will greatly comfort him. But yet for all that which hath been ſaid, if he happen to tire, then

Take Arſmart, and rub his *bare back* where the ſaddle reſteth, and lay alſo ſome of the leaves upon his back under the Saddle, and ſo clap on the Saddle, and this will cauſe him the better to hold out. *** This is good. Another,

Take of the beſt Spaniſh Tobacco you can get, ſhred it ſmall, and dry it, and make it into fine powder, and mix therewith the powder of Cockle-ſhells of the like quantity, which muſt be ſearced, and put this powder into a glaſs, keeping it cloſe ſtopped, and keep it for your uſe. And when you are to uſe it, take of this powder, and mix them therewith of the Oyl of Dill, and of the Oyl of Cloves ſuch a quantity as will make this powder into a ſtiff paſte, and ſo make it into pills, every Pill the bigneſs of a Walnut, which muſt be dryed in the ſhade (theſe Pills muſt be made in Canicular or Dog-days only) then keep them cloſe ſtopped in ſome glaſs or gally Pot, that no ayr can get into it, and when you have cauſe to uſe any of them, give him one of them at what time you ſhall perceive your horſe to faint or tire, or that you do perceive him to have taken a cold or ſurfeit, which may very well be the cauſe of his debility, give him (I ſay) one of theſe *Pills* when you do come unto your Inn. But if he hath taken a cold or ſurfeit, then give him a *Pill* in the morning faſting, and let him be well rubbed, clothed warm, and well littered, and ſuffer him not to drink any cold water, but either a ſweet Maſh or white water, for there is not any thing more noxious than to give a horſe in this caſe cold water, and let his

travel be moderate and with great diſcretion, and he will both hold out his journey, and get ſtrength and fleſh alſo in his travel. *** And this I have often tryed both upon my own *horſes* and others, in whoſe company I have travelled, as well in *England* as in parts abroad.

CHAP. XXII.

SECT. 1. *T.*

Hippophylus.

HOw *do you preſcribe a* Vomit *to a Horſe?*

Hippoſ. Of this I have ſpoken a little already where I did remit you to this place, we do uſually give vomits unto *horſes* newly taken up from graſs, by reaſon they are thereby full of very groſs phlegmatick humours, which do abound in the ſtomach, and head, which if they be not fetched from the horſe in its due time, will be means to impair greatly the health of the horſe, which muſt be oft times neceſſarily expulſed by vomit, and you ſhall have a receit of a vomit which I had in *France* from a ſpecial Farrier there who (as I have before touched) hath in my preſence adminiſtred to ſundry horſes, which did work very kindly upon them, and I my ſelf have adminiſtred the ſame to ſundry *Horſes* here in *England*, to very great profit unto them. The Receit is this,

Vomiting. Take two of the greateſt roots of Polipodium you can get from the Oak, waſh and ſcrape them very clean, and tye it to his Snaffle, Trench, or Bit, then let it be ſteeped in the Oyl of Spike a whole night, and in the morning faſting, put on his bridle with the ſaid roots, and ride him with it in his mouth an hour or better, fair an ſoftly; and if he be troubled with any Rheumatick or Phlegmatick humours or with any cold or filthy matter, which may any way peſter, clog, or annoy his ſtomach: This thing will force him to vent them at his mouth and noſe, and it will cauſe him to cough and neez, where he will ſend forth a great abundance of filth,

filth, and evil ſlimy ſtuff from off his ſtomach and head, as that in ſhort time he will become very clean in his body, for this will both refine his blood, and exhauſt all his watry humours, in ſuch ſort as by temperate ordering him, and doing as I have here preſcribed you, you may be confident to keep him a long ſound perfect and ſerviceable *Horſe*, and this is not to be applyed only to a horſe newly taken from graſs, but to any other *horſe* that hath taken a cold, or to any ketty, foul, foggy, or purſive horſe whatſoever. *** This may ſeem ſtrange here amongſt us, but let any man make tryal, and he ſhall find it to be moſt admirable.

SECT. 2. K.

Hippoph. *What is to be given to a* Horſe *that hath a violent* Cough?

Hippoſ. If this great and violent *Cough* proceed from a cold (as commonly all Coughs do) then give him firſt wheat-bran prepared, as ſundry times before is preſcribed you, and take blood from the neck vein, then with his Oats give him this powder following,

Take of Comin, Fenugreek, Sileris, Montany, *alias* Siſi- *Violent Cough.*
leos, Nutmegs, Cloves, Ginger, Linſeed, of each two ounces, Quick-Brimſtone, ſix ounces, make all theſe into fine Powder, and of this powder give him every night with his Oats, one ſpoonful. But becauſe this powder diſperſeth the corrupt, groſs and Phlegmatick humours which are predominant in the body of the *Horſe*, which do occaſion the ſaid violent Cough, ſo ſoon as you ſhall perceive that with this powder he hath purged ſufficiently, uſe it then no longer, but fail not to continue his white water, but before you give him his water, take a ſtick about the bigneſs of your thumb at leaſt, and well nigh a foot long, and wrap a fine rag about it four or five times, ſteeped before-hand in Oyl de-Bay, and ſo put it into his mouth, like as you would do a Snaffle, and with ſtraps made faſt to the ends of the ſtick, faſt'ned then over his Poll, like as Smiths uſe to do, when they burn *horſes* for the Lampas, and let him drink with it in his mouth; that done, let him ſtand with it in his mouth one hour after at the leaſt, to the end he may lick and ſuck up the ſaid Oyl upon

upon the rag or cloth, and when you do give him his Oats, mix them with this powder following, *viz.*

Take of Fennel-seeds four ounces, of Fænugreek two ounces, of Cardamome one ounce, beat all together but grosly, otherwise he will blow it away as he eateth his Oats, and keep him warm as before is advised you. *** This is very good, for I have often used it.

SECT. 3. *V.*

Hippoph. *For what causes do you take up* Veins?

Veins to take up.

Hippos. As touching taking up of *veins* you shall understand, that it is a thing in many cases so much behoofful, as that many times the most exquisite Farrier living shall not be able to perfect this cure, but by that way and means, or unless such *veins* be either taken up, or some ways stopped which are noxious to the cure, by feeding the malady with its peccant humours, the Farrier can never work by true art. Again, *veins* well taken up do prevent many maladies whereunto many *Horses* are much more propense than others are. And lastly, the taking up of veins cureth some diseases, which could otherwise never be cured. For the taking up of the thigh-veins, sendeth away Spavens, Splents, Curbs, Kibed-heels, Swelled-legs, Scratches, Malenders Faricion in the legs, and the like Sorrances; besides it causeth all pains, aches, strains, stiffness in limbs, *&c.* Take up the *Shackle-veins*, and it preventeth the Quitter-bone, Ring-bone, swelling in the lower joynts, foundrings, *&c.* Wherefore forasmuch as ignorant people, whatsoever opinion they may have of their super-abundant skill, yet are they very much to seek in that they do so much exclaim against taking up of veins, absurdly affirming it to be a great means of laming of horses: but let them not mistake themselves, for assuredly it is the best and only remedy against these and many more maladies, and when they shall have made tryal, they will not be of so prejudicate opinions.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIII.

SECT. 1. *IV.*

Hyppophilus.

WHat good thing have you wherewith to preserve the wind of a Horse?

Hippos. Sir, for this infirmity I make a Cataplasme, which is this. *Wind to preserve.*

Take Wheat-flowr four pound, Elecampane and Gentian, of each one ounce, Anniseeds, Fænugreeks, Comin, Brimstone and Licorish, of each half a pound, let all these be made into very fine powder and searced, then put into it of common English Honey half a pound, and so much white-Wine as will make all these into a Cataplasme; boyl all these sufficiently, till it be so thick that you may make it into Pills, and give your Horse of them three or four at a time, for six or eight mornings together. Use this often, for it will conserve a horse in health, and keepeth him sound of his body, wind, and courage. **** This is most excellent. But if you do perceive a taint in his wind, then

Take a close earthen Pot or Pipkin, and put thereinto of the strongest white-Wine-Vinegar three pints, and four new laid Eggs unbroken, and four heads of Garlick clean pilled and bruised, then cover the Pot very close, and bury it in a Mixen or Dung-hil twelve hours, then take it up, and take forth the Eggs, but break them not; then strain the Vinegar and Garlick through a fine linnen cloth, putting unto it the liquor of Life-Honey four ounces, and of brown Sugar-Candy, Anniseeds, and Licorish, all made into very fine powder, of each two ounces, and your *horse* having fasted all night till morning, give him one of the steeped Eggs, and then one hornful of this liquor or drink, and then another Egg, and after that another hornful, and so a third Egg, and then a hornful, and lastly a fourth Egg, and so the residue of the liquor, remembring to give him into either nostril half a hornful of his drink, and it must be administred blood-warm; then set him upon the trench, cloath, stop,

ſtop, and litter him warm, and let him ſtand ſo four hours, then unbit him, and if it be Winter time give him ſweet Wheat-ſtraw, but no Hay; and if it be in Summer give him Graſs, green Corn, or the leaves of Sallows, and for nine days give him either ſweet Maſhes, or white-Water, putting therein ſome Sallet-oyl, and be you aſſured he will do well again. *** This is alſo very good. Another,

Take a Hedge-hog alive, and bake in the Oven in an earthen-pot, cloſe ſtopped until he do become ſo dry as that you may make him into fine powder; give him alſo of this powder one ſpoonful in a quart of good Ale every other day, and this will infinitely help and preſerve his wind. *** This is alſo ſpecial good.

SECT. 2. *W.*

Hippoph. IS *there ſuch a diſeaſe which is called the* Wild-fire?

Hippoſ. Yea Sir, there is, and it is a diſeaſe moſt dangerous and very difficult to cure, but by a Receipt of a powder which once I obtained of a skilful Chirurgion, which ſaid powder is not fit to be applyed to any living creature, but to a *horſe* only, it is ſo terrible. And thus it is to be made. *viz.*

Take of living Toads four, the greateſt and blackeſt can be found, living Moles or Ants three, and of old Shoo-ſoles ſix, and heads of Garlick unpilled, and with their beards and roots remaining upon them forty, then take of the leaneſt and ſalteſt Martlemas beef three pounds, cut it into thin and ſmall pieces and ſlices, ſuch Martlemas beef I mean which hath longeſt hanged in the ſmoak: take alſo of Oats eight pints, and of old woollen-rags the courſer the better two pounds; take alſo of Swallows dung a good quantity, and four or five living ſwallows, put all theſe things into an Earthen-pot new, and well nailed, and let it be big enough to be able to hold all the Ingredients, and put alſo thoſe living creatures among them alive, and then make a cake of Clay, and therewith lute up the Pot cloſe, as that neither ſmoak nor air can either get in or out; having ſo done carry your Pot into ſome Orchard or other

ther Cloſe, or Backſide, from Houſing or Straw, and there place it, and ſo make a great fire both round about it, and upon it, and ſo keep the fire upon the Pot, till it be as red hot as the very fire coals themſelves, and let the fire continue ſo great after the pot is red hot by the ſpace of half an hour at the leaſt: then let the fire remain untouched, until it be all conſumed to aſhes, and ſo go forth of it ſelf, without either quenching the ſame, or taking away any of the fire about it, and ſo let it ſtand till it be through cold, which will hardly be done the ſame day, ſo when the Pot is through cold, take it from the place, and opening it, take forth the ſtuff, and put it into ſome Trough or great Morter made for the purpoſe, which muſt ſtand in ſome out or open place where no wind can come, the Trough or Morter being covered with a cloth, that the powder may not fly away, then pound and ſtamp theſe things together into fine powder, and in the ſtamping, add thereunto of ſlaked-lime one pound. Let him that ſtampeth it be cloſe muffled, and his eyes covered with a glaſs caſe made for the purpoſe for fear of hurting them; and when it is throughly powdred, ſearſe the powder through a courſe hair-cloth, and ſo keep the very fineſt of the powder for your uſe in ſome clean glaſs or gally pot. This powder killeth all *Wild-fires* whatſoever, and all running Sorrances and Ulcers, provided it be applyed to fleſhly places, and not to places where *veins* or *ſinews* be, for that it will burn them in ſunder. *** This I have made ſundry times, and often uſed it, and to cure & dry up old ſores & Ulcers (this powder, being diſcreetly uſed and rightly applyed) a better thing then this truly I known not, eſpecially if the cure be either deſperate or dangerous.

SECT. 3. *W.*

Hippoph. *WHat good Plaiſter have you to lay upon a* Wound, *whereby to keep in the Taint or Salve?*

Hippoſ. Take Pitch, Roſin, Maſtick, Turpentine, Hogs-greaſe, of each ſo much as will ſuffice, melt all theſe together; and ſo keep it: and when you would uſe it, ſpread what will ſerve upon a plaiſter of Leather, and ſo cover the *Wounds.*

wound therewith. *** This ſalve doth infinitely comfort a *wound* green or old, be the ſame Fiſtula or otherwiſe. Very good.

SECT. 4. *W.*

Hippoph. *HOw do you take away a* Wen, *or other excretion ariſing in the* fleſh?

Hippoſ. A *Wen* is a hard riſing out of the *fleſh* which cometh ſometimes by bad humours, but moſt commonly by ſome Hurt, Stroke, Bruiſe, Blow, or with a ſtone thrown at that place, it is outwardly *fleſh*, but towards the root it is matterative, you need no ſigns whereby to know it, for it will betray it ſelf by its ſwelling. The cure is,

Wen or excretion. If you cannot come to tie a double thred about it whereby to eat it off, as I have formerly ſhewed you in the cure of a *ſpongy Wart*: then with your Inciſion knife cut it acroſs into four equal parts or quarters to the very bottom, but beware you touch not either veins or ſinews, then with Mercury eat away the four quarters, or elſe burn them off with your hot iron; then heal the place with your healing ſalve. *** This is very good.

SECT. 5. *W.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to take away* Wind-galls?

Hippoſ. Wind-galls are terrible ſorrances, which do breed in the *legs* of a *horſe*, as well on the outſide as on the inſide, a little above the *Fetlock joynt*, and by their ſwelling are plainly diſcovered, and made viſible to the *Eye*, for they be bladders, wherein lyeth a jelly, which being let forth is thick, and of the colour of the yolk of an Egg, whereof ſome will be bigger, and ſome leſſer. It cometh moſt commonly to *Horſes* in the Summer time, by reaſon they are ridden upon hard ground, and the *Horſe* being over-heat by two hard riding, his greaſe falleth down into his *legs*, and ſetleth there, and by that means breedeth this Malady, we call *Wind-galls*, and they will be ſo painful unto him as to cauſe him many times halt. The ſigns to know them are by the ſwellings

ſwellings in that place before named, which be moſt eaſie to be ſeen and felt. The cure is either to ſtrike with your Fleam or to open them with your Inciſion-knife, and to let and cruſh out all the congealed ſtuff which is therein, opening the place no further then through the skin, and you muſt be careful of the ſinew, which lyeth cloſe to that place: then,

Take the white of an Egg, and Oyl de-Bay ſo much as will ſuffice, incorporate them together, and apply it with Hurds, Plaiſter-wiſe, and in three or four days thus dreſſing it, he will be cured. **** Thus have I cured many *Horſes*. Another. After you have let forth the Jelly *wind-galls.*

Take Pitch, Roſin, and Maſtick, of each like much, boyl or but melt them together, and as it cooleth, make it up into rowls bigger or leſſer at your pleaſure, and being thorough cold, apply it with a hot iron to the orifice, and ſo round about the place of the ſorrance on either ſide of the leg, and ſo ſoon as you have laid on this charge, and before it can be cold, clap on Flocks, and this will dry up the Wind-galls, and heal them. **** This is ſpecial good. But during not only theſe two cures, but all other for this malady, you muſt not ſuffer your horſe to come into any Well by any means. Another. Firſt ſhave away the hair as you muſt do in all theſe kind of cures, then open the ſorrance as before is taught you, and cruſh forth the jelly and filth, then

Take Tacha-mahacha, Maſtick, Perroſin, of each to the quantity of a haſle-nut, with a little Brimſtone powder, melt all theſe together, and when it is molten, put in ſo much Turpentine as a Wall-nut, and ſo ſtir them together, and when it is cold make a plaiſter thereof upon leather, and apply it warm to the place upon the outſide, only upon the orifice which ought evermore to be made on the outſide, then put on the plaiſter it ſelf, and round about it with the ſame ſalve, and clap Flocks upon it, and ſo let him reſt in the Stable, and by keeping him from wet till he be whole, and let the plaiſter remain on until it ſhall fall away of it ſelf. **** This is a moſt excellent cure, and I have often made good uſe thereof. Another,

Take the Oyl of Vinegar, and dip your thumb therein, and rub the ſorrance therewith every day till the hair do fall

off, which will cauſe the Wind-galls to break out and bleed, and then heal and cure the Wind-galls well and ſoundly. *** This is as good as the former. Another. Waſh and ſhave as formerly is ſhewed you, then give fire to the place, that done, open the Wind-galls juſt in the middle line or ſtroak half an inch at leaſt, and ſo cruſh forth the jelly with your thumb, then

Take Pitch, Roſin, and Maſtick, of each like much, and therewith charge the place as before is taught you. This is very good. Another. Firſt waſh and ſhave, and open the place with your fleam, &c. then take of Oyl de-Bay, and of Turpentine, of each one ſpoonful, Verdigreaſe in fine powder, one penny-worth, the white of an Egg, and of red-Lead two ounces in powder, boyl all theſe to a ſalve, and adminiſter it to the place plaiſter-wiſe. *** This is one of the beſt cures for Wind-galls that I do know.

SECT. 6. *W.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good for a* horſe *that is wring or hurt in the* Withers *?*

Hippoſ. This is a thing that I have handled before, yet I will give you a few more receits. Having travelled him, and coming home, or to your Inn, when you take off the ſaddle, and that you do find the *horſe* to be wrung in the *withers*, and his back or *withers* thereby to be ſwelled, immediately clap on the Saddle again, and lay upon the ſwoln place ſome wet litter, and ſo let the Saddle abide on again; then cut up a thin Turf of graſs and earth together, that done, put the Turf upon the fire, and let it there remain till it becometh red-hot, and being well burned, take it from the fire, and moiſten the graſſy-ſide very well with white Wine-Vinegar, then take off the wet litter, and lay the Turf very hot with the graſſy-ſide next to the place, and ſo put on the Saddle again, and let it ſo remain for all night; and this preſently helpeth any ſwelling in the *withers*, or any other part of the back; as alſo any ſwellings by ſpur-galls or Navel-galls. *** This is very good. Another. If the skin be broken or ulcerated, then

withers.
wrung.

Take

Take ſweet Butter, Bay-ſalt, and powder of Frankincenſe, of each as much as will ſuffice, boyl all theſe upon the fire, and with a clout faſt'ned to the end of a ſtick, even as it cometh boyling from the fire, ſcald it two or three times, but if it be full of corruption then make inciſion on both ſides from beneath, that the matterative ſtuff may the more eaſily avoid away downwards, and after uſe none other thing, wherewith to heal it up, but only your uſual powder of Lime and Honey, which will heal that, or dry other ſuch like hurts. *** This is moſt excellent, I have often experimented the ſame. Another. But if it be a wrincle either in the ſhoulder or in any other joynt or member, then

Take of white-Wine one pint, half a porringer full of Wheat flower, of common Honey one pint, of Syzes three ounces, boyl all theſe together to an Unguent, and anoint the places grieved therewith. And this alſo is very ſoveraign for Cones, Cracks, and chops in the heels of the *horſe*. *** This I often uſing have found it to be very good. Another.

Take three great Onions, pick forth the cores, making a concavity or hollowneſs in them, then fill them up with the powder of Frankincenſe, then wrap them up in three or four handfuls of Hurds or Tow, then wet the Hurds, and ſo cover and heal them up in the hot embers, and lay upon the top of the embers a good Shovel-full of hot burning coals, and ſo let it remain until the onions be throughly roſted, then take them forth and ſeparate the Hurds, and burned part from the other, and the ſoft and pappy-part you ſhall apply to the ſorrance very hot, and let it remain three days before it be removed, and do thus ſo oft as need ſhall require, until it be through whole, but unleſs the hurt or bruiſe be very great, it will be cured at firſt dreſſing. *** This is very good. Another. But if the place grieved be broken, Take then of the Oyl of Worms, of Turpentine and common Honey of each two ounces, incorporate all theſe together very well till you have brought them to be one body, and either by Taint or Plaiſter dreſs the ſorrance therewith, and it will heal it up ſound. *** And this alſo is very good. Another. If your Horſe hath taken a wrench in the ſhoulder, or in the hip, knee or hoof; then firſt ſwim him, then after, for thir-

teen

teen or fourteen days together, anoint the member grieved all over; and a good way about with this Unguent.

Take of the Oyl de-Bay, of Nerval, or Dialthea, of tryed Hogs-greaſe, of each two ounces, melt all theſe together, and ſtir them well till they be well incorporated, and herewith anoint him againſt the hair, with a hot bar of iron to be holden before you as you anoint him, and after let him be rowelled with a *French* Rowel, and let a Patten-ſhooe be put upon the contrary foot, and let him be kept in the houſe, and the Rowel turned daily, and the corruption put forth, and let him be either gently ridden or walked every day half an hour, and let the Rowel remain in the Horſe fourteen days at the leaſt, then take it out, and heal up the orifice with your green Ointment, and ſo ſoon as he is whole, with your cauterizing iron draw croſs lines eight or nine inches long over againſt the joynt that was pained, ſo as the rowelled place may be in the middle, but yet burn him no deeper then that the skin may look yellow, and then charge all that place with this charge.

Take Pitch one pound, Roſin half a pound, and Tar half a pint, melt theſe together, and whilſt it is warm, charge the place therewith, and clap flocks upon the charge, and then if the ſeaſon of the year will ſerve, let him be turned to graſs, and ſo let him run three months at the leaſt. *** This is very good.

SECT. 7. *W.*

Hippoph. *WHat is good to cure worms of what ſort ſoever in a* Horſe?

Hippoſ. Of this malady I have treated ſufficiently before in the *ſect.* of Bots, where I have given you many good receits. Nevertheleſs I will give you one or two more for Worms only, and ſo leave you to practiſe.

Take the intrails of a great Chick, and with the powder of Brimſtone and Bay-ſalt rowled in the ſaid entrails, give it him down his throat, and cauſe him to ſwallow them ſo warm as they come out of the belly of the Chicken, but caſt away the Gizard, give him this three mornings together, and every

ry time ride or walk him till he dungeth, and keep him warm, and give him white-Water, and at three days end give him Rice boyled in water, and after dryed in the Sun, and give him alſo to eat the leaves of ſallows, and it will cauſe him to void the worms with his ordure, but if you ſhall rake him firſt, it will be the better. *** This is very good. Another.

Take the tender tops of Broom and Saven, of each half a handful, chop them very ſmall, and work them into Pills with ſweet Butter, and having kept your horſe faſting over-night, give him then in the morning, to wit, three of thoſe Pills at a time, and then ſet him upon the Trench for two or three hours after, and then give him meat, but no drink at all till night by any means, and then let him have warm, but no white-Water. *** This I have often experienced, and do know it to be a moſt excellent receit.

CHAP. XXIV.

SECT. 1. Y.

Hippophylus.

WHat is your beſt Cure for the Yellows?

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe of the *Yellows* in a Horſe is the very ſame that Phyſicians do call the Jaundiſe in a man; and as there be two ſorts of Jaundiſe in a man, ſo alſo are there the like in a horſe, *viz.* the Yellow and the Black, the yellow being moiſt, the black dry, the yellow proceeding from the overflowing of the gall, occaſioned of choler, and the black coming from the overworking of the Spleen, by means of over much melancholly, both bad infirmities, but the black worſt, more dangerous and moſt mortal, the yellow is more eaſily diſcovered by reaſon of its colour, for it colloureth the whites of the eyes, the tongue, the lips, and the inward parts of his noſtrils, which the black Jaundiſe doth not apparently, albeit by due and ſtrict obſervation, you may come to know when your horſe hath

a

a black Jaundiſe, for then you ſhall perceive the whites of his eyes, lips, tongue and mouth to be a thick and duskiſh colour, and not ſo clear, and ſanguine as before when he was not viſited with any ſuch infirmity, both which are ſo mortal (eſpecially the latter) as that if very great care be not taken whereby to pry into its ſymptomes, the Horſe may fall down upon a ſudden (as I have often ſeen and known) even as he travelleth, and dye; or elſe he appearing to be ſound and healthy, and to eat his meat like as he was accuſtomed over night when you left him, coming again unto him in the morning, you may find him dead, ſtiff and cold. And the origen of this malady cometh principally of unkindly and unnatural heats, given him by moſt violent and intemperate riding, whereby the Liver becometh inflamed; the Liver, the Blood, Gall, and the Spleen, which cauſeth choller to have ſoveraignty and dominion over the humours, and ſo engendreth this perillous diſeaſe, which ſeldom bringeth a lingring or languiſhing death, but that which endeth him ſuddenly, and therefore is moſt requiſite that the greater eye and care be had unto it. The beſt ſymptoms how to know it is thus. Your horſe will be dry in his body, mouth and noſtrils, being marvellous hot through the abundance of choller that reigneth in him, and he will be very gaunt in his belly towards the flanks, he will be alſo very faint and not only ſweat upon every the leaſt motion, but alſo as he ſtandeth in the Stable: his eyes, the inſide of the lips, mouth, and tongue, will be yellow as ſaffron, and he will ſeldom lie down, and being laid, he will ſometimes groan. The cure. Firſt let him blood in the neck and mouth, and let him bleed well, then give him this drink.

Yealows. Take of Turmerick and long Pepper, of each one pennyworth, Ann iſeeds and Licoris in fine powder and ſearced, of each half a ſpoonful, Selendine, the leaves and roots one handful, chop, ſtamp, and ſtrain the Selendine, and ſo put all theſe together into ſtrong Ale one quart, warm this upon the fire, and in the warming add unto it of *London* Treacle one ounce, and of ſweet Butter the quantity of an Egg, and give him white-Water, and he will do well. *** This is very good. Another. Firſt bloody him as before, and then

Take

Take Turmerick, Myrrha, Ivory, or Harts-horn, of each half an ounce, Saffron one penny-worth, make all theſe into fine powder, and ſearce them, and put unto it the juyce of Selendine a good quantity, put all theſe into Muskadine, one pint Sack or Ale, and let it boyl upon the fire a walm or two, then put unto it of ſweet Butter as much as will ſuffice, and of *London* Treacle one ounce, and ſo give it him blood warm, but let him firſt be raked. This is very good. Another. Firſt bloody him as before, then

Take of white-Wine one quart, of Saffron two drams, and of Turmerick half an ounce, and a good quantity of the juyce of Selendine; give him this blood warm, and keep him warm, and give him white-Water. *⁂* This is very good. Another. Firſt let him blood, as you are preſcribed before, then

Take of ſweet Wine one pint, of ſtrong Ale and Beer one quart, and put unto it of the juyce of Selendine ſix ſpoonfuls, and of the juice of Rue two ſpoonful, and let all theſe boyl upon the fire a little, then ſtrain into it of Engliſh Saffron half an ounce, and put into it of Life-honey three ounces, and ſo give it him blood-warm, then leap his back, and ſo ride or elſe walk him a foot-pace a quarter of an hour, then ſet him up warm, letting him to faſt three hours after, and after give him meat, and a ſweet Maſh, or white-Water. *⁂* This is very good. Another. Bloody him as before. Then

Take of the beſt Life-honey half a pound, of Saffron made into fine powder, and of the powder of Fenugreek of each ſo much as will ſuffice, incorporate theſe with your Honey to a ſtiff paſte, and ſo make thereof three Pills, and dipping them into Sallet oyl, give them to your horſe, which after he hath taken ride or walk him gently an hour, then ſet him up warm, and order him as before. *⁂* This is a particular good Pill. Another. Firſt let him blood as before; then take of white-Wine one quart, or Ale to the ſame quantity, and put therein of Saffron one ounce, and Turmerick one ounce, both made into fine powder, with the juyce of Selendine ſo much as will ſuffice, and give him this blood-warm, and order him as before. *⁂* This alſo is very good.

SECT. 2. Y.

Hippoph. *What cure have you for the mattering of the Yard?*

Hippoſ. This diſeaſe cometh commonly in Covering-time, by overmuch ſpending upon *Mares*, for that the heat of the *Mares*, and the *Horſes* own heat and Coity doth burn the *Horſe*, giving him the running of the reins, as we truly term it. And the ſigns to know it is, you ſhall perceive the end of the *Yard* to be ſwelled, and when he piſſes you may obſerve him to do it with much pain, and you may alſo ſee at other times the *Yard* to drop with yellow matter. The cure. Give him firſt a purge preſcribed you in *l.* 2. *c.* 16. *ſect.* 14. *let. P.* and it is the firſt Purgation which will eaſe his pain in piſſing; then next day

Take Roch-Allum one ounce, and white-Wine one pint, boyl them till the Allum be diſſolved, then blood-warm inject this Potion with a Syringe, putting it up into his *Yard* ſo far as may be, four or five times a day till it be well. *** This is a perfect cure; nor ſhall you need any other.

The Jockies Maſter-piece, or Advice to the Traders in Horſe-fleſh, &c.

THere cannot be too much ſaid of this Excellent Creature, ſo neceſſary and ſerviceable to Man. Wherefore notwithſtanding the many Treatiſes that have been written on this Subject; I think it no ways inconvenient, but altogether profitable to inlarge and lay down ſuch Rules and plain Directions, as may beſt Adminiſter Satisfaction to the Curious, eſpecially in ſuch a manner as will render matters eaſie and attainable, in all Caſes neceſſary to the knowledge and ordering a Horſe; and ſo without further Ceremoney I ſhall proceed according to Method and Order.

Directions to chooſe your Breeders, and how to order them in all Reſpects.

THat it is altogether neceſſary to be careful in chooſing your Breeders, if you intend to rear good Horſes and Mares, none will object againſt, as alſo to obſerve times and ſeaſons in putting your Stallions to your Mares, *&c.*

Firſt then let your Stallions be of an able and compleat body, in good caſe, but not over lean or foggy. Now the marks whereby you may chuſe him or indeed know any good Horſe, are theſe; let his Head be ſmall and lean, his Cheek-bones even and ſmall, not ſtanding far aſunder, his Mouth well compacted and moiſt, though not ſubject to ſlaver; his Eyes great and bloody, ſtanding as it were like Eagles-Eyes out of his Head, his Ears ſhort, thin and ſtanding upright, his Noſtrils wide and plyable, his Neck ſoft and

The deſcription of a good Horſe.

broad, bending Arch-wiſe, his Creſt ſtiff, his Main thick and inclining to the right ſide, his Breaſt great and broad, his Shoulders large and ſtrait, the Sides turning inward, the Ridg-bone over the Soulder being ſomewhat high which affords the better Seat, his Sides deep, well knit behind and ſomething bowed up; which is better for the Rider, and ſignifies great ſtrength, his Loins large and his Belly well compacted, not hanging or paunching out, his Stones neatly hung, his Tail long, briſtly and curled, his Thighs large and well Brawned, his Knees round Flexible and ſmall, not bowing inward nor being ſtiff, his Legs even ſtrait and not over-fleſhy, his Hoofs firm and ſound, neither too long nor too ſhort; and according to theſe directions, you may make choice of your Mares, and be directed in buying; of which I ſhall more amply treat hereafter.

How to order and oblige your Mare to receive the Horſe.

Thus having choſen, handle your Mares, and make them gentle before you put your Stallion to them, for if they be wild and unruly, they will never receive the Horſe as they ought, and by that defect render the Colt weak, and incapable of making a perfect Horſe, which is beſt to be effected by driving or leading them from one Paſture to another, and giving them Meat out of your hand, which you muſt begin to do, when they are two years old and vantage; but for good Colts ſuffer them not to take horſe till three years old or upwards, the Stallion being four or five, and then having well kept your Stallion, put the Mare you deſign to have covered, into a cloſe and warm Paſture, and put a ſmall Stone-Nag, to render her Tractable, and invite her to Copulation, ſo that perceiving her willing, take him away and ſuffer the Stallion to enter, when the more to incite him thereto, rub his Noſe with a Sponge, which has firſt been in the Mares Privity; which having provoked him to effect your deſire, by covering the Mare you deſign twice or thrice, take him up and being well Provendered, put him to the Mare again the next Evening, and that Night let him cover her as often as he will, and ſo will ſhe be Sped. But if the Mare refuſe to receive the Horſe, rub her Privy parts with Cow-itch, Pepper, or a ſtrong Onion.

If your Mare be ſatisfyed at twice putting the Stallion to her

her, which you may perceive by her biting or ſtriking at him, put him to her no more, but put her into a warm Paſture, and look well to her till ſhe has Foaled: In which if ſhe prove uneaſie or difficult, you muſt help her with your hands. *How to know when your Mare is Sped, and to order her afterwards.*

The beſt time to be covered, is from the end of *May* to the end of *July*; ſo that by ſuch means the Mare going Eleven Months, will bring forth at ſuch a time, as the Weather will be warm, and the Earth repleniſhed with Graſs.

A Stallion uſed after the aforeſaid manner, being well looked to, will laſt for ſix or ſeven years, each year to cover ſeven or eight Mares, and between whiles do Service over and above; but more particularly at the time your Stallion ſhall be put up for covering, let him feed on the beſt Hay, and have every Noon half a peck of Oats, and a quart of Beans, and now and then ſweet ſhort Graſs.

Within fifteen days of the Mares Foaling-time, take her from the ſtud, and put her into a ſweet Paſture, where ſhe ſhall find no occaſion to ſtrain her ſelf by attempting to leap, *&c.* and hearten her between whiles with Oats waſhed in new Wort or new Ale, and the better to rear the Colt, by the proportion of whoſe Limbs as ſoon as Foaled, you may diſcern his future goodneſs, let him have ſtore of Milk and dry Lodging, taking him up in ſtormy or Exceſſive rainy Weather. Now the time that a Mare is capable of bearing to advantage, is from three years to ten, and the Horſe of getting from five to twelve.

To wean your Colts the beſt time in the year if fair and warm, is at Candlemas on Shrovetide next following his Foaling, bringing him into a warm Houſe, and feaſting him with ſweet Provender, and ſometimes a little Milk, having removed him out of hearing the Mares Neighing, leſt by hankering after her he pine away, and become regardleſs of his Suſtenance, and when the Weather is fair, turn him or them into adjacent dry Paſtures, well fenced and yielding ſweet Graſs, not being rank nor too near the Ground. *How to order your Colts.*

When your Colt is two years old or ſomewhat more, let him feed in ſhort Paſture, and be help with fine Hay of the latter cut, that ſo by his Grazing along he may ſtir his body

to

to get his Belly full, but by no means let him lye wet or be put into damp ground; for that it is that deſtroys many brave Horſes, by reaſon of cold and moiſt Diſeaſes contracted in their tender Age, and thereby much leſſens the eſteem of the Engliſh breed in general, when indeed no Country is ſo capable of producing ſtately Horſes, were but the management accordingly. It having been the opinion of the moſt experienced: That if that particular were better obſerved, neither *Spain*, *Turky*, *Barbary*, *Friezland*, *Theſſalia*, *Holland*, *Peloponneſus*, nor *Artois*, ſo famed for excellent breeds, could compare with the product of our Native Country. And therefore I ſhall proceed ſomewhat largely on this point.

Backing too ſoon, a great fault.

The firſt thing next to obſerving their Diet, and well ordering, when young, that obſtructs their Arrival to the hight of perfection, is their being taken up too ſoon. To which many will object it, our Horſes being great and well fed, if not taken up in time will be Head-ſtrong and unruly; inſomuch that it will be difficult and dangerous, if not impoſſible to break them; which opinion is grounded upon a weak Foundation, for even from their being Foaled, they may be made Tame by continual handling, and uſing to take Meat from their Keeper, and by degrees laying ſmall Weights upon them, not any ways capable of Prejudicing their growth, may be Innured to the Saddle; and the ſame may done in caſe of the Bridle, by uſing ſoft Liſts or a ſmall Cord, or if this be at firſt neglected, yet by watching and hunger, they may in ſix Weeks time be brought to a ready complyance, ſo that they will ſuffer you to rub them, take up their Feet, pick them, and ſound their Hoofs.

How to make Horſes Tame.

Another thing to remove this Error, is by putting them to Tame Horſes and Mares, whoſe Example they will learn to imitate, & loſe their fear from the beginning, as alſo patient of bearing the Saddle and Bridle, by it's being often ſhewn them, and hung up by them, when at any time they are houſed. But to be plain, the main reaſon why they are ſo ſoon backed, is grouuded upon Intreſt for that the owner will not keep them upon the Spoil longer then neceſſity requires; & their common time of Backing is at four years, which gives a Check to the Galantry of the Horſes, and renders them incapable of ſuch

ſuch performances, as if they remained till ſix years they would be capable of manifeſting, and will inable them to continue much longer Serviceable, then they ordinarily do.

Having thus far proceeded, I ſhall move to the next thing abſolutely neceſſary, which is, the ordering a Horſe in his Diet after backing, and training him up for Racing, Hunting, War, Travel, *&c.*

What is requiſite to be obſerved, in training a Horſe for Racing, War, Travel, &c.

YOur Colt being become a Horſe, and made tractable by a skilful hand, it is left to your diſcretion, to what end or purpoſe you deſign him, yet let it be what it will his Diet in general and looking to, ought to be as followeth.

Let your Keeper be an Experienced careful Perſon, not an Eye Servant, leſt in your abſence, your Horſe or Horſes be ſpoyled through his neglect, for he muſt be up with the day-light every morning, to tend and dreſs them, and be greatly diligent therein; when to begin let him give to each horſe three pints, or two quarts of ſweet dry Oats, adding a pint of Spelt Beans, and then before watering, let him dreſs them according to Art, *viz.* Firſt curry them over with an Iron-Comb, then with a French bruſh, duſting them over with a Duſting-Cloth, then muſt he rub them with his wet hands, and ſo with a clean Woollen-cloth, and afterwards with a Linnen one, obſerving to cleanſe their Sheaths, Cods, Noſe, Eyes, Ears, and between their Thighs, ſo that no moiſture remain on them; which done, Comb their Mains and Tails; then putting on their Saddles or Cloths, Ride them forth to water moderately, not obliging them to ſweat, cauſing them by the way to Stale, by riding them into Stuble, Buſhes, Brakes, or ſmelling to ſuch Horſe-dung, as you ſhall meet within the Road. *Of Diet and uſage in general.*

Having well Watered your Horſes, bring them into the Stable, and rub them down as before, beginning always at the head, and ſo deſcending downwards by degrees, ſuffering them when Clothed to ſtand in their Bridles for the

ſpace

ſpace of an hour, giving them the ſame quantity of Provender as before, and caſting a pretty bundle of Hay into the Rack, that they may tear it out, and by that means keep themſelves in Exerciſe, and ſo ſuffer them to ſtand till about one of the Clock, and at that time let their meat be renewed as before, and from that time adjourn till eight or nine at night, repeat the ſame a fourth time, when having rubbed them and tolled up their Litter, ſuffer them to reſt till morning; and in like manner day by day, which is not only a cheap, but an excellent way to keep Horſes in health and good caſe. But if at any time you travel, and have not opportunity to be exact in the time, you muſt according to the giving double the quantity, or at leaſt augment it according to the times you beſtow it, obſerving to give the leaſt quantity firſt, for the oftner and leſſer quantity is given, the better it digeſts and turns into good Nutriment, and his eating will be freer and cleaner then otherwiſe it would be.

If you intend to give a heat, as to Hunt, Gallop, Travel, or the like; which is neceſſary for the exerciſing of good Horſes, to be obſerved once a Week at the leaſt: give him the Oats and Beans, but no Hay, and let his Oats be over and above well ſifted, and waſhed in Beer or Ale, eſpecially thoſe he has in the Morning before his firſt dreſſing.

After heat, *&c.* rub him or them very well, beginning at the head, and by degrees deſcending to every part, not leaving till he is throughly dry, and in good order, leſt molten greaſe ſhould contract, or humours that occaſion the Glanders ſettle, ſuffer him when cloathed to ſtand on his Bridle for the ſpace of two hours; at the end of which feed him as you have directed, only adding a handful of Hemp-ſeed to his firſt Oats.

The Evening come warm him a little Water, and ſcatter a ſmall quantity of Bran in it, and ſuffer him to drink it an hour before he has his laſt Bait or Portion of meat, and then putting a ſmall bundle of Hay into the Rack, let him ſtand or lye upon good Litter all night, and the next morning repeat your labour and care as before.

Obſerve for the benefit of your horſe in any journey, to ride

ride moderately for a Mile or two, that your beaſt may heat by degrees, and the better feel his Legs; for if you do otherwiſe he will be apt to tire, and in the end it will ſubject him to founder. And if any opportunity offer before you come to your Inn or reſting-place, water him, ſo that riding a Mile or two after, the cold humours may not have power to ſettle about his Stomach or in his Belly, *&c.* *What is to be obſerved in journying.*

When you come into your Inn, beſure to ſee your horſe well rubbed down, and if durty his Legs waſhed with warm water, and then, if you can get it, ſupple them, eſpecially about the joynts, with Neats-foot-Oyl, which will innable him to indure Travel to admiration.

Thus far having proceeded, I think it not amiſs to deſcribe the beſt, and moſt commodious Stable for good Horſes, and the order to be obſerved therein for the better Accommodation.

Your Stable muſt be built in a dry place, to avoid as much as poſſible wetting the Horſes-hoof, let it be ſo built that the Windows made therein may open towards the South and North, to receive the warm Air in the Winter, and the cold in the Summer, not being made too dark or too light, by reaſon the former will dazle him when he comes abroad, and the latter render him careleſs in feeding. Let the Rack be as high as a Horſe can well reach, and the Manger placed even with his Breaſt, with a convenient Sink to carry away the Stale. The beſt bottom is ſtrong flat Stone, ſo well laid down that all the Stale may run off as ſoon as voided, the which in caſe of Planks it cannot do, by reaſon they will lye hollow in ſome place or other, and ſo conſequently it muſt ſink under them, or get into the Crevices, and by that means annoy the Horſe; obſerve further that the Stable be cleanſed every Morning and Night, and that the Litter which muſt be Wheat-ſtraw, be renewed each Morning, and toſſed up each Evening, and ſo will your Horſe or Horſes thrive to your wiſh. *The deſcription of the moſt Commodious Stable.*

What is required in order to prepare Horſes for Racing, Hunting, War, Travel, &c.

IF you deſign a Horſe for any particular Exerciſe, you muſt if poſſible innure him to it when young, nor is it poſſible that any one Horſe can be capable of divers Exerciſes, ſo as to perform them with dexterity, or be as expert in the one as the other, for it is ſeen in thoſe whoſe owners are deſirous to oblige them thereto, that whilſt they practiſe all, they are never capable, or at leaſt perfect in any; nor can any one horſe carry himſelf compleatly in all paces, for could he perform the latter, there might be a probability of the former. Now if you deſign to train your Horſe chiefly to Racing, you muſt Morning and Evening give him gentle Breathings, before and after Sun-ſet, and try him up all manner of grounds, Galloping him moderately up Hills, and pacing him down, ſo that by Innuring him thereto, he will be fitly qualified for all advantages; then to bring him into an eaſie and ſwift pace, there is no better way then the Tramel, tho ſome are for riding or leading their Horſes in ploughed Land with great Weights on them, which I utterly diſallow; for it not only weakens the Horſe in all parts, but makes that tedious and uneaſie, which would otherwiſe be pleaſant and delightful, and others again for loading them with heavy Shoes. The beſt Tramel is made of fine twiſted Cord, which muſt be faſtened to the right fore Leg, and the left hinder Leg, and ſo the other two; the Cords being of an equal length, not too ſhort, leſt it cauſe him to Trip, nor too long leſt he outſtretch, and mind not or be ignorant what you would have him do, but fitted to each Leg, when he ſtands fair and in juſt Proportion, and the knots ſo faſt'ned, that they may neither ſlip nor gaul his Fetlocks. To ſupport them, take Tape, Girthwoof, or Liſts, and bring them over his back, ſo that you may not fret him, then try him firſt by hand, and when you perceive he manages his Legs to the purpoſe, in a ſmooth way mount his back, having one to lead him in a long reined Snaffle, and with your Switch and Calves of your Legs, manage him to the

Of the Racing-Horſe.

Of the Tramel and its uſe.

the beſt advantage, ſometimes riding him with a double, and ſometimes with a ſingle Tramel, and as he grows perfect, uſe him to more difficult Grounds, and when he does well cheriſh him, and when on the contrary, rate him exceedingly, but ſtrike him not, and by ſuch means being brought to underſtand what he is to do, he will perform it with delight.

Having by this time, by your diligence cauſed your Horſe to underſtand the uſe of the Saddle, Bridles, and every Check and motion, commonly called helps or corrections; as the voice of the Rod, the Calves of the Legs, the moving of your Body, the Spur, the Stirrop, the Calves of your Legs, *&c.* Uſe great diligence to make him tread his ground, ſo as he may on all occaſions be ſure footed, and keep a ſtrait and even Path without writhing his head or turning out of the way, ſtartling or ſuddainly altering his motion, and in ſuch ſort will he be fitted for any Race, and unqueſtionably bear away the prize, if not unequall matched, eſpecially if he be dieted well; for that purpoſe directions for which you may find at the end of *Markhams*-Maſter-piece; a Book eſpecially well approved, and whither for brevities ſake I refer you.

To order your Horſe in Training him to the War.

If you deſign your Horſe for the Wars, order him in the manner following. Having taught him to bound and rebound, and uſe a lofty carriage by ſteadily, and to advantage managing your Reins, ſo that his head may neither mount too high, ſink too low, nor ſtand too far out; then bring him into a ploughed Field, and chooſing a deep furrough, enter it, Trotting him therein divers times upon the Streight-line, not permitting any Excurſion, the which having done backwards and forwards, make him obſerve divers ſudden ſtops, and Bearing or Wheeling to the right and the left. Then making an Excurſion to the right, make him tread out a Ring of about 25 or 30 Paces in Circumference, and the like on the left ſide the Furrow, making him go twice [illegible]rely round, then mending his ſpace, let him with a lofty T[illegible]ot begin again on the right hand, and ſo coming round, enter upon the left Ring, and do it ſo often till he has performed he right Ring ſix times, and the left four times, and then

over again, uſing it Morning and Evening till he is perfect, then uſe him to the full Carieer, ſtop, half ſtop, ſwift turn, and ſuddain facing, which would be better done at the poſt with the help of the long Rein, the Wand and Calves of the Legs; as thus, having brought your horſe to a Poſt ſet up for that purpoſe, and one to aſſiſt you with a Rein faſtened to the rings of a half Cannon Bit or a Scatch, you having mounted his back, let your aſſiſtant hold him to the poſt with his head facing it, ſuppoſing it an Enemy, but ſo that he may have liberty freely to move; then with your Rod ſtrike him on the Flanks and Buttocks, ſo that he may move his back parts ſwiftly, his head and fore-legs not appearing to ſtir from their center, and when he is perfect therein, then ſet his Back-parts to the Poſt, and by the help aforeſaid, let his fore-parts move ſwiftly round, or at leaſt bring him to do ſo by degrees, the which will make him Expert at facing an Enemy and Moving in War to ſuch advantage, that he may never loſe his Ground, or be out of order.

The next thing to be conſidered in caſe of War, is to oblige him to ſtop in full Carieer, and wheel to the right, and which muſt be done with deliberation, that your Horſe may the better underſtand it; and to effect it, ride him in a half Scatch a convenient pace, when on a ſuddain bearing your body back a little, give him a gentle Check, and make him move three paces backward, and then let him go forward again, and mending his pace do the like; ſo that he may at length come to underſtand it, and by that means upon the leaſt motion by often uſing, he will ſtop in full Carieer; eſpecially if you cheriſh him when he does well, and rate him with your voice when he does ill.

To oblige your Horſe to turn to the right and the left, or ſuddainly face about, you muſt have a rod, in which Needles are ſtuck, and being on plain ground, gently ſtrike him on the contrary ſide you would have him turn to, and at the ſame time with the like gentleneſs direct his head, permitting him to make two or three offers before he turns, and then ſo order him on the other ſide.

When you would have him face about, clap your Spurs

or

or the Calves of your Legs to him ſuddainly, when he is in a full Trot or Gallop, and with your hand reſtrain him, pulling the rein on that ſide you are deſirous to move him, ſuffering the Cheek of the Bridle to have a little wire ſharpned in it, ſo that if he refuſe to comply, you may check him, and at the ſame time ſtrike him behind gently, not forgetting to cheriſh him when he readily obeys, and in ſo often uſing him upon all places, you may bring your horſe to effect your deſire.

The beſt pace for a War horſe, is a lofty bounding Trot, carrying his head Arch-wiſe, and ſtrongly Champing on the Bit, and to make him take up his Legs the better, you muſt Rein him ſhort, and as it were by drawing him back, prevent his large Steps, making him cut them in halfs, and every hundred paces give him a ſide turn, a quarter to the right; and the like to the left.

Thus having inured him to his carriage, the next thing to be conſidered is how to harden him, and ſo well acquaint him with the poſtures of War and Warlike Inſtruments, that he will abide without the leaſt Conſternation, the noiſe of Guns, glittering of Swords, or ratling of Spears, and of theſe in their order.

Firſt acquaint him with the Rod, ſo that he may be in no wiſe fearful thereof in any poſture, uſing it to all parts about him, rarely keeping it out of his ſight, when being familiar therewith, let ſome footman having a ſtaff in his hand ſtand in your way, and as you move towards him by degrees, let him offer at the Horſes Head; upon which with gentle incouragement oblige your horſe to move forward, and retire back as you ſee occaſion, but not to toſs up his head, nor throw it on one ſide, and by ſo uſing him often he will become leſs fearful.

When he dares indure the ſtaff, oblige him in like manner to abide the Sword, but let that Party that holds the one or the other beware he ſtrike him not, leſt thereby he diſcourage him and ſpoil him for the future. This done, let divers perſons ſtand on Foot in the way, and incounter him with loud ſhouts, having Swords and Staves in their hands, and by degrees mend his pace a full Gallop, at what time

time let him break through them, whilſt they ſeem to retire as in flight and confuſion, and by often ſo doing, he will be imboldened to make any attempt in charging.

To make him ſo hardy, as to indure with patience the thundring of Cannons or noiſe of Drums and Trumpets; let him go in the company of ſuch horſes as have been inured to the Wars, and coming into a narrow place, where divers perſons are planted with Drums, Trumpets, Muſquets, Piſtols and Blunderbuſes, force him on, whilſt they give fire, beat the Drum, and ſound the Trumpet, and if he ſtart or recoil gently, draw him off, and face again, trying him the ſecond time, and ſo the third with encouraging Words and good Management, till by the example of the other Horſes he breaks through, and returns to the charge afreſh with like fury, the which he will in a ſhort time take pleaſure in. And thus much for the War-Horſe.

How to order your Horſe in Training him to Hunting.

If you deſign to train up your Horſe for Hunting, bring him to a running pace, and Gallop more then uſualy ſwift, the former of which you may do by leading him in a long Snaffle, and running with him in your hand, whilſt one with a Whip follows you; when having practiſed it often, mount his Back with ſharp Spurs and a ſteady Bit, then ride him ſomewhat up Hill, and then fiercely upon the Plain, ſuffering him to have at one time more Weight then at another, that ſo he may (finding himſelf light) run with pleaſure, obſerving always how he takes up his Legs, and that he throw not up his hinder parts, go outwards nor interfere; having brought him by often uſe to a ſwift pace, commonly called a Racking-pace, uſe him to the Gallop, making him fall often out of the one into the other, Galloping him moderately upon all grounds as well high as low, often riding amongſt the Brakes, Buſhes and Bryers, that he may neither ſtart at them nor ſhun them upon occaſion, and coming into a plain Field where the Ground is ſoft, let two men hold a Pole a conſiderable highth between [illegible] over which oblige him to leap, and if he chance to [illegible] thereon, then muſt they let it fall for his better encouragement, then try him again, ſometimes leading him

in

in a long Rein, and ſometimes ſitting on his Back, till he is apt to take the leap; the which you may oblige him to, by Checking a little, Striking on the knees,& Clapping on the neck, being expert at the Pole, try him over a ſhallow Trench broad, according to his reach, and ſo by degrees over a Style, Ditch, Rail or Gate, exerciſing him ſo every Morning and Evening, yet beware that he break not his knees, for that will diſcourage him, and render him fearful. Having thus trained him, uſe him to the ſound of the Horn, and cry of the Hounds, riding amongſt Horſes that have been trained up to the ſport, and at any time when you ride out on that occaſion, give him the powder of Licoriſh and Cummin-ſeed, made up into a Ball to the Weight of two ounces, with ſweet Butter,and the juyce of Sage, and after it a pint of hot Ale or Beer, and it will wonderfully prolong his Breath, and prevent him from tiring.

How to order your Horſe for Travel

For Travel if you deſign your Horſe, you muſt in ſome meaſure acquaint him with the Trot, the Amble, the Gallop and Racking-pace, that by falling out of one into the other as well as he can, he may take the advantage of all ways, and mightily eaſe himſelf when to make him hold his Journey the better, at his ſetting out give him three ounces of the juyce of Smallage in a pint of Red-wine, ſweetened with brown Sugar-Candy, and anoint his Limbs with Neats-foot-oyl, or for want of it with Hogs-lard well warmed, chafing it in with your hands, and when you ſet out, ride gently the three firſt Miles, and ſo by degrees mend your pace, when if you find him through defect, or tediouſneſs of the way to tire, put Arſmart a Herb ſo called under his Saddle, if the Seaſon affords it, or for want of that a few young Nettles under his Tail, faſtned to the Crupper or Pebles in his Ears, or the like; but leſt you ſpoil your Horſe, beſure when you Inn him that he be thorowly dry, and that he be well rubbed down, and dieted before you take your repaſt. And thus much as to theſe particulars, leaving which I ſhall next proceed to deſcribe ſeveral Vices incident to Horſes, and the remedies to help or prevent them.

Of

Of Vices in Horſes, and by what means to prevent, correct, and remedy them.

AMongſt other things the following diſcourſe is altogether neceſſary to be obſerved, on it conſiſts the well or ill management of a Horſe, and rendring Serviceable and Tractable or the contrary, for the Vices are ſuch things as happen either by Nature or evil Cuſtom, and firſt I ſhall begin with the head and neck.

Wry Head and Neck.

If your Horſe carry his Head and Neck awry or unhandſome, obſerve to which ſide he inclines it, and having plainly ſeen it, correct him by ſtriking him twice or thrice with the contrary Spur, but if he be very ſtiff-necked on the right ſide, and ſoft plying or bending on the left, then uſually hold the right Rein ſhorter then the other, and when you perceive him to incline that way, give him ſuddain Checks, having a ſharp Wire faſtened in the Rein, that ſtriking in his Neck it may oblige him to hold his head ſtrait, obſerving to Check him upwards as much as you ſee convenient, leſt if you do the contrary, he fall into another Vice, which is ducking down his Head on every ſlight occaſion, and ſo by often uſing him he will underſtand your meaning.

Unevenneſs in the lower part of the Head.

If your Horſe carry not right the lower part of his head, commonly called the Moſel, ride him with a Mouſrole, putting three ſhort, but ſharp Nales on the inſide of his Portsmouth, and the like in his Mouſrole, and if in ſuch ſort he carry his whole head awry, then put the like on his Head-ſtall, or the contrary Cheek; ſuffering them to be ſo faſtened, that they may not eaſily ſtart aſide or fall out, and then by gentle touches make him feel them, the which he often doing will become fearful in offending in the like nature; ten days continuance is enough, and more may prejudice him by making the places feſter, yet at any time when you ride him without, if upon the leaſt effect you ſuddainly ſtir the Bridle, the Terror of the former Pain will make him ſenſible of the fault, and induce him to amend it.

If your Horſe duck down his head, which is an unſeemly ſight,

ſight, make him upon the place where he doth it, bring his head into juſt and due proportion, by Checking him ſuddainly with the Bridle, and ſtriking him with the Spurs, ſo that he may be ſenſible of his fault, and ſo do as often as he does it, if ſtanding, make him do it ſtanding, if going let it be whilſt he moves a little, and if he readily retract his failing, cheriſh him with a gentle Voice, but if not rate him, but ſtrike him not. *Ducking down the Head.*

If your Horſe over-reach in his going, and for want of due proportion in his ſteps, ſtrike his hinder Leg againſt his fore one, commonly called interfering, or ſtrikes in treading the ring or any other Exerciſe, ride him into new ploughed ground, ſo that he may be obliged to lift his Feet ſo high, as will altogether ſhorten his ſtrokes; the like you may do in Stony-ways, ſtriking him on the ſide he trips with your Rod, and cauſing his Shoes to be made as large behind as before, ſtriking him ſometimes upon the ſhoulder, which will make him ſtep ſhort, and in often ſo uſing him, he will forget his reaching, and fall into a moderate round pace. *Overreaching.*

If your Horſe be ſubject upon the leaſt occaſion to ſhake his Head and Ears, or move the latter, when he intends to kick, or bite, or caſt you, ſtrike him on the head with your wand, at the ſame time giving him a Check with your Bridle, and a ſtroke with your contrary Spur, putting him ſuddainly out of his pace, and then make him ſtop and ſtand till that he may have leaſure to underſtand your meaning, and be cautious for the future how he offends, and the like do when he ſtarts, or capers at the ſting of Waſp, Bee, or biting of a Fly; to prevent which flies, *&c.* in ſummer time, rub Oyl of Turpentine between his Legs, and in ſuch places where they uſually ſettle, and they will not during the ſcent thereof come near him. The like correction you may give him when he wincheth, which is a ſign of his intending to bite, or ſtrike with his Heels. *Shaking his Head, &c.*

If he be troubled with the Vice of Reſtifneſs, which is occaſioned by ill uſage or ſtubbornneſs. The former is when through ill management in riding, the horſe has been haired, frighted, and put into confuſion, by being forced upon ma-

Of Reſtifneſs. ny things at once, yet made to underſtand his defect in none of them; to remedy which you muſt cheriſh your Horſe, and gently move him, when if he paſs on, you muſt cheriſh him yet more; but if he ſtand, turn aſide, fall back or flounce, then muſt you have Men behind him with ſmart Whips, who muſt lace him to ſome purpoſe, not letting him as little as may be ſee them, and at the ſame time affright him with their Voices, or put Nettles or a ſmall Serpent or Cracker under his Tail, which will ſet him forward. The rider may likewiſe faſten a Cord about his Stones, and bringing it between his fore Legs, pull it as he ſees occaſion, and by that means make him advance forward, and ſoon underſtand his Duty. The like force may be uſed incaſe of Stubbornneſs, for ſome Horſes there are that perceiving the fearfulneſs, and little experience of their riders will not obey them.

Running away, &c. If your Horſe be addicted to run away, which proceeds Originally from the hardneſs of his mouth, and unevenneſs of his Jaws, but more through the little experience of him that firſt undertook to break him, in not making him punctually obſerve his ſtops, and ſo permitting him to do it without order to redreſs, which you muſt at the firſt mounting, be ſure to be furniſhed with a whole Cannon-bit, ſtrong Girths, and double Reins; when riding with many Weights about you, let the horſe at firſt go gently, till you ſee him beginning on a ſuddain as it were to alter his pace, then let him know what manner of Rider he carries, not by Checking him, but by holding him in with ſo ſtrong and even a Hand, as he ſhall not be able to proceed faſter then you would have him, then loſe him again, and if he Attempt to run, uſe him ſo the ſecond time, writhing his head, and making him Face about, then let him Gallop the contrary way, and in the midſt thereof ſwiftly wheel him about by drawing the right Rein, and ſo to the left. Having thus ordered him, make him ſtop in his Carreer by ſwaying back your Body, and Checking him with the ſide-Rein; clapping at the ſame time the Calves of your Legs cloſe to his Sides, and by ſo often uſing him, he will become gentle; but after this uſage, if he continue head-ſtrong, chuſe out ploughed Land of a large length, and let him run therein till he is tired,

tired, and when he is ſo tired, whip and rate him extreamly, and that will make him altogether out of Love with his humour, and dread that which he before delighted in.

Rearing an end.

If your Horſe upon every little occaſion be ſubject to rear an End, and bound aloft thereby to endanger himſelf and his Rider, obſerve when he is about to riſe, and with a convenient Stick ſtrike him hard on the fore knees, as alſo between the Ears, leaning forwards with your whole weight, and in ſo often uſing him and ſuffering the Stick to be ſtill in his ſight, you will make him out of love with this Vice; or you may do the like by faſt'ning a ſhort Rein to the Cheeks of his Bridle, and ſo to his Girths holding him ſtrait.

Falling down.

If your Horſe is ſubject to fall down, you muſt have divers to aſſiſt you, who when they ſee him about ſo to do, muſt with Whips, Staves, and Goads fall upon him with ſtroaks, and terrible Voices, holding him up by main force, and continuing to beat him, putting a lighted Match under his Tail, and ſo forcing him forward, the which three or four ſeveral and diſtinct times repeated, will ſo terrifie him, that he will never after be deſirous to commit the like Vice.

Skittiſhneſs and Startling.

If your Horſe be skittiſh, fearful and apt to Start, whereby you are never free from danger whilſt on his Back. Then to reduce him to a better temper, obſerve whether the cauſe proceeds from fear or humour, if from the former, then is it occaſioned by ſome ſtrange ſight or ſound the Horſe was never before acquainted with; when to bring him into a better order, you muſt by leading him in your hand, oblige him to come near the thing feared, and ſuffer him ſo well to view it, that he may become familiar, and well acquainted therewith, then get upon his Back, and retiring a diſtance, bring him up again, and by that means he will be ſo well acquainted therewith, that he will not ſtart for the future.

If your Horſe by nature be apt to ſtart, the cauſe proceeding from a head-ſtrong humour, then force him into places of greateſt danger, and where the moſt amazing ſights are to be ſeen, and then if he ſtart, recoil or be fearful to pro-

ceed, let a perſon ſtand behind him with a Cudgel and beat him forward; but by no means let the rider ſtrike or Spur him; ſo that he will be induced to believe the thing which he ſees is the cauſe of thoſe ſtripes, and therefore when he again beholds it, he will advance with all Celerity to avoid the puniſhment.

If his Starting comes by defect of ſight, and thereby things are repreſented to him otherwiſe then they are, you muſt lead him up to them, and often ride him where Sounds and confuſed Noiſes are, but offer him no Violence, leſt you confound him, he not underſtanding your meaning, but rather cheriſh him with words and geſture to imbolden him, and cauſe him to forget his fear, and by ſuch uſage he will be ſoon brought to good order.

To harden him againſt other Horſes.

If your Horſe be fearful of other Horſes, and by that reaſon dare not freely feed, to imbolden him and make him the freer from fear, uſe him to the company of tame and gentle Horſes, ſuffering him to feed with them, but laying the Oats or Hay on their ſide, that he may be forced to reach for it, and likewiſe to ſhift for his Lodging: After which put him to Horſes more wild and unruly, and by the ſame rule he will ſhift amongſt them. When he is ſo hardned ride him abroad, and meet divers Horſes upon a full trot, force him in amongſt them and juſtle, gently making him bear forward with a ſtrong Reſolution, and ſo upon return, which uſage will inure him to ſuch familiarity, that the like otherwiſe would not be by him attainable.

The Vices of the Mouth.

The Vices of the Mouth are many, the principal of which and their cauſes take as followeth, *viz.* A Horſe may have an Evil Mouth divers ways, as when his Chin or Beard, where the Kerb ſhould lye is too hard; or the like may happen in the place where the Bit and Kirb ſhould reſt, or contrary-wiſe both thoſe, and the Tongue may be too ſoft and tender, and thereby render the Guidance uneaſie to your Horſe, ſo that he is timerous to ſtay the Bit upon his mouth as he ought, and again his Mouth may be too little, or his Jaws too thick or great, of which cauſes do proceed divers Vices, as to draw up the Bit with his Tongue, as if he would ſwallow it, not ſuffering it to reſt upon his

Gum

Gums or Bars, alſo to bear too hard upon the Bit, and to wry his Mouth, ſhooting one Jaw over another, ſo that the Rider be he never ſo good a horſeman, can have no direct command of his Horſe. Now to correct theſe Vices, many uſe rough and ſharp Bits, which inſtead of reducing the horſe to a better temper, quite ſpoil his Mouth; therefore according to my opinion, the beſt way that may or can be uſed, is to anoint or waſh the horſes mouth, in caſe of hardneſs, with Honey, Hogs-lard, Allum, and Bole-Armonick diſſolved in Ale, and uſe a ſmooth and gentle Bit, not any ways offenſive, and withal give him good words in every Management, obſerving not to Check him, but upon an extraordinary occaſion, but rather cheriſh him; and by ſuch gentleneſs and by the operation of the things he will become gentle. If his Mouth be ſoft, uſe Allum, Oyl of Turpentine and the Juyce of Scabious, with which waſh it every morning and evening, uſing him to a Bit, round which you have wraped ſoft Linnen, till you find his mouth hardened by the aforeſaid Ingredients, and then let him take the former Bit ſtill, uſing the Ointment or mixture till you find he can well indure any moderate Bit, not by any means chafing, hairing, or hurrying your Horſe, but often riding him gently, and cooling his mouth with Spring-water, and ſuffering him to brouſe if he will on freſh Boughs, or feed on ſhort Graſs.

If your Horſe have not a hard nor ſoft Mouth, yet got the Vice to draw up his Bit, as if he would ſwallow it. Take a piece of Whip-cord about a ſpan-long and tye one end thereof to the Eye of the Bit under the Kerb; that done, turn down the Horſes nether Lip, to the intent you may eaſily bring the Cord between it and his nether Gums, unto the other Eye of the Bit, faſtening it to the ſame, ſo that the more the Cord is ſtrained, the faſter and ſtronger the Bit may be; ſo that the knot being dextrouſly knit at either end, few can perceive what is done, and in ſo doing he will by force be obliged to ſuffer the Bit to reſt in the right place, and thereby render himſelf better for the advantage of the ſeller and buyer.

If your Horſe be ſubject to move or wry his mouth, then

ſhall

ſhall you uſe to ride him with a Monſerol ſtrait buckled to his head, and ſo often as he moveth his Head, ſo often ſhall you correct him with your Spur on the right, and then with that on the left, ſometimes alſo giving him a Check with the Bridle upon the one or the other ſide, or upon both ſides at once with a ſteady hand, or if you ſee he does not altogether regard thoſe corrections, you may ſtrike him with the Stirrup, and Calves of your Legs on either ſide, but if the port of the Bit be the cauſe of ſuch defect, then you muſt change it, and by ſuch means will your horſe be brought into good order. And thus much may ſuffice as to the knowledge and correction of Vices incident to Horſes: The next thing to be conſidered being as Material as any yet premiſed, *viz.* How to know a good Horſe in all particulars, and prevent frauds in caſe of purchaſe.

How to know a Horſe in all particulars, and thereby prevent the Deceits of the Jockies, &c.

I Having already given Inſtructions to ſuch as rear their own breed, think it altogether as neceſſary for the accommodation of ſuch as have not the conveniency of breeding, to give them directions how to make a good Choice, and lay out their money to the beſt advantage.

To what end your Horſe is deſigned. The firſt thing neceſſary to be obſerved in making an advantagious choice, is well to underſtand to what intent or purpoſe you chuſe your Horſe, whether for the Wars, Racing, Hunting, Travel, Draught, or the like; and in ſuch caſes their Make, and Linaments, together with their Colour, Conſtitution, and Perfections are to be conſidered and had regard to. Now as to the Colour, altho there may be Horſes good of all colours; yet theſe ſucceeding are by the moſt expert Traders in Horſe-fleſh, accounted the beſt, *viz.* The Daple-Grey for Beauty, the Brown-Bay for Service, the Black with Silver-Hairs for Courage, the Layard or true mixed Roan for Countenance, as for the Black without White, the Sorrel and unchangeable Iron-Grey, they are accounted Cholerick, the Bright-Bay, Fleabitten and black with white marks are accounted Sanguine, the Dull-White

Colours to be obſerved.

White, the Yellow-Dun, the Kite Glewed, and the Pide-Bald are reputed Flegmatick. The Cheſnut-Mouſe Dun, Red Bay and Blew-Gray are taken for Melancholicks, ſo that in this ſort, according to the opinion of the Learned, the four Humours Emblems of the four Elements are divided, and by this Rule you muſt obſerve what diſeaſes ſuch like Horſes are moſt incident to, as in this Treatiſe you may be advertiſed, and be ſure narrowly to make Inquiſition on that particular.

The next thing to be conſidered is the Paces, and the Horſes aptneſs therein; if you deſign him for War, then the lofty Trot is moſt to be eſteemed, and to know that he is cleaner therein; take theſe obſervations in the taking up his Legs and croſs moving his Limbs, as when the far hinder Leg and the near fore-Leg move and go forward, and in the ſame manner the two other Legs in good order and equal diſtance, and in this motion the nearer a Horſe taketh his Limbs from the ground, the opener, the evener and the ſhorter he treadeth, the better will be his Pace, and the contrary declares much imperfection. *Of Paces.*

If you buy a Horſe for pleaſure, the Amble is the beſt, in which obſerve that he move both his Legs on one ſide together neat, and with compleat deliberation, for if he treads too ſhort he is apt to ſtumble, if too large to cut, and if ſhufling or rowling he does it ſlovenly, and beſides rids no ground. *For pleaſant Travel.*

If your Horſe be deſigned for Hunting, a racking Pace is moſt expedient, which little differs from the Amble, only is more active and nimble, whereby the Horſe obſerves due Motion; but you muſt not force him on too eagerly, leſt being in confuſion he loſe all knowledge of what you deſign him to, and ſo handle his Legs confuſedly. *Hunting.*

The Gallop is requiſite for Race Horſes, and the things to be obſerved therein are theſe. Firſt let the Horſe take up his feet nimbly from the ground, but not riſe over high, neither Rowling, Beating, nor Stretching out his fore-Legs beyond his reach, but following with his hinder, Aptly and Nimbly, not being Subject to the ſwift cut, Croſſing or Claping one foot upon the other, but ever leading with his

his far fore Foot. If he Gallop round and raiſe his fore-Legs, he is then ſaid to Gallop ſtrongly, but not capable of much ſpeed, and is fitter for the War then Racing, but if he take up his Feet, as if he did it unwillingly or was in pain, then it ſhews he has ſome hidden diſtemper to find out, which muſt be your care, or elſe if you purchaſe you will be cheated.

To chuſe a good Horſe. As for the Stature of the Horſe, it is always left to the Buyer, but as to the Infirmities and Deformities, I think it my part to diſcover them. Firſt then, when you intend to purchaſe a Horſe, being ſatisfied of his breed as well as you can, as alſo of his Pace and Colour, ſuffer him to ſtand before you without Bridle, Saddle, or Cloths, your ſelf ſtanding juſt before his Face, and ſo take an exact view of all his Parts and Proportions, but eſpecially of the Livelineſs of his Countenance, and all other marks according to the directions given in the foregoing part of this Treatiſe, wherein a perfect Horſe is portrayed in every Limb and Part, *&c.* yet what has been there inſerted, I ſhall here ſet down with Remarks thereon, for the Readers better underſtanding, and make ſome Repetition in a point ſo neceſſary to be obſerved: As thus, If his Ears ſtand upright, be ſhort, thin and well fixed at the roots, it ſignifies courage and comlineſs, but if the contrary, dulneſs and ill nature.

Ears.

Face. If his Face be clear, his Fore-head ſwelling outward, the mark or feather in his Face being high, if he have a white Star or Blaze, a white Snip even placed and not too large, they ſignifie Beauty and Goodneſs; but on the contrary if his Face be Fleſhly, Cloudy, Scowling, and his Fore-head flat, then is he deformed and defective, to which defects may be added a Blaze, a wry, a Raw-noſe, and unhairy Face.

Eyes. If his Eyes be round, ſhining, black and ſomewhat bloody, ſtaring or ſtanding out of his Head, the Black filling the outward Circumference, and the Balls, the Pits, it is a ſign of Courage, Goodneſs and Comlyneſs, and the contrary of Weakneſs and Deformity, ſubject to Spots, and Moon-blind or Wally Diſtempers incident to Horſes of weak-ſight, and ſometimes even to perfect blindneſs: If the Eyes are Watery and much bloody, it is the effect of ſome unhappy bruiſe

If they matter it happens through Exceſſive Riding; if Sunk and Hollow, he is either old or of an old Generation. Great Whites are ſigns of ill temper and dogged Diſpoſition.

If upon handling his Chaps and Cheeks you find his Bones Thin, Lean, and the ſpace wide between them, with a large Throple or Wind-Pipe, not infeſted with Kernels, the Neck ſeeming to couch within the Jaws, they are ſigns of good Wind, great Courage and Swiftneſs, and the contrary of the contrary defects, as Dullneſs, ſhort Wind, and uneaſineſs in Travel, ſubject to broken Wind, Strangury and Glaunders. *Chaps, Cheeks, &c.*

If his Noſtrils be dry, Thin and Wide, his Muzzel ſmall, Mouth deep, and Lips equally meeting, it denotes good Wind, Comlineſs and Swiftneſs, but on the contrary Evil Wind, Dulneſs, and ſubject to the Vices of the Mouth beforementioned. *Noſtrils, Mouth &c.*

If his Lips be uneven or ſhrunk, that his upper will not reach his nether, either ſome Diſtemper is ſetled in his Head, or Age has ſeized him. If his Noſe be moiſt and dropping, beware of the Glaunders, Violent cold, *&c.*

Let his Breaſt be broad and ſtrong, well Feathered and Compleatly ſet, which denotes Strength and Courage, when on the contrary a narrow Pinched Breaſt ſubjects the Horſe to Stumble, and is a palpable ſign of a weak, faint hearted Beaſt, as well as uncomlineſs. *Breſt, Knees.*

If the Knees carry an Equal Proportion, be not Broke, Scarred or Scabed, but even, round and fair, well knit with ſtrong Sinews, they ſignifie the Horſe to be Sound, well made and fit for Travel, but on the contrary Gouty, Lame and very Defective.

If his Legs be Clean, full of Sinews, but not too Fleſhy, Bowing ſomewhat inward without a Seam, then they are ſtrong, and as they ſhould be, but if the contrary, then are they ſubject to Lameneſs, by Founder, Farcine, Swelling, or the like; eſpecially if Scars and Scabs appear under the Knee, or a great Seam be Apparent with much Foggy or Spungy Fleſh, ſo that he is not capable of Labour or Travel. *Legs.*

Paſterns. If his Paſterns be clean, well knit together, clean, ſhort, ſtrong and ſtrait, then is it a Token of Beauty, Strength and long Indurance, but if on the contrary, then he is ſubject to the ſame ſtrain, and not capable of Travel.

Hoofs. The Hoof ought to be indifferent round, black, ſound and well fixed on, High-ſet, and Toughable to indure a Shooe in all ways; for if on the contrary it be long, flat and white, it will carry a Shooe in no way, but by reaſon of its Brittleneſs be frequently ſubject to let the Nails ſlip, and thereby Subject the Horſe to Foundering, and if the Cronet of the Hoof be not cloſe, ſmooth and well fixed, it is ten to one if he eſcapes the Crown Scab.

Head, Mane, Neck, Breſt, &c. Thus having Viewed the Horſe before, come to the Right-ſide of him, and View him well, firſt beginning with the obſervation of the ſetting on his Head, obſerving that it ſtands neither too high nor too low, but upon the direct at the ſetting on his Neck, being ſmall and long, ſtill increaſing in thickneſs in the Shoulders, with a thin Tough, ſtrong and high Creſt: his Main long, thin and ſoft, and ſomewhat Curling. Theſe are Characters of great Beauty and Goodneſs, whereas to have any Bunch or Swelling in the Nape of the Neck, denotes the Pole-Evil, or beginning of a Fiſtula. If the Neck be ſhort and thick, and ſubject to have a weak, thin Creſt with falling in, the Withers ſignifies a deficient Horſe in Mettle, Courage, Patience in Travel, and the like; and if his Main ſhed, it betokens Worms breeding in it, or him ſubject to Itch or Mange.

Chine and Ribs, &c. If his Chine be broad, even and ſtrait, his Ribs ſtrong and well Arched, his Filets upright ſtrong and ſhort, there not remaining above a Fingers length between his laſt Rib and Huckle-bone, his Body well let down, yet hidden without his Ribs, his Stones even hung and cloſe Truſſed up, then is he perfect in thoſe parts and worth buying, but if the contrary appear, then is he rendred deformed, not only ſubject to divers Diſeaſes, but will neither become Pillion nor Saddle.

Thighs. If his hinder Thighs or Gaſcoyns be well let down even to the middle Joynt, thick, full, Brawny and Swelling, it denotes

denotes ſtrength, and a Horſe capable of doing much Service, when on the contrary the clean, Lank, ſlender Thigh betokens Diſability and Weakneſs.

If his middle-joynt behind be clean, well Boned, Sinewed, and not Fleſhy, a little bending, *&c.* it is as it ſhould be, but if choped or ſore, inward bowed or bending, then it ſhews a Sellender; but if the Joynt and Veins in General ſwell and are hot, it proceeds from ſome unfortunate blow. If the ſwelling be particular as in the Plot, hollow part, or inlid, the Veins being full and proud, the ſwelling alſo ſhort, beware of a Blood Spavin; but if the ſaid ſwelling be behind, juſt below the Knuckle, then it is a Curb. *Middle-joynt.*

If the hinder Leg be clean and Sinewy, not too Fleſhy, it is as it ought to be; but if the contrary, he will not indure labour; if they ſwell the Greaſe is Molten into them, if Scabed above the Paſterns, he is ſubject to the Scratches; if Chops appear under, he hath the Pains, alſo very dangerous and ſubjecting him to Lameneſs. *Hinder-Legs.*

As for his Tail if it be well Fixed and Carried well, it cannot be amiſs, and for his Hoofs, let the Directions be taken by thoſe before mentioned.

To know a Horſes Age by many Viſible Tokens and probable Conjectures.

WHat more remains is to inform the Reader how to prevent the worſt of Cheats, he may at any time underſtand a Horſes Age. The manner take as followeth.

Every Horſe at his full number has forty Teeth, *viz.* ſix great Wang-Teeth on either ſide above, ſix below on the one ſide, and as many on the other, commonly called the Grinders, ſix below and ſix above in the fore part of his Mouth, called Gatherers, four Tuſhes, *viz.* one below and another above on each ſide which makes the juſt number. *Age by his Teeth.*

The firſt year he has his Foals Teeth, which are only Grinders, and gather ſmall and White. The next year he changes the four foremoſt Teeth, which appear browner

and bigger then the other. The third year the next changed are ſo, that no Foals Teeth remain before, except two of each ſide above, and two below. The fourth year he changes the Teeth next to them, leaving but one Foals Tooth on each ſide, above and below. At five year all his fore Teeth will be changed, and then he has his Tuſhes on either ſide compleat, and the Foals Tooth which he caſteth, when as thoſe that come in their places will be hollow, and the Marks appear thereon, which are little black Specks in the middle, and thoſe continue till the eighth year. At ſix years old his new Tuſhes come up at the bottom, of which grow little riſing Circles of young Fleſh, the Tuſhes being little, ſharp and white. The ſeventh year all the Horſes Teeth will be compleat. The Mark plainly appearing. The eighth year the Teeth will be full, plain, and the Mark hardly to be diſcerned, then will the Tuſhes turn yellowiſh, and at nine years old will the foremoſt Teeth appear longer, yellower, and fouler then before, and the Tuſhes much blunter. The tenth year the holes in the inner ſide of his Tuſhes will be filled up, and the Temples of his Head begin to be crooked and hollow. The eleventh year his Teeth will be extraordinary long and yellow, inclining ſomewhat to blackiſh foul and uneven ſtanding, directly oppoſite one againſt the other. At twelve his Teeth will be long, yellow and black, his upper Teeth over-reaching and hanging over his nether. The thirteenth year his Tuſhes will be Woven cloſe, if he uſed to Travel, or otherwiſe will be black and ſomewhat long, his Teeth now failing you, for after thirteen years you can give thereby but Conjectural Gueſſes, you muſt apply your ſelf to theſe following obſervations.

Hoof. If the Hoof be rugged, rumpled as it were in Seams, dry and brittle, it is a ſign of old Age.

Skin. If raiſing his Skin it fall not preſently, but ſtand on a heap, 'tis ſign of Age.

Tail. If you feel his Tail near the ſetting on, and find a Knot there on the joynt about the bigneſs of a Hazel-Nut, the Horſe is under ten years of Age.

Eyes. If his Eyes be round and ſtairing, the Pits full, then is he young, but if the contrary, old.

If he be of a dark Colour, yet grows Gizled with Silver Hairs about his Eye-brows, or underneath his Main, it is a ſign of Age, or if he be white and Menaled with either Red or Black Menals, it denotes the ſame. *Hair.*

If the Bars of his Mouth be great, rough and deep, and handle hard, then is he old, but if the contrary then is he young. *Bars.*

And thus much for theſe Particulars.

A TABLE of the CONTENTS.

The first Book.

The Contents of all the Chapters contained in the first Book.

THe Introduction Ch. 1. p. 1.
Of the best manner of breeding 2. 15
How to make and order your Stable 3, 13
Of the marks, colrous, and shapes of Horses 4, 19
Of the Office of the Groom and rider 5, 31

The Second Book.

The Contents of all the Chapters contained in the second Book.

OF what points consisteth the Office of the Farrier, handled Dialogue-wise: also a formal examen of the Farrier Ch. 1. p. 42
Of the causes of sickness in general, and the causes of health and long life 2. 55
Of such things which are of necessity to be known by every expert Farrier before he do adventure to administer 3. 68
The manner of handling the particular cures 4. 79

Chap. 4. A.

ACopum and its virtues 80
Arman 1 83
Arman 2. 85
Ach in the head 86
Ægyptiacum 1 Ægyptiacum 2. 89
Accloy 90
All diseases a Cataplasme 1. ibid.
All diseases a Cataplasme 2. 91
All diseases 3. 91
S. Anthonies fire 93
Anticor 95
Attaint upper 96
Attaint upper or back sinews sprain 97
Attaint upper 96
Avives 100
Arraistes or Rat-Tails 102, 219
Airing 175

Ch. 5. B.

The Table.

Chap. 5. B.

Back swelled 102
Barbs 104
Bath for humours to dry them up 105
Bath for stiff Legs 106
Bath 1, 2, 3, 4. 106, 107
Belly gaunt 108
Belly pain Ibid.
Bit wherewith the Tongue is hurt 109
Bleeding to stanch 111
Blindness ibid
Biting of a mad Dog 112
Blood-Spaven 113
Bath for a blood-Spaven 114
Bone Spaven 115
Blood-shotten eyes 117
Blood-shotten eyes: a charge 118
Blood-running itch 120
Blowing and Pursiveness 121
Bots, &c. 122
Bots 1. 123
Bots ibid.
Brittle hoof 127
Bruised heels and feet 128
Burning with shot 129
Bunches, knots, &c. 130
Bran prepared 1, 162
Black drink for the Glanders 74

Chap. 6. C.

Cast in a Halter 132
Canker 133
Casting the hoof 135
Cordial powder 105
Cautery actual 137
Cautery potential 138
Corrosive 1. ibid.
Caustick 139
Charge for surbating 140
Cleanse a Horse ibid.
Clifts and cracks in heels 141
Clysters 143
Clyster 1. 146
Clyster laxative 2. 147
Clyster restringent 3. ibid.
Clyster for a fat Horse 4. 148
Clyster for melancholly 5. ibid.
Clyster in case of desperate sickness 6. ibid.
Clyster for the pestilence 7. 149
Clyster lenitive 8. ibid.
Clyster for the Colick 9. ibid.
Cloyed 150
Cods swelled ibid.
Cods swelled a charge 151
Colick 152
Colick and Stone 153
Colt-Evil ibid.
Cold 154
Consumption 171
Consumption of the flesh 172
Convulsion 173
Costiveness or belly bound 177
Crown scab ibid.
Curb 178
Cold or running at the nose 201
Copporas water 54
Charge 162
Corrupt blood 193

Chap. 7. D.

Dangerous sickness how it cometh 179
Dangerous sickness how to know 181
Dangerous sickness how to prevent 183
Danger. sickness how to cure 184

Diapente

Diapente 185
Diateſſaron 186
Deſperate & dangerous ſick. 187
Diſſolve tumours 189
Deſperate ſickneſs 190
Drooping 192
Dropſie 194
Dead fleſh 196
Deep wounds 197
Deſperate ſtrain ibid.
Diſſolve greaſe 198
Diſeaſe of the Liver 200
Draw his yard 202
Draw a thorn 203
Drink to preſerve lungs ibid.
Diſeaſes to prevent 206
Drink comfortable 207
Diſlocated joynt ibid.
Diſeaſe of tranchaiſons or the colick 208
Dry up ſores 209, 17

Chap. 8. E.

Eat a taint 211
Eat a feather 212
Eat a Spider ibid.
Eye a ſtroke 213
Eye Flim, Pin and Web Dragons 214
Eye a canker 216
Eye a charge 218
Electuarium Theriacum 219
Excretion to cure 274
Eye a Wart 220
Eye broken 221
Excretion 222
Ears impoſtumated 223

Chap. 9. F.

Farcin 1
Farcin wet 10
Flanks 11
Fat Harſe ibid.
Fat a lean Horſe 12
Falling of the fundament 13
Feaver defined ibid.
Feaver how to know 16
Feaver ordinary ibid.
Feaver Hectique 19
Feaver peſtilent 20
Flying worm or Tetter 22
Feet to mollifie 23
Fig in the foot 24
Fiſtula 25
Fiſtula water 26
Fetlock hurt 28
Froathy or weeping hoof 29
Foundring in the feet 30
Foundred long 31
Foundred in the feet and body ibid. 34
Falſe quarter 38
Flanks, Moraldeflanks 41, 42
Flux 43
Foul and old ſores to mundifie ibid.
Forſaking meat 46, 45
Fruſh running 47
Felerick ibid.
Fret 48, 49

Chap. 10. G.

Galled back 51
Galled with the ſhackle ibid.
Gravelling 52
Green ointment 54
Greaſe molten 55
Glanders 58, 56
Glanders a purging drink 69

Chap. 11. H.

Hair from the main and tail falling away 75
Hair to grow 76

Head-ach ibid.
Heels scabbed, Heels kibed 77
Heel Mellet ibid.
Hide-bound 79
Honey-charge 82
Hoof to grow 83
Hoof weeping 85
Hoof loose, Hoof hurt 85
Hoof bound a charge 86, 33, 871
Hoof brittle, Hoof straight, Hoof loose ibid.
Hoof trodden upon or hurt 88
Hoof brittle to make tough 88
Hoof to grow ibid.
Halter-cast 89
Hough swelled ibid.
Humours to dry up 90
Hurt shoulder ibid.
Hurts old to cure 91
Honey 86
Horse-bread 187
Haw 215

Chap. 12. I.

Imperfections in the feet 91
Imposthumation to ripen 92
Inward sickness 93
Inward sickness a suppository ibid.
Inflammations 94
Joynt grieved 95
Increase the Hoof ibid. & 96

Chap. 12. L.

Lampas 96
Lax to stop 97
Lean Horse to make fat ibid.
Legs swelled 98
Leprosie or Elephantick malady 101
Lice ibid. & 102
Lime and Honey 102
Loe-worm 103
Lungs a disease 104
Lint wherewith to heal ulcers or old sores 209
Lunatick eyes 220
Lameness to find out, three ways 168

Chap. 13. M.

Malender 106
Mainge 108
Mouth sore 115
Mellet 116
Mollifie humours ibid.
Morfounded ibid.
Melancholly 193

Chap. 14. N.

Nose running 118
Navel galled ibid.
Night mare 119

Chap. 15. O.

Old sores 120
Over reach in the heel ib.
Ointment 121

Chap. 16. P.

Pastern joynt strained 123
Pill for the Glanders 124
Pestilence 126
Preparative 128
Pastons 122
Pursiveness a Pill 130
Pissing of blood 131
Surfeit by Provender 133
Poll evil ibid. & 134
Powder for old sores 135
Pursiveness or shortness of breath 136
Prickt 142

Perfume 1. *Perfume* 2. *Perfume* 3. 145 & 146
Purgation 1. *Purgation* 2. *Purgation* 3. 149
Purgation 4. *Purgation* 5. 150
Purgation 6. 151
Putrefactive 139
Purgation defined 143
Pin and Web 214
Pearl or film ibid.
Perfume 73
Powder 225

Chap. 17. Q.

Quick scab 152
Quitter bone 153

Chap. 18. R.

Red water 155
Restringent Charge 156
Ring-bone ibid.
Excretion to cure 157
Rot 158
Rules to know where a Horse halteth, either before or behind 167, 168

Chap. 18. S.

Salve 160
Shoulder wrench 162
Shoulder dislocated 163
Shoulder strained ibid.
Shoulder Rowelled 164
Shoulder the skin broken 165
Shoulder splat 173
Shoulder pight ibid.
Scratches ibid.
Sit-fast 177
Scabs and scratches ibid.
Stale or dung 178
Sick in travel 179
Sudden sickness 180
Selender 181
Sick or surfeited ibid.
Sinew sprung 182
Sinew grieved 183
Sinew cut ibid.
Sinew sprain 184
Strain newly taken 185
Strain old ibid.
Stinking breath ibid.
Splent 186
Stumbling 191
Stiff legs 192
Stale or piss ibid.
Stavers 193
Swelled legs 196
Swelled cods 199
Spongy wart 198
Surbated feet 200
Stifled ibid. & 201
Stone 201, 202
String-halt 203
1 *Suppository* 205
2 *Suppository* ibid.
3 *Suppository* ibid.
4 *Suppository* ibid.
5 *Suppository* ibid.
6 *Suppository* 206
Sweating ibid.

Chap. 19. T.

Tongue hurt 207
Tail an itch 208
Theriacum Unguentum ibid.
Tetter or ring-worm 209
Tyring in travel ibid.
Trunchions 123
Two things to be observed in every cure 76
Three sorts of Vermin which do ingender

ingender in the body of an Horſe 123

Chap. 20. V.

Vomiting 212
Violent cough 213
Vinegar 106
Ver volant 2.
Veins to take up 214

Chap. 21. W.

Wind to preſerve 215
Wild-fire 216
Wounds 217
Worm or excretion 218
Wind-galls ibid.
Wither-rung 220
Worms 222
White-water 104
Water 155
When in the knee 168
When in the ſhank ibid.
When in the paſtern ibid.

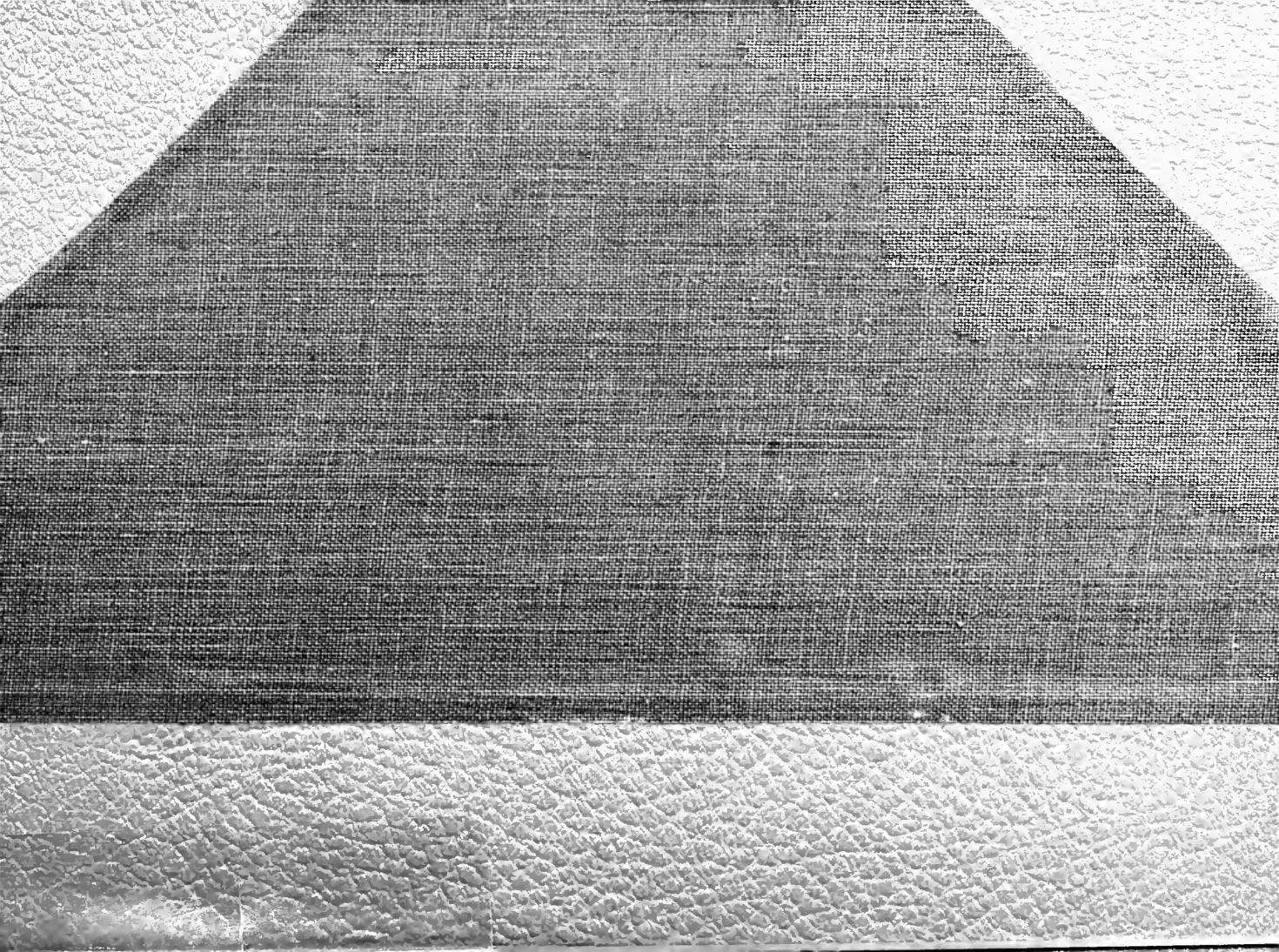
Chap. 22. Y.

Yellows 223, 224
Yard mattering 226

The Contents of the Jockies Maſter-piece, &c.

How to chooſe your Breeders 227
The diſcription of a good Horſe ibid.
How to oblige the Mare to receive the Horſe 228
How to know when your Mare holds, and how to order her afterwards 229
How to order your Colts ibid.
When to back your Horſes 230
How to make your horſes tame ib.
How a Horſe is to be trained up for Racing, War, Travel, &c. 231
What their Diet and Uſage in General ibid.
What to be obſerv'd in journeying 233
The moſt Commodious Stable deſcrib'd ibid.
Of the Racing horſe 234
Of the Tramel and its uſe ibid.
How to order your horſe when you train him for the War 235
How to order your horſe when you train him up to hunting 238
How to order your horſe for Travel 239.
Of vices in horſes, and how to remedy them 240
Wry head and Neck ibid
Unevenneſs in the lower part of the head ibid.
Ducking down the head 241
Over-reaching ibid.
Shaking the head, &c. ibid.
Of Reſtifneſs 242
Running away, &c. ibid.
Rearing an End 243
Falling down ibid.
Skittiſhneſs and ſtarting ibid.
How to harden your horſe againſt other Horſes 244
The vices of the Mouth and how to cure them ibid.
How to know a horſe ſo as not to be

be cheated 246
What Colours a e the beſt 246
Of their Paces 247
What horſe is beſt for Travel ib.
What beſt for hunting ibid.
How to chooſe a good horſe 248
Obſervations from his Ears, Face, Eyes ibid.
From his Chaps, Cheeks, &c. 249
From his Noſtrils, Mouth, &c. ib.
From his Breſt, Knees ibid.
From his Legs ibid.
From his Paſterns 250
From his Hoofs ibid.
From his Head, Mane, Neck, Breſt ibid.
From his Chine, Ribs, &c. ibid.
From his Thighs ibid.
From his middle joynt 251
From his hinder Leg ibid.
How to know a Horſes Age by his Teeth 251
How to know it by his Hoof, Skin, Tail, Eyes, &c. ibid.
And how by his Hair and the Bars of his Mouth 253

FINIS.

Webster Family Library of Veterinary Medicine
Cummings School of Veterinary Medicine at
Tufts University
200 Westboro Road
North Grafton, MA 01536